



XC40

OWNER'S MANUAL



VÄLKOMMEN!

We hope you will enjoy many years of driving pleasure in your Volvo. The car has been designed for the safety and comfort of you and your passengers. Volvo strives to be one of the safest cars in the world. Your Volvo is also designed to meet applicable safety and environmental requirements.

To increase your enjoyment of your Volvo, we recommend that you read the instructions and maintenance information in this owner's manual.

The owner's manual is also available as a mobile app (Volvo Manual) and on the Volvo Cars support site (support.volvocars.com).

We encourage everyone to always wear their seatbelt in this and other cars. Please do not drive if you are under the influence of alcohol or medication – or have an impaired ability to drive in some other way.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

OWNER INFORMATION

Owner information	16
Owner's manual in centre display	17
Navigate in the owner's manual in the centre display	18
Owner's Manual in mobile devices	20
Volvo Cars support site	20
Reading the owner's manual	21
The owner's manual and the environment	23

YOUR VOLVO

Volvo ID	26
Creating and registering a Volvo ID	26
Drive-E - cleaner driving pleasure	28
IntelliSafe-driver support	31
Sensus - online connectivity and entertainment	32
Software updates	35
Recording data	35
Terms & Conditions for Services	36
Customer Privacy Policy	36
Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment	37
Installation of accessories	37
Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket	38
Showing the car's identification number	39
Driver distraction	39

SAFETY

Safety	42
Safety during pregnancy	42
Whiplash Protection System	43
Seatbelts	44
Putting on and taking off seatbelts	45
Seatbelt tensioner	46
Resetting the electric seatbelt tensioner*	47
Door and seatbelt reminder	47
Airbags	49
Driver airbags	49
Passenger airbag	50
Activating and deactivating passenger airbag*	52
Side airbags	54
Airbags	55
Safety mode	55
Starting and moving the car after safety mode	56
Child safety	57
Child seats	58
Upper mounting points for child seats	58
Lower mounting points for child seats	59
i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats	60
Child seat positioning	60

Child seat mounting	62
Overview table for location of child seats	63
Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts	64
Table for location of i-Size child seats	66
Table for location of ISOFIX child seats	67

DISPLAYS AND VOICE CONTROL

Instruments and controls in left-hand drive car	72	Activating and deactivating centre display	101
Instruments and controls in right-hand drive car	73	Navigating in the centre display's views	101
Driver display	75	Managing tiles in centre display	105
Driver display settings	77	Function view in centre display	108
Fuel gauge	77	Moving apps and buttons in centre display	110
Trip computer	78	Symbols in the centre display's status bar	110
Show trip data in the driver display	79	Keyboard in centre display	112
Resetting the trip meter	80	Changing keyboard language in centre display	115
Show trip statistics in the centre display	80	Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display	115
Settings for trip statistics	81	Changing the appearance in the centre display	117
Time and date	82	Switching off and changing the volume of the system sound in the centre display	117
Outside temperature gauge	82	Changing system units	118
Indicator symbols in the driver display	83	Changing system language	118
Warning symbols in the driver display	85	Opening settings in the centre display	118
License agreement for the driver display	86	Open contextual setup in the centre display	119
Application menu in driver display	90	Changing settings in the centre display	120
Handling the application menu in the driver display	90	Resetting user data for change of ownership	120
Messages in the driver display	91	Resetting settings in the centre display	121
Managing messages in the driver display	93	Setting types in the centre display	121
Handling a message saved from the driver display	94		
Overview of centre display	95		
Managing the centre display	98		

Table showing centre display settings	122
Driver profiles	123
Selecting driver profile	124
Renaming a driver profile	125
Resetting settings in the driver profiles	125
Linking remote control key to driver profile	125
Message in centre display	126
Managing messages in the centre display	127
Handling a message saved from the centre display	128
Voice recognition	128
Using voice recognition	129
Controlling a telephone with voice recognition	130
Voice control of radio and media	131
Settings for voice recognition	131

LIGHTING

Lighting control	134
Adjusting light functions via the centre display	135
Position lamps	135
Daytime running lights	136
Dipped beam	137
Using main beam	137
Active main beam	138
Using direction indicators	139
Active bending lights*	140
Front fog lamps/cornering lights*	141
Rear fog lamp	141
Brake lights	142
Emergency brake lights	142
Hazard warning flashers	143
Using home safe lighting	143
Approach light duration	144
Interior lighting	144
Adjusting interior lighting	146

WINDOWS, GLASS AND MIRRORS

Windows, glass and mirrors	148
Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds	148
Reset sequence for pinch protection	149
Power windows	149
Operating power windows	150
Rearview and door mirrors	151
Adjusting rearview mirror dimming	152
Angling the door mirrors	153
Panorama roof*	154
Operating the panorama roof*	156
Automatic closing of the panoramic roof's* sun blind	158
Using windscreen wipers	159
Heated windscreen wiper nozzles*	160
Using the rain sensor	160
Using the rain sensor's memory function	161
Using windscreen and headlamp washers	162
Using the rear window wiper and washer	163
Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing	164

SEATS AND STEERING WHEEL

Manual front seat	166
Power front seat*	167
Adjusting the power front seat*	167
Storing memory function in power operated front seat*	168
Using stored memory in a powered front seat	169
Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat*	169
Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat	170
Lowering the backrests in the rear seat	171
Adjusting the head restraints in the rear seat	173
Steering wheel controls and horn	174
Steering lock	175
Adjusting the steering wheel	175

CLIMATE

Climate	178	Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel*	194
Climate zones	178	Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel*	194
Climate control - sensors	179	Activating auto climate control	195
Perceived temperature	179	Activating and deactivating air recirculation	195
Controlling climate control with voice recognition	180	Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation	196
Air quality	181	Activating and deactivating max defroster	196
Clean Zone*	181	Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen*	198
Clean Zone Interior Package*	182	Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated windscreen*	199
Interior Air Quality System*	182	Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors	199
Activating and deactivating the air quality sensor*	183	Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors	200
Passenger compartment filter	183	Regulating fan level for front seat	200
Air distribution	184	Regulating temperature for front seat	201
Changing air distribution	185	Synchronising temperature	202
Opening, closing and aiming the air vents	185	Activating and deactivating air conditioning	202
Table of air distribution options	187	Parking climate*	203
Climate controls	190	Preconditioning*	204
Activating and deactivating heated front seat*	191	Starting/stopping preconditioning*	204
Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat*	192	Preconditioning time setting*	205
Activating and deactivating heated rear seat*	192		
Activating and deactivating ventilated front seat*	193		

Adding and editing time setting for preconditioning*	205
Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning*	207
Removing time setting for preconditioning*	207
Climate comfort when parking*	208
Starting and switching off climate comfort when parking*	208
Symbols and messages for parking climate control*	210
Heater*	211
Parking heater*	212
Additional heater*	213
Activating and deactivating automatic start of auxiliary heater	213

KEY, LOCKS AND ALARM

Lock confirmation	216	Locking and unlocking from inside the car	245
Lock indication setting	217	Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car	246
Remote control key	217	Activating and deactivating child safety locks	247
Locking and unlocking with the remote control key	219	Automatic locking when driving	248
Settings for remotely controlled and inside unlocking	220	Opening and closing the power*-operated tailgate	248
Unlocking the tailgate with the remote control key	221	Programming maximum opening for power operated tailgate*	251
Remote control key range	222	Opening and closing the tailgate with foot movement*	252
Replacing the battery in the remote control key	222	Private locking	253
Ordering more remote control keys	226	Activating and deactivating private locking	253
Red Key - restricted remote control key*	226	Alarm*	255
Red Key settings*	227	Activating and deactivating alarms*	256
Detachable key blade	227	Reduced alarm level*	258
Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade	229	Double lock*	258
Immobiliser	230	Temporarily deactivating double locks*	259
Type approval for the remote control key system	232	Detection of unknown car component*	259
Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces*	241		
Keyless locking and unlocking*	242		
Settings for Keyless entry*	243		
Keyless unlocking of the tailgate*	243		
Antenna locations for the start and lock systems	244		

DRIVER SUPPORT

Driving support systems	262	Activating and starting Cruise Control	277	Change between Cruise Control and Adaptive Cruise Control	292
Speed-dependent steering force	262	Managing speed for the Cruise Control	278	Symbols and messages for Adaptive Cruise Control	294
Stability system Roll Stability Control	263	Deactivate Cruise Control and set it in standby mode	279	Pilot Assist	296
Electronic stability control	264	Reactivating Cruise Control from standby mode	279	Pilot Assist and Collision risk warning	299
Sport mode for electronic stability control	265	Deactivating Cruise Control	280	Activating and starting Pilot Assist	300
Activating/deactivating Sport mode in Electronic Stability Control	265	Adaptive Cruise Control*	281	Managing speed for Pilot Assist	301
Limitation for sport mode in Electronic Stability Control	266	Adaptive Cruise Control and Collision risk warning	283	Setting the time interval for Pilot Assist	302
Symbols and messages for electronic stability control	267	Activating and starting Adaptive Cruise Control	284	Deactivating/activating Pilot Assist	304
Speed Limiter	268	Managing speed with Adaptive Cruise Control	285	Overtaking assistance with Pilot Assist	306
Activating and starting the Speed Limiter	269	Setting time interval for Adaptive Cruise Control	286	Start overtaking assistance with Pilot Assist	306
Managing speed for the Speed Limiter	269	Deactivating/reactivating Adaptive Cruise Control	287	Limitations for overtaking assistance with Pilot Assist	306
Deactivate the Speed Limiter and set it in standby mode	270	Overtaking assistance with Adaptive Cruise Control	289	Change the target with Pilot Assist	307
Reactivating the Speed Limiter from standby mode	271	Starting overtaking assistance with Adaptive Cruise Control	289	Automatic braking with Pilot Assist	307
Deactivating the Speed Limiter	271	Limitations for overtaking assistance with Adaptive Cruise Control	290	Limitations of Pilot Assist	308
Limitations for Speed Limiter	272	Changing target with Adaptive Cruise Control	290	Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist*	309
Automatic Speed Limiter	272	Automatic braking with Adaptive Cruise Control	291	Radar unit	311
Activate/deactivate Automatic Speed Limiter	274	Limitations for Adaptive Cruise Control	292	Limitations for radar device	312
Changing the tolerance for the Automatic Speed Limiter	275			Recommended radar device maintenance	315
Limitations for Automatic Speed Limiter	275			Type approval for radar device	316
Cruise Control	276			Camera unit	321
				Limitations for camera unit	322

Recommended camera device maintenance	325	Messages for Cross Traffic Alert	347	Lane assistance symbols in the driver display	363
City Safety™	325	Road Sign Information*	348	Steering assistance at risk of collision	364
Parameters and subfunctions for City Safety	326	Activating/deactivating Road Sign Information	349	Activating/deactivating Steering assistance in the event of a collision risk	364
Setting the warning distance for City Safety	328	Road Sign Information and sign display	349	Steering assistance upon risk of run-off	365
Detection of obstacles with City Safety	329	Road Sign Information and Sensus Navigation	351	Steering assistance level in the event of a run-off risk	366
City Safety in cross traffic	331	Road Sign Information with Speed Warning and Settings	351	Activating/deactivating Steering assistance in the event of run-off risk	366
Limitations for City Safety in cross traffic	332	Activating/deactivating Speed warning in Road Sign Information	352	Limitations for steering assistance upon risk of running off the road	367
City Safety when evasive manoeuvres are prevented	332	Road Sign Information with Speed Camera Information	353	Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision	368
Limitations of City Safety	333	Limitations of Road Sign Information	353	Activating/deactivating Steering assistance in the event of a risk of a head-on collision	369
Messages for City Safety	336	Driver Alert Control	354	Limitations for steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision	369
Rear Collision Warning	337	Activate/deactivate Driver Alert Control	355	Symbols and messages for steering assistance upon risk of collision	371
Limitations of Rear Collision Warning	337	Select rest stop guidance in the event of a warning with Driver Alert Control	356	Park Assist*	372
BLIS*	338	Limitations of Driver Alert Control	356	Park Assist Pilot front, rear and along the sides	373
Activate/deactivate BLIS	339	Lane assistance	356	Activating/deactivating Park Assist Pilot	374
Limitations of BLIS	340	Steering assistance with lane assistance	358	Limitations of Parking assistance	374
Recommended maintenance for BLIS	340	Activate/deactivate Lane Keeping Aid	359	Recommended Park Assist Pilot maintenance	375
Messages for BLIS	342	Select assistance option for lane assistance	359		
Cross Traffic Alert*	343	Limitations of Lane assistance	359		
Activate/deactivate Cross Traffic Alert	344	Symbols and messages for lane assistance	361		
Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert	344				
Recommended maintenance for Cross Traffic Alert	345				

Symbols and messages for Park Assist Pilot	376
Park assist camera*	377
Parking cameras' camera views	378
Park assist lines for parking camera	380
Sensor fields from Park Assist Pilot for parking camera	382
Starting the park assist camera	382
Limitations for park assist camera	383
Recommended parking camera maintenance	384
Symbols and messages for Park assist camera	385
Park Assist Pilot*	386
Parking variants with Park Assist Pilot	386
Parking with Park Assist Pilot	387
Leaving a car park with Park Assist Pilot	390
Limitations of Park Assist Pilot*	391
Recommended Park Assist Pilot maintenance	392
Messages for Park Assist Pilot*	393

STARTING AND DRIVING

Starting the car	396	Auto braking after a collision	408
Switching off the car	397	Gearbox	409
Ignition positions	398	Gear positions for automatic gearbox	410
Selecting ignition mode	399	Changing gear with steering wheel paddles*	411
Alcohol lock*	399	Gear selector inhibitor	412
Bypass of the alcohol lock*	400	Kick-down function	413
Before starting the engine with the alcohol lock	400	Gear shift indicator*	413
Brake functions	401	All-wheel drive	413
Foot brake	401	Drive modes*	414
Brake assistance	402	Changing drive mode*	416
Braking on wet roads	402	Drive mode ECO	416
Braking on gritted roads	403	Activating and deactivating drive mode ECO with the function button	418
Brake system maintenance	403	Start/Stop function	419
Parking brake	403	Driving with start/stop function	419
Activating and deactivating the parking brake	404	Deactivating the Start/Stop function temporarily	420
Automatic parking brake activation setting	405	Conditions for the Start/Stop function	421
Parking on a hill	406	Level control* and shock absorption	423
In the event of a fault in the parking brake	406	Low speed control*	425
Automatic braking when stationary	407	Activating and deactivating low-speed driving* using a function button	425
Activating and deactivating the automatic brake at a standstill	407	Hill descent control*	426
Help when starting on a hill	408	Activating and deactivating hill descent control* with the function button	427

Economical driving	428
Preparations for a long trip	428
Winter driving	429
Driving in water	430
Opening and closing the fuel filler flap	430
Filling fuel	431
Handling of fuel	432
Petrol	432
Petrol particle filter	433
Diesel	434
Empty tank and diesel engine	435
Diesel particulate filter	435
Emission control with AdBlue®	436
Handling AdBlue®	437
Checking and filling with AdBlue®	437
Symbols and messages for AdBlue®	440
Overheating in the engine and drive system	442
Overloading the starter battery	443
Using jump starting with another battery	443
Towbar*	444
Specifications for towbar*	445
Extendable and retractable towbar*	446
Removable towbar*	448

Driving with a trailer	449
Trailer stability assist*	450
Checking trailer lamps	451
Towbar-mounted bicycle rack*	452
Towing	453
Fitting and removing the towing eye	454
Recovery	456
HomeLink®*	457
Programming HomeLink®*	457
Using HomeLink	459
Type approval for HomeLink®*	460
Compass*	460
Activating and deactivating the compass*	461
Calibrating the compass*	461

SOUND, MEDIA AND INTERNET

Sound, media and Internet	464
Audio settings	464
Apps	465
Downloading apps	466
Updating apps	467
Deleting apps	467
Radio	468
Start radio	468
Changing radio band and radio station	469
Searching for radio stations	470
Setting radio favourites	470
Settings for radio	471
RDS radio	472
Digital radio*	473
Link between FM and digital radio*	474
Media player	474
Media playback	475
Controlling and changing media	476
Searching media	477
Gracenote®	478
Video	478
Playing a video	479
Playing back DivX®	479
Settings for video	479

Media via Bluetooth®	480	Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones	493	Activating and deactivating data sharing	504
Connecting a device via Bluetooth®	480	Removing a Bluetooth-connected phone	493	Compatible media formats	505
Media via USB port	480	Managing phone calls	493	Technical specifications for USB devices	506
Connecting a device via USB port	481	Managing text messages	494	Storage space on hard disk	506
TV*	481	Settings for text messages	495	License agreement for audio and media	507
Using the TV*	482	Managing the phone book	496		
Settings for TV*	482	Settings for phone	496		
Apple® CarPlay®*	483	Settings for Bluetooth devices	497		
Using Apple® CarPlay®*	483	Wireless phone charger*	497		
Settings for Apple® CarPlay®*	485	Using the wireless telephone charger*	497		
Tips for using Apple® CarPlay®*	485	Internet-connected car*	498		
Android Auto*	486	Connecting the car to the Internet via a mobile device (Bluetooth)	499		
Using Android Auto*	487	Connecting the car to the Internet via a mobile device (Wi-Fi)	500		
Settings for Android Auto*	487	Connect the car to the Internet via car modem (SIM card)	500		
Tips for using Android Auto*	488	Settings for car modem	501		
Phone	488	Sharing Internet access from the car via a Wi-Fi hotspot	502		
Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time	489	No or poor Internet connection	503		
Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically	491	Remove Wi-Fi network	503		
Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually	492	Wi-Fi technologies and security	504		
Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone	492	User terms and conditions and data sharing	504		

WHEELS AND TYRES

Tyres	518
Dimension designation for tyre	519
Dimension designation for wheel rim	520
Tyres' rotation direction	521
Tread wear indicators on the tyres	521
Checking tyre pressure	522
Adjusting tyre pressure	522
Recommended tyre pressure	523
Tyre pressure monitoring system*	524
Calibrate the system for tyre pressure monitoring*	525
See tyre pressure statue in the centre display*	527
Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure	528
When changing wheels	529
Tool kit	529
Jack*	529
Wheel bolts	530
Removing a wheel	531
Fitting the wheels	533
Spare wheel*	534
Taking out the spare wheel	535
Winter wheels	536
Snow chains	536

Emergency puncture repair kit	537
Using a puncture repair kit	538
Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit	542

LOADING, STORAGE AND PASSENGER COMPARTMENT

Passenger compartment interior	544
Tunnel console	545
Using the cigarette lighter*	545
Emptying the ashtray*	546
Electrical sockets	546
Using electrical sockets	547
Using the glovebox	548
Sun visors	549
Cargo area	550
Recommendations for loading	550
Roof load and loading on load carriers	551
Bag hooks	551
Load retaining eyelets	552
Through-load hatch in the rear seat*	552
Folding up the cargo area floor	553
Fitting and removing the safety net*	553
Removing and storing the parcel shelf in the car	555
First aid kit	556
Warning triangle	556

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

Volvo service programme	560	Symbols on the batteries	583	Touching up minor paintwork damage	604
Data transfer between car and workshop via Wi-Fi	560	Fuses and central electrical units	584	Colour codes	605
Download Center	561	Replacing a fuse	585	Replacing the wiper blade, rear window	606
Managing system updates via the Download Centre	561	Fuses in engine compartment	586	Replacing windscreen wiper blades	607
Car status	562	Fuses under the left-hand front seat	590	Wiper blades in service position	608
Book service and repair	562	Cleaning the interior	593	Filling washer fluid	609
Sending car information to a workshop	564	Cleaning the centre display	593		
Raise the car	565	Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining	594		
Opening and closing the bonnet	567	Cleaning the seatbelts	595		
Servicing the climate control system	568	Cleaning floor mats and inlay mats	595		
Engine compartment overview	569	Cleaning leather upholstery	596		
Engine oil	570	Cleaning the leather steering wheel	596		
Checking and filling with engine oil	571	Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts	597		
Topping up coolant	572	Cleaning the exterior	597		
Bulb replacement	573	Polishing and waxing	598		
Exterior lamp positions	574	Handwashing	598		
Replacing the rear direction indicator bulb	575	Automatic car wash	600		
Changing brake light bulb	576	High-pressure washing	601		
Replacing the rear fog lamp bulb	577	Cleaning the wiper blades	601		
Bulb specifications	578	Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components	602		
Starter battery	579	Cleaning wheel rims	603		
Support battery	582	Rustproofing	603		
		Car paintwork	604		

SPECIFICATIONS

Type designations	612
Dimensions	615
Weights	617
Towing capacity and towball load	618
Engine specifications	620
Engine oil — specifications	621
Adverse driving conditions for engine oil	622
Coolant — specifications	623
Transmission fluid — specifications	623
Brake fluid — specifications	623
Fuel tank - volume	624
Tank capacity for AdBlue®	624
Air conditioning — specifications	624
Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions	626
Approved tyre pressures	627
Performance	628

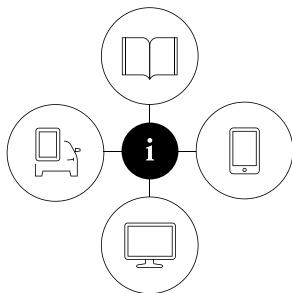
ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Alphabetical Index	629
--------------------	-----

OWNER INFORMATION

Owner information

Owner's information is available in several different product formats, both digital and printed. The owner's manual is available in the car's centre display, as a mobile app and on the Volvo Cars support site. There is a Quick Guide and a supplement to the owner's manual available in the glovebox, with specifications and fuse information, amongst other things. A printed owner's manual can be ordered.



0900003

The car's centre display¹

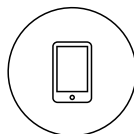


In the centre display, drag down the top view and tap on

Owner's manual. Available here are options for visual navigation with exterior and interior images of the car. The information is searchable and is also

divided into categories.

Mobile app



In App Store or Google Play, search for "Volvo Manual", download the app to your smartphone or tablet and select the car. Available in the app are video tutorials and options for visual navigation with exterior

and interior images of the car. It is easy to navigate between the different sections in the owner's manual and the content is searchable.

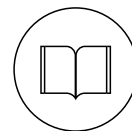
Volvo Cars support site



Go to support.volvocars.com and select your country. Here you can find owner's manuals, both online and in PDF format. On the Volvo Cars support site there are also video tutorials and further information and

help regarding your Volvo and your car ownership. The page is available for most markets.

Printed information



There is a supplement to the owner's manual¹ in the glovebox that contains information on fuses and specifications, as well as a summary of important and practical information.

There is also a Quick Guide available in printed format that helps you to get started with the most commonly used functions in the car.

Depending on equipment level selected, market, etc. additional owner's information may also be available in printed format in the car.

A printed owner's manual and associated supplement can be ordered. Contact a Volvo retailer to order.

! IMPORTANT

The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven safely in traffic and that applicable laws and regulations are followed. It is also important that the car is maintained and handled in accordance with Volvo's recommendations in the owner's information.

If there should be a difference between the information in the centre display and the printed information then it is always the printed information that applies.

¹ A complete printed manual is included with the car for markets without owner's manual in the centre display.

i NOTE

Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some owner information is not compliant with national or local laws and regulations. Do not switch to a language that is difficult to understand as this may make it difficult to find your way back in the structure on screen.

Related information

- Owner's manual in centre display (p. 17)
- Owner's Manual in mobile devices (p. 20)
- Volvo Cars support site (p. 20)
- Reading the owner's manual (p. 21)

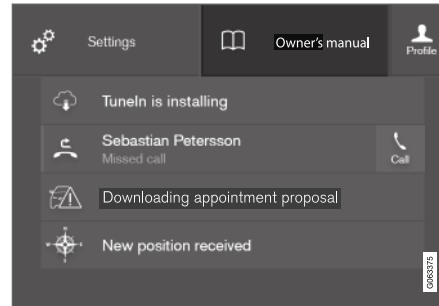
Owner's manual in centre display

A digital² version of the owner's manual is available in the car's centre display.

The digital owner's manual can be accessed from the top view, and in some cases the contextual owner's manual can also be accessed from the top view.

i NOTE

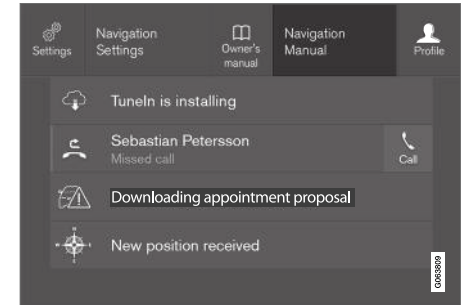
The digital owner's manual is not available while driving.

Owner's manual

The owner's manual is accessed from the top view.

To open the owner's manual - drag down the top view in the centre display and tap on **Owner's manual**.

The information in the owner's manual can be accessed directly via the owner's manual homepage or its top menu.

Contextual owner's manual

The contextual owner's manual is accessed from the top view.

When the contextual owner's manual is available, it is shown to the right of **Owner's manual** in the top view.

Pressing the contextual owner's manual opens an article in the owner's manual that is related to the content that is shown on the screen. E.g. press **Navigation Manual** - an article that is related to navigation opens.

This only applies to some of the apps in the car. For third party apps that are downloaded, it is not possible, for example, to access app-specific articles.

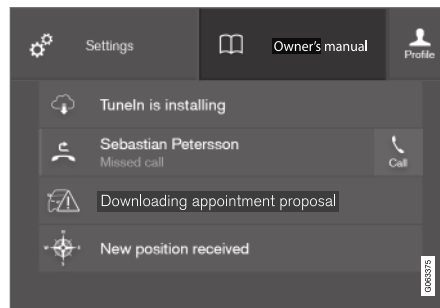
² Applies for most markets.

◀◀ Related information

- Navigate in the owner's manual in the centre display (p. 18)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 101)
- Downloading apps (p. 466)

Navigate in the owner's manual in the centre display

The digital owner's manual can be accessed from the centre display top view in the car. The content is searchable and it is easy to navigate between different sections.



The owner's manual is accessed from the top view.

- To open the owner's manual - drag down the top view in the centre display and tap on **Owner's manual**.

There is a range of different options for finding information in the owner's manual. The options can be accessed from the owner's manual homepage and from the top menu.

Opening the menu in the top menu

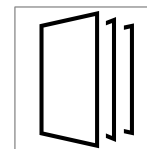
- Press ☰ in the upper list in the owner's manual.
 - > A menu containing various options for finding information opens:

Homepage



Tap on the symbol to go back to the start page in the owner's manual.

Categories



The articles in the owner's manual are structured into main categories and subcategories. The same article can be found in several appropriate categories in order to be found more easily.

1. Press **Categories**.
 - > The main categories are shown in a list.
2. Tap on a main category (📁).
 - > A list of subcategories (📁) and articles (📄) is shown.
3. Tap on an article to open it.

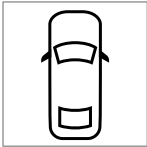
To go back, press the back arrow.

Quick Guide



Press the symbol to access a page with links to a selection of articles that can be particularly useful to read in order to get to know the most common functions of the car. The articles can also be accessed via categories, but are collected here for quick access. Tap on an article in order to read it in its entirety.

Hotspots for exterior and interior



Exterior and interior overview images of the car. Different parts are designated with hotspots that lead to articles about those parts of the car.



1. Press **Exterior** or **Interior**.

- > Exterior or interior images are shown with so-called hotspots in place. The hotspot leads to articles about the corresponding part of the car. Swipe horizontally over the screen to browse among the images.

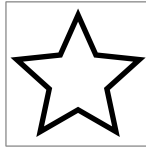
2. Tap on a hotspot.

- > The title of the article about the area is shown.

3. Tap on the title to open the article.

To go back, press the back arrow.

Favourites



Press the symbol to access the articles saved as favourites. Tap on an article in order to read it in its entirety.

Saving or deleting articles as favourites

Save an article as favourite by pressing ☆ at the top right when an article is open. When an article has been saved as a favourite the star is filled in:



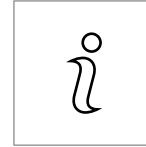
To remove an article as a favourite, press the star again in the current article.

Video




Press the symbol to view brief instruction videos for various functions in the car.

Information



Tap on the symbol to obtain information about which version of the owner's manual is available in the car as well as other useful information.

Using the search function in the top menu

1. Tap on  in the top menu of the owner's manual. A keyboard appears in the lower part of the screen.
2. Type in a keyword, such as "seatbelt".
 - > Suggestions for articles and categories are shown while letters are being entered.
3. Tap on the article or category to access it.

Related information

- Owner's manual in centre display (p. 17)
- Keyboard in centre display (p. 112)
- Reading the owner's manual (p. 21)

Owner's Manual in mobile devices

The owner's manual is available as a mobile app³ from both the App Store and Google Play. The app is adapted for smartphones and tablets.

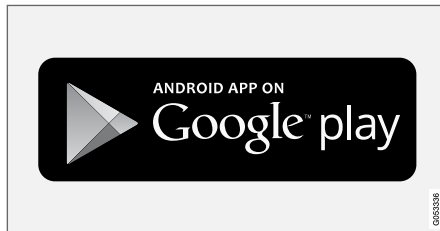
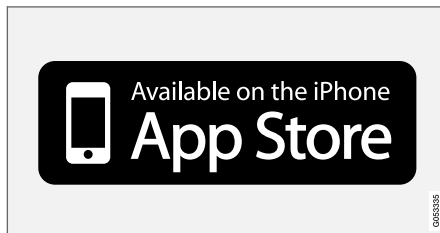


The owner's manual can be downloaded as a mobile app from the App Store or Google Play. The QR code provided here takes you directly to the app. Alternatively, you can search for "Volvo manual" in

the App Store or Google Play.

The app contains a video along with exterior and interior images where different parts of the car are highlighted with so-called hotspots, which lead to articles about the area in question. It is easy to navigate between the different sections

in the owner's manual and the content is searchable.



The mobile app is available from both the App Store and Google Play.

Related information

- Reading the owner's manual (p. 21)

Volvo Cars support site

More information on your car is available on the Volvo Cars website and support site.

Support on the Internet

Go to support.volvocars.com to visit the site. The support site is available for most markets.

It contains support for functions such as web-based services and functions, Volvo On Call*, the navigation system* and apps. Videos and step-by-step instructions explain different procedures, e.g. how to connect the car to the Internet via a mobile phone.

Downloadable information

Maps

For cars equipped with Sensus Navigation, there is the facility to download maps from the support page.

Owner's manuals as PDF

Owner's manuals are available for download in PDF format. Select car model and model year to download the manual as required.

Contact

The support site contains contact details to customer support and your nearest Volvo retailer.

³ For certain mobile devices.

Log in to Volvo Cars website

Create a personal Volvo ID and log in to www.volvocars.com. When you have logged in it is possible to get an overview of service, agreements and warranties, amongst other things. Here there is also information about accessories and software adapted for your car model.

Related information

- Volvo ID (p. 26)

Reading the owner's manual

A good way of getting to know your new car is to read the owner's manual, ideally before your first journey.

Reading the owner's manual is a good way to become familiar with new functions, get advice on how best to handle the car in different situations and learn how to make the best use of all the car's features. Please pay attention to the safety instructions contained in the owner's manual.

The intention of this owner's information is to explain all of the possible features, functions and options included in a Volvo vehicle. It is not intended as an indication or guarantee that all of these features, functions and options are included in every vehicle. Some terminology used may not exactly match terminology used in sales, marketing and advertising materials.

Development work is constantly underway in order to improve our product. Modifications may mean that information, descriptions and illustrations in the owner's manual differ from the equipment in the car. We reserve the right to make modifications without prior notice.

Do not remove this manual from the car - if problems should arise then the necessary information about where and how to seek professional help will be missing.

© Volvo Car Corporation

Options/accessories

In addition to standard equipment, the owner's manual also describes options (factory fitted equipment) and certain accessories (retrofitted extra equipment).

All types of option/accessory are marked with an asterisk: *.

The equipment described in the owner's manual is not available in all cars - they have different equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact a Volvo retailer.

Special texts

WARNING

Warning texts appear if there is a risk of injury.

IMPORTANT

"Important" texts appear if there is a risk of damage.

NOTE

NOTE texts give advice or tips that facilitate the use of e.g. features and functions.



◀◀ Footnote

The owner's manual contains information in certain locations in the form of a footnote at the bottom of the page or at the end of a table. This information is an addition to the text that it refers to via a number. If the footnote refers to text in a table then letters are used instead of numbers for referral.

Message texts

There are displays in the car that show menu and message texts. In the owner's manual the appearance of these texts differs from the normal text. Examples of menu texts and message texts:

Phone, New message.

Decals

The car contains different types of decal which are designed to convey important information in a simple and clear manner. The decals in the car have the following descending degree of importance for the warning/information.

Warning of personal injury



Black ISO symbols on yellow warning field, white text/image on black message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in serious personal injury or fatality.

Risk of property damage



White ISO symbols and white text/image on black or blue warning field and message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in damage to property.

Information



White ISO symbols and white text/image on black message field.

NOTE

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and location in the car. The information that applies to your particular car is available on the respective decals for your car.

Procedure lists

Procedures where action must be taken in a certain sequence are numbered in the owner's manual:

- 1** When there is a series of illustrations for step-by-step instructions each step is numbered in the same way as the corresponding illustration.
- A** Lists of letters appear adjacent to the series of illustrations where the order of the instructions is not significant.
- 1** Arrows appear numbered and unnumbered and are used to illustrate a movement.
- A** Arrows with letters are used to clarify a movement when the relative order is of no relevance.

If there is no series of illustrations for step-by-step instructions then the different steps are numbered with normal numbers.

Position lists

- 1** Red circles containing a number are used in overview images where different components are pointed out. The number recurs in the position list featured in connection with the illustration that describes the item.

Bulleted lists

A bulleted list is used when there is a list of points in the owner's manual.

Example:

- Coolant
- Engine oil

Related information

Related information refers to other articles containing closely associated information.

Images

Illustrations used in the owner's manual are sometimes schematic and are intended to provide an overall picture or example of a certain function. Illustrations may deviate from the car's appearance depending on equipment level and market.

To be continued

▶▶ This symbol is located furthest down to the right when an article continues on the following page.

Continued from previous page

◀◀ This symbol is located furthest up to the left when an article continues from the previous page.

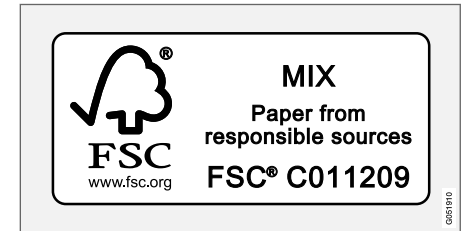
Related information

- Owner's manual in centre display (p. 17)
- Owner's Manual in mobile devices (p. 20)
- Volvo Cars support site (p. 20)

The owner's manual and the environment

The Owner's Manual is printed on paper originating from controlled forests.

The Forest Stewardship Council (FSC)[®] symbol shows that the paper pulp in a printed owner's manual comes from FSC[®]-certified forests or other controlled sources.



Related information

- Drive-E - cleaner driving pleasure (p. 28)

YOUR VOLVO

Volvo ID

Volvo ID provides access to a wide range of personalized Volvo services¹ online.

It is possible to create a Volvo ID from the car, volvocars.com or Volvo On Call app². Certain functions and services require that the car is registered to a personal Volvo ID. Registering the Volvo ID to the car makes a wide range of Volvo services available directly from the car.

Examples of services:

- Volvo On Call* - Volvo ID is used when logging in to the Volvo On Call app.
- Send to Car - Makes it possible to send an address from an Internet map service directly to the car.
- Book Service and Repair - Register your preferred workshop/retailer at volvocars.com to be able to book service directly from the car.

Advantages of Volvo ID

- One user name and one password to access online services, i.e. only one username and one password to remember.
- If the username/password for a service (e.g. Volvo On Call) is changed, then it is also changed automatically for other services.

Related information

- Creating and registering a Volvo ID (p. 26)
- Book service and repair (p. 562)

Creating and registering a Volvo ID

It is possible to create a Volvo ID in different ways. If the Volvo ID is created at volvocars.com or with Volvo On Call app, the Volvo ID must also be registered to the car to enable use of the various Volvo ID services.

Create a Volvo ID with the app

1. Download the Volvo ID app from **Download Centre** in the centre display's app view.
2. Start the app and register a personal email address.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address.
 - > A Volvo ID has now been created and automatically registered to the car. Volvo ID services can now be used.

Create a Volvo ID on the Volvo Cars website

1. Go into www.volvocars.com and log in³ using the icon at the top right. Select Create Volvo ID.
2. Enter a personal email address.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address.
 - > A Volvo ID has now been created. Read below to learn how to register the ID to the car.

¹ The services available may vary over time and vary depending on equipment level and market.

² If you have Volvo On Call*.

³ Available in certain markets.

Create a Volvo ID with the Volvo On Call app⁴

1. Download the latest version of the Volvo On Call app from a smartphone, via e.g. App Store, Windows Phone or Google Play.
2. Choose to create a Volvo ID from the app's start page and enter a personal email address.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address.
 - > A Volvo ID has now been created. Read below to learn how to register the ID to the car.

Registering your Volvo ID to the car

If you created your Volvo ID via the web or the Volvo On Call app, register it to your car as follows:

1. If not done already, download the Volvo ID app from **Download Centre** in the app view.

i NOTE

To download apps, the car must be connected to the Internet.

2. Start the app and enter your Volvo ID/your email address.

3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the email address linked to your Volvo ID.
 - > Your Volvo ID is now registered to the car. Volvo ID services can now be used.

Related information

- Volvo ID (p. 26)
- Downloading apps (p. 466)
- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 561)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)

⁴ Cars with Volvo On Call*.

Drive-E - cleaner driving pleasure

Volvo Car Corporation is constantly working on the development of safer and more efficient

products and solutions in order to reduce the negative impact on the environment.



Environmental care is one of Volvo Cars' core values and influences all operations. The environmental work is based on the whole life cycle of the car and takes into account the environmental impact it has, from design to scrapping and recycling. Volvo Cars' basic principle is that every new product developed must have less impact on the environment than the product it replaces.

Volvo's environmental management work has resulted in the development of more effective and less polluting drivelines Drive-E. Personal environment is also important to Volvo - the air

inside a Volvo is, for example, cleaner than the air outside thanks to the climate control system.

Your Volvo complies with stringent international environmental standards. All Volvo's manufacturing units must be ISO 14001 certified, and this supports a systematic approach to the operation's environmental issues, which leads to continuous improvement with reduced environmental impact. Holding the ISO certificate also means that environmental laws and regulations in force are complied with. Volvo also requires that its partners must also meet these requirements.

Fuel consumption

Since a large part of a car's total environmental impact stems from its use, the emphasis of Volvo Cars' environmental work is on reducing fuel consumption, carbon dioxide emissions and other air pollutants. Volvo cars have competitive fuel consumption in each of their respective classes. Lower fuel consumption generally results in lower emission of the greenhouse gas, carbon dioxide.

Contributing to a better environment

An energy-efficient and fuel-efficient car not only contributes to a reduced impact on the environment, but also means reduced costs for the owner of the car. As the driver, it is easy to reduce fuel consumption and thereby save money and contribute to a better environment - here is some advice:

- Plan for an effective average speed. Speeds above approx. 80 km/h (approx. 50 mph) and below 50 km/h (approx. 30 mph) lead to increased energy consumption.
- Follow the Service and Warranty Booklet's recommended intervals for service and maintenance of the car.
- Avoid letting the engine idle - switch off the engine when stationary for longer periods. Pay attention to local regulations.
- Plan the journey - a lot of unnecessary stops and uneven speed contribute to increased fuel consumption.
- Use preconditioning* before starting in cold conditions - it improves starting capacity and reduces wear in cold weather. The engine reaches normal operating temperature more quickly, which decreases consumption and reduces emissions.

Also remember to always dispose of environmentally hazardous waste, such as batteries and oil, in an environmentally safe manner. Consult a workshop in the event of uncertainty about how this

type of waste should be discarded - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Efficient emission control

Your Volvo is manufactured following the concept "Clean inside and out" - a concept that encompasses a clean interior environment as well as highly efficient emission control. In many cases the exhaust emissions are well below the applicable standards.

Clean air in the passenger compartment

An air filter helps prevent dust and pollen entering the passenger compartment via the air intake.

The Interior Air Quality System (IAQS)* ensures that the incoming air is cleaner than the air in the traffic outside.

The system cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone. If the outside air is contaminated then the air intake is closed and the air is recirculated.

Such a situation may arise in heavy traffic, queues and tunnels for example.

IAQS is a part of the Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)*, which also includes a function that allows the fan to start when the car is unlocked with the remote control key.

Interior

The material used in the interior of a Volvo is carefully selected and has been tested in order to be pleasant and comfortable. Some of the details are hand-made, such as the seams of the steering wheel that are sewn by hand. The interior is monitored in order not to emit strong odours or substances that cause discomfort in the event of e.g. high heat and bright light.

Volvo workshops and the environment

Regular maintenance creates the conditions for a long service life and low fuel consumption for your car. In this way you also contribute to a cleaner environment. When Volvo's workshops are entrusted with the service and maintenance of your car it becomes part of Volvo's system. Volvo makes clear demands regarding the way in which workshop premises shall be designed in order to prevent spills and discharges into the environment. The workshop staff have the knowledge and the tools required to guarantee good environmental care.

Recycling

Since Volvo works from a life cycle perspective, it is also important that the car is recycled in an environmentally sound manner. Almost all of the car can be recycled. The last owner of the car is therefore requested to contact a retailer for referral to a certified/approved recycling facility.



◀◀ **Related information**

- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 626)
- Economical driving (p. 428)
- Starting/stopping preconditioning* (p. 204)
- The owner's manual and the environment (p. 23)
- Air quality (p. 181)

IntelliSafe-driver support

IntelliSafe is the Volvo Cars concept for car safety. IntelliSafe comprises a number of systems, both standard and optional, whose purpose is to make a car journey safe, to prevent injuries and to protect passengers and other road users.

Support

IntelliSafe includes driver support functions such as Adaptive cruise control* which helps the driver to maintain an even speed combined with a pre-selected time interval to the vehicle ahead.

Pilot Assist⁵ helps the driver to drive the car between the lane's edge markings using steering assistance as well as to maintain an even speed, combined with a preselected time interval to the vehicle ahead.

Park Assist Pilot* helps the driver to park in or leave a parking space.

Other examples of systems that can help the driver are the Active main beam, Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)* and Blind Spot Information (BLIS)* systems.

Prevention

City Safety is a function that can contribute to preventing accidents. The function can prevent or mitigate a collision with pedestrians, cyclists, larger animals or vehicles. Visual, acoustic and

brake pulse warnings are given in the event of a risk of collision to help the driver act in time. If the driver does not react to the warning and the risk of collision is assessed as imminent then City Safety can automatically brake the car.

Lane assistance (LKA) is another example of a function that can help prevent accidents by helping the driver - on motorways and similar larger roads - to reduce the risk of the car accidentally leaving its own lane.

The function **Steering aid during increased collision risk** can help the driver reduce the risk of the car leaving its lane unintentionally and/or colliding with another vehicle or obstacle by actively steering the car back into its lane and/or swerving.

Protection

With the aim of protecting the driver and passengers, the car is equipped with seatbelt tensioners which can tension the seatbelts in critical situations and in collisions. The car also has airbags and inflatable curtains, as well as Whiplash Protection System (WHIPS), which protects against whiplash injuries.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 262)
- Active main beam (p. 138)
- Safety (p. 42)

- Seatbelts (p. 44)
- Airbags (p. 49)
- Whiplash Protection System (p. 43)

⁵ This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

Sensus - online connectivity and entertainment

Sensus makes it possible to surf the Internet, use different types of apps and make the car a Wi-Fi hotspot.

This is Sensus



Sensus offers an intelligent interface and online connectivity with the digital world. An intuitive navigation structure makes it possible to receive relevant support, information and entertainment when it is necessary, without distracting the driver.

Sensus covers all solutions in the car that are connected with entertainment, online connectivity, navigation* and the user interface between driver and car. It is Sensus that makes communication possible between you, the car and the outside world.

Information when it is needed, where it is needed

The different displays in the car provide information at the right time. The information is shown in different locations based on how it should be prioritised by the driver.



Different types of information are shown in different displays depending on how the information should be prioritised.

Driver display



Driver display⁶.

The driver display shows information on speed and e.g. incoming calls or song tracks being played. The display is operated via the two steering wheel keypads.

Centre display



⁶ The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

- ◀ Many of the main functions of the car are controlled from the centre display, a touch screen which reacts to touch. The number of physical buttons and controls in the car is therefore minimal. The screen can even be operated while wearing gloves.

From here, for example, you can control the climate control system, the entertainment system and seat position*. The information that is shown in the centre display can be acted on by the driver or someone else in the car when the opportunity arises.

Voice recognition system



The voice recognition system can be used without the driver needing to take his/her hands off the steering wheel. The system can understand natural speech. Use voice recognition to, for example, play back a

song, call someone, increase the temperature or read out a text message.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 75)
- Overview of centre display (p. 95)
- Voice recognition (p. 128)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- Sharing Internet access from the car via a Wi-Fi hotspot (p. 502)

Software updates

So that you as a Volvo customer get the best experience of your car, Volvo continuously develops the systems in the cars and the services that you are offered.

You can update the software in your Volvo to the latest version when your car is serviced at an authorised Volvo dealer. The latest software update gives you access to new functions and improvements, as well as previous improvements included with previous software updates.

For more information about released updates and answers to frequently asked questions, please go to support.volvocars.com.

i NOTE

Functionality after updating may vary depending on market, model, model year and options.

Related information

- Sensus - online connectivity and entertainment (p. 32)
- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 561)

Recording data

As part of Volvo's safety and quality assurance, certain information about the vehicle's operation, functionality and incidents are recorded in the car.

This vehicle is equipped with an "Event Data Recorder" (EDR). Its primary purpose is to register and record data related to traffic accidents or collision-like situations, such as times when the airbag deploys or the vehicle strikes an obstacle in the road. The data is recorded in order to increase understanding of how vehicle systems work in these types of situations. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short time, usually 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record data related to the following in the event of traffic accidents or collision-like situations:

- How the various systems in the car worked
- Whether the driver and passenger seatbelts were fastened/tensioned
- The driver's use of the accelerator or brake pedal
- The travel speed of the vehicle

This information can help us better understand the circumstances in which traffic accidents, injuries and damage occur. The EDR only records data when a non-trivial collision situation occurs. The EDR does not record any data during normal

driving conditions. Similarly, the system never registers who is driving the vehicle or the geographic location of the accident or near-miss situation. However, other parties, such as the police, could use the recorded data in combination with the type of personally identifiable information routinely collected after a traffic accident. Special equipment and access to either the vehicle or the EDR is required to be able to interpret the registered data.

In addition to the EDR, the car is equipped with a number of computers designed to continually check and monitor the function of the car. They can record data during normal driving conditions, but in particular register faults affecting the vehicle's operation and functionality, or upon activation of the vehicle's driver support function (e.g. City Safety and the auto brake function).

Some of the recorded data is required to enable service and maintenance technicians to diagnose and remedy any faults that occurred in the vehicle. The registered information is also needed to enable Volvo to satisfy legal requirements laid out in laws and by government authorities. Information registered in the vehicle is stored in its computer until the vehicle is serviced or repaired.

In addition to the above, the registered information can be used in aggregate form for research and product development with the aim of continuously improving the safety and quality of Volvo cars.



Volvo will not contribute to the above-described information being disclosed to third parties without the vehicle owner's consent. To comply with national legislation and regulations, Volvo may be forced to disclose information of this nature to the police or other authorities who may assert a legal right to access such. Special technical equipment which Volvo and workshops that have entered into agreements with Volvo have access to is required to be able to read and interpret the recorded data. Volvo is responsible that the information, which is transferred to Volvo during servicing and maintenance, is securely stored and managed and that its management complies with relevant legal requirements. For further information - contact a Volvo retailer.

Terms & Conditions for Services

Volvo offers services so that you can drive your Volvo as safely and as comfortably as possible. These services include everything from assistance in emergencies to navigation and various maintenance services.

Before using the services, it is important for you to read the Terms & Conditions for Services at support.volvocars.com.

Related information

- Customer Privacy Policy (p. 36)

Customer Privacy Policy

Volvo respects and safeguards the personal integrity of everyone visiting our website.

This policy regards to the handling of customer data and personal information. The purpose is to give current, past and potential customers a general understanding of:

- The circumstances in which we gather and process your personal data.
- The types of personal data we gather.
- The reason we gather your personal data.
- How we handle your personal data.

This policy can be read in its entirety at support.volvocars.com.

Related information

- User terms and conditions and data sharing (p. 504)
- Terms & Conditions for Services (p. 36)
- Recording data (p. 35)

Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment

The incorrect connection and installation of accessories and extra equipment can negatively affect the car's electronic system.

We strongly recommend that Volvo owners only install Volvo approved original accessories, and that installation of accessories is only carried out by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians. Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system.

The equipment described in the owner's manual is not available in all cars - they have different equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

Options or accessories described in this manual are marked with an asterisk. In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact a Volvo retailer.

WARNING

The driver always bears the ultimate responsibility that the car is used safely and that laws and regulations in force are followed.

It is also important that the car has maintenance and service according to Volvo's recommendations, the owner's information and the service and warranty booklet.

If the on-board information differs from the printed owner's manual then the printed information always has precedence.

Related information

- Installation of accessories (p. 37)
- Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket (p. 38)
- Reading the owner's manual (p. 21)

Installation of accessories

We strongly recommend that Volvo owners only install Volvo approved original accessories, and that installation of accessories is only carried out by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians. Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system.

- Volvo original accessories are tested to ensure that they function with the car systems for performance, safety and emissions control. In addition, a trained and qualified Volvo service technician knows where accessories may or may not be safely installed in your Volvo. Always seek the advice of a trained and qualified Volvo service technician before installing any accessories in or on your car.
- Accessories that are not approved by Volvo may not have been specifically tested for use with your car.
- Some of the car's performance or safety systems can be negatively affected if you install accessories that have not been tested by Volvo, or if you permit someone without experience of the car to install accessories.
- Damage that is caused by accessories installed in a non-approved or incorrect way is not covered by any new car warranty. More warranty information can be found in the service and warranty booklet. Volvo does not accept



- ◀◀ any liability for deaths, personal injury or costs arising as a result of the installation of non-original accessories.

Related information

- Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment (p. 37)

Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket

Incorrect connection and installation of software or diagnostic tools may have a negative effect on the car's electronic system.

We strongly recommend that Volvo owners only install Volvo approved original accessories, and that installation of accessories is only carried out by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians. Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system.



Data link connector (On-board Diagnostic, OBDII) is under the instrument panel on the driver's side.

<p>i NOTE</p> <p>Volvo Cars accepts no liability for the consequences if unauthorised equipment is connected to the On-board Diagnostic socket (OBDII). This socket should only be used by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians.</p>
--

Related information

- Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment (p. 37)

Showing the car's identification number

When contacting a Volvo retailer concerning your Volvo On Call subscription, for example, you will need the car's identification number (VIN⁷).

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Continue to **System** → **System Information** → **Vehicle Identification Number**.
 - > The car's identification number is shown.

Driver distraction

The driver is responsible for doing everything possible to ensure the safety of themselves, their passengers and other road users. Part of this responsibility is avoiding distractions such as carrying out an activity that is not related to operating the car in a driving environment.

Your new Volvo is, or can be, equipped with content-rich entertainment and communications systems. This could be mobile phones with hands-free, navigation systems and audio systems with lots of functions. You may also have other portable electronic devices for your own convenience. Used correctly, in a safe way they can enrich the driving experience. If they are used in the wrong way they could distract you.

We wish to give the following warnings regarding such systems, to indicate Volvo's concern for your safety. Never use a device or function in the car in such a way that it will distract you from the task of driving safely. Distractions can lead to serious accidents. Apart from these general warnings, we offer the following advice regarding the new functions that may be in the car:

WARNING

- Never use a hand-held mobile phone while driving. In some areas it is forbidden for the driver to use a mobile phone while the car is moving.
- If the car is equipped with a navigation system you must only set and change the itinerary when the car is parked.
- Never program the audio system while the car is moving. Program the radio's presets when the car is parked and then use the programmed presets for faster and simpler use of the radio.
- Never use laptops or hand-held computers while the car is moving.

Related information

- Sound, media and Internet (p. 464)

⁷ Vehicle Identification Number

SAFETY

Safety

The vehicle is equipped with several safety systems that work together to protect the vehicle's driver and passengers in the event of an accident.

The car is equipped with a number of sensors that react in the event of an accident and activate different safety systems, such as different types of airbags and seatbelt tensioners. Depending on the specific accident situation, such as collisions at different angles, roll-over or driving off the road, the systems react in different ways to provide the best protection.

There are also mechanical safety systems such as Whiplash Protection System. The car is also constructed so that a large part of the force of a collision is distributed to beams, pillars, floor, roof and other parts of the body.

The car's safety mode may be activated after a collision if an important function in the car has been damaged.

Warning symbol in driver display



The warning symbol is illuminated in the driver display when the car's electrical system is set in ignition position II. The symbol is extinguished after

approx. 6 seconds if the car's safety system is fault-free.

WARNING

If the warning symbol remains illuminated or is switched on during driving and the message **SRS airbag Service urgent Drive to workshop** is shown in the driver display, it means that part of one of the safety systems does not have full functionality. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted as soon as possible.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the car's various safety systems yourself. Defective work in one of the systems can cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.



If the specific warning symbol is broken then the general warning symbol is illuminated instead and the driver display shows the same message.

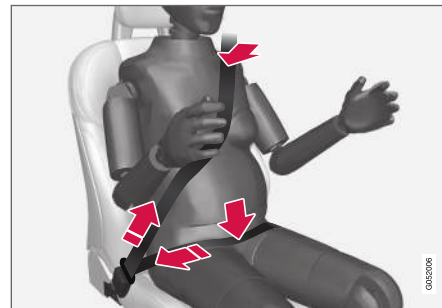
Related information

- Safety during pregnancy (p. 42)
- Seatbelts (p. 44)
- Airbags (p. 49)
- Whiplash Protection System (p. 43)
- Safety mode (p. 55)
- Child safety (p. 57)

Safety during pregnancy

It is important that the seatbelt is used correctly during pregnancy, and that pregnant drivers adjust their seating position.

Seatbelt



The diagonal section should wrap over the shoulder then be routed between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

The lap section should lay flat over the thighs and as low as possible under the abdomen. – It must never be allowed to ride upward. Remove the slack from the seatbelt and ensure that it fits as close to the body as possible. In addition, check that there are no twists in the seatbelt.

Seating position

As the pregnancy progresses, pregnant drivers must adjust the seat and steering wheel such that they can easily maintain control of the vehi-

cle as they drive (which means that they must be able to easily operate the foot pedals and steering wheel). The aim should be to position the seat with as large a distance as possible between abdomen and steering wheel.

Related information

- Safety (p. 42)
- Seatbelts (p. 44)
- Manual front seat (p. 166)
- Power front seat* (p. 167)

Whiplash Protection System

Whiplash Protection System (WHIPS) reduces the risk of whiplash injuries. The system consists of energy absorbing backrests and seat cushion, as well as a specially designed head restraint in the front seats.

WHIPS is deployed in the event of a rear-end collision, where the angle and speed of the collision and the nature of the colliding vehicle all have an influence.

When WHIPS is deployed, the front seat backrests are lowered backward and the seat cushions move downward to change the seating position of the driver and front seat passenger. Its movement helps to absorb some of the forces that can arise and cause whiplash.

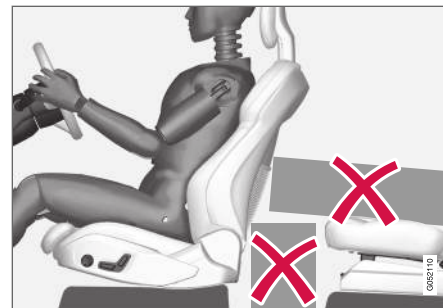
WARNING

WHIPS is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seat or WHIPS yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the front seats have been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the seats must be replaced. Some of the seats' protective properties may have been lost even if they do not appear damaged.



Do not leave any objects on the floor behind or under the front seats or in the rear seat that may prevent WHIPS from functioning.

WARNING

Do not squeeze rigid objects between the rear seat cushion and the front seat's backrest.

If a backrest in the rear seat is lowered then any load must be secured to prevent it from sliding up to the front seat backrest in the event of a collision.

WARNING

If a backrest in the rear seat is lowered or a rear-facing child seat is used in the rear seat, the corresponding front seat must be moved forward so that it does not make contact with the lowered backrest or child seat.



◀ Seating position

For optimum protection from WHIPS the driver and passenger must have the correct seating position and make sure that the system's function is not obstructed.

Set the correct seating position in the front seat before driving starts.

Driver and front seat passenger should sit in the centre of the seat with as little space as possible between the head and the head restraint.

WHIPS and child seats

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by WHIPS.

Related information

- Safety (p. 42)
- Manual front seat (p. 166)
- Power front seat* (p. 167)
- Rear Collision Warning (p. 337)

Seatbelts

Heavy braking can have serious consequences if the seatbelts are not used.

It is important that the seatbelt lies against the body so it can provide maximum protection. Do not lean the backrest too far back. The seatbelt is designed to protect in a normal seating position.

WARNING

Remember not to clip or hook the seatbelt to hooks or other interior fittings, as this prevents the belt from tightening properly.

WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If a seatbelt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

Related information

- Safety (p. 42)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 46)
- Putting on and taking off seatbelts (p. 45)
- Door and seatbelt reminder (p. 47)

Putting on and taking off seatbelts

Make sure that all passengers have fastened their seatbelts before starting to drive.

Putting on seatbelts

1. Pull out the seatbelt slowly and make sure it is not twisted or damaged.

i NOTE

The seatbelt locks and cannot be withdrawn:

- if it is pulled out too quickly
- during braking and acceleration
- if the car leans heavily.

2. Lock the belt by inserting the locking tab in the intended buckle.
 - > A loud "click" indicates that the belt has locked.

! WARNING

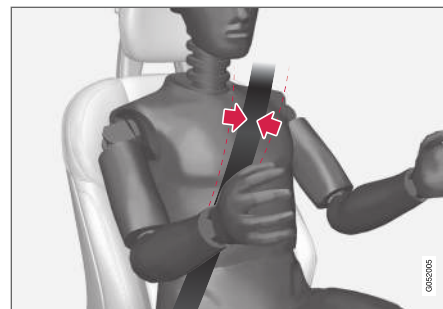
Always insert the tongue of the seatbelt into the buckle on the correct side. The seatbelts and buckles would otherwise possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serious injury.

3. In the front seats the seatbelt can be adjusted for height.



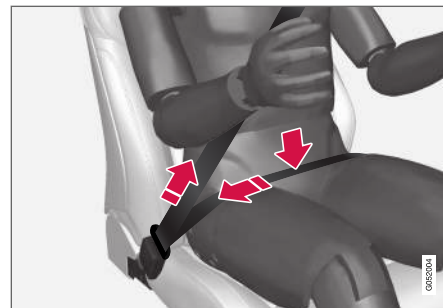
Press together the seat mounting and move the seatbelt up or down.

Position the belt as high as possible without it chafing against your throat.



The seatbelt must pass over the shoulder (not down over the arm).

4. Tension the hip strap over the lap by pulling the diagonal shoulder belt up towards the shoulder.



The hip strap must be positioned low down (not over the abdomen).



WARNING

Each seatbelt is designed for only one person.

WARNING

Remember not to clip or hook the seatbelt to hooks or other interior fittings, as this prevents the belt from tightening properly.

WARNING

Do not make any damages on seatbelts nor insert any foreign objects into a buckle. The seatbelts and buckles would then possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serious injury.

Taking off seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the seatbelt buckle and then let the belt retract.
2. If the seatbelt does not retract fully, feed it in by hand so that it does not hang loose.

Related information

- Seatbelts (p. 44)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 46)
- Door and seatbelt reminder (p. 47)

Seatbelt tensioner

The car is fitted with standard seatbelt tensioners and electric* seatbelt tensioners that can tension the seatbelts in critical situations and collisions.

Standard seatbelt tensioner

All the seatbelts are equipped with a standard seatbelt tensioner.

The seatbelt tensioner tensions the seatbelt in the event of a collision with sufficient force in order to more effectively restrain the occupant.

Electric seatbelt tensioner*

The driver and front passenger seatbelts are equipped with an electric seatbelt tensioner.

The seatbelt tensioners work together and can be activated together with the driver support systems City Safety and Rear Collision Warning. In critical situations, such as panic braking, driving off the road (e.g. the car rolls into a ditch, lifts off the ground or hits something in the terrain), skidding, or risk of collision, the seatbelt can be tensioned by the seatbelt tensioner's electric motor.

The electric seatbelt tensioner helps to adjust the occupant to a better position, reducing the risk of striking the car's interior and improving the effect of safety systems, such as the car's airbags.

When the critical situation has come to an end, the seatbelt and the electric seatbelt preten-

sioner are restored automatically, but they can also be restored manually.

IMPORTANT

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the electric seatbelt tensioner on the passenger side will also be deactivated.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

Related information

- Seatbelts (p. 44)
- Putting on and taking off seatbelts (p. 45)
- Resetting the electric seatbelt tensioner* (p. 47)
- Activating and deactivating passenger airbag* (p. 52)

- City Safety™ (p. 325)
- Rear Collision Warning (p. 337)

Resetting the electric seatbelt tensioner*

The electric seatbelt tensioner is designed to be reset automatically, but the seatbelt tensioner can be reset manually if the belt remains extended.

1. Stop the car at a safe place.
2. Unfasten the seatbelt and then refasten it.
 - > The seatbelt and electric seatbelt tensioner are reset.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

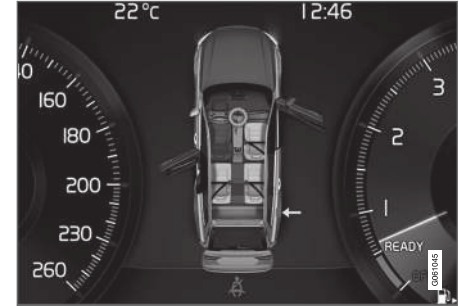
Related information

- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 46)
- Seatbelts (p. 44)

Door and seatbelt reminder

The system reminds unbelted occupants to wear a seatbelt, and also warns about an open door, bonnet, tailgate or fuel filler flap.

Driver display graphics



Graphics in the driver display with different types of warnings. The warning colour on the door and tailgate is dependent on the vehicle's speed.

The driver display's graphics show which seats in the car are occupied by belted and unbelted passengers.

The same graphic also shows if the bonnet, tailgate, fuel filler flap or any door is open.

The graphic can be acknowledged by pressing the **O** button on the right-hand steering wheel keypad.



◀ Seatbelt reminder



Visual reminder in the roof console.

A visual reminder is given in the roof console and by means of the warning symbol in the driver display.

The acoustic reminder is dependent on speed, driving time and distance.

The belt status of the driver and passengers is shown in the driver display graphics when a belt is buckled or unbuckled.

Child seats are not covered by the seatbelt reminder system.

Front seat

A visual and acoustic reminder remind the driver and front seat passenger to use a seatbelt if either of them is not wearing one.

Rear seat

The seatbelt reminder in the rear seat has two subfunctions:

- Provides information on which seatbelts are being used in the rear seat. The driver display's graphics are shown when the seatbelts are in use.
- Reminding that a seatbelt in the rear seat is unfastened during a journey by means of a visual and acoustic reminder. The reminder will cease once the seatbelt has been put on again.

Reminder for doors, bonnet, tailgate and fuel filler flap

If the bonnet, tailgate, fuel filler flap or a door is not closed properly, the driver display's graphics show what is open. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the source of the warning.



If the car is driven at a speed lower than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) then the driver display's information symbol illuminates.



If the car is driven at a speed higher than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) then the driver display's warning symbol illuminates.

Related information

- Seatbelts (p. 44)
- Putting on and taking off seatbelts (p. 45)

Airbags

The car is equipped with airbags and inflatable curtains for driver and passengers.

i NOTE

The detectors react differently depending on the nature of the collision and whether or not the seatbelts are fastened. Applies to all belt positions.

It is therefore possible that only one (or none) of the airbags may inflate in a collision. The detectors sense the force of the collision on the vehicle and the action is adapted accordingly so that none, one or more airbags are deployed.

⚠ WARNING

The airbag system's control module is located in the centre console. If the centre console is drenched with water or other liquid, disconnect the cables to the starter battery. Do not attempt to start the car since the airbags may deploy. Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

Deployed airbags

If any of the airbags have deployed, the following is recommended:

- Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop. Do not drive with deployed airbags.
- Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to handle the replacement of components in the car's safety systems.
- Always contact a doctor.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive with deployed airbags. They can make steering difficult. Other safety systems may also be damaged. The smoke and dust created when the airbags are deployed can cause skin and eye irritation/injury after intensive exposure. In case of irritation, wash with cold water. The rapid deployment sequence and airbag fabric may cause friction and skin burns.

Related information

- Safety (p. 42)
- Driver airbags (p. 49)
- Passenger airbag (p. 50)
- Side airbags (p. 54)
- Airbags (p. 55)

Driver airbags

As a supplement to the seatbelts, the car is equipped with steering wheel airbag and knee airbag¹ on the driver's side.



Steering wheel airbag and knee airbag¹ on the driver's side in the front seat.

In the event of a frontal collision, the airbags help to protect the head, neck, face and chest of the driver as well as the knees and legs.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag/airbags is inflated. The airbag cushions the initial collision impact for the occupant. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

¹ The car is only equipped with knee airbag in certain markets.



⚠ WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest.

⚠ WARNING

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

Steering wheel airbag location

This airbag is fitted into the centre of the steering wheel. The steering wheel is marked **AIRBAG**.

Knee airbag¹ location

The airbag is folded up in the lower part of the instrument panel on the driver's side. Its cover panel is marked **AIRBAG**.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place or attach any object on the top or front of the panel where the knee airbag is stowed.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 49)
- Passenger airbag (p. 50)

Passenger airbag

As a supplement to the seatbelts, the vehicle is equipped with an airbag on the passenger side in the front seat.



Front passenger airbag in front seat.

In the event of a frontal collision, the airbag helps to protect the head, neck, face and chest of the passenger as well as the knees and legs.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag is inflated. The airbag cushions the initial collision impact for the occupant. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

¹ The car is only equipped with knee airbag in certain markets.

⚠ WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest.

⚠ WARNING

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

Passenger airbag location

The airbag is folded up into a compartment above the glovebox. Its cover panel is marked **AIRBAG**.

⚠ WARNING

Do not put objects in front of or above the dashboard where the passenger airbag is located.

Label for passenger airbag

Label on the passenger side's sun visor.



Label on the passenger side's door pillar. The label becomes visible when the passenger door is opened.

The warning label for the passenger airbag is positioned as shown above.

⚠ WARNING

If the car is not equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag, the airbag will always be activated.

⚠ WARNING

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 49)
- Driver airbags (p. 49)
- Activating and deactivating passenger airbag* (p. 52)

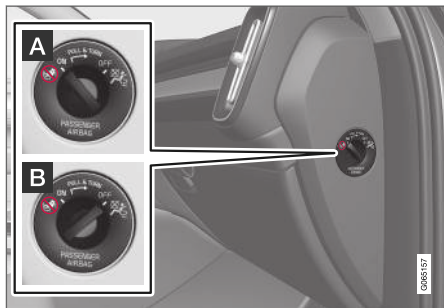
Activating and deactivating passenger airbag*

The passenger airbag can be deactivated if the car is equipped with a switch, Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch (PACOS).

Switch

The switch for the passenger airbag is located on the passenger end of the instrument panel and is accessible when the passenger door is open.

Check that the switch is in the required position.



- A ON** - the airbag is activated and all front-facing passengers (children and adults) can sit safely on the passenger seat.
- B OFF** - The airbag is deactivated and children in rear-facing child seats can sit safely on the passenger seat.

WARNING

If the car is not equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag, the airbag will always be activated.

Activating passenger airbag

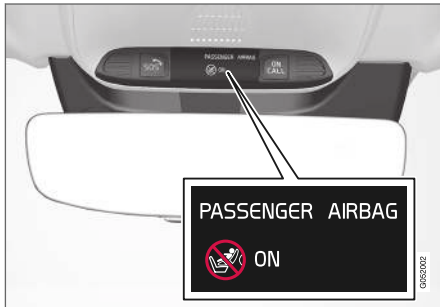


- 1** Pull the switch outward and turn from **OFF** (B) to **ON** (A).
 - > The driver display shows the message **Passenger airbag on Please acknowledge**.

NOTE

If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated with the car in ignition position **I** or lower, a message is shown in the driver display and the following indicator in the roof console approx. 6 seconds after the car's electrical system has been set in ignition position **II**.

2. Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's **O** button.



- > A text message and a warning symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is activated.

⚠ WARNING

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated.

The passenger airbag must always be activated when front-facing passengers (children and adults) are sitting in the front passenger seat.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Deactivating passenger airbag

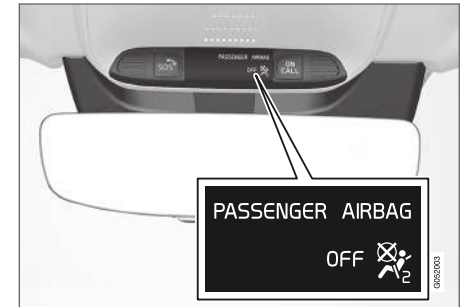


- 1 Pull the switch outward and turn from **ON** (A) to **OFF** (B).
 - > The driver display shows the message **Passenger airbag off Please acknowledge**.

i NOTE

If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated with the car in ignition position **I** or lower, a message is shown in the driver display and the following indicator in the roof console approx. 6 seconds after the car's electrical system has been set in ignition position **II**.

2. Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's **O** button.



- > A text message and a symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is deactivated.

⚠ WARNING

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the passenger seat when the airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

! IMPORTANT

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the electric seatbelt tensioner on the passenger side will also be deactivated.

◀◀ **Related information**

- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 46)
- Child seats (p. 58)

Side airbags

The side airbags on the driver's and passenger seats act to protect the chest and hips in the event of a collision.



The side airbags are fitted in the outer backrest frames of the front seats and help to protect the driver and passengers in the front seat.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the side airbags are inflated. The airbag inflates between the occupant and the door panel and thereby cushions the initial impact. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. The side airbag is normally only deployed on the side of the collision.

⚠ WARNING

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the side airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Do not put objects in the area between the outside of the seat and the door panel, since this area is required by the side airbag.

Volvo recommends the use only of car seat covers approved by Volvo. Other seat covers may impede the operation of the side airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Side airbags are a supplement the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Side airbags and child seats

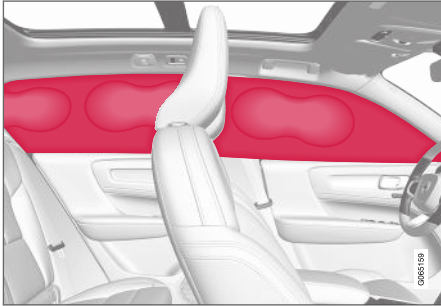
The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the side airbag.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 49)

Airbags

The inflatable curtain, Inflatable Curtain (IC), helps to prevent the driver and passengers from striking their heads on the inside of the car during a collision.



The inflatable curtain is mounted along both sides of the headlining and helps protect the driver and outer seat passengers of the car. The panels are labelled with **IC AIRBAG**.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the inflatable curtain is inflated.

⚠ WARNING

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the inflatable curtain system can cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Never hang or attach heavy items onto the handles in the roof. The hooks are only designed for light coats and jackets (not for solid objects such as umbrellas).

Do not screw or install anything onto the car's headlining, door pillars or side panels. This could compromise the intended protection. Volvo recommends only using Volvo genuine parts that are approved for fitting within these areas.

⚠ WARNING

Leave 10 cm (4 inches) space between the load and the side windows if the car is loaded to above the top edge of the door windows. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.

⚠ WARNING

The inflatable curtain is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 49)

Safety mode

Safety mode is a protective state that is triggered when a collision may have damaged any of the car's vital functions, such as the fuel lines, sensors for any of the safety systems, or the brake system.

If the car has been in a collision, the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** may be shown on the driver display with a warning symbol as long as the display is not damaged and the car's electrical system is still in working order. This message means that the car has reduced functionality.

⚠ WARNING

Never, under any circumstances, attempt to restart the car if it smells of fuel when the **Safety mode See Owner's manual** message is shown in the driver display. Leave the car at once.

If the car is in safety mode, it is possible to attempt to reset the system in order to start and move the car for a short distance, if in a dangerous traffic situation for example.



WARNING

Never attempt to repair your car or reset the electronics yourself if the car has been in safety mode. This could result in personal injury or the car not functioning as normal. Volvo recommends that engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to check and restore the car to normal status after **Safety mode See Owner's manual** has been shown.

WARNING

If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information

- Safety (p. 42)
- Starting and moving the car after safety mode (p. 56)
- Recovery (p. 456)

Starting and moving the car after safety mode

If the car is in safety mode, it is possible to attempt to reset the system in order to start and move the car for a short distance, if in a dangerous traffic situation for example.

Starting the car after safety mode

1. Check the general damage situation of the car and whether any fuel has been leaking. There must be no smell of fuel either.

If there is only minor damage and a check has revealed no fuel leaks, starting can be attempted.

WARNING

Never, under any circumstances, attempt to restart the car if it smells of fuel when the **Safety mode See Owner's manual** message is shown in the driver display. Leave the car at once.

2. Switch off the car.

3. Then try to start the car.
 - > The car's electronics carry out a systems check and then try to resume normal status.

IMPORTANT

If the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** is still shown on the display the car must not be driven or towed but a vehicle recovery service must then be used instead. Even if the car appears to be driveable, hidden damage may make the car impossible to control once moving.

Moving the car after safety mode

1. If the driver display shows the message **Normal mode The car is now in normal mode** after a start attempt, the car can be carefully moved if standing in a dangerous position.
2. Do not move the car further than necessary.

WARNING

If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information

- Safety mode (p. 55)
- Starting the car (p. 396)
- Recovery (p. 456)

Child safety

Children must always sit secure while travelling in the car.

Volvo has child safety equipment (child seats and attachment devices) which is designed for fitting in this particular car. Using Volvo's child safety equipment, you obtain the optimum conditions for a child to travel safely in the car. In addition, the child safety equipment fits in well and is simple to use.

The equipment that should be used is selected taking account of the weight and size of the child.

Volvo recommends that children travel in a rear-facing child seat until as late an age as possible, at least until 3-4 years of age, and then in a front-facing child seat until the child is 140 cm (4 feet 7 inches) tall.

i NOTE

Legal provisions about the type of child seat that must be used for children of different ages and heights vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

i NOTE

When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

Children of all ages and sizes must always sit correctly secured in the car. Never allow a child to sit on the knee of a passenger.

Related information

- Safety (p. 42)
- Child seats (p. 58)
- Activating and deactivating child safety locks (p. 247)

Child seats

Suitable child seats should always be used when children are travelling in the car.

Children should sit comfortably and safely. Make sure that the child seat is positioned, mounted and used correctly.

Look in the installation instructions for the child seat for the correct fitting.

i NOTE

When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

i NOTE

Never leave a child seat loose in the car. Always secure it according to the instructions for the child seat, even when it is not in use.

Related information

- Child safety (p. 57)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 58)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 59)

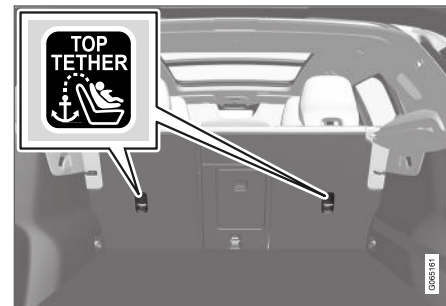
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 60)
- Child seat positioning (p. 60)
- Activating and deactivating passenger air-bag* (p. 52)

Upper mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with upper mounting points for child seats on the rear seat's outer seats. The upper mounting points are primarily intended for use with front-facing child seats.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the upper mounting points.

The location of the mounting points



Mounting point locations are indicated by symbols on the rear of the backrest.

The mounting points are located on the rear of the rear seat's outer seats.

⚠ WARNING

The child seat's upper straps must be routed through the hole in the head restraint leg before they are tensioned at the mounting point. If this is not possible, follow the recommendations from the child seat manufacturer.

i NOTE

Fold the head restraints in order to facilitate fitting this type of child seat in cars with folding head restraints on the outer seats.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 58)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 59)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 60)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 63)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 64)

Lower mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with lower mounting points for child seats in the front seat* and the rear seat.

The lower mounting points are designed to be used in conjunction with certain rear-facing child seats.

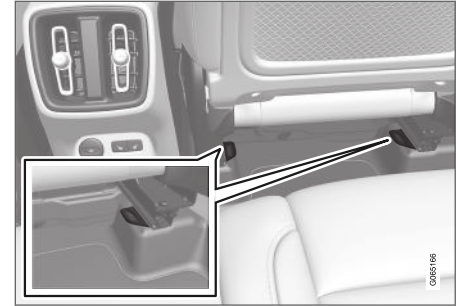
Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the lower mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point locations in the front seat.

The mounting points in the front seat are located on the sides of the passenger seat's legroom.

The mounting points in the front seat are only mounted if the vehicle is equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag*.



Mounting point locations in the rear seat.

The mounting points in the rear seat are located on the rear section of the front seat's floor rails.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 58)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 58)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 60)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 63)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 64)

i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with i-Size/ISOFIX² mounting points for child seats in the rear seat.

i-Size/ISOFIX is a fixture system for car child seats that is based on an international standard.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points.

The location of the mounting points



Mounting point locations are indicated by symbols² on the upholstery of the backrest.

The mounting points for i-Size/ISOFIX are located behind covers in the lower section of the rear seat's backrest, in the outer seats.

Lift the covers in order to access the mounting points.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 58)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 58)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 59)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 63)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 66)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 67)

Child seat positioning

It is important to position the child seat in the right place in the car and this depends, amongst other things, on the type of child seat and whether the passenger airbag is activated.



Rear-facing child seat and airbag are not compatible.

Always fit rear-facing child seats in the rear seat if the passenger airbag is activated. If a child is sitting on the front passenger seat then he/she could suffer serious injury if the airbag deploys.

If the passenger airbag is deactivated then rear-facing child seats can be fitted on the front passenger seat.

² Names and symbols change depending on market.

i NOTE

Regulations regarding the placement of children in cars vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

⚠ WARNING

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Label for passenger airbag

Label on the passenger side's sun visor.



Label on the passenger side's door pillar. The label becomes visible when the passenger door is opened.

The warning label for the passenger airbag is positioned as shown above.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 58)
- Child seat mounting (p. 62)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 63)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 64)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 66)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 67)

Child seat mounting

It is important to remember a number of things when a child seat is mounted and used, which depend on where the child seat is positioned.

WARNING

Booster cushions/child seats with steel braces or some other design that could rest on the seatbelt buckle's opening button must not be used, as they could cause the seatbelt buckle to open accidentally.

Do not secure the straps for the child seat into the seat's horizontal adjustment bar or in springs, rails or beams under the seat. Sharp edges may damage the straps.

Do not allow the upper section of the child seat to rest against the windscreen.

NOTE

When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

NOTE

Never leave a child seat loose in the car. Always secure it according to the instructions for the child seat, even when it is not in use.

Installation in the front seat

- When fitting rear-facing child seats, check that the passenger airbag is deactivated.
- When fitting front-facing child seats, check that the passenger airbag is activated.
- Only use child seats that are recommended by Volvo, are universally approved or are semi-universal, and where the car is included on the manufacturer's vehicle list.
- ISOFIX child seats can only be fitted when the car is equipped with the ISOFIX console³ accessory.
- If the child seat is equipped with lower straps, Volvo recommends that the lower mounting points are used with these³.

Installation in the rear seat

- Only use child seats that are recommended by Volvo, are universally approved or are semi-universal, and where the car is included on the manufacturer's vehicle list.
- A child seat with support legs must not be fitted in the centre seat.

- The outer seats are equipped with the ISOFIX fixture system and are approved for i-Size⁴.
- The outer seats are equipped with upper mounting points. Volvo recommends that child seat's upper straps should be pulled through the hole in the head restraint before being tensioned at the mounting point. If this is not possible, follow the recommendations from the child seat manufacturer.
- If the child seat is equipped with lower straps, never adjust the position of the seat in front after the straps have been fitted in the lower mounting points. Always remember to remove the lower straps when the child seat is not installed.

Related information

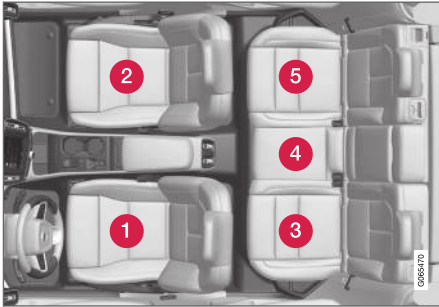
- Child seat positioning (p. 60)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 63)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 64)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 66)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 67)

³ The accessory range varies depending on market.

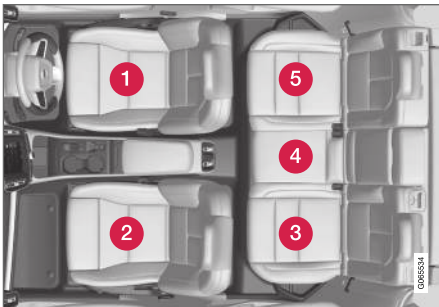
⁴ Varies depending on market.

Overview table for location of child seats

The table gives an overview of the types of child seats suitable for the car's seats.



Seat positions in left-hand drive cars.



Seat positions in right-hand drive cars.

	i-Size child seats	Universally approved child seats secured using the car's seatbelt	Other child seat categories ^A
Seat position ^B	3,5	2, 3, 4, 5	2, 3, 5

^A For more information, contact the child seat manufacturer.


^B According to the numbering above.

Related information

- Child seat positioning (p. 60)
- Child seat mounting (p. 62)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 64)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 66)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 67)

Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts

The table gives a recommendation for which child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

 NOTE
Always read the owner's manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0 max 10 kg	U ^{A, B}	X	U ^B	U ^B
Group 0+ max 13 kg	U ^{A, B}	X	U ^B	U ^B
Group 1 9-18 kg	L ^C	U ^{F, A, D}	U ^{D, L^C}	U ^D
Group 2 15-25 kg	L ^C	U ^{F, A, E}	U ^{E, L^C}	U ^E

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 3 22-36 kg	X	UF ^A E	U ^E	U ^E

U: Suitable for universal category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for front-facing universally approved child seats.

L: Suitable for particular child restraints. These restraints may be of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.

X: The seat is not suitable for children in this mass group.

A Adjust the seat to a more elevated position.

B Volvo recommends: Volvo infant seat (type approval E1 04301146).

C Volvo recommends: Volvo rear-facing seat (type approval E5 04212).

D Volvo recommends rear-facing child seat for children in this mass group.

E Volvo recommends: Booster cushion with and without back (type approval E5 04216); Volvo booster seat (type approval E1 04301312).

WARNING

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

- Seatbelts (p. 44)

Related information

- Child seat positioning (p. 60)
- Child seat mounting (p. 62)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 63)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 66)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 67)

Table for location of i-Size child seats

The table gives a recommendation for which i-Size child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

The child seat must be approved in accordance with UN Reg R129.

i NOTE
Always read the owner's manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
i-Size child seats	X	X	i-U ^{A, B}	X

i-U: Suitable for i-Size "universal" child seat, front-facing and rear-facing.

X: Not suitable for universally approved child seats.

A Volvo recommends rear-facing child seats for this group.

B Volvo recommends: BeSafe iZi Kid X2 i-Size (type approval E4-129R-000002).


Related information

- Child seat positioning (p. 60)
- Child seat mounting (p. 62)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 63)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 64)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 67)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 60)

Table for location of ISOFIX child seats

The table gives a recommendation for which ISOFIX child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

The child seat must be approved in accordance with UN Reg R44 and the car model must be included in the manufacturer's vehicle list.

 NOTE
Always read the owner's manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

Weight	Size class ^A	Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated air-bag, only rear-facing child seats) ^B	Front seat (with activated air-bag, only front-facing child seats) ^B	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0 max 10 kg	E	Rear-facing infant seat	IL ^{B, C} , X ^D	X	IL ^C	X
Group 0+ max 13 kg	E	Rear-facing infant seat	IL ^{B, C, E} , X ^D	X	IL ^C	X
	C	Rear-facing child seat				
	D	Rear-facing child seat				



Weight	Size class ^A	Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated air-bag, only rear-facing child seats) ^B	Front seat (with activated air-bag, only front-facing child seats) ^B	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 1 9-18 kg	A	Front-facing child seat	X	IL ^{B, E, F} , X ^D	IL ^F , IU ^F	X
	B	Front-facing child seat				
	B1	Front-facing child seat				
	C	Rear-facing child seat	IL ^{B, E} , X ^D	X	IL	X
	D	Rear-facing child seat				

IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems. These child restraint systems are those of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

X: Not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems.

^A For child seats with the ISOFIX fixture system there is a size classification to help users choose the right type of child seat. The size class can be read on the child seat's label.

^B Works for the installation of ISOFIX child seats that are semi-universally approved (IL) if the car is equipped with the ISOFIX console accessory (the accessory range varies depending on market). There are no upper mounting points for child seats here.

^C Volvo recommends: Volvo infant seat secured using the ISOFIX fixture system (type approval E1 04301146).

^D Applicable if the car is not fitted with an ISOFIX bracket.

^E Adjust the backrest so that the head restraint does not interfere with the child seat.

^F Volvo recommends rear-facing child seat for children in this mass group.

WARNING

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

NOTE

If an i-Size/ISOFIX child seat has no size classification, the car model must be included on the vehicle list for the child seat.

NOTE

Volvo recommends contacting an authorised Volvo dealer for information about which i-Size/ISOFIX child seats Volvo recommends.

Related information

- Child seat positioning (p. 60)
- Child seat mounting (p. 62)

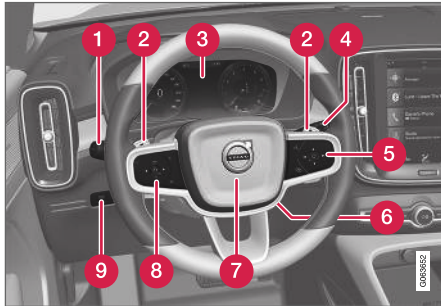
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 63)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 64)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 66)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 60)

DISPLAYS AND VOICE CONTROL

Instruments and controls in left-hand drive car

The overviews show where the displays and controls near the driver are located.

Steering wheel and instrument panel



- 1 Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, front fog lamps/cornering lights*, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
- 2 Steering wheel paddles* for manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox
- 3 Driver display
- 4 Wipers and washing, rain sensor*
- 5 Right-hand steering wheel keypad
- 6 Steering wheel adjustment

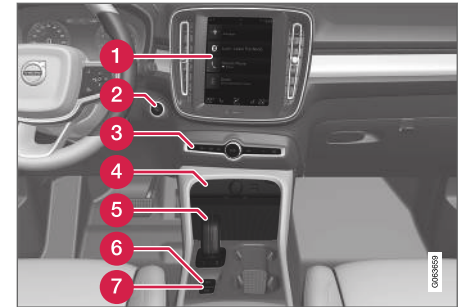
- 7 Horn
- 8 Left-hand steering wheel keypad
- 9 Display lighting, unlocking/opening*/closing* of tailgate

Roof console



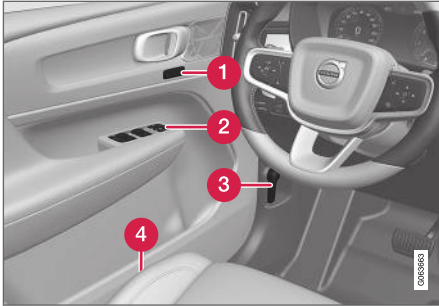
- 1 Front reading lamps and interior lighting
- 2 Panorama roof*
- 3 Display in roof console
- 4 Manual dimming of interior rearview mirror

Centre and tunnel console



- 1 Centre display
- 2 Start button
- 3 Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media, drive mode button*
- 4 Electrical socket, USB port, wireless phone charger*
- 5 Gear selector
- 6 Parking brake
- 7 Automatic braking when stationary

Driver's door



- 1 Memory for settings for power front seat*, door mirrors
- 2 Central locking, power windows, door mirrors, electric child safety locks*
- 3 Bonnet opening
- 4 Adjusting front seat

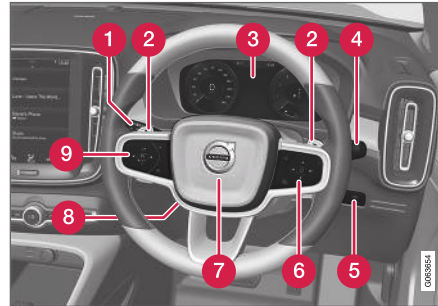
Related information

- Manual front seat (p. 166)
- Adjusting the power front seat* (p. 167)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 175)
- Lighting control (p. 134)
- Starting the car (p. 396)
- Driver display (p. 75)
- Overview of centre display (p. 95)
- Gearbox (p. 409)

Instruments and controls in right-hand drive car

The overviews show where the displays and controls near the driver are located.

Steering wheel and instrument panel



- 1 Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, front fog lamps/cornering lights*, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
- 2 Steering wheel paddles* for manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox
- 3 Driver display
- 4 Wipers and washing, rain sensor*
- 5 Display lighting, unlocking/opening*/closing* of tailgate
- 6 Right-hand steering wheel keypad
- 7 Horn
- 8 Steering wheel adjustment
- 9 Left-hand steering wheel keypad

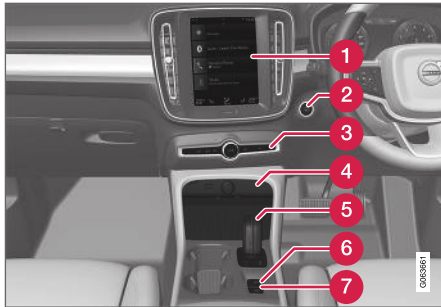
Roof console



- 1 Front reading lamps and interior lighting
- 2 Panorama roof*
- 3 Display in roof console
- 4 Manual dimming of interior rearview mirror

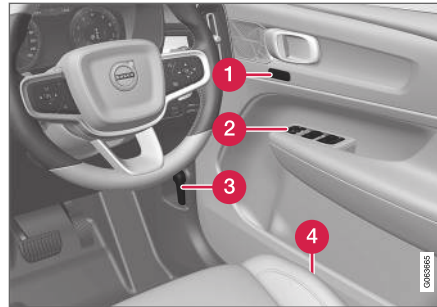


◀ Centre and tunnel console



- 1 Centre display
- 2 Start button
- 3 Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media, drive mode button*
- 4 Electrical socket, USB port, wireless phone charger*
- 5 Gear selector
- 6 Parking brake
- 7 Automatic braking when stationary

Driver's door



- 1 Memory for settings for power front seat*, door mirrors
- 2 Central locking, power windows, door mirrors, electric child safety locks*
- 3 Bonnet opening
- 4 Adjusting front seat

Related information

- Manual front seat (p. 166)
- Adjusting the power front seat* (p. 167)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 175)
- Lighting control (p. 134)
- Starting the car (p. 396)
- Driver display (p. 75)
- Overview of centre display (p. 95)
- Gearbox (p. 409)

Driver display

The driver display shows information about the car and driving.

The driver display contains gauges, indicators and indicator and warning symbols. The content of the driver display depends on the car's equipment, settings and which functions are active at that time.

The driver display is activated as soon as a door is opened, i.e. in ignition position **0**. The driver display extinguishes after a while if it is not used. To reactivate it, proceed with one of the following:

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Activate ignition position **I**.

- Open one of the doors.

WARNING

In the event of a fault in the driver display the information on e.g. brakes, airbags or other safety systems may not be shown. In which case, the driver cannot check the status of the car's systems or receive current warnings and information.

WARNING

If the driver display should extinguish, not illuminate on activation/start or be fully or partially illegible, the car must not be used. You should visit a workshop immediately. Volvo recommends an authorised Volvo workshop.



Driver display¹.

Location in the driver display:

On the left	In the middle	On the right
Speedometer	Indicator and warning symbols	Tachometer/ECO gauge ^A
Trip meter	Outside temperature gauge	Gear shift indicator
Odometer ^B	Clock	Drive mode
Cruise control and speed limiter information	Messages, in some cases with graphics	Fuel gauge
Road Sign Information*	Door and seatbelt information	Status of the Start/Stop function
–	Media player	Distance to empty tank

¹ The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.



On the left	In the middle	On the right
-	Navigation map*	Instantaneous fuel consumption
-	Phone	App menu (activated via steering wheel keypad)
-	Voice recognition	-
-	Compass ^A	-

^A Depends on drive mode selected.

^B Accumulated mileage.

Dynamic symbol



The dynamic symbol in its basic form.

The centre of the driver display contains a dynamic symbol that changes appearance for different types of message. An amber or red marker around the symbol indicates the degree of severity of a control or warning message. With an animation, the basic shape can be turned into a larger image in order to graphically indicate where a problem is situated or to clarify information.



Examples of indicator symbol.

Related information

- Driver display settings (p. 77)
- Warning symbols in the driver display (p. 85)
- Indicator symbols in the driver display (p. 83)
- Trip computer (p. 78)

- Messages in the driver display (p. 91)
- Handling the application menu in the driver display (p. 90)

Driver display settings

Settings for the driver display's display options can be made in the driver display's application menu and in the centre display's settings menu.

Settings in the driver display's app menu

In the app menu, you can choose which information is shown on the driver display from:

- Trip computer
- media player
- phone
- navigation system*.

Settings in the centre display

Selecting information type

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car → Displays → Driver Display Information**.
3. Select what should be shown in the background:
 - **Show no information in background**
 - **Show information for current playing media**
 - **Show navigation even if no route is set.**

Selecting theme

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Tap on **My Car → Displays → Display Themes**
3. Select a theme (appearance) for the driver display:
 - **Glass**
 - **Minimalistic**
 - **Performance**
 - **Chrome Rings.**

Selecting language

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Tap on **System → System Languages and Units → System Language** to select language.
 - > A change will affect the language in all displays.

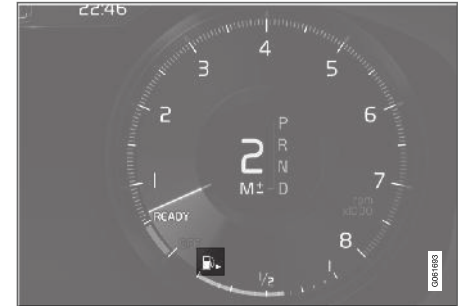
These settings are personal and are saved automatically to the active driver profile.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 75)
- Handling the application menu in the driver display (p. 90)
- Changing settings in the centre display (p. 120)

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge in the driver display shows the fuel level in the tank.



The beige zone in the fuel gauge indicates the quantity of fuel in the tank.

When the fuel level is low and it is soon time to refuel, the fuel pump symbol illuminates and changes to amber colour. The trip computer also indicates the distance to empty tank.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 75)
- Filling fuel (p. 431)
- Fuel tank - volume (p. 624)

Trip computer

The car's trip computer records and calculates vales such as e.g. distance, fuel consumption and average speed whilst driving.

In order to facilitate fuel-efficient driving, information is recorded about both instantaneous and average fuel consumption. The information from the trip computer can be shown in the driver display.



Examples of trip computer information in the driver display.²

The following meters are included in the trip computer:

- Trip meter
- Odometer
- Instantaneous fuel consumption

- Distance to empty tank
- Tourist - alternative speedometer

Units for distance, speed, etc. can be changed via system settings in the centre display.

Trip meter

There are two trip meters, TM and TA.

TM can be reset manually and TA is reset automatically if the car is not used for at least four hours.

The following information is registered while driving:

- Mileage
- Driving time
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption.

The values apply from the trip meter's latest reset.

Odometer

The odometer records the car's total mileage. This value cannot be reset to zero.

Instantaneous fuel consumption

This gauge shows the fuel consumption that the car has at the moment. The value is updated approximately every second.

Distance to empty tank

The trip computer calculates the remaining mileage with the fuel available in the tank.

The calculation is based on the average fuel consumption over the last 30 km (20 miles) and the remaining drivable fuel quantity.

When the gauge shows "----", there is not enough fuel left to be able to calculate the remaining mileage. Refuel as soon as possible.

i NOTE

There may be a slight deviation if the driving style has been changed.

An economic driving style generally results in a longer driving distance.

Tourist - alternative speedometer

The alternative digital speedometer makes it easier to drive in countries where speed limit signs are in a different unit than that shown in the car's instruments.

The digital speed is then shown in the opposite unit to that shown in the analogue speedometer. If the analogue speedometer is graduated in **mph**, the digital speedometer shows the corresponding speed in **km/h** and vice versa.

² The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

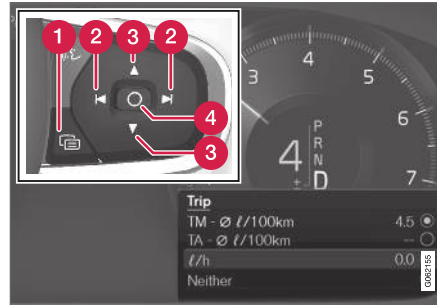
Related information

- Show trip data in the driver display (p. 79)
- Resetting the trip meter (p. 80)
- Show trip statistics in the centre display (p. 80)
- Driver display (p. 75)

Show trip data in the driver display

The trip computer's recorded and calculated values can be shown in the driver display.

The values are saved in a trip computer app. Via the app menu, you can choose which information is shown on the driver display.



Open and navigate in the app menu using the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

- 1 App menu
- 2 Left/right
- 3 Up/down
- 4 Confirm

1. Open the app menu in the driver display by pressing (1).
(It is not possible to open the app menu while there is an unacknowledged message in the driver display. The message must first be acknowledged before the app menu can be opened.)
2. Navigate to the trip computer app to left or right with (2).
> The top four menu rows show measured values for trip meter TM. The next four menu rows show measured values for trip meter TA. Scroll up or down in the list with (3).
3. Scroll down to the option buttons to select which information to show in the driver display:
 - Distance to empty tank
 - Odometer
 - Mileage for trip meter TM, TA, or no display of mileage
 - Instantaneous fuel consumption, average consumption for TM or TA, alternatively, no display of fuel consumption
 - Tourist (alternative speedometer).
 Select or deselect an option with the **O** button (4). The change is made immediately.

◀◀ Related information

- Trip computer (p. 78)
- Resetting the trip meter (p. 80)

Resetting the trip meter

Reset the trip meter using the left-hand stalk switch.



- Reset all information in trip meter TM (i.e. mileage, average consumption, average speed and driving time) with a long press on the **RESET** button on the left-hand stalk switch.

A short press on the **RESET** button resets only the mileage.

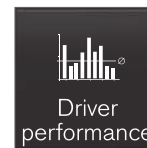
The trip meter TA can only be reset automatically when the car has not been used for four or more hours.

Related information

- Trip computer (p. 78)

Show trip statistics in the centre display

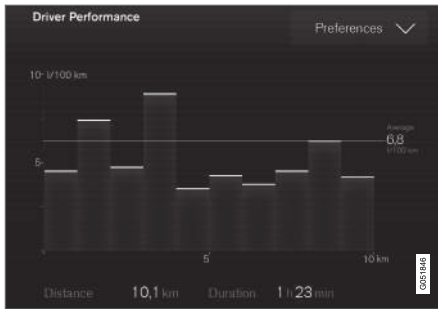
Trip statistics from the trip computer are displayed graphically in the centre display and provide an overview that facilitates more fuel-efficient driving.



Open the **Driver performance** app in app view in order to show the trip statistics.

Each bar in the diagram symbolises a distance of 1, 10 or 100 km, alternatively miles. The bars are filled in from the right as driving progresses. The bar on the far right shows the value for the current distance.

The average fuel consumption and total driving time are calculated since the last time the trip statistics were reset.



Trip statistics from the trip computer³.

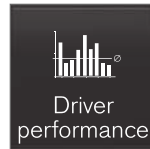
Related information

- Settings for trip statistics (p. 81)
- Trip computer (p. 78)

Settings for trip statistics

Reset or adjust settings for trip statistics.

1. Open the **Driver performance** app in app view in order to show the trip statistics.



2. Press **Preferences** to
 - change graph scale. Select resolution 1, 10 or 100 km/miles for the bar.
 - reset data after every trip. Performed when the car has been stationary for more than 4 hours.
 - reset data for the current trip.

Trip statistics, calculated average consumption and total driving time are always reset simultaneously.

Units for distance, speed, etc. can be changed via system settings in the centre display.

Related information

- Show trip statistics in the centre display (p. 80)
- Trip computer (p. 78)

- Resetting the trip meter (p. 80)

³ The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

Time and date

The clock is shown in both the driver display and the centre display.

Clock location



Clock location in driver display.

In the centre display, the clock is located at the top right of the status bar.

In certain situations, messages and information may cover the clock in the driver display.

Settings for time and date

- Select **Settings** → **System** → **Date and Time** in the centre display's top view to change settings for time and date format.

Adjust time and date by pressing the up or down arrow on the touch screen.

Automatic time for cars with GPS

When the car is equipped with a navigation system, **Auto Time** can be selected. The time zone is then adjusted automatically based on the location of the car. For certain types of navigation systems, the current location (country) must also be set to obtain the right time zone. If **Auto Time** is not selected, time and date are adjusted with arrow up or arrow down on the touch screen.

Summer time

In certain countries, it is possible to select automatic setting of summer time with **Auto**. For other countries, summer time can be set with **On** or **Off**.

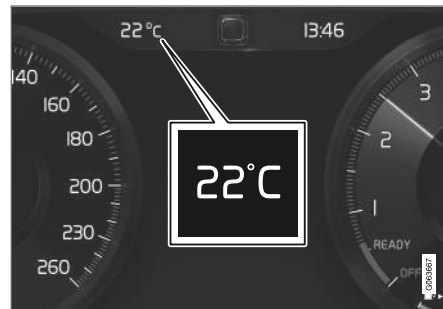
Related information

- Driver display (p. 75)
- Changing settings in the centre display (p. 120)

Outside temperature gauge

The outside temperature is shown in the driver display.

A sensor detects the temperature outside of the car.



If the car has been stationary, the gauge may display a temperature reading that is too high.

When the outside temperature is within the range -5 °C to +2 °C (23 till 36 °F) a snowflake symbol is also shown in the driver display as a warning for potentially slippery conditions.





Change the unit for the temperature gauge via system settings in the centre display top view.





Related information







- Driver display (p. 75)
- Changing system units (p. 118)

Indicator symbols in the driver display

The indicator symbols alert the driver that a function is activated, that a system is operating, or that a fault or abnormal condition exists.

Symbol	Specification
	Information, read display text When one of the car's systems does not behave as intended, this information symbol illuminates and a text appears on the driver display. The information symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.
	Fault in brake system The symbol lights up when there is a fault in the parking brake.
	ABS fault If this symbol illuminates then the system is not working. The car's regular brake system continues to work, but without the ABS function.
	Automatic brake on The symbol illuminates when the function is activated and the foot brake or parking brake is acting. The brake holds the car stationary when it has stopped.

Symbol	Specification
	Tyre pressure system The symbol illuminates when tyre pressure is too low. If there is a fault in the tyre pressure system, the symbol will flash for approx. 1 minute and then illuminate with a constant glow. This may be because the system cannot detect or warn of low tyre pressure as intended.
	Emissions system If the symbol illuminates after the engine has been started then it may be due to a fault in the car's emissions system. Drive to a workshop for checking. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	Left and right-hand direction indicator The symbols flash when the direction indicators are used.
	

Symbol	Specification
	Position lamps The symbol lights up when the position lamps are switched on.
	Fault in the headlamp system The symbol illuminates if a fault has occurred in the ABL function (Active Bending Lights) or if another fault has occurred in the headlamp system.
	Active main beam on The symbol lights up blue when the automatic main beam is on.
	Active main beam off The symbol lights up white when the automatic main beam is off.
	Main beam On The symbol illuminates when main beam is on and with main beam flash.
	Active main beam on The symbol lights up blue when active main beam is on. Position lamps are switched on.



Symbol	Specification
	Active main beam off The symbol lights up white when active main beam is off. Position lamps are switched on.
	Main beam On The symbol lights up when main beam and the position lamps are switched on.
	Front fog lamps on This symbol illuminates when the front fog lamp is switched on.
	Rear fog lamp on This symbol illuminates when the rear fog lamp is switched on.
	Rain sensor on This symbol illuminates when the rain sensor is on.
	Preconditioning on The symbol illuminates when the engine block and passenger compartment heater/air conditioning are preconditioning the car.

Symbol	Specification
	Stability system A flashing symbol indicates that the stability system is operating. If the symbol illuminates with constant glow then there is a fault in the system.
	Stability system, sport mode The symbol illuminates when the sport mode is activated. Sport mode allows for a more active driving experience. The system then detects whether the accelerator pedal, steering wheel movements and cornering are more active than in normal driving and then allows controlled skidding of the rear section up to a certain level before it intervenes and stabilises the car.
	Lane assistance White symbol: Lane assistance is on and road lines are detected. Grey symbol: Lane assistance is on but road lines are not detected. Amber symbol: Lane assistance warns/intervenes.

Symbol	Specification
	Lane assistance and rain sensor White symbol: Lane assistance is on and road lines are detected. Rain sensor is on. Grey symbol: Lane assistance is on but road lines are not detected. Rain sensor is on.
	AdBlue system^A The symbol illuminates when the AdBlue level is low or in the event of a fault in the AdBlue system.




^A Applies to cars with diesel engines.




Related information



- Driver display (p. 75)
- Warning symbols in the driver display (p. 85)

Warning symbols in the driver display

The warning symbols alert the driver that an important function is activated or that a serious fault or condition exists.

Symbol	Specification
	<p>Warning</p> <p>The red warning symbol illuminates when a fault has been indicated which could affect the safety and/or drivability of the car. An explanatory text is shown on the driver display at the same time. The warning symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.</p>
	<p>Seatbelt reminder</p> <p>This symbol illuminates or flashes if someone in a front seat has not put on their seatbelt or if someone in a rear seat has taken off their seatbelt.</p>
	<p>Airbags</p> <p>If the symbol remains illuminated or illuminates while driving, a fault has been detected in one of the car's safety systems. Read the message in the driver display. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.</p>

Symbol	Specification
	<p>Fault in brake system</p> <p>If this symbol illuminates, the brake fluid level may be too low. Visit the nearest authorised workshop to have the brake fluid level checked and rectified.</p>
	<p>Parking brake applied</p> <p>This symbol illuminates with a constant glow when the parking brake is applied.</p> <p>A flashing symbol means that a fault has arisen. Read the message in the driver display.</p>
	<p>Low oil pressure</p> <p>If this symbol illuminates during driving then the engine's oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine immediately and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary. If the symbol illuminates and the oil level is normal, contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.</p>

Symbol	Specification
	<p>Alternator not charging</p> <p>This symbol illuminates during driving if a fault has occurred in the electrical system. Visit a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.</p>
	<p>Collision risk</p> <p>City Safety warns of a risk of collision with other vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists or large animals.</p>

Related information

- Indicator symbols in the driver display (p. 83)
- Driver display (p. 75)

License agreement for the driver display

A license is an agreement for the right to operate a certain activity or the right to use someone else's entitlement according to the terms and conditions in the agreement. The following text is Volvo's agreement with the manufacturer or developer.

Freetype Project License

3rd Party Software Disclaimers and License Agreements Confidential ID 06-00004-004 39 / 75 Revision 06.00A, 2015-06-09 2006-Jan-27 Copyright 1996-2002, 2006 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg.

Introduction

The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project. This license applies to all files found in such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least. This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that:

- o We don't promise that this software works. However, we will be interested in any kind

of bug reports. ('as is' distribution) o You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. ('royalty-free' usage) o You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you have used the FreeType code. ('credits') We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products. We disclaim all warranties covering The FreeType Project and assume no liability related to The FreeType Project. Finally, many people asked us for a preferred form for a credit/disclaimer to use in compliance with this license. We thus encourage you to use the following text:

"Portions of this software are copyright © <year> The FreeType Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved."

Please replace <year> with the value from the FreeType version you actually use.

Legal Terms

0. Definitions – Throughout this license, the terms 'package', 'FreeType Project', and 'FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the 'FreeType Project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release. 'You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where 'using' is a generic term including compiling the project's

source code as well as linking it to form a 'program' or 'executable'. This program is referred to as 'a program using the FreeType engine'. This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType Project, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive. If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this. The FreeType Project is copyright (C) 1996-2000 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg. All rights reserved except as specified below.

1. No Warranty – THE FREETYPE PROJECT IS PROVIDED 'AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT. '

2. Redistribution – This license grants a worldwide, royalty-free, perpetual and irrevocable right and license to use, execute, perform, compile, display, copy, create derivative works of, distribute and sublicense the FreeType Project (in both source and object code forms) and derivative works thereof for any purpose; and to

authorize others to exercise some or all of the rights granted herein, subject to the following conditions: o Redistribution of source code must retain this license file ('FTL.TXT') unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files. o Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory. These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType Project, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

3. Advertising – Neither the FreeType authors and contributors nor you shall use the name of the other for commercial, advertising, or promotional purposes without specific prior written permission. We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: 'FreeType Project', 'FreeType Engine', 'FreeType library', or 'FreeType Distribution'. As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType Project is

copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it. Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType Project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.

4. Contacts – There are two mailing lists related to FreeType: o freetype@nongnu.org. Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution. If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the documentation. o freetype-devel@nongnu.org. Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc. Our home page can be found at <http://www.freetype.org>

HarfBuzz / UCDN License

- Copyright © 2010,2011,2012 Google, Inc.
- Copyright © 2012 Mozilla Foundation
- Copyright © 2011 Codethink Limited
- Copyright © 2008,2010 Nokia Corporation and/or its subsidiary(-ies)
- Copyright © 2009 Keith Stribley
- Copyright © 2009 Martin Hosken and SIL International
- Copyright © 2007 Chris Wilson
- Copyright © 2006 Behdad Esfahbod
- Copyright © 2005 David Turner

- Copyright © 2004,2007,2008,2009,2010 Red Hat, Inc.
- Copyright © 1998-2004 David Turner and Werner Lemberg

For full copyright notices consult the individual files in the package. Permission is hereby granted, without written agreement and without license or royalty fees, to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose, provided that the above copyright notice and the following two paragraphs appear in all copies of this software. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE TO ANY PARTY FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE AND ITS DOCUMENTATION, EVEN IF THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE. THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE SOFTWARE PROVIDED HEREUNDER IS ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, AND THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER HAS NO OBLIGATION TO PROVIDE MAINTENANCE, SUPPORT, UPDATES, ENHANCEMENTS, OR MODIFICATIONS.

◀◀ **Libunibreak License**

This library is released under an open-source licence, the zlib/libpng licence. Please check the file LICENCE for details. Apart from using the algorithm, part of the code is derived from the data provided under <http://www.unicode.org/Public>. And the Unicode Terms of Use may apply: URL:<http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html>

LICENSE:

- Copyright (C) 2008-2012 Wu Yongwei <wuyongwei at gmail dot com>
- Copyright (C) 2012 Tom Hacoen <tom dot hacoen at samsung dot com>

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the author be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software. Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgement in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be

misrepresented as being the original software.

3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Unicode Inc. License Agreement

EXHIBIT 1 UNICODE, INC. LICENSE AGREEMENT - DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE
Unicode Data Files include all data files under the directories <http://www.unicode.org/Public/>, <http://www.unicode.org/reports/>, and <http://www.unicode.org/cldr/data/>. Unicode Software includes any source code published in the Unicode Standard or under the directories <http://www.unicode.org/Public/>, <http://www.unicode.org/reports/>, and <http://www.unicode.org/cldr/data/>. NOTICE TO USER: Carefully read the following legal agreement. BY DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, COPYING OR OTHERWISE USING UNICODE INC.'S DATA FILES ("DATA FILES"), AND/OR SOFTWARE ("SOFTWARE"), YOU UNEQUIVOCALLY ACCEPT, AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY, ALL OF THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE, DO NOT DOWNLOAD, INSTALL, COPY, DISTRIBUTE OR USE THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE. COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE
Copyright © 1991-2010 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in <http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html>. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Unicode data

files and any associated documentation (the "Data Files") or Unicode software and any associated documentation (the "Software") to deal in the Data Files or Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Data Files or Software, and to permit persons to whom the Data Files or Software are furnished to do so, provided that (a) the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear with all copies of the Data Files or Software, (b) both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in associated documentation, and (c) there is clear notice in each modified Data File or in the Software as well as in the documentation associated with the Data File(s) or Software that the data or software has been modified. THE DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT

OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in these Data Files or Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

ZLIB Data Compression Library License Agreement

(C) 1995-2010 Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler
This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software. Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Jean-loup Gailly Mark Adler jloup@gzip.org
madler@alumni.caltech.edu If you use the zlib library in a product, we would appreciate *not* receiving lengthy legal documents to sign. The sources are provided for free but without warranty of any kind. The library has been entirely written by Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler; it does not include third-party code. If you redistribute modified sources, we would appreciate that you include in the file ChangeLog history information documenting your changes. Please read the FAQ for more information on the distribution of modified source versions.

GLEW Licence (Modified BSD Licence)

The OpenGL Extension Wrangler Library

- Copyright (C) 2002-2008, Milan Ikits <milan.ikits@ieee.org>
- Copyright (C) 2002-2008, Marcelo E. Magallon <mmagallo@debian.org>
- Copyright (C) 2002, Lev Povalahev

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. * The

name of the author may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 75)

Application menu in driver display

Application menu (app menu) in the driver display provides quick access to commonly used functions for certain apps.



The app menu in the driver display can be used instead of using the centre display. The figure is schematic - the layout may vary.

The app menu is shown in the driver display and is controlled using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad. The app menu makes it easier to switch between different apps or functions within the apps without having to let go of the steering wheel.

App menu functions

Different apps give access to different types of functions. The following apps and their associated functions can be controlled from the app menu:

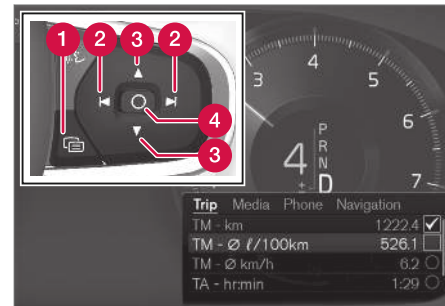
App	Functions
Trip computer	Selection of trip meter, selection of what to show in the driver display, etc.
Media player	Selection of active source for the media player.
Phone	Calling a contact from the call list.
Navigation	Guide to destination, etc.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 75)
- Overview of centre display (p. 95)
- Handling the application menu in the driver display (p. 90)

Handling the application menu in the driver display

The application menu (the app menu) in the driver display is operated with the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.



The app menu and the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

- 1 Open/close
- 2 Left/right
- 3 Up/down
- 4 Confirm

Opening/closing the app menu

- Press on open/close (1).

(It is not possible to open the app menu while there is an unacknowledged message in the driver display. The message must first be acknowledged before the app menu can be opened.)

- > The app menu opens/closes.

The app menu closes automatically after a period of inactivity or after certain options have been selected.

Navigating and selecting in the app menu

1. Navigate between the different apps that are available by tapping on left or right (2).
 - > Functions for previous/next app are shown in the app menu.
2. Browse through the functions for the selected app by tapping on up or down (3).
3. Confirm or highlight an option for the function by pressing on confirm (4).
 - > The function is activated and for some options the app menu then closes.

If the app menu is opened again, the functions of the most recently selected app are shown first.

Related information

- Application menu in driver display (p. 90)
- Messages in the driver display (p. 91)

Messages in the driver display

The driver display can show messages to inform or assist the driver in the event of different events.



Message in the driver display⁴.



Message in the driver display⁵.

The driver display shows messages that are of high priority for the driver.

The messages can be shown in different parts of the driver display depending on what other information is currently being displayed. After a while,



◀◀ or when the message has been acknowledged/ action taken if required, the message disappears from the driver display. If a message needs to be saved, it is placed in the **Car status** app, which is opened from the app view in the centre display.

Message composition may vary and they can be shown together with graphics, symbols or buttons for acknowledging the message or accepting a request, for example.

Service messages

Shown below is a selection of important service messages and their meanings.

Message	Specification
Stop safely^A	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop ^B .
Turn off engine^A	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop ^B .
Service urgent Drive to workshop^A	Contact a workshop ^B to check the car immediately.

Message	Specification
Service required^A	Contact a workshop ^B to check the car as soon as possible.
Regular maintenance Book time for maintenance	Time for regular service - contact a workshop ^B . Shown before the next service date.
Regular maintenance Time for maintenance	Time for regular service - contact a workshop ^B . Shown at the next service date.
Regular maintenance Maintenance overdue	Time for regular service - contact a workshop ^B . Shown when the service date has passed.
Temporarily off^A	A function has been temporarily switched off and is reset automatically while driving or after starting again.

^A Part of message, shown together with information on where the problem has arisen.

^B An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

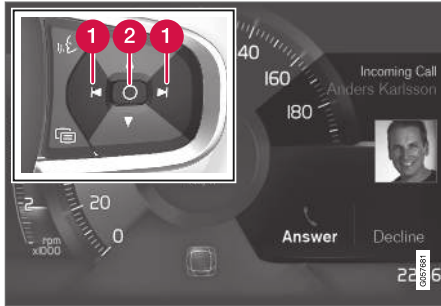
- Managing messages in the driver display (p. 93)
- Handling a message saved from the driver display (p. 94)
- Message in centre display (p. 126)

⁴ With 8-inch driver display.

⁵ With 12-inch driver display.

Managing messages in the driver display

Messages in the driver display are handled using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.



Message in the driver display⁶ and the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

⁶ With 8-inch driver display.

⁷ With 12-inch driver display.



Message in the driver display⁷ and the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

1 Left/right

2 Confirm

Some messages in the driver display contain one or more buttons for acknowledging the message or accepting a request, for example.

Managing a new message

For messages with buttons:

1. Navigate between the different buttons that are available by tapping on left or right (1).
2. Confirm the selection by pressing on confirm (2).
 - > The message disappears from the driver display.

For messages without buttons:

- Close the message by pressing on confirm (2), or allow the message to close automatically after a while.
 - > The message disappears from the driver display.

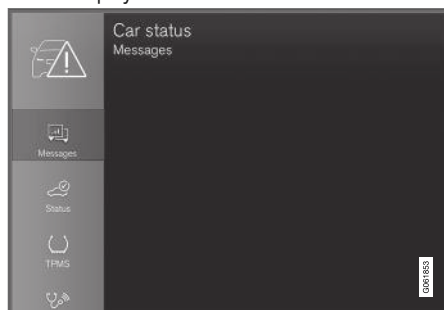
If a message needs to be saved, it is placed in the **Car status** app, which is opened from the app view in the centre display. The message **Car message stored in Car Status application** is shown in the centre display in conjunction with this.

Related information

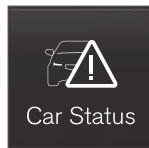
- Messages in the driver display (p. 91)
- Handling a message saved from the driver display (p. 94)
- Message in centre display (p. 126)

Handling a message saved from the driver display

Whether saved from the driver display or the centre display, messages are managed in the centre display.



Saved messages can be seen in the **Car Status** app.



Messages that are shown in the driver display and that need to be saved are added in the **Car status** app in the centre display. The message **Car message stored in Car Status application** is shown

in the centre display in conjunction with this.

Reading a saved message

To read a saved message immediately:

- Press the button to the right of the **Car message stored in Car Status application** message in the centre display.
 - > The saved message is shown in the **Car status** app.

To read a saved message later:

1. Open the **Car status** app from the app view in the centre display.
 - > The app is opened in the bottom tile of the home view.
2. Select the **Messages** tab in the app.
 - > A list of saved messages is shown.
3. Tap on a message to expand/minimise.
 - > More information on the message is shown in the list and the image to the left in the app shows information about the message graphically.

Managing a saved message

In maximised mode, some messages have two buttons available to book service or read the owner's manual.

To book service for a saved message:

- In maximised mode for the message, press **Request appoint.Call to make Appointment**⁸ for help in booking service.
 - > With **Request appoint.:** The **Appointments** tab opens in the app and creates a request to book service and repair work.

With **Call to make Appointment:** The phone app is initiated and calls a service centre to book service and repair work.

To read the owner's manual for a saved message:

- In maximised mode for the message, press **Owner's manual** to read about the message in the owner's manual.
 - > The owner's manual opens in the centre display and shows information linked to the message.

Saved messages in the app are deleted automatically each time the engine is started.

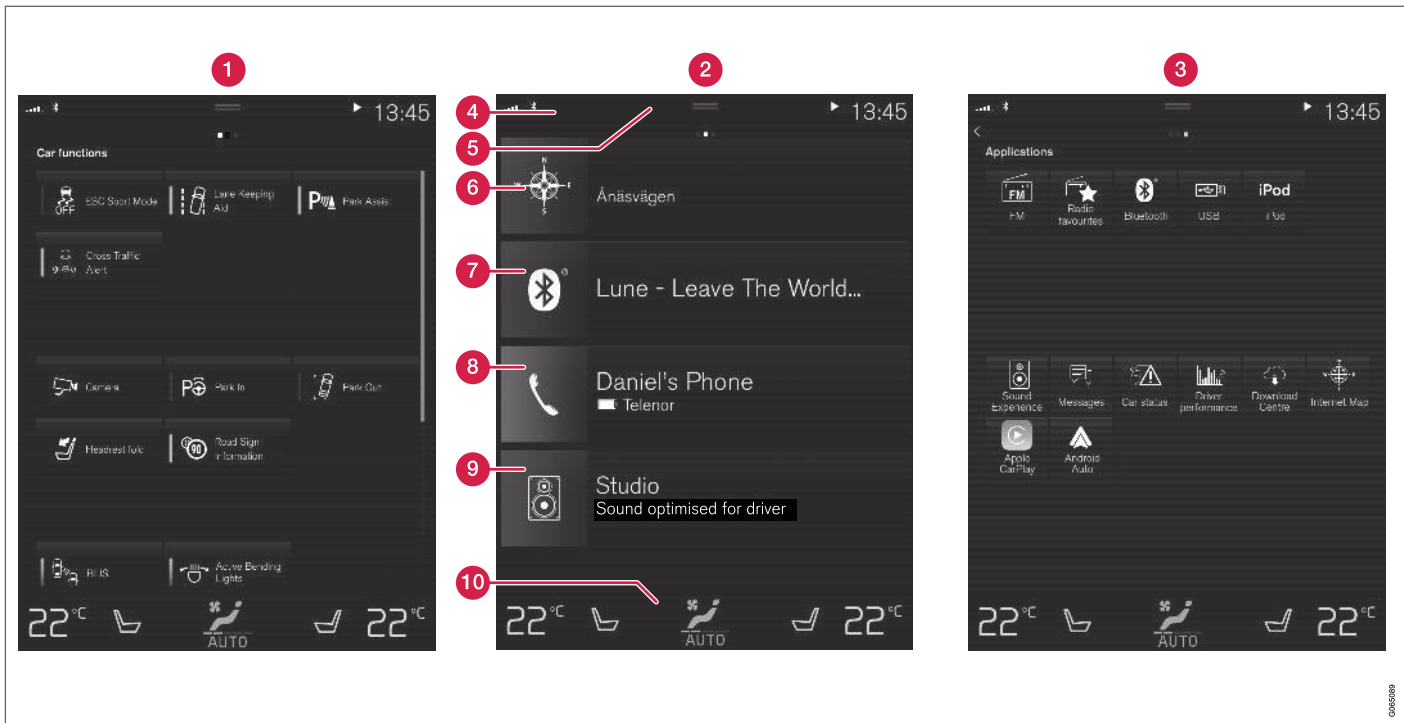
Related information

- Messages in the driver display (p. 91)
- Managing messages in the driver display (p. 93)
- Message in centre display (p. 126)

⁸ Market dependent. Volvo ID and selected workshop also need to be registered.

Overview of centre display

Many of the car's functions are controlled from the centre display. Presented here is the centre display and its options.



Three of the centre display's basic views. Swipe right or left to access the function or app view respectively⁹.

1 Function view - car functions that are activated or deactivated with a press. Certain

functions are also so-called trigger functions, which means they open a window with set-

⁹ The views are reversed for right-hand drive cars.

ting options. Examples of these include **Camera**.

- 2 Home view - the first view that is shown when the screen is started.
- 3 Application view (app view) - apps that have been downloaded (third-party apps) and apps for embedded functions, such as **FM radio**. Tap on an app icon to open the app.
- 4 Status bar - the activities in the car are shown right at the top of the screen. Network and connection information is shown on the left-hand side of the status bar, while media-related information, the clock and indication about on-going background activity are shown on the right.
- 5 Top view - drag the tab down in order to access the top view. **Settings**, **Owner's manual**, **Profile** and the car's saved messages are accessed from here. In some cases contextual settings (e.g. **Navigation Settings**) and the contextual owner's manual (e.g. **Navigation Manual**) can also be accessed in the top view.
- 6 Navigation - leads to map navigation, with e.g. Sensus Navigation*. Tap on the tile to expand it.
- 7 Media - recently used apps associated with media. Tap on the tile to expand it.
- 8 Phone - the phone function can be reached from here. Tap on the tile to expand it.

- 9 Extra tile - recently used apps or car functions that do not belong in any of the other tiles. Tap on the tile to expand it.
- 10 Climate row - information and direct interaction to set temperature and seat heating for example*. Tap on the symbol in the centre of the climate row in order to open the climate view with more setting options.

Related information

- Managing the centre display (p. 98)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 101)
- Function view in centre display (p. 108)
- Apps (p. 465)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 110)
- Opening settings in the centre display (p. 118)
- Open contextual setup in the centre display (p. 119)
- Owner's manual in centre display (p. 17)
- Media player (p. 474)
- Phone (p. 488)
- Climate controls (p. 190)
- Switching off and changing the volume of the system sound in the centre display (p. 117)
- Changing the appearance in the centre display (p. 117)
- Changing system language (p. 118)
- Changing system units (p. 118)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 593)
- Message in centre display (p. 126)

Managing the centre display

Many of the car's functions are controlled and regulated from the centre display. The centre display is a touch screen that reacts to touch.

Using the touch screen functionality in the centre display

The screen reacts differently depending on whether you press, drag or swipe across it. Actions such as browsing between different views, marking objects, scrolling in a list and mov-

ing apps can be performed by touching the screen in different ways.



An infrared light curtain just above the surface of the screen enables the screen to detect a finger that is just in front of the screen. This technology makes it possible to use the screen even with gloves on.





Two people can interact with the screen at the same time, e.g. to adjust the climate for the driver and passenger side respectively.

! **IMPORTANT**

Do not use sharp objects on the screen as they may scratch it.

The table below presents the different procedures for operating the screen:

Procedure	Execution	Result
	Press once.	Highlights an object, confirms a selection or activates a function.
	Press twice in quick succession.	Zooms in on a digital object, such as the map*.
	Press and hold.	Grabs an object. Can be used to move apps or map points on the map*. Press and hold your finger against the screen and at the same time drag the object to the desired location.
	Tap once with two fingers.	Zooms out from a digital object, such as the map*.

Procedure	Execution	Result
	Drag	Changes between different views, scrolls a list, text or view. Hold depressed and drag in order to move apps or map points on the map*. Drag horizontally or vertically across the screen.
	Swipe/drag quickly	Changes between different views, scrolls a list, text or view. Drag horizontally or vertically across the screen. Note that touching the upper section of the screen may cause the top view to open.
	Drag apart	Zooms in.
	Drag together	Zooms out.

◀◀ **Returning to home view from another view**

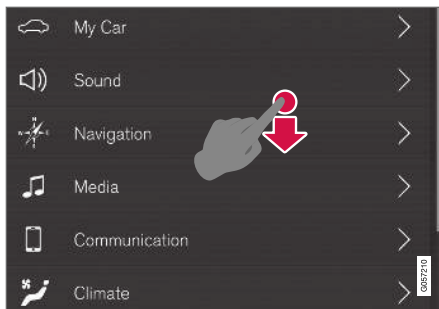
1. Briefly press the home button below the centre display.
 - > The last position of the home view is shown.
2. Briefly press again.
 - > All tiles of the home view are set to their default mode.

NOTE

In home view standard mode - briefly press the home button. An animation that describes access to the different views is shown on the screen.

Scrolling in a list, article or view

When a scroll indicator is visible in the screen, it is possible to scroll downward or upward in the view. Swipe downwards/upwards anywhere in the view.



The scroll indicator appears in the centre display when it is possible to scroll in the view.

Using the controls in the centre display



Temperature control.

The control is used for many of the car's functions. Regulate e.g. temperature by means of one of the following:

- drag the control to the desired temperature,
- tap on + or – in order to raise or lower the temperature gradually, or
- tap on the desired temperature on the control.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating centre display (p. 101)
- Moving apps and buttons in centre display (p. 110)
- Keyboard in centre display (p. 112)

Activating and deactivating centre display

The centre display can be dimmed and reactivated using the home button beneath the screen.



Home button for the centre display.

The effect of using the home button that the screen dims and the touchscreen no longer reacts to touch. The climate row will still be shown. All functions connected to the screen are still running, such as climate, audio, guidance* and apps. When the centre display is dimmed, it is a good opportunity to clean the screen. The dimming function can also be used to fade the screen so that it does not disturb while driving.

1. Give a long press on the physical home button below the screen.
 - > The screen goes dark except for the climate row, which continues to be shown. All functions connected to the screen are still running.
2. Reactivate the screen - briefly tap on the home button.
 - > The view that was displayed before the screen was switched off will be shown again.

i NOTE

The screen cannot be deactivated when a prompt to perform an action is shown on the screen.

i NOTE

The centre display deactivates automatically when the engine is off and the driver's door is opened.

Related information

- Cleaning the centre display (p. 593)
- Changing the appearance in the centre display (p. 117)
- Overview of centre display (p. 95)

Navigating in the centre display's views

There are five different basic views in the centre display: home view, top view, climate view, application view (app view) and function view. The screen is started automatically when the driver's door is opened.

Home view

Home view is the view that is shown when the screen is started. It consists of four tiles:

Navigation, Media, Phone and an extra tile.

An app or car function selected from the app or function view starts in the respective tile of the home view. For example **FM radio** starts in the **Media** tile.

The extra tile contains the last used app or car function that is not associated with any of the other three areas.

The tiles show brief information about each different app.

i NOTE

When the car is started, the home view's various sub-views show information on the current status of apps.





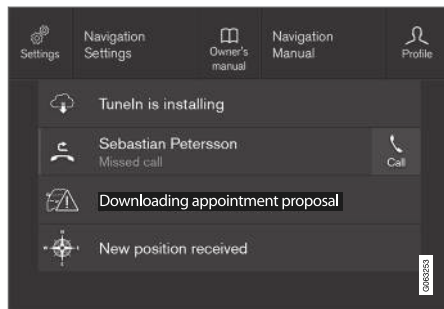
i NOTE

In home view standard mode - briefly press the home button. An animation that describes access to the different views is shown on the screen.

Status bar

The activities in the car are shown at the top of the screen. Network and connection information is shown on the left-hand side of the status bar, while media-related information, the clock and indication that background activity is in progress are shown on the right.

Top view



Top view dragged down.

A tab is located in the centre of the status bar at the top of the screen. Open the top view by

pressing on the tab or by dragging/swiping from the top downwards across the screen.

In the top view, access is always available to:

- **Settings**
- **Owner's manual**
- **Profile**
- The car's saved messages.

In the top view, access is given to the following in some cases:

- Contextual setting (e.g. **Navigation Settings**). Change settings directly in the top view when an app (e.g. navigation) is running.
- Contextual owner's manual (e.g. **Navigation Manual**). Gain access directly in the top view to articles in the digital owner's manual that are related to the content displayed on screen.

Exit the top view - press outside the top view, on the home button or at the bottom of the top view and drag upward. The underlying view is then visible and available for use again.

i NOTE

The top view is not available during starting/shutdown or when a message is shown on the screen. It is also not available when climate view is shown.

Climate view

The climate row is always visible at the bottom of the screen. The most common climate settings can be made directly there, such as setting temperature and seat heating*.

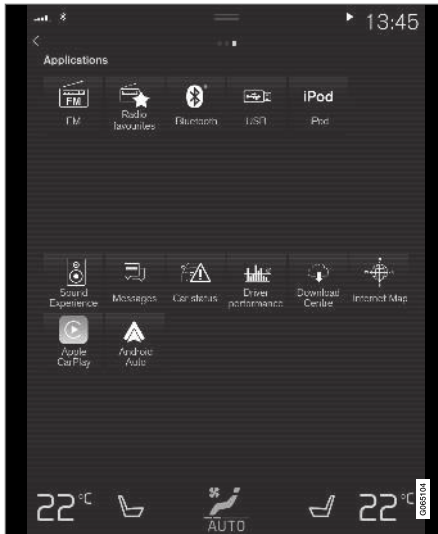


Press the symbol in the centre of the climate row to open the climate view and gain access to more climate settings.



Press the symbol to close the climate view and return to the previous view.

Application view



Application view with the car's apps.

Swipe from right to left¹⁰ across the screen in order to access the application view (app view) from the home view. Apps that have been downloaded (third-party apps) and apps for embedded functions, such as **FM radio**, are found here. Certain apps show brief information directly in the

app view, such as the number of unread text messages for **Messages**.

Tap on an app to open it. It then opens in the tile to which it belongs, such as **Media**.

You can scroll down in the app view, depending on the number of apps. Do this by swiping/dragging from the bottom and up.

Go back to the home view again by swiping from left to right¹⁰ across the screen, or by pressing the home button.

Function view



The function view with buttons for different car functions.

Swipe from left to right¹⁰ across the screen in order to access the function view from the home view. From here you can activate or deactivate different car functions, e.g. **BLIS***, **Lane Keeping Aid*** and **Park Assist***.

¹⁰ Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

- ◀◀ Depending on the amount of functions, it is also possible here to scroll downward in the view. Do this by swiping/dragging from the bottom and up.

Unlike in app view, where an app is opened with a press, a function is activated or deactivated by pressing the relevant function button. Some functions (trigger functions) open in a new window when pressed.

Go back to the home view again by swiping from right to left¹⁰ across the screen, or by pressing the home button.

Related information

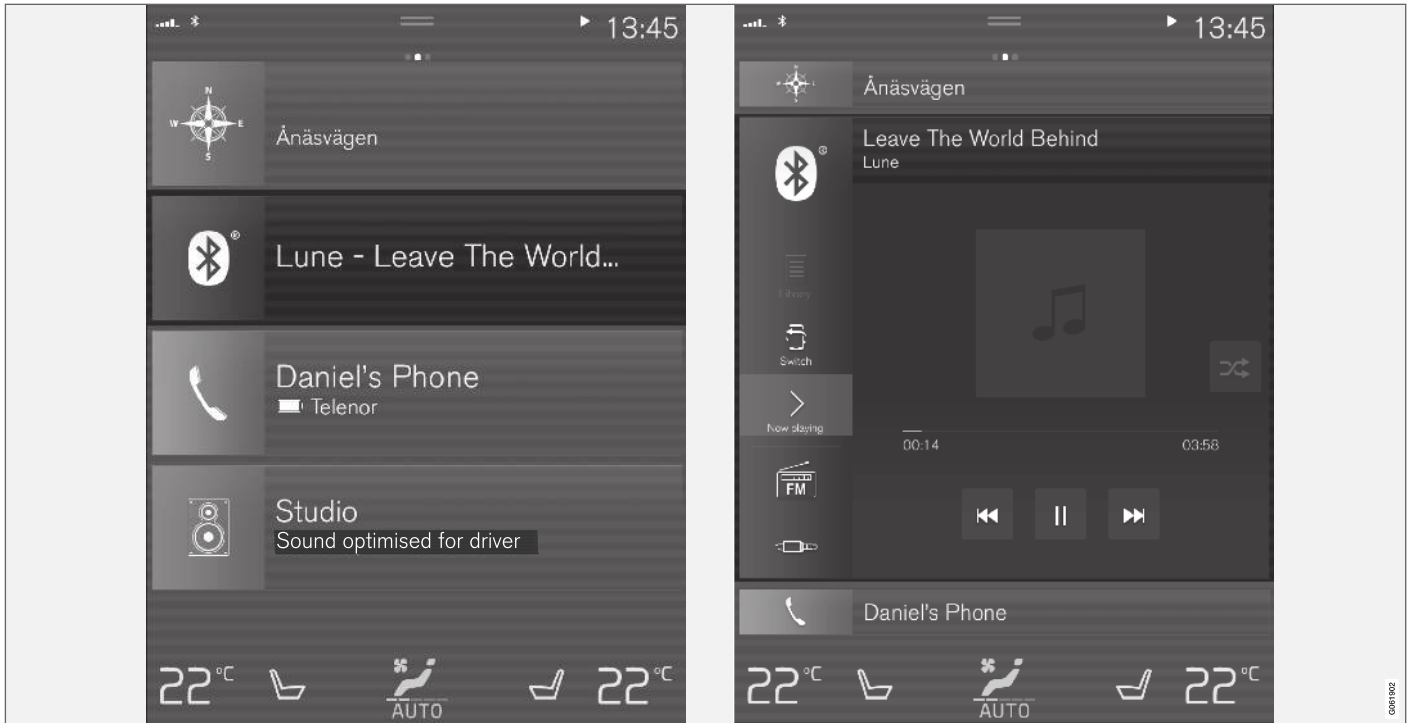
- Managing tiles in centre display (p. 105)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 110)
- Opening settings in the centre display (p. 118)
- Open contextual setup in the centre display (p. 119)
- Owner's manual in centre display (p. 17)
- Driver profiles (p. 123)
- Climate controls (p. 190)
- Apps (p. 465)
- Function view in centre display (p. 108)
- Overview of centre display (p. 95)

¹⁰ Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

Managing tiles in centre display

Home view consists of four tiles: **Navigation**, **Media**, **Phone** and an extra tile. These views can be expanded.

◀◀ Expanding a tile from default mode



Standard mode and expanded mode of a tile in the centre display.

Expanding a tile:

- For tiles **Navigation**, **Media** and **Phone**: Tap anywhere on the tile. When a tile is expanded, the extra tile in the home view is temporarily forced away. The other two are minimised and only certain information is shown. When the extra tile is tapped, the other three tiles are minimised and only certain information is displayed.
The expanded view provides access to the basic functions of the app.

Closing an expanded tile:

- The tile can be closed in three different ways.
 - Tap on the upper part of the expanded tile.
 - Tap on another tile (that tile will then open in expanded mode instead).
 - Briefly press the physical home button below the centre display.

Opening or closing a tile in full screen mode

The extra tile¹¹ and the tile for **Navigation** can be opened out in full screen mode, with even more information and more setting options.

When a new tile is opened in full-screen mode, no information from the other tiles is shown.



In expanded mode, open the app in full screen - press on the symbol.



Press on the symbol to go back to the expanded mode, or press the home button at the bottom of the screen.



Home button for the centre display.

There is always the option to go back to home view by pressing the home button. Go back to the home view's standard view from full screen mode - press twice on the home button.

Related information

- Managing the centre display (p. 98)
- Activating and deactivating centre display (p. 101)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 101)

¹¹ Does not apply to all apps or car functions opened via the extra tile

Function view in centre display

All the buttons for car functions are located in the function view, one of the centre display's basic views. Navigate to the function view from

home view by swiping from left to right across the screen¹².

Different types of buttons

There are three different types of buttons for car functions; see below:

Type of button	Property	Affects car function
Function buttons	Have on/off positions. When a function is running, an LED indicator illuminates to the left of the icon for the button. Press the button to activate/deactivate a function.	Most buttons in function view are function buttons.
Trigger buttons	Do not have on/off positions. When a trigger button is depressed, a window for the function is opened. For example, it may be a window to change seat position.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Camera • Headrest Fold
Parking buttons	Have on, off and scan modes. Similar to the function buttons but with an extra position for parking scanning.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Park In • Park Out

¹² Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

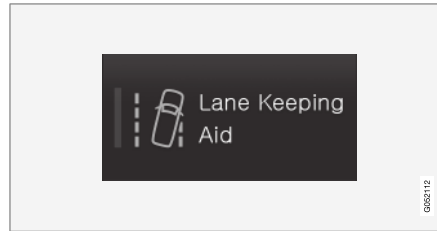
The buttons' different modes



When the LED indicator illuminates in green on a function or parking button, the function is activated. When a function is activated, extra text with an explanation for certain functions is shown. The text is shown for a few seconds and then the button is shown with the LED indicator illuminated.

For **Lane Keeping Aid**, the text **Works only at certain speeds** is shown, for example, when the button is depressed.

Press the button once briefly to activate or deactivate the function.



The function is deactivated when the LED indicator is extinguished.



When a warning triangle is shown in the right-hand section of the button there is something not working as intended.

Related information

- Managing the centre display (p. 98)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 101)

Moving apps and buttons in centre display

The apps and buttons for car functions in the app view and function view respectively can be moved and organised as desired.

1. Swipe from right to left¹³ to access the app view, or swipe from left to right¹³ to access the function view.
2. Tap on an app or button and hold it down.
 - > The app or button changes size and becomes slightly transparent. It is then possible to move it.
3. Drag the app or button to a vacant space in the view.

The maximum number of rows available for use in order to position apps or buttons is 48. To move an app or button outside the visible view, drag it to the bottom of the view. New rows are then added, where the app or button can be located.

An app or button can thus be located further down and is then not visible in the normal mode for the view.

Swipe across the screen to scroll up or down in the view.

NOTE
Hide the apps that you rarely or never use by moving them to the bottom, off the visible screen. This way it will be easier to find the apps you use more often.

NOTE
Apps and car function buttons cannot be added to locations that are already occupied.









Related information

- Function view in centre display (p. 108)
- Apps (p. 465)
- Managing the centre display (p. 98)













Symbols in the centre display's status bar

Overview of the symbols that can be shown in the centre display's status bar.

The status bar shows activities in progress and, in some cases, their status. Not all symbols are shown all the time due to the limited space in the status bar.

Symbol	Specification
	Connected to the Internet.
	Connection to the Internet failed.
	Roaming activated.
	Signal strength in mobile phone network.
	Bluetooth device connected.
	Bluetooth activated but no device connected.
	Information sent to and from GPS.
	Connected to Wi-Fi network.

¹³ Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

Symbol	Specification
	Tethering activated (Wi-Fi hotspot). The car then shares the available connection.
	Car modem activated.
	USB sharing active.
	Process in progress.
	Timer for preconditioning active.
	Audio source being played back.
	Audio source stopped.
	Phone call in progress.
	Audio source muted.
	News is received from the radio channel.
	Traffic information is received.
	Clock.

Related information

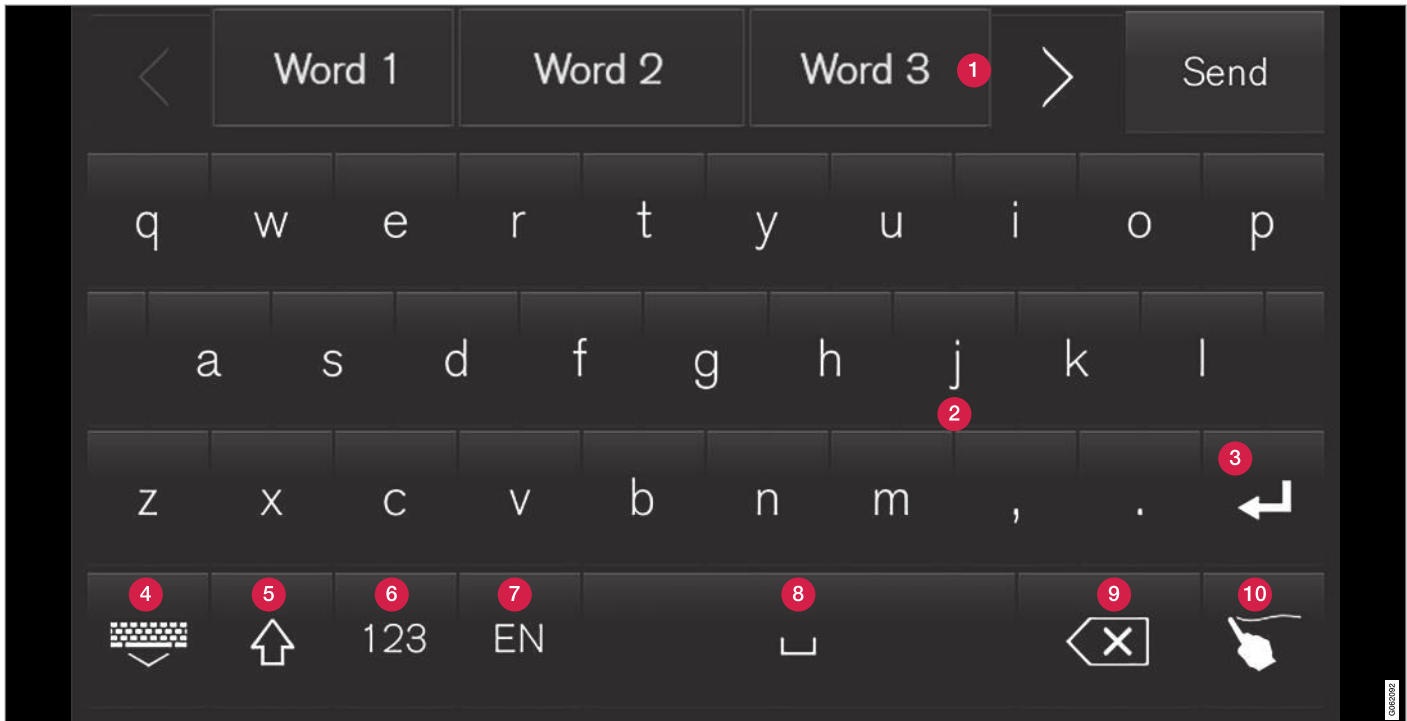
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 101)
- Message in centre display (p. 126)

Keyboard in centre display

The centre display keyboard makes it possible make entries using keys. It is also possible to "draw in" letters and characters on the screen by hand.

The keyboard can be used to enter characters, letters and numbers, e.g. to write text messages from the car, enter passwords or search for articles in the digital owner's manual.

The keyboard is only shown when entries can be made on the screen.



The image shows an overview of some of the buttons which may be shown in the keyboard. The appearance varies depending on language settings and the context in which the keyboard is being used.

- ◀ **1** Row of suggested words or characters¹⁴. The suggested words are adjusted as new letters are being entered. Browse among the suggestions by pressing on the right and left arrows. Tap on a suggestion to select it. Note that this function is not supported by all language selections. If not available, the row will not be shown on the keyboard.
- 2** The characters available on the keyboard depend on which language was selected (see point 7). Tap on a character to enter it.
- 3** The button works in different ways, depending on the context in which the keyboard is used - either to enter @ (when an email address is entered) or to **create a new row** (for normal text input).
- 4** Hides the keyboard. If this is not possible, the button is not shown.
- 5** Used to enter capital letters. Press again to enter one capital letter and then continue with lower-case letters. Another press makes all letters capital letters. The next press restores the keyboard to lower-case letters. In this mode, the first letter after a full stop, exclamation mark or question mark is a capital letter. The first letter in the text field is also a capital letter. In text fields intended for names or addresses, each word automatically starts with a capital letter. In text fields for password, web address or email address

- entry, all letters are automatically lower case unless otherwise set with the button.
- 6** Number entry. The keyboard (2) is then shown with numbers. Press ABC, which in number mode is shown instead of 123, to return to the letter keyboard, or #\~ to open the keyboard with special characters.
- 7** Changes text input language, e.g. EN. The available characters and word suggestions (1) vary depending on the selected language. To make it possible to change languages for the keyboard, the languages must first be added under Settings.
- 8** Space.
- 9** Undoes entered text. Pressing briefly deletes one character at a time. Hold the button depressed to delete characters more quickly.
- 10** Changes keyboard mode to write letters and characters by hand instead.

Pressing the confirmation button above the keypad (not visible in the illustration) confirms the entered text. The appearance of the button differs depending on context.

Variants of a letter or character



Variants of a letter or character, e.g. é or è, can be entered by holding down the letter or character. A box is displayed showing possible variants of letters or characters. Press the required variant. If no variant is selected, the original letter/character is entered.

Related information

- Changing keyboard language in centre display (p. 115)
- Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display (p. 115)
- Managing the centre display (p. 98)
- Managing text messages (p. 494)

¹⁴ Applies to Asiatic languages.

Changing keyboard language in centre display

To make it possible to switch between different languages for the keyboard, the languages must first be added under **Settings**.

Adding or deleting languages in settings

The keyboard is automatically set to the same languages as the system language. The keyboard language can be manually adapted without affecting the system language.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **System** → **System Languages and Units** → **Keyboard Layouts**.
3. Select one or more languages from the list.
 - > It is now possible to switch between the selected languages directly from the keyboard for text input.

If no languages have been actively selected under **Settings**, the keyboard retains the same language as the car's system language.

Switching between different languages in the keyboard



When a number of languages have been selected in **Settings**, the button in the keyboard is used to switch between the different languages.

To change keyboard language with list:

1. Give a long press on the button.
 - > A list opens.
2. Select the required language. If more than four languages have been selected under **Settings**, it is possible to scroll in the list from the keyboard.
 - > The keyboard is adapted to the selected language and other word suggestions are given.

To change the keyboard language without displaying the list:

- One short press of the button.
 - > The keyboard is adapted to the next language in the list without displaying the list.

Related information

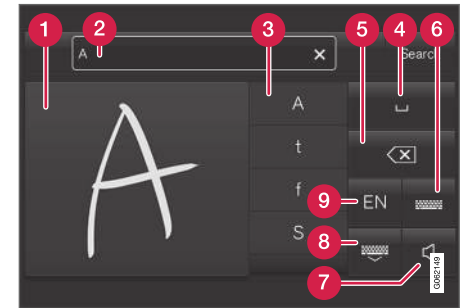
- Changing system language (p. 118)
- Keyboard in centre display (p. 112)

Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display

The centre display keyboard allows you to enter characters, letters and words on the screen by "drawing" by hand.



Press the button on the keyboard to change from typing with the keys to entering letters and characters by hand.



- 1 Area for writing characters/letters/words/parts of word.
- 2 The text field where the characters or word suggestions¹⁵ appear as they are written on screen (1).

¹⁵ Applies to certain system languages.

- ◀ 3 Suggestions for characters/letters/word/part of word. It is possible to scroll through the list.
- 4 Space. A space can also be created by entering a dash (-) in the area for hand-written letters (1). See the heading "Entering a space in the free text field with handwriting recognition" below.
- 5 Undo entered text. Press briefly to delete one character/one letter at a time. Wait a moment before pressing again to delete the next character/letter, etc.
- 6 Return to the keyboard with regular character input.
- 7 Switch off/on sound when entering.
- 8 Hide the keyboard. If this is not possible, the button is not shown.
- 9 Change text input language.

Writing characters/letters/words by hand

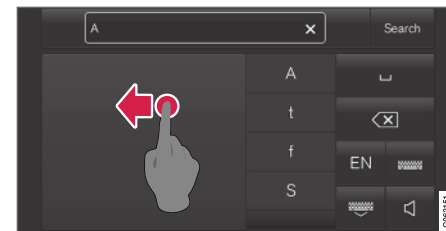
1. Write a character, a letter, a word or parts of a word in the area for hand-written letters (1). Write a word or parts of a word above each other or on a line.
 - > A number of suggested characters, letters or words is shown (3). The most likely choice is found at the top of the list.

! **IMPORTANT**

Do not use sharp objects on the screen as they may scratch it.

2. Enter the character/letters/word by waiting a moment.
 - > The character/letter/word at the top of the list is entered. It is also possible to select a different character by pressing the required character, letter or word in the list.

Deleting/changing characters/letters written by hand

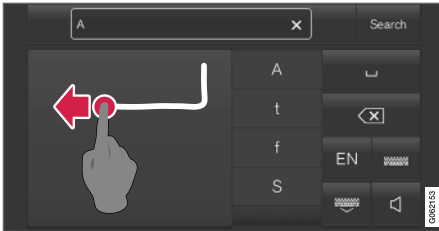


Delete all characters in the text field (2) by swiping across the handwriting field (1).

- There are several options for deleting/ changing characters/letters:
 - Press the intended letter or word in the list (3).
 - Press the text undo button (5) to delete the letter and begin again.
 - Swipe horizontally from right to left¹⁶ over the area for handwritten letters (1). Delete multiple letters by swiping over the area several times.
 - Pressing the X in the text field (2) deletes all of the entered text.

¹⁶ For Arabic keyboard - swipe in the opposite direction. Swiping from right to left creates a space.

Changing row in the free text field with handwriting



Change row by hand by drawing the above character in the handwriting field¹⁷.

Entering a space in the free text field with handwriting recognition



Enter a space by drawing a dash from left to right¹⁸.

Related information

- Keyboard in centre display (p. 112)

Changing the appearance in the centre display

The appearance of the screen in the centre display can be changed by selecting a theme.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Displays** → **Display Themes**.
3. Then select a theme, e.g. **Minimalistic** or **Chrome Rings**.

As a supplement to these appearances, it is possible to choose between **Normal** and **Bright**. With **Normal**, the screen background is dark and the text is light. This alternative is the default for all themes. A light variant can also be selected, in which the background is light and the text is dark. This alternative can be useful in e.g. strong daylight.

This alternative is always available for the user and is not affected by the surrounding lighting.

Related information

- Opening settings in the centre display (p. 118)
- Activating and deactivating centre display (p. 101)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 593)

Switching off and changing the volume of the system sound in the centre display

The centre display can be used to change the volume of the system sound or switch off the system sound altogether.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Sound** → **System Volumes**.
3. Under **Touch Sounds**, drag the control to change the volume/switch off screen touch sounds. Drag the control to the desired volume.

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 95)
- Changing settings in the centre display (p. 120)
- Audio settings (p. 464)

¹⁷ For Arabic keyboards - draw the same character, but reversed.

¹⁸ For Arabic keyboard - draw the dash from right to left.

Changing system units

Units settings are defined in the centre display's **Settings** menu.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Continue to **System** → **System Languages and Units** → **Units of Measurement**.
3. Select from the following unit standards:
 - **Metric** - kilometres, litres and degrees Celsius.
 - **Imperial** - miles, gallons and degrees Celsius.
 - **US** - miles, gallons and degrees Fahrenheit.

> The units in the driver display and centre display are changed.

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 95)
- Opening settings in the centre display (p. 118)
- Changing settings in the centre display (p. 120)
- Changing system language (p. 118)

Changing system language

Language settings are defined in the centre display menu **Settings**.

NOTE

Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some owner information is not compliant with national or local laws and regulations. Do not switch to a language that is difficult to understand as this may make it difficult to find your way back in the structure on screen.

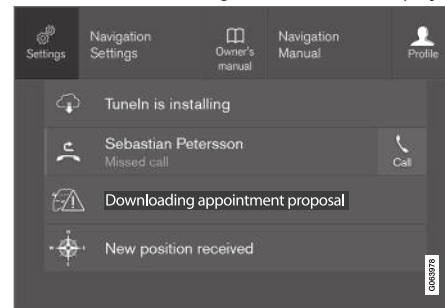
1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Continue to **System** → **System Languages and Units**.
3. Select **System Language**. Languages that support voice recognition have a voice recognition symbol.
 - > The language in the driver display and centre display are changed.

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 95)
- Opening settings in the centre display (p. 118)
- Changing settings in the centre display (p. 120)
- Changing system units (p. 118)

Opening settings in the centre display

Settings and information for many of the car's functions can be managed in the centre display.



Top view with button for **Settings**.

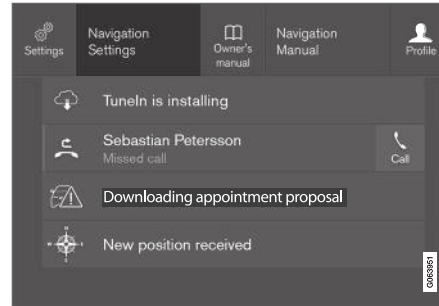
1. Open the top view by pressing on the tab or by dragging/swiping from the top downwards across the screen.
2. Press **Settings** to open the settings menu.
3. Press one of the categories shown and navigate to subcategories and respective settings by pressing again.
4. Press **Back** to go back in the settings menu. Press **Close** to close the settings menu.

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 95)
- Changing settings in the centre display (p. 120)
- Setting types in the centre display (p. 121)
- Table showing centre display settings (p. 122)

Open contextual setup in the centre display

It is possible to use contextual setup for most of the car's basic apps so that you can change settings directly in the top view in the centre display.



Top view with button for contextual setting.

The apps installed in the car from the beginning, e.g. **FM radio** and **USB**, are a part of Sensus and are part of the car's embedded functions. Settings for these apps can be changed directly in the top view in the centre display.

When contextual setup is available:

1. Drag down top view when an app is in expanded mode, e.g. **Navigation**.
2. Press **Navigation Settings**.
3. Change settings as desired and confirm the selections.

Press **Close** or the physical home button beneath the centre display to close setup view.

Most of the car's basic apps have this contextual setting option, but not all.

Third party apps

Third party apps are not included in the car's system from the beginning, but are the type that can be downloaded e.g. **Volvo ID**. Here the settings are always made inside the app and not from the top view.

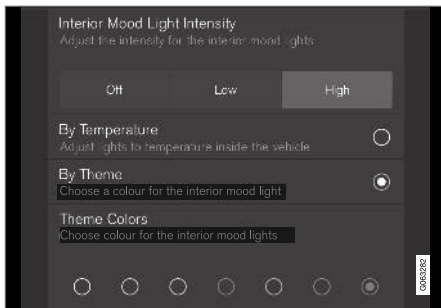
Related information

- Opening settings in the centre display (p. 118)
- Overview of centre display (p. 95)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 121)
- Downloading apps (p. 466)

Changing settings in the centre display

You can change **Settings** and information for many of the car's functions via the centre display.

1. Open the top view by pressing on the tab or by dragging/swiping from the top downwards across the screen.
2. Press **Settings** to open the settings menu.
3. Press on one of the categories and subcategories to navigate to the required setting.
4. Change one or more settings. Different types of setting are changed in different ways.
 - > The changes are saved immediately.



A subcategory in the settings menu with different types of settings (here, a multi-selector button and radio buttons).

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 95)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 121)
- Setting types in the centre display (p. 121)
- Table showing centre display settings (p. 122)

Resetting user data for change of ownership

In the event of a change of ownership, user data and system settings should be restored to factory settings.

The settings in the car can be reset at different levels. Restore all user data and system settings to the original factory settings in the event of a change of ownership. In the event of a change of ownership it is also important to change the owner of the Volvo On Call* service.

Related information

- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 121)

Resetting settings in the centre display

It is possible to reset the defaults for all settings defined in the centre display settings menu.

Two types of reset

There are two different types of resets for settings in the settings menu:

- **Factory reset** - clears all data and files and resets all settings to their default values.
- **Reset Personal Settings** - clears personal data and resets personal settings to their default values.

Resetting settings

Follow these instructions to reset your settings.

i NOTE

Factory reset is only possible when the car is stationary.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Continue to **System** → **Factory reset**.
3. Select the required reset type.
 - > A pop-up window is shown.

4. Press **OK** to confirm the reset.

For **Reset Personal Settings**, the reset must be confirmed by pressing **Reset for the active profile** or **Reset for all profiles**.

> Selected settings are reset.

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 95)
- Opening settings in the centre display (p. 118)
- Changing settings in the centre display (p. 120)
- Table showing centre display settings (p. 122)

Setting types in the centre display

Different types of setting are changed in different ways. See the table for a description of the various types of setting.

Setting types

Setting type	Description
Trigger function	Starts an app or separate view for more advanced settings through a press on the text, e.g. to connect a device with Bluetooth®.
Radio button	Select a setting from several options by pressing the required radio button, e.g. to select a system language.
Multi-selector button	Select a level for something by pressing the required part of the button, e.g. to select a sensitivity level for City Safety.
Checkbox	Activate/deactivate a function by pressing on the box to select/deselect it, e.g. to select automatic start of seat heating.



Setting type	Description
Slider	Select a level for something within an interval by pressing and dragging the slider, e.g. to select volume level.
Display of information	No actual setting. Shows information about something, e.g. the car's identification number.

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 95)

Table showing centre display settings

The settings menu in the centre display has a number of main categories and subcategories where settings and information for many of the car's functions are collected.

There are seven main categories: **My Car**, **Sound**, **Navigation**, **Media**, **Communication**, **Climate** and **System**.

In turn, each category contains a number of subcategories and setting options. The tables below show the first level of subcategories. The setting options for a function or area are described in more detail in the corresponding section of the owner's manual.

Some settings are personal, which means that they can be saved to **Driver Profiles**. Other settings are global, which means they are not linked to a driver profile.

My Car

Subcategories
Displays
IntelliSafe
Drive Preferences/Individual Drive Mode*
Lights and Lighting
Mirrors and Convenience

Subcategories
Locking
Parking Brake and Suspension
Wipers

Sound

Subcategories
Tone
Balance
System Volumes

Navigation

Subcategories
Map
Route and Guidance
Traffic

Media

Subcategories
AM/FM radio
DAB*

Subcategories
Gracernote®
TV*
Video
Communication
Subcategories
Phone
Text Messages
Android Auto*
Apple CarPlay*
Bluetooth Devices
Wi-Fi
Car Wi-Fi Hotspot
Car Modem Internet*
Volvo On Call*
Volvo Service Networks

Climate

The main category **Climate** has no subcategories.

System

Subcategories
Driver Profile
Date and Time
System Languages and Units
Privacy and data
Keyboard Layouts
Voice Control*
Factory reset
System Information

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 95)
- Changing settings in the centre display (p. 120)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 121)

Driver profiles

Many of the settings made in the car can be adapted according to the driver's personal preferences and can be saved in one or more driver profiles.

The personal settings are automatically saved in the active driver profile. Each key can be linked to a driver profile. When the linked key is used, the car is adapted to the settings of that specific driver profile.

What settings are saved in the driver profiles?

In the car, the settings defined are either personal or global. Only personal settings are saved in driver profiles.

Settings that can be saved in a driver profile include, amongst other things, screens, mirrors, front seats, navigation*, audio and media system, language and voice control.

Some settings, referred to as global settings, can be changed but are not saved to a specific driver profile. Changes to global settings affect all profiles.



◀ **Global settings**

The global settings and parameters are not changed when changing between driver profiles. They remain the same regardless of which driver profile is active.

Keyboard layout settings are an example of global settings. If driver profile X is used to add additional languages to the keyboard, these remain available for use even if driver profile Y is used. The keyboard layout settings are not saved to a specific driver profile - the settings are global.

Personal preferences

If driver profile X was used to e.g. set centre display brightness, driver profile Y is not affected by this setting. It has been saved to driver profile X - the brightness setting is a personal setting.

Related information

- Selecting driver profile (p. 124)
- Renaming a driver profile (p. 125)
- Resetting settings in the driver profiles (p. 125)
- Linking remote control key to driver profile (p. 125)
- Table showing centre display settings (p. 122)

Selecting driver profile

When the centre display has been started, the selected driver profile is shown at the top of the screen. The driver profile last used is the one that will be active next time the car is unlocked. It is possible to change to another driver profile after the car has been unlocked. However, if the remote control key has been linked to a driver profile then this is what is selected when the car is started.

There are two options for changing to another driver profile.

Option 1:

1. Tap on the name of the driver profile shown in the top of the centre display when the display has been started.
 - > A list of selectable driver profiles is shown.
2. Select the driver profile required.
3. Press **Confirm**.
 - > The driver profile is selected and the system loads the settings for the new driver profile.

Option 2:

1. Drag down the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Profile**.
 - > The same list as for Option 1 is shown.
3. Select the driver profile required.

4. Press **Confirm**.


> The driver profile is selected and the system loads the settings for the new driver profile.

Related information

- Driver profiles (p. 123)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 101)
- Renaming a driver profile (p. 125)
- Linking remote control key to driver profile (p. 125)

Renaming a driver profile

It is possible to change the name of the different driver profiles used in the car.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System → Driver Profiles**.
3. Select **Edit Profile**.
 - > A menu opens, where the profile can be edited.
4. Tap in the box **Profile Name**.
 - > A keyboard appears, and it is possible to change the name. Tap on  to close the keyboard.
5. Save the name change by pressing **Back** or **Close**.
 - > The name has now been changed.

NOTE

A profile name cannot start with a space, as the profile name will not then be saved.

Related information

- Selecting driver profile (p. 124)
- Keyboard in centre display (p. 112)

Resetting settings in the driver profiles

Settings that have been saved to one or more driver profiles can be reset if the car is stationary.

NOTE

Factory reset is only possible when the car is stationary.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **System → Factory reset → Reset Personal Settings**.
3. Select one of the options **Reset for the active profile**, **Reset for all profiles** or **Cancel**.

Related information

- Driver profiles (p. 123)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 121)

Linking remote control key to driver profile

It is possible to link your key to a driver profile. The driver profile along with all of its settings will then be automatically selected every time the car is used with that specific remote control key.

The first time the remote control key is used, it is not linked to any specific driver profile. When the car is started, the **Guest** profile will automatically be activated.

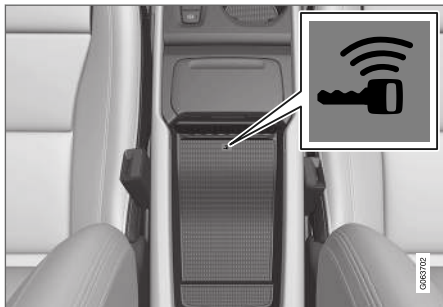
A driver profile can be selected manually without linking it to the key. When the car is unlocked, the last active driver profile is activated. Once the key has been linked to a driver profile, a driver profile does not need to be selected when that specific key is used.

Linking a remote control key to a driver profile

First select the profile to be linked to the key, if the profile to be linked is not already active. The active profile can then be linked to the key.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System → Driver Profiles**.
3. Select the desired profile. The display returns to the home view. The **Guest** profile cannot be linked to a key.

4. Drag down the top view again and tap on **Settings → System → Driver Profiles → Edit Profile**.
5. Select **Connect key** to link the profile with the key. It is not possible to link a driver profile to a different key than the one currently being used in the car. If there are multiple keys in the car, the message **More than one key is found, put the key you want to connect on backup reader** will be displayed.



The backup reader's location in the storage compartment.

- > When the message **Profile connected to key** is shown, the key and the driver profile are linked.

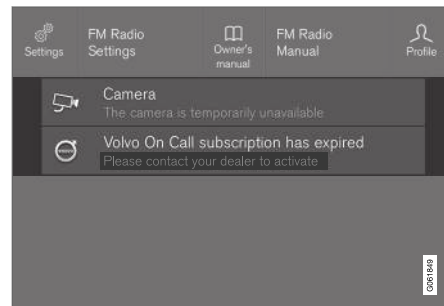
6. Press **OK**.
 - > This key is now linked to the driver profile and will remain linked as long as the **Connect key** box is not unticked.

Related information

- Driver profiles (p. 123)
- Renaming a driver profile (p. 125)
- Remote control key (p. 217)

Message in centre display

The centre display can show messages to inform or assist the driver in the event of different events.



Message in the centre display's top view.

The centre display shows messages that are of lower priority for the driver.

Most messages are shown above the centre display's status bar. After a while, or when any required action related to the message has been taken, the message disappears from the status bar. If a message needs to be saved, it is positioned in the top view in the centre display.

Message composition may vary and they can be shown together with graphics, symbols or a button for activating/deactivating a function linked to the message.

Pop-up messages

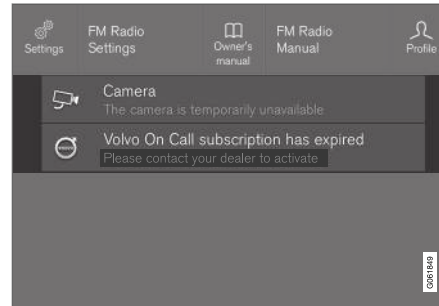
In some cases, a message is shown in the form of a pop-up window. Pop-up messages have higher priority than messages shown in the status bar and require acknowledgement/action before they disappear. Messages that need to be saved are positioned in the top view in the centre display.

Related information

- Managing messages in the centre display (p. 127)
- Handling a message saved from the centre display (p. 128)
- Messages in the driver display (p. 91)

Managing messages in the centre display

Messages in the centre display are handled in centre display views.



Message in the centre display's top view.

Some messages in the centre display have a button (or several buttons in pop-up messages) for e.g. activating/deactivating a function linked to the message.

Managing a new message

For messages with buttons:

- Press the button to perform the action or allow the message to close automatically after a while.
 - > The message disappears from the status bar.

For messages without buttons:

- Close the message by tapping on it, or allow the message to close automatically after a while.
 - > The message disappears from the status bar.

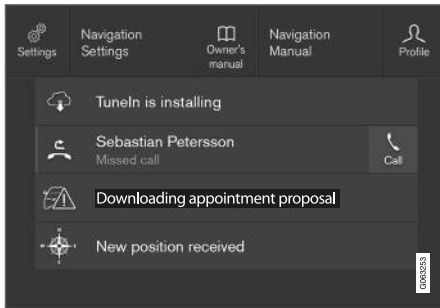
If a message needs to be saved, it is positioned in the top view in the centre display.

Related information

- Message in centre display (p. 126)
- Handling a message saved from the centre display (p. 128)
- Messages in the driver display (p. 91)

Handling a message saved from the centre display

Whether saved from the driver display or the centre display, messages are managed in the centre display.



Saved messages and possible options in the top view.

Messages that are shown in the centre display that need to be saved are added in the top view of the centre display.

Reading a saved message

1. Open the top view in the centre display.
 - > A list of saved messages is shown. Messages with an arrow to the right can be maximised.
2. Tap on a message to expand/minimise.
 - > More information on the message is shown in the list and the image to the left in the app shows information about the message graphically.

Managing a saved message

Some messages have a button for e.g. activating/deactivating a function linked to the message.

- Press the button to perform the action.

Saved messages in the top view are deleted automatically when the car is switched off.

Related information

- Message in centre display (p. 126)
- Managing messages in the centre display (p. 127)
- Messages in the driver display (p. 91)

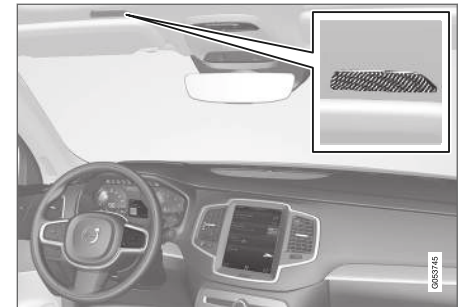
Voice recognition¹⁹

The driver can use voice recognition to control certain functions in the media player, Bluetooth-connected phone, climate system and Volvo's navigation system*.

Voice commands offer additional convenience and assist the driver to not be distracted so that he or she can concentrate on driving, the road and the traffic situation.

WARNING

The driver always holds overall responsibility for driving the vehicle in a safe manner and complying with all applicable rules of the road.



Voice control system microphone

Voice control is done in dialogue form with the user saying commands and receiving verbal

responses from the system. The voice recognition system uses the same microphone as Bluetooth-connected devices, and the voice recognition system's responses are given via the car's speakers. In some cases, a text message is also shown in the driver display. Functions are controlled from the right-hand steering wheel keypad. Settings are made via the centre display.

System updating

The voice recognition system is continuously improved. Download updates for optimal performance from support.volvocars.com.

Related information

- Using voice recognition (p. 129)
- Controlling a telephone with voice recognition (p. 130)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 131)
- Controlling climate control with voice recognition (p. 180)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 131)

Using voice recognition²⁰



Depress the steering wheel button for voice recognition

🗨️ to activate the system and initiate a dialogue using voice commands.

Remember the following:

- Speak after the tone with a normal voice at a normal tempo.
- Do not speak while the system is replying (the system cannot understand commands during this time).
- Avoid background noise in the passenger compartment by having the doors, windows and panoramic roof* closed.

Voice recognition can be deactivated as follows:

- by saying "**Cancel**".
- with a long press on the voice recognition button on the steering wheel 🗨️.

To speed up communication and skip the prompts from the system, press the steering wheel button for voice recognition 🗨️ when the system voice is speaking and say the next command.

Example of voice recognition control

Press 🗨️, say "**Call [Forename] [Surname] [number category]**" - dials the selected contact from the phone book. If the contact has several phone numbers (e.g. home, mobile, work), the right category must be referred to.

So press 🗨️ and say "**Call Robin Smith Mobile**".

Commands/phrases

The following commands are always available for use:

- "**Repeat**" - repeats the last voice instruction in the ongoing dialogue.
- "**Cancel**" - discontinue the dialogue.
- "**Help**" - starts a help dialogue. The system replies with the commands available in the current situation, a prompt or an example.

Commands for specific functions such as phone and radio are described in specific sections.

¹⁹ Applies to certain markets.

²⁰ Applies to certain markets.

◀ Digits

The number commands are stated differently depending on the function to be controlled:


- **Phone numbers and postcodes** must be spoken individually, number by number, e.g. zero three one two two four four three (03122443).
- **House numbers** can be spoken individually or in groups, e.g. two two or twenty-two (22). For English and Dutch, several groups can be said in sequence, e.g. twenty-two twenty-two (22 22). For English, double or triple can be used, e.g. double zero (00). Numbers can be given within the range 0-2300.
- **Frequencies** can be spoken as ninety eight point eight (98.8), a hundred and four point two or hundred four point two (104.2).

Related information

- Voice recognition (p. 128)
- Controlling a telephone with voice recognition (p. 130)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 131)
- Controlling climate control with voice recognition (p. 180)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 131)

Controlling a telephone with voice recognition²¹

Call a contact, have messages read aloud or dictate brief messages with voice control commands to a Bluetooth connected telephone. To specify a contact in the phone book, the voice recognition command must include contact information that is entered in the phone book. If a contact, e.g. **Robyn Smith**, has several phone numbers then the number category can also be stated, e.g. **Home** or **Mobile**: "**Call Robyn Smith Mobile**".

Press  and say one of the following commands:

- "**Call [contact]**" - dials the selected contact from the phone book.
- "**Call [phone number]**" - dials the phone number.
- "**Recent calls**" - displays the call list.
- "**Read message**" - message is read out. If there are several messages - select which message should be read out.
- "**Message to [contact]**" users are requested to say a brief message. The message is then repeated aloud and the user can choose to send²² or revise the message. For this function to work, the car must be connected to the Internet.

Related information


- Voice recognition (p. 128)
- Using voice recognition (p. 129)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 131)
- Controlling climate control with voice recognition (p. 180)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 131)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)

²¹ Applies to certain markets.

²² Only certain phones can broadcast messages from the car. For compatibility, see support.volvocars.com.

Voice control of radio and media²³

Commands for radio and media player device control are shown below.

Tap on  and say one of the following commands:

- **"Media"** - starts a dialogue for media and radio and shows examples of commands.
- **"Play [artist]"** - plays back music by the selected artist.
- **"Play [song title]"** - plays back the selected song.
- **"Play [song title] from [album]"** - plays back the selected song from the selected album.
- **"Play [TV channel name]"** - starts the selected TV channel*²⁴.
- **"Play [radio station]"** - starts playing back the selected radio channel.
- **"Tune to [frequency]"** - starts the selected radio frequency in the current frequency band. If no radio source is active, the FM band is started by default.
- **"Tune to [frequency] [wavelength]"** - starts the selected radio frequency in the selected frequency band.
- **"Radio"** - starts FM radio.

- **"Radio FM"** - starts FM radio.
- **"Radio AM"** - starts AM radio.
- **"DAB"** - starts DAB radio*.
- **"TV"** - starts playback from TV*²⁴.
- **"USB"** - starts playback from USB.
- **"iPod"** - starts playback from iPod.
- **"Bluetooth"** - starts playback from a Bluetooth-connected media source.
- **"Similar music"** — plays back music similar to the music currently playing back from USB devices.

Related information

- Voice recognition (p. 128)
- Using voice recognition (p. 129)
- Controlling a telephone with voice recognition (p. 130)
- Controlling climate control with voice recognition (p. 180)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 131)

Settings for voice recognition²⁵

Settings for the voice control system are selected here.

Settings → System → Voice Control

Settings can be made within the following areas:


- **Repeat Voice Command**
- **Gender**
- **Speech Rate**

Audio settings

Select audio settings under:

Settings → Sound → System Volumes → Voice Control

Language settings

Voice recognition is not possible for all languages. Languages available for voice recognition are marked with an icon in the language list - .

Changing the language also affects menu, message and help texts.

Settings → System → System Languages and Units → System Language

²³ Applies to certain markets.

²⁴ Applies to certain markets.

²⁵ Applies to certain markets.

◀◀ **Related information**

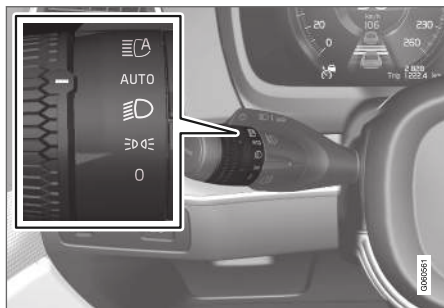
- [Voice recognition \(p. 128\)](#)
- [Using voice recognition \(p. 129\)](#)
- [Controlling a telephone with voice recognition \(p. 130\)](#)
- [Controlling climate control with voice recognition \(p. 180\)](#)
- [Voice control of radio and media \(p. 131\)](#)
- [Audio settings \(p. 464\)](#)
- [Changing system language \(p. 118\)](#)

LIGHTING

Lighting control




The different lighting controls are used to control both exterior and interior lighting. The left-hand stalk switch activates and adjusts the exterior lighting. The interior brightness is adjusted using a thumbwheel on the instrument panel.



Exterior lighting




Rotating ring in the left-hand stalk switch.

When the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II** or when the car is running, the following functions are available in the rotating ring's different positions.

Position	Specification
	Daytime running lights. Main beam flash can be used.
	Daytime running lights and position lamps. Position lamps when the car is parked. ^A Main beam flash can be used.
	Dipped beam and position lamps. Main beam can be activated. Main beam flash can be used.

Position	Specification
	Daytime running lights and position lamps in daylight. Dipped beam and position lamps in weak daylight or darkness, or when the front fog lamp* and/or rear fog lamp are activated. The Active main beam function can be activated. Main beam can be activated when dipped beam is switched on. Main beam flash can be used.
	Active main beam on/off.

^A If the car is stationary but running, the rotating ring can be moved to  position from another position to switch on only the position lamps instead of other lighting.

Volvo recommends that **AUTO** mode is used when the vehicle is driven.

WARNING

The car's audio system is not able to determine when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in fog and rain, in all situations.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with a beam pattern suitable for the traffic situation and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

Thumbwheel in instrument panel



Thumbwheel (to left) for adjusting interior brightness.

Related information

- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 135)
- Interior lighting (p. 144)
- Position lamps (p. 135)
- Using direction indicators (p. 139)
- Using main beam (p. 137)
- Dipped beam (p. 137)
- Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (p. 141)
- Rear fog lamp (p. 141)
- Active bending lights* (p. 140)
- Brake lights (p. 142)
- Emergency brake lights (p. 142)
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 143)

Adjusting light functions via the centre display

Several light functions can be adjusted and activated via the centre display, such as active main beam, home safe lighting and approach lighting.

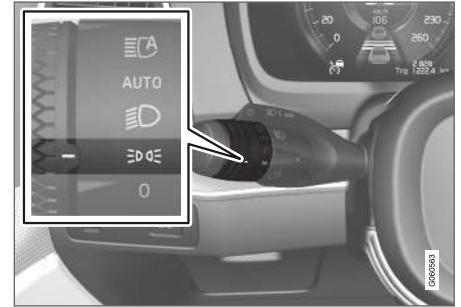
1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting**.
3. Select **Exterior Lights** or **Interior Lighting**.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 134)
- Active main beam (p. 138)
- Using home safe lighting (p. 143)
- Approach light duration (p. 144)
- Using direction indicators (p. 139)
- Opening settings in the centre display (p. 118)
- Function view in centre display (p. 108)

Position lamps

Position lamps can be used so that other road users can see the car if it stops or is parked. The position lamp is switched on with the rotating ring on the stalk switch.



Stalk switch rotating ring in position lamps position.

Turn the rotating ring to the **☰☏☑** position - the position lamps are switched on (number plate lighting is switched on at the same time).

If the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II** or the car is running then the daytime running lights are switched on instead of the front position lamps. When the rotating ring is in this position, the position lamps are switched on regardless of the ignition position of the car's electrical system.

If the car is stationary but running, the rotating ring can be moved to the position lamp **☰☏☑** **▶▶**

◀ position from another position to switch on only the position lamps instead of other lighting.

When driving for more than 30 seconds at max. 10 km/h (approx. 6 mph), or if the speed exceeds 10 km/h (approx. 6 mph), the daytime running lights are switched on. The driver should turn to a position other than ☰☲☱.

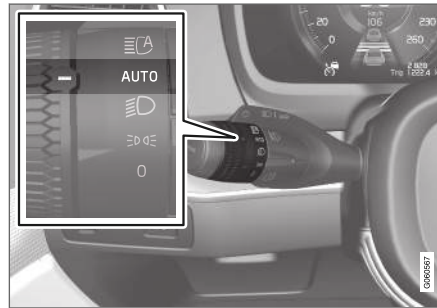
If the tailgate is opened when it is dark outside, the rear position lamps come on (if not already switched on) to warn road users approaching from behind. This takes place irrespective of the position of the rotating ring or the ignition position of the car's electrical system.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 134)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)

Daytime running lights

The car has sensors that detect the light conditions in the surroundings. The daytime running lights are switched on when the rotating ring on the stalk switch is in position 0 , ☰☲☱ or AUTO as well as when the car's electrical system is in ignition position II or when the car is running. In position AUTO , the headlamps change automatically to dipped beam in weak daylight or darkness.



Stalk switch rotating ring in **AUTO** position.

If the stalk switch rotating ring is in the **AUTO** position, the daytime running lights (DRL¹) are switched on when the car is driven in daylight. The car automatically changes lighting from daytime running light to dipped beam in weak daylight or darkness. Changing to dipped beam also

takes place if the front fog lamp* and/or rear fog lamp are activated.

WARNING

This system help to save energy - it cannot determine in all situations when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in mist and rain.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with the correct beam pattern for the traffic situation and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

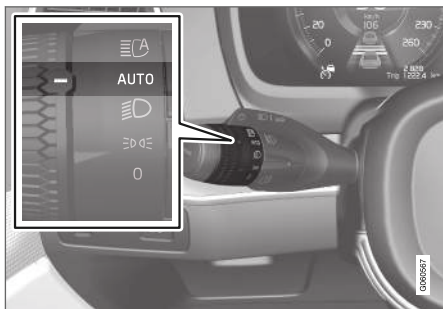
Related information

- Lighting control (p. 134)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)
- Dipped beam (p. 137)

¹ Daytime Running Lights

Dipped beam

When driving with the stalk switch's rotating ring in the **AUTO** position, dipped beam is activated automatically in weak daylight or darkness, when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II** or when the car is running.




Stalk switch rotating ring in **AUTO** position.

With the stalk switch's rotating ring in **AUTO** position, dipped beam is also activated automatically if:

- the front fog lamps* are activated
- the rear fog lamp is activated
- the front and rear fog lamps are activated

Dipped beam is always switched on when the rotating ring on the stalk switch is in position

 when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II** or when the car is running.

Tunnel detection

The car detects when it is driven into a tunnel and switches from daytime running lights to dipped beam.

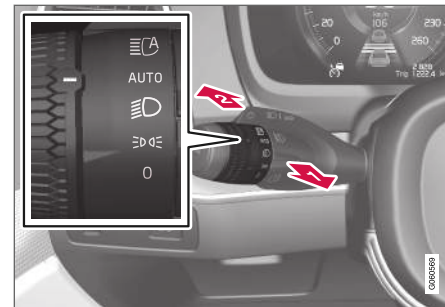
Note that the rotating ring in the left-hand stalk switch must be in **AUTO** mode for tunnel detection to work.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 134)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)
- Daytime running lights (p. 136)


Using main beam

Main beam is operated with the left-hand stalk switch. Main beam is the car's strongest lighting and should be used when driving in the dark for better visibility, as long as it does not dazzle other road users.





Steering wheel stalk switch with rotating ring.

Main beam flash

-  Move the stalk switch backwards slightly to main beam flash position. Main beam comes on until the stalk switch is released.

◀ Main beam

➡ Main beam can be activated when the steering wheel stalk switch's rotating ring is in position **AUTO**² or . Activate main beam by moving the stalk switch forwards. Deactivate by moving the stalk switch backwards.

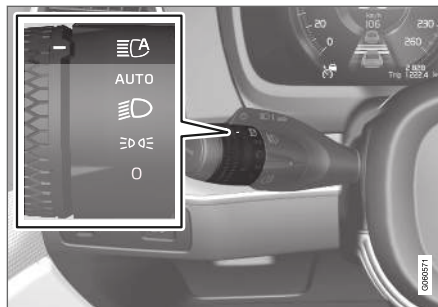
When main beam has been activated the symbol illuminates in the driver display. 

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 134)
- Active main beam (p. 138)

Active main beam

Active main beam is a function which uses a camera sensor at the top edge of the windscreen to detect the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights of vehicles in front, and then switches from main beam to dipped beam.




Active main beam is activated with the rotating ring on the stalk switch in position **AUTO**.

The function can also take streetlights into account. Main beam is reactivated when the camera sensor no longer sees any oncoming vehicles or vehicles ahead.

The function can start while driving in the dark when the car's speed is approx. 20 km/h (approx. 12 mph) or higher.

If active main beam is deactivated while main beam is on, the lighting is immediately reset to dipped beam.

When active main beam is activated, the symbol  illuminates with a white glow in the driver display.

When main beam is activated, the symbol shines blue.

Car with LED³ headlamps*

If the active main beam has the on/off functionality⁴ then the lighting returns to main beam about a second after the camera sensor no longer detects the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights from vehicles in front.

The lighting returns to full main beam about a second after the camera sensor no longer detects the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights from vehicles in front.

² When dipped beam is activated.


³ LED (Light Emitting Diode)

⁴ Depending on the car's equipment level.

Limitations for active main beam


The camera sensor on which the function is based has limitations.



If this symbol is shown in the driver display, together with the message **Active High Beam Temporarily unavailable**, then switching between main and dipped beam must be performed manually. The rotating ring on the stalk switch can still be in the **AUTO** position. The  symbol extinguishes when these message are shown.



The same applies if this symbol is shown together with the message **Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**.

Active main beam may be temporarily unavailable e.g. in situations with dense fog or heavy rain. When active main beam becomes available again, or the windscreen sensors are no longer blocked, the message goes out and the  symbol illuminates.

WARNING

Active main beam is an aid for using the optimum beam pattern when conditions are favourable.

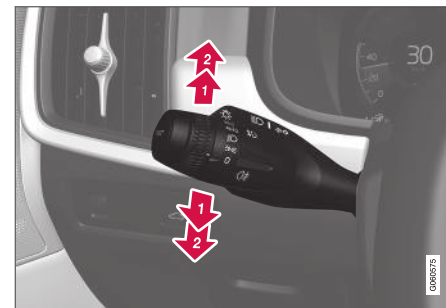
The driver always bears responsibility for manually switching between main and dipped beam when traffic situations or weather conditions so require.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 134)
- Using main beam (p. 137)
- Limitations for camera unit (p. 322)


Using direction indicators

The car's direction indicators are operated with the left-hand stalk switch. The direction indicator lamps flash three times or continuously, depending on how far up or down the stalk switch is moved.



Direction indicators.

Short flash sequence

-  Move the stalk switch up or down to the first position and release. The direction indicator lamps flash three times. The function can be activated/deactivated via the centre display.



NOTE

- This automatic flashing sequence can be stopped by moving the stalk switch immediately in the opposite direction.
- If the symbol for direction indicators in the driver display flashes more quickly than normal - see the message in the driver display.

Continuous flash sequence

➡ Move the stalk switch up or down to its end position.

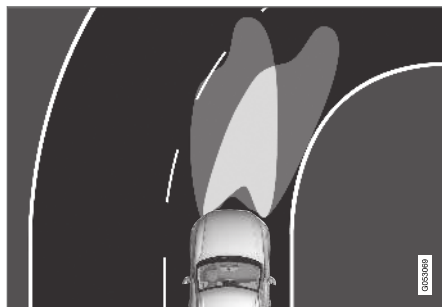
The stalk switch remains in its position and is moved back manually, or automatically by the steering wheel movement.

Related information

- Hazard warning flashers (p. 143)
- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 135)
- Replacing the rear direction indicator bulb (p. 575)


Active bending lights*

Active bending lights are designed to provide maximum illumination in bends and junctions. Cars with LED⁵ headlamps* can have active bending lights, depending on the car's equipment level.



Headlamp pattern with function deactivated (left) and activated (right) respectively.

Active bending lights follow steering wheel movements to provide maximum illumination in bends and junctions and can thereby provide the driver with improved visibility.

The function is activated automatically when the car is started. In the event of a fault in the function, the  symbol illuminates in the driver display at the same time as the driver display shows an explanatory text.

The function is only active in weak daylight or darkness and only when the car is moving and dipped beam is switched on.

Deactivating/activating the function

The function is activated when the car is supplied from the factory and can be deactivated/activated via the centre display's function view.



Press the **Active Bending Lights** button.

Related information

- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 135)
- Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (p. 141)



⁵ LED (Light Emitting Diode)


Front fog lamps/cornering lights*

The front fog lamps emit a stronger beam than dipped beam and are therefore additionally effective in fog.



Button for front fog lamps.

The front fog lamps can only be switched on when ignition position **II** is active or the car is running and the rotating ring on the stalk switch is in position **AUTO**,  or .

Press the button to activate and deactivate. The  symbol in the driver display illuminates when the front fog lamps are switched on.


The front fog lamps switch off automatically when the start knob is turned clockwise to switch off the car or the stalk switch rotating ring is set to the **0** position.

NOTE

Regulations on the use of fog lamps vary from country to country.

Cornering lights*

The front fog lamps can include the cornering lights function, which temporarily illuminates the area diagonally in front of the car in the direction the steering wheel is turned on a sharp bend, or in the direction shown by the direction indicators.

The function is activated in weak daylight or darkness when the stalk switch's rotating ring is in the **AUTO** or  position and the speed of the car is lower than approx. 30 km/h (approx. 20 mph).

In addition, both cornering lights are switched on as a supplement to the reversing lamp during reversing.

The function is activated when the car is supplied from the factory and can be activated and deactivated via the centre display.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 134)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)
- Rear fog lamp (p. 141)
- Active bending lights* (p. 140)
- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 135)

Rear fog lamp



The rear fog lamp is considerably stronger than the normal rear lights and should only be used in reduced visibility due to fog, snow, smoke or dust so that other road users have an early warning of a vehicle ahead.




Button for rear fog lamp.

The rear fog lamp is a lamp at the rear of the car, on the driver's side.



The rear fog lamp can only be switched on when:

- ignition position **II** is active or the car is running and the stalk switch's rotating ring is in position **AUTO** or 
- the stalk switch's rotating ring is in position  and the front fog lamps are switched on.



- Press the on/off button. The  symbol in the driver display illuminates when the rear fog lamp is switched on.

The rear fog lamp is switched off automatically when:

- the start knob is turned clockwise to switch off the car or the stalk switch rotating ring is set to the  position
- the stalk switch's rotating ring is in position  and the front fog lamps are switched off.

 **NOTE**

Regulations on the use of rear fog lamps vary from country to country.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 134)
- Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (p. 141)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)
- Replacing the rear fog lamp bulb (p. 577)

Brake lights

The brake light automatically comes on during braking.

The brake light is switched on when the brake pedal is depressed. It is also switched on when the car is braked automatically by one of the driver support systems.

Related information

- Emergency brake lights (p. 142)
- Brake functions (p. 401)
- Changing brake light bulb (p. 576)

Emergency brake lights

Emergency brake lights are activated to alert vehicles behind about heavy braking.

The function means that the brake light flashes instead of - as in normal braking - shining with a constant glow.

The emergency brake lights are activated during heavy braking or if the ABS system is activated at high speeds.

After the driver brakes to a low speed and then releases the brake, the brake light returns to normal glow.

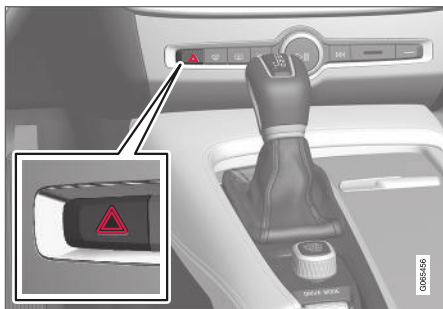
The car's hazard warning flashers are activated at the same time. These flash until the driver accelerates the car to a higher speed again or switches off the hazard warning flashers.

Related information

- Brake lights (p. 142)
- Foot brake (p. 401)
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 143)

Hazard warning flashers

Hazard warning flashers warn other road users by means of all of the car's direction indicators being activated simultaneously. The function can be used to give a warning in the event of traffic hazards.



Button for hazard warning flashers.

Press the button to activate the hazard warning flashers.

The hazard warning flashers are automatically activated when the car brakes so powerfully that the emergency brake lights are activated and the speed is low. The hazard warning flashers start to flash after the emergency brake lights have stopped flashing and are then deactivated automatically when the car drives away again or are deactivated if the button is depressed.

NOTE

Regulations for the use of hazard warning flashers may vary between countries.

Related information

- Emergency brake lights (p. 142)
- Using direction indicators (p. 139)

Using home safe lighting

Some of the exterior lighting can be kept switched on to work as home safe lighting after the car has been locked.

To activate the function:

1. Switch off the car.
2. Move the left-hand stalk switch forward toward the instrument panel and release.
3. Get out of the car and lock the door.

When the function is activated, a symbol illuminates in the driver display and position lamps, exterior handle lighting* and number plate lighting are switched on.

The length of time that home safe lighting remains on can be set via the centre display.

Related information

- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 135)
- Approach light duration (p. 144)

Approach light duration

Approach lighting is switched on when the car is unlocked and is used to switch on the car's lighting at a distance.

The function is activated when the remote control key is used for unlocking. At which point, position lamps, exterior handle lighting*, number plate lighting, interior roof lamps, floor lamps and cargo area lighting are switched on. If a door is opened within the activation time, the time for the lighting in the outside handles* and the interior lighting will be extended.

The function can be activated and deactivated via the centre display.

Related information

- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 135)
- Using home safe lighting (p. 143)
- Remote control key (p. 217)

Interior lighting

The interior is equipped with several different types of lighting to improve the experience. This includes, reading lamps, glovebox lighting and ground lighting.

All lighting in the passenger compartment can be switched on and off manually at least 5 minutes from when:

- the car has been switched off and its electrical system is in ignition position **0**
- the car has been unlocked but it has not been started.

Front roof lighting



Controls in roof console for the front reading lamps and passenger compartment lighting.

- 1** Reading lamp, left-hand side
- 2** Passenger compartment lighting

- 3** Auto function for passenger compartment lighting
- 4** Reading lamp, right-hand side

Reading lighting

The reading lamps on the right and left-hand sides can be turned on and off by briefly pressing the buttons in the roof console. Brightness is adjusted by holding the button pressed in.

Passenger compartment lighting

The floor lighting and interior roof lighting are switched on or off with a short press on the button in the roof console.

Auto function for passenger compartment lighting

The automatic function is activated by a short press on the **AUTO** button in the roof console. With the automatic system activated, the light indicator in the button illuminates and the passenger compartment lighting is switched on and off according to the following.

Passenger compartment lighting:

- illuminates when the car is unlocked and when it is switched off
- extinguishes when the car is started and when it is locked
- comes on and goes off, respectively, when a side door is opened or closed
- remains on for 2 minutes if one of the side doors is open.

Rear roof lighting*

The rear area of the car has reading lighting, which is also used as passenger compartment lighting.



Reading lamps above the rear seat.



In cars with panorama roof* there are two lamp units, one on each side of the roof.

The reading lamps are switched on or off by briefly pressing the button on the lamp. Brightness is adjusted by holding the button pressed in.

Glovebox lighting

Glovebox lighting is switched on and off respectively when the lid is opened or closed.

Sun visor mirror lighting*

The lighting for the mirror in the sun visor is switched on and off respectively when the cover is opened or closed.

Ground lighting*

The ground lighting is switched on and off when the corresponding door is opened or closed.

Lighting in the cargo area

The lighting in the cargo area is switched on and off respectively when the tailgate is opened or closed.

Decor lighting

The ambient light is switched on when you open the doors and is switched off when the car is locked. The intensity of the decor lighting can be adapted in the centre display and also precisely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

Ambience lights*

The car is equipped with a number of LEDs that make it possible to change the colour of the light. These lights are switched on when the car is run-

ning. The ambience light can be adapted in the centre display and also precisely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

Lighting in storage compartments in doors

The lighting in the storage compartments in the doors is switched on when you open the doors and is switched off when the car is locked. The brightness can be precisely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

Lighting in front cup holders in tunnel console

The lighting in the front cup holders is switched on when the car is unlocked and is switched off when the car is locked. The brightness can be precisely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

Related information

- Adjusting interior lighting (p. 146)
- Lighting control (p. 134)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)
- Passenger compartment interior (p. 544)

Adjusting interior lighting

The lamps inside the car come on differently depending on the ignition position used. The interior lighting can be adjusted with a thumbwheel in the instrument panel, and certain light functions can also be adjusted via the centre display.



The thumbwheel, on the instrument panel by the steering wheel, is used to adjust the brightness of the display light, control light, ambient light and ambience light*

Adjusting ambient decor illumination

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car → Lights and Lighting → Interior Lighting**.
3. Choose between the following settings:
 - Under **Ambient Light Intensity**, select from **Off**, **Low** and **High**.
 - Under **Ambient Light Level**, select from **Reduced** and **Full**.

Adjusting ambience light*

The car is equipped with a number of LEDs that make it possible to change the colour of the light. These lights are switched on when the car is running.

Changing the brightness of the lights

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car → Lights and Lighting → Interior Lighting → Interior Mood Lighting**.
3. Under **Interior Mood Light Intensity**, select from **Off**, **Low** and **High**.

Changing the colour of the light

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car → Lights and Lighting → Interior Lighting → Interior Mood Lighting**.
3. Choose between **By Temperature** and **By Colour** in order to change the colour of the light.

With the **By Temperature** option, the light changes according to the set passenger compartment temperature.

With the **By Colour** option, the **Theme Colours** subcategory can be used to adjust further.

Related information

- Interior lighting (p. 144)
- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 135)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)

WINDOWS, GLASS AND MIRRORS

Windows, glass and mirrors

The car contains controls for windows, glass and mirrors. Some of the windows in the car are laminated.

Laminated glass

The windscreen and panorama* roof have laminated glass. The glass is reinforced, which provides better protection against break-ins and improved sound insulation in the passenger compartment. Laminated glass is available as an option for certain other glass surfaces.



The symbol is shown on the windows where the glass is laminated¹

Related information

- Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds (p. 148)
- Panorama roof* (p. 154)
- Power windows (p. 149)
- Rearview and door mirrors (p. 151)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 159)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 162)
- Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen* (p. 198)

- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 199)

Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds

All windows and sun blinds* controlled electrically have pinch protection which is deployed if they are blocked by any object when opening or closing.

In the event of blocking, the movement stops and then reverses automatically to approx. 50 mm (approx. 2 inches) from the blocked position (or to full ventilation position).

If the pinch protection has deployed then it is still possible to operate once more in the same direction without pinch protection, if this is done within 10 seconds after pinch protection deployment. In other words, it is possible to force pinch protection when closing has been cancelled, e.g. when ice is formed, by continuing to press the control until fully closed.

WARNING

If the starter battery is disconnected, the automatic opening and closing function must be reset to work properly. A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

¹ Does not apply to the windscreen or panorama roof* which are always laminated and thus do not have this symbol.

Related information

- Reset sequence for pinch protection (p. 149)
- Operating power windows (p. 150)
- Panorama roof* (p. 154)

Reset sequence for pinch protection

If any fault arises with the electrical functions of the power windows, a reset sequence can be tested.

WARNING

If the starter battery is disconnected, the automatic opening and closing function must be reset to work properly. A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

If the problem persists, or if it concerns the panoramic roof or sunroof, contact a workshop.²

Reset the power window

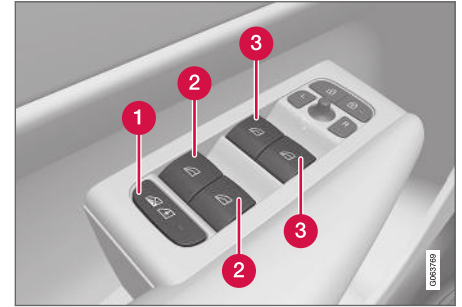
1. Start with the window in closed position.
2. Then operate it in the manual position 3 times upwards to closed position.
 - > The system is initiated automatically.

Related information

- Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds (p. 148)
- Operating power windows (p. 150)

Power windows

The power windows are operated using the control panels in each respective door. The driver's door has controls for operating all windows and also to activate the child safety locks.



Driver's door control panel.

- 1 Electric child safety locks* that deactivate the controls in the rear doors to prevent doors or windows from being opened from the inside.
- 2 Controls for rear windows.
- 3 Controls for front windows.

The power windows are equipped with pinch protection. If any fault arises with the pinch protection, a reset sequence can be tested.

² An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.



⚠ WARNING

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position **0**, and then take the remote control key with you when leaving the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

Related information

- Operating power windows (p. 150)
- Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds (p. 148)
- Reset sequence for pinch protection (p. 149)

Operating power windows

Using the driver's door control panel, all power windows can be operated - using the control panels in the other doors operates the power window in the individual door.

The power windows are equipped with pinch protection. If any fault arises with the pinch protection, a reset sequence can be tested.

⚠ WARNING

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position **0**, and then take the remote control key with you when leaving the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.



Operating the power windows.

- 1** Operating without auto. Move one of the controls gently up or down. The power windows move up or down as long as the control is held in position.
- 2** Operating with auto. Move one of the controls up or down to the end position and release it. The window runs automatically to its end position.

In order for the power windows to be used, the ignition position must be **I** or **II**. The power windows can be operated for a few minutes after the car has been switched off and after the ignition has been switched off - although not after a door has been opened. Only one control panel can be operated at a time.

It can also be operated using the remote control key, keyless opening* with the door handle or the central locking button.

⚠ WARNING

Check that children or other passengers are not at risk of crushing when all the windows are closed with:

- keyless closing*
- central locking button
- remote control key.

i NOTE

One way to reduce the pulsating wind noise when the rear windows are open is to also open the front windows slightly.

i NOTE

The windows cannot be opened at speeds above approx. 180 km/h (approx. 112 mph), but they can be closed.

The driver always bears responsibility for following traffic regulations in force.

Related information

- Power windows (p. 149)
- Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds (p. 148)
- Reset sequence for pinch protection (p. 149)
- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 242)

- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 219)
- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 245)

Rearview and door mirrors

The rearview mirrors and door mirrors are used to give the driver better visibility to the rear.

Interior rearview mirror

The interior rearview mirror is adjusted easily by angling it manually. The interior rearview mirror can be fitted with HomeLink*, automatic dimming* and compass*.

Door mirrors**⚠ WARNING**

Both mirrors are bent to provide optimal vision. Objects may appear to be further away than they actually are.

The door mirror positions are adjusted with the joystick in the driver's door control panel. There are also a number of automatic settings that can be linked to the memory function buttons for the power seat*.

Related information

- HomeLink®* (p. 457)
- Compass* (p. 460)
- Adjusting rearview mirror dimming (p. 152)
- Angling the door mirrors (p. 153)



- Storing memory function in power operated front seat* (p. 168)
- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 199)

Adjusting rearview mirror dimming

Bright light from behind could be reflected in the rearview mirrors and dazzle the driver. Use dimming when disturbed by light from behind.

Manual dimming

The interior rearview mirror can be dimmed with a control in the mirror's lower edge.



- 1 Control for manual dimming.
 1. Use dimming by moving the control in towards the passenger compartment.
 2. Return to normal mode by moving the control towards the windscreen.

The control for manual dimming is not available on mirrors with automatic dimming.

Automatic dimming*

Bright light from behind is automatically dimmed by the interior rearview and door mirrors. Automatic dimming is always active while driving, apart from when gearbox reverse position is selected.

i NOTE

When sensitivity is changed there is no immediately noticeable change in dimming, but the change will be complete after a while.

Dimming sensitivity will affect both the interior rearview mirror and the door mirrors.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** → **Mirrors and Convenience**.
3. Under **Rearview Mirror Auto Dimming**, select **Normal**, **Dark** or **Light**.

The interior rearview mirror contains two sensors - one forward facing and one rearward facing - that work together to identify and eliminate dazzling light. The forward facing sensor detects ambient light, while the rearward facing sensor detects the light from vehicle headlights behind.

For the door mirrors to be equipped with automatic dimming, the interior rearview mirror must also be equipped with automatic dimming.

i NOTE

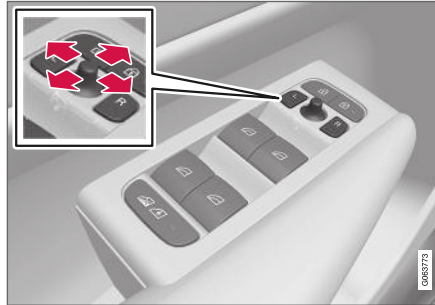
If the sensors are obscured by e.g. parking permits, transponders, sun visors or objects in the seats or in the cargo area in such a way that light is prevented from reaching the sensors, then the dimming function of the interior rearview and door mirrors is reduced.

Related information

- Rearview and door mirrors (p. 151)
- Angling the door mirrors (p. 153)

Angling the door mirrors

To ensure better visibility to the rear, the door mirrors need to be set to the preferences of the driver. There are a number of automatic settings that can also be linked to the memory function buttons for the power seat*.

Using controls for door mirrors

Controls for door mirrors.

The door mirror positions are adjusted with the joystick in the driver's door control panel.

1. Press the **L** button for the left-hand door mirror or the **R** button for the right-hand door mirror. The light in the button illuminates.
2. Adjust the position with the joystick in the centre.
3. Press the **L** or **R** button again. The light should no longer be illuminated.

Resetting to neutral

Mirrors that have been moved out of position by an external force must be reset electrically to the neutral position for electric retracting/extending to work correctly.

1. Fold in the door mirrors by pressing down the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously.
2. Fold them out again by pressing the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously.
3. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

The mirrors are now reset in neutral position.

Folding in rearview mirrors electrically*

The mirrors can be retracted for parking/driving in narrow spaces.

1. Depress the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously (ignition position must be at least **I**).
2. Release them after approximately 1 second. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully retracted position.

Fold out the mirrors by pressing down the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully extended position.

Angling during parking³

The door mirror can be angled down for the driver to view the side of the road when parking for example.

³ Only in combination with power seat with memory buttons*.

- ◀ – Engage reverse gear and press the **L** or **R** button.

Note that the button may need to be pressed twice, depending on whether it was already pre-selected. The button flashes when the door mirror is angled down. When reverse gear is disengaged, the door mirror automatically starts to return after approx. 3 seconds and then reaches its original position after approx. 8 seconds.

Automatic angling during parking³

With this setting, the door mirror is automatically angled down when reverse gear is selected. The folded position is preset and cannot be adjusted. You can make the door mirror return to its original position by pressing the **L** or **R** button twice.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car → Mirrors and Convenience**.
3. Under **Exterior Mirror Tilt at Reverse**, select **Off**, **Driver**, **Passenger** or **Both** to activate/deactivate and to select which review mirror should be angled.

Automatic retraction when locking*

When the car is locked/unlocked with the remote control key the door mirrors are automatically retracted/extended.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car → Mirrors and Convenience**.
3. Select **Fold Mirror When Locked** to activate/deactivate.

Related information

- Rearview and door mirrors (p. 151)
- Adjusting rearview mirror dimming (p. 152)
- Storing memory function in power operated front seat* (p. 168)
- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 199)

Panorama roof*

The panorama roof is divided into two glass sections. The front section can be opened vertically at the rear edge (ventilation position) or horizontally (open position). The rear section is fixed roof glass.

The panoramic roof has a wind deflector and a sun blind made of perforated fabric and located under the glass roof to provide extra protection from factors such as strong sunlight.



The panoramic roof and sun blind are operated with a control located in the roof.

It can also be operated using the remote control key, keyless opening* with the door handle or the central locking button.

³ Only in combination with power seat with memory buttons*.

In order that the panoramic roof and the sun blind can be operated, the car's electrical system must be in ignition position **I** or **II**.

⚠ WARNING

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position **0**, and then take the remote control key with you when leaving the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

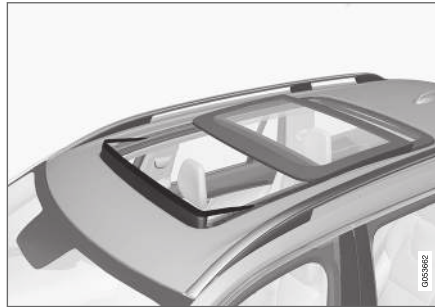
! IMPORTANT

- Do not open the panoramic roof when load carriers are fitted.
- Do not place any heavy objects on the panoramic roof.

! IMPORTANT

- Remove ice and snow before opening the panoramic roof.
- Do not operate the panoramic roof if it has frozen closed.

Wind deflector



The panorama roof has a wind deflector that is raised when the panorama roof is in the open position.

Related information

- Operating the panorama roof* (p. 156)
- Automatic closing of the panoramic roof's* sun blind (p. 158)
- Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds (p. 148)
- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 242)

- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 219)
- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 245)

Operating the panorama roof*

The panoramic roof and sun blind are operated with a control in the roof panel and both are equipped with pinch protection.

WARNING

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position **0**, and then take the remote control key with you when leaving the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

IMPORTANT

- Do not open the panoramic roof when load carriers are fitted.
- Do not place any heavy objects on the panoramic roof.

IMPORTANT

- Remove ice and snow before opening the panoramic roof.
- Do not operate the panoramic roof if it has frozen closed.

In order that the panoramic roof and the sun blind can be operated, the car's electrical system must be in ignition position **I** or **II**.

It can also be operated using the remote control key, keyless opening* with the door handle or the central locking button.

WARNING

Check that children or other passengers are not at risk of crushing when all the windows are closed with:

- keyless closing*
- central locking button
- remote control key.

IMPORTANT

Check that the panoramic roof is properly closed when closing.

The movement of the roof is stopped if the control is released during manual operation, or when the glass reaches the comfort position⁴ or the maximum opening or closing position. The movement of both panoramic roof and sun blind are also stopped if the roof control is operated again in the opposite direction to the current direction of movement.

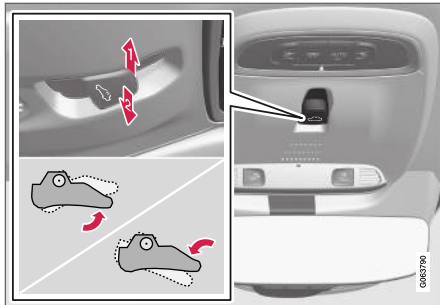
The panoramic roof and the sun blind are also equipped with pinch protection.

NOTE

For manual opening, the sun blind must be fully open before the panoramic roof can be opened. When the procedure is reversed, the panoramic roof must be fully closed before the sun blind can be fully closed.

⁴ Comfort position is a position where wind noise and resonance noise are at a comfortably low level while driving.

Open and close ventilation position



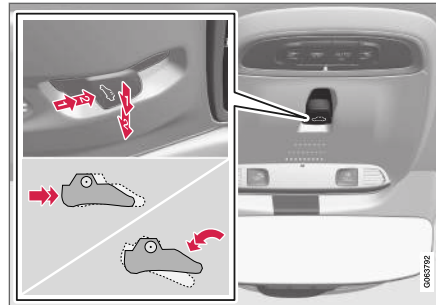
Ventilation position, vertically at the rear edge.

- 1** Open by pressing the control upward once.
- 2** Close by pressing the control downward once.

When the ventilation position is selected the front glass cover is raised at its rear edge. If the sun blind is fully closed when ventilation position is selected, then it opens automatically approx. 50 mm (approx. 2 inches).

The sun blind follows automatically if the panoramic roof is closed from ventilation position.

Fully open and close the panoramic roof using the roof control



- 1** Operation, manual mode
- 2** Operation, automatic mode

Manual operation

1. To open the sun blind - press the control backwards to the position for manual opening.
2. Open the panoramic roof to comfort position - press the control backwards a second time to the position for manual opening.
3. Open the panoramic roof to maximum position - press the control backwards a third time to the position for manual opening.

Close by repeating the preceding procedure in reverse order - press the control forward/downward to the manual closing position instead.

Automatic operation

1. Open the sun blind to maximum position - press the control backward to the position for automatic opening and release.
2. Open the panoramic roof to comfort position - press the control backwards a second time to the position for automatic opening and release.
3. Open the panoramic roof to maximum position - press the control backwards a third time to the position for automatic opening and release.

Close by repeating the preceding procedure in reverse order - press the control forward/downward to the automatic closing position instead.

Automatic operation - rapid opening or closing

The panoramic roof and sun blind can be opened or closed simultaneously:

- To open - press the control rearward to the automatic operation position twice and release.
- To close - press the control forward/downward to the automatic operation position twice and release.

Related information

- Panorama roof* (p. 154)
- Automatic closing of the panoramic roof's* sun blind (p. 158)



- Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds (p. 148)
- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 242)
- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 219)
- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 245)

Automatic closing of the panoramic roofs* sun blind

With this function, the sun blind is closed automatically 15 minutes after the car has been locked if it is parked in hot weather. This is in order to lower the passenger compartment temperature and protect the car's upholstery from sun-fading.

The function is deactivated when the car is supplied from the factory and can be activated or deactivated in the centre display.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** → **Locking**.

Select **Auto Close Sunroof Curtain** to activate/deactivate.

NOTE

The sun blind is also closed when all windows are closed with:

- keyless closing*
- central locking button
- remote control key.

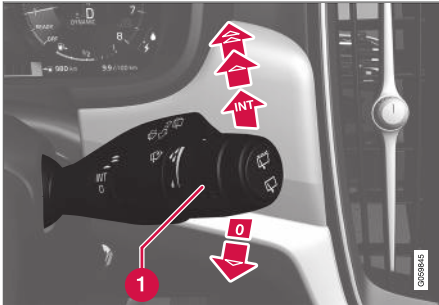
Related information

- Panorama roof* (p. 154)
- Operating the panorama roof* (p. 156)

- Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds (p. 148)
- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 242)
- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 219)
- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 245)

Using windscreen wipers

The windscreen wiper cleans the windscreen. Different settings for the windscreen wiper are made with the right-hand steering wheel stalk switch.



Right-hand stalk switch.

- 1 Thumbwheel, used to set rain sensor sensitivity and wiper swipe frequency.

Single sweep

- Lower the stalk switch and release to make one sweep.

Windscreen wipers off

- 0 Move the stalk switch to position 0 to switch off the windscreen wipers.

Intermittent wiping

- INT Set the number of sweeps per time unit with the thumbwheel when intermittent wiping is selected.

Continuous wiping

- Raise the stalk switch for the wipers to sweep at normal speed.
- Raise the stalk switch further for the wipers to sweep at high speed.

! IMPORTANT

Before activating the wipers - ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen in, and that any snow or ice on the windscreen and rear window is scraped away.

! IMPORTANT

Use plenty of washer fluid when the wipers are cleaning the windscreen. The windscreen must be wet when the windscreen wipers are operating.

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 160)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 162)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 164)

- Heated windscreen wiper nozzles* (p. 160)
- Using the rain sensor's memory function (p. 161)
- Using the rear window wiper and washer (p. 163)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 609)
- Wiper blades in service position (p. 608)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 607)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 606)

Heated windscreen wiper nozzles*

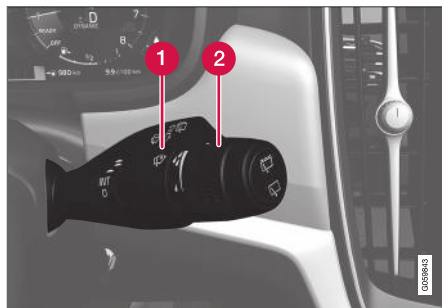
The washer nozzles are heated automatically in cold weather to prevent the washer fluid from freezing.

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 160)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 162)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 164)
- Using the rain sensor's memory function (p. 161)
- Using the rear window wiper and washer (p. 163)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 609)
- Wiper blades in service position (p. 608)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 607)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 606)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 159)


Using the rain sensor

The rain sensor automatically starts the windscreen wipers based on how much water it detects on the windscreen. Rain sensor sensitivity can be adjusted with the thumbwheel on the right-hand stalk switch.



Right-hand stalk switch.

- 1 Rain sensor button
- 2 Thumbwheel sensitivity/frequency

When the rain sensor is activated, the rain sensor symbol  is shown in the driver display.

Activating the rain sensor


When activating the rain sensor, the car must be running or the electrical system in ignition position **I** or **II** while the windscreen wiper stalk switch must be in position **0** or in the position for a single sweep.

Activate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button .

Press the stalk switch down for the wipers to make an extra sweep.

Turn the thumbwheel upward for higher sensitivity and downward for lower sensitivity. An extra sweep is made when the thumbwheel is turned upward.

Deactivating the rain sensor

Deactivate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button  or moving the stalk switch up to another wiper program.

The rain sensor is deactivated automatically in ignition position **0** or when the engine is switched off.

The rain sensor is deactivated automatically when wiper blades are set in service position. The rain sensor is reactivated when service mode has been deactivated.

IMPORTANT

The windscreen wipers could start and be damaged in an automatic car wash. Deactivate the rain sensor while the car is running or when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **I** or **II**. The symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

Related information

- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 162)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 164)
- Heated windscreen wiper nozzles* (p. 160)
- Using the rain sensor's memory function (p. 161)
- Using the rear window wiper and washer (p. 163)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 609)
- Wiper blades in service position (p. 608)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 607)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 606)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 159)

Using the rain sensor's memory function

The rain sensor automatically starts the windscreen wipers based on how much water it detects on the windscreen.

Activating/deactivating the memory function

The memory function for the rain sensor can be activated in such a way that the rain sensor button does not need to be depressed each time the car is started:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car → Wipers**.
3. Select **Rain Sensor Memory** to activate/deactivate the memory function.

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 160)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 162)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 164)
- Heated windscreen wiper nozzles* (p. 160)
- Using the rear window wiper and washer (p. 163)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 609)
- Wiper blades in service position (p. 608)

- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 607)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 606)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 159)

Using windscreen and headlamp washers

Windscreen and headlamp washers clean the windscreen and headlamps. Windscreen and headlamp washers are started using the right-hand stalk switch.

Starting windscreen and headlamp washers



Washing function, right-hand stalk switch.

- Move the right-hand stalk switch toward the steering wheel to start the windscreen and headlamp washers.
 - > The windscreen wipers will make several more sweeps once the stalk switch has been released.


! **IMPORTANT**

Avoid activating the washer system when it is frozen or the washer reservoir is empty, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the pump.

Headlamp washing*

To save fluid, the headlamps are washed automatically at a defined interval when the headlamps are switched on.

Reduced washing

If only approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remains in the reservoir and the message **Washer fluid Level low, refill**, together with the  symbol, is shown in the driver display, then the supply of washer fluid to the headlamps is switched off. This is to prioritise cleaning the windscreen and the visibility through it. The headlamps are only washed if main or dipped beam is switched on.

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 160)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 164)
- Heated windscreen wiper nozzles* (p. 160)
- Using the rain sensor's memory function (p. 161)
- Using the rear window wiper and washer (p. 163)

- Filling washer fluid (p. 609)
- Wiper blades in service position (p. 608)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 607)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 606)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 159)

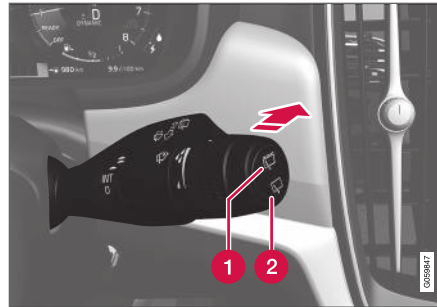
Using the rear window wiper and washer



Rear window wiper and washer clean the rear window. Washing/wiping is started and settings are changed by means of the right-hand steering wheel stalk switch.

Activating the rear window wiper and washer

i NOTE

The rear window wiper is equipped with over-heating protection which means that the motor is switched off if it overheats. The rear window wiper works again after a cooling-down period.



- Wiper blades in service position (p. 608)
 - Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 607)
 - Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 606)
 - Using windscreen wipers (p. 159)
- 1 Select  for intermittent wiping with the rear window wiper.
 - 2 Select  for continuous speed with the rear window wiper.
- Move the right-hand steering wheel stalk switch forward to start rear window washing and wiping.

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 160)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 162)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 164)
- Heated windscreen wiper nozzles* (p. 160)
- Using the rain sensor's memory function (p. 161)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 609)

Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing

Engaging reverse gear while the windscreen wipers are on initiates rear window wiping. The function stops when reverse gear is disengaged.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car → Wipers**.
3. Select **Auto Rear Wiper** to activate/deactivate wiping when reversing.

If the rear window wiper is already on at continuous speed, no change is made.

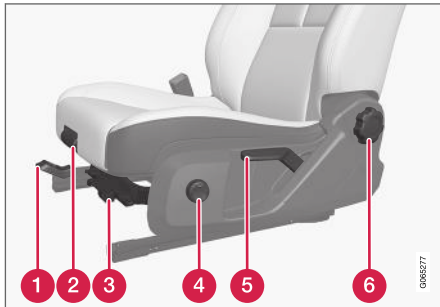
Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 160)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 162)
- Heated windscreen wiper nozzles* (p. 160)
- Using the rain sensor's memory function (p. 161)
- Using the rear window wiper and washer (p. 163)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 609)
- Wiper blades in service position (p. 608)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 607)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 606)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 159)

SEATS AND STEERING WHEEL

Manual front seat

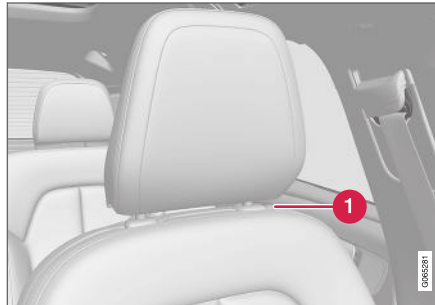
The car's front seats have different setting options for optimum seating comfort.



- 1 Adjust the seat forward/backward by lifting the handle and adjusting the distance to the steering wheel and pedals. Check that the seat is locked after the position has been adjusted.
- 2 Change the length* of the seat cushion by pulling the lever up and moving the seat cushion forward/backward by hand.
- 3 Raise/lower the front edge of the seat cushion* by pumping up/down¹.
- 4 Change the lumbar support* by pressing the button upward/downward/forward/back.

¹ Only applies to the driver's seat.

- 5 Raise/lower the seat by means of pumping the lever up/down.
- 6 Change the backrest inclination by turning the control knob.



- 1 You can manually adjust the height of the head restraints by pressing in the button.

⚠ WARNING

Adjust the position of the driver's seat before setting off, never while driving. Make sure that the seat is in locked position in order to avoid personal injury in the event of heavy braking or an accident.

Related information

- Power front seat* (p. 167)
- Adjusting the power front seat* (p. 167)

- Storing memory function in power operated front seat* (p. 168)
- Using stored memory in a powered front seat (p. 169)
- Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat* (p. 169)
- Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat (p. 170)

Power front seat*

The car's front seats have different setting options for optimum seating comfort. The power seat can be moved forwards/backwards and upwards/downwards, and the backrest inclination can be changed. The lumbar support can be adjusted upwards/downwards/forwards/backwards. Seat cushion length is adjusted manually*.

The power seats have overload protection which is tripped if a seat is blocked by an object. If this happens, remove the object and then operate the seat again.

The seat can be adjusted for a period of time after unlocking the door without the engine running. Seat adjustment can always be performed when the engine is running. Adjustment can also be performed for a period of time after the engine has been switched off.

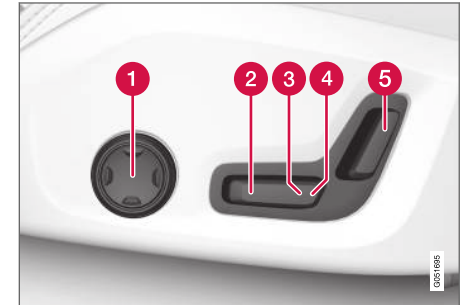
Related information

- Manual front seat (p. 166)
- Adjusting the power front seat* (p. 167)
- Storing memory function in power operated front seat* (p. 168)
- Using stored memory in a powered front seat (p. 169)
- Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat* (p. 169)

- Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat (p. 170)

Adjusting the power front seat*

Set to desired sitting position using the control on the front seat's seating section. Activate and use the lumbar support control by pressing the four-way button.



- 1 Activate and use the lumbar support control by pressing the button upwards/downwards/forwards/backwards.
- 2 Raise/lower the seat cushion front edge by adjusting the control up/down.
- 3 Raise/lower the seat by means of adjusting the control up/down.
- 4 Move the seat forward/backward by adjusting the control forward/backward.
- 5 Change the backrest inclination by adjusting the control forward/backward.

Only one movement (forward/back/up/down) can be made at a time.



- ◀◀ The backrests of the front seats cannot be lowered fully forward.



- 1 You can manually adjust the height of the head restraints by pressing in the button.

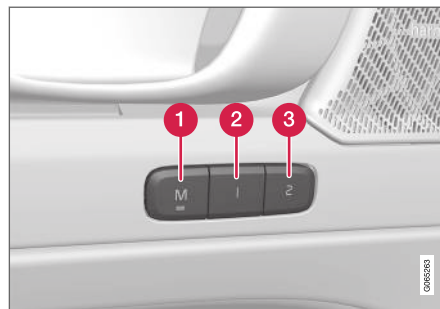
Related information

- Manual front seat (p. 166)
- Power front seat* (p. 167)
- Storing memory function in power operated front seat* (p. 168)
- Using stored memory in a powered front seat (p. 169)
- Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat* (p. 169)
- Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat (p. 170)

Storing memory function in power operated front seat*

The memory function stores settings for the seat and door mirrors*.

It is possible to store two different settings with the memory function. The memory function's* keypad is located on the driver's door.



- 1 Button **M** for storing settings.
- 2 Memory button
- 3 Memory button

Store setting

1. Adjust seat and door mirrors to the desired position.
2. Press and hold the **M** button depressed. The light indicator in the button illuminates.

3. Within three seconds, press and hold the **1** or **2** button.
 - > When the position has been stored in the selected memory button an acoustic signal sounds and the light indicator in the **M** button extinguishes.

If none of the memory buttons is depressed within three seconds then the **M** button extinguishes and no storing takes place.

The seat must be adjusted again before a new memory can be set.

Related information

- Manual front seat (p. 166)
- Power front seat* (p. 167)
- Adjusting the power front seat* (p. 167)
- Using stored memory in a powered front seat (p. 169)
- Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat* (p. 169)
- Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat (p. 170)

Using stored memory in a powered front seat

The memory function stores settings for the seat and the door mirrors*.

Using a stored setting

A stored setting can be used with the front door either open or closed:

Open front door

- Depress one of the memory buttons **1** or **2** with a short press. Seat and door mirrors move and then stop at the positions stored in the selected memory button.

Closed front door

- Hold one of the memory buttons **1** or **2** depressed until seat and door mirrors stop in the positions that are stored in the selected memory button.

If the memory button is released, the movement of the seat and door mirrors will be stopped.

WARNING

- Because the driver's seat can be adjusted with the ignition off, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.
- Movement of the seat can be STOPPED at any time by pressing any button on the power seat control panel.
- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- Make sure there is nothing under the seats when they are being adjusted.

Related information

- Manual front seat (p. 166)
- Power front seat* (p. 167)
- Adjusting the power front seat* (p. 167)
- Storing memory function in power operated front seat* (p. 168)
- Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat* (p. 169)
- Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat (p. 170)

Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat*

For increased comfort, you can adjust the length of the seat cushion*.

Adjusting the seat cushion

Seat cushion length can be adjusted by using the control on the front of the seat.



Control for seat cushion adjustment.

1. Grip the handle **1** on the front of the seat and pull upwards.
2. Adjust the length of the seat cushion.
3. Release the handle and make sure that the seat cushion has reached the correct position.

Related information

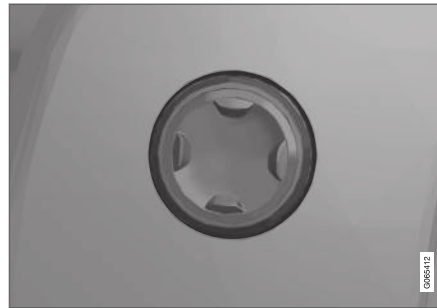
- Manual front seat (p. 166)
- Power front seat* (p. 167)



- Adjusting the power front seat* (p. 167)
- Storing memory function in power operated front seat* (p. 168)
- Using stored memory in a powered front seat (p. 169)
- Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat (p. 170)

Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat

To adjust lumbar support, the four-way control* on the seat can be used.



Four-way control, located on the side of the seat's seating section.

4-way lumbar support provides options to adjust the lumbar support. Use it by pressing the four-way button located on the side of the seat's seating section. The lumbar support can be adjusted forwards/backwards and upwards/downwards.

Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat

To adjust the lumbar support:

1. Press the four-way button (round) upwards/downwards to move the lumbar support upwards/downwards.

2. Press the front section of the four-way button to increase lumbar support.
3. Press the rear section of the four-way button to decrease lumbar support.

Related information

- Manual front seat (p. 166)
- Power front seat* (p. 167)
- Adjusting the power front seat* (p. 167)
- Storing memory function in power operated front seat* (p. 168)
- Using stored memory in a powered front seat (p. 169)
- Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat* (p. 169)

Lowering the backrests in the rear seat

The rear seat's backrest is divided into two parts. The two parts can be folded forward individually.

⚠ WARNING

- Adjust the seat and fix it before driving away. Take care when adjusting the seat. Uncontrolled or careless adjustment can lead to trapping injuries.
- When loading long objects, they must always be strapped in securely to avoid injury and damage during sudden braking.
- Always switch off the engine and apply the parking brake when loading and unloading the car.
- For cars with automatic gearbox, set the gear selector in **P** to prevent it from being moved by mistake.

! IMPORTANT

There must be no objects on the rear seat when the backrest is to be folded down. The seat belts must not be connected either. Otherwise there is a risk of damaging the rear seat upholstery.

! IMPORTANT

The armrest* for the centre seat must be raised before lowering the seat.

If the car has private locking, the tailgate must be closed before lowering the seat.

i NOTE

The front seats may need to be pushed forwards, and/or the backrests adjusted upwards, in order that the rear backrests can be fully folded forward.

Lowering the backrest

Car with electronic folding



If the car is equipped with electronic folding of the rear seat* there are buttons located in the

cargo area. The backrests can also be lowered manually.

⚠ WARNING

Pay attention that people are not at risk of being trapped during the automatic folding of the rear seat. Since this takes place automatically on the press of a button, no one must be on or too close to the rear seat.

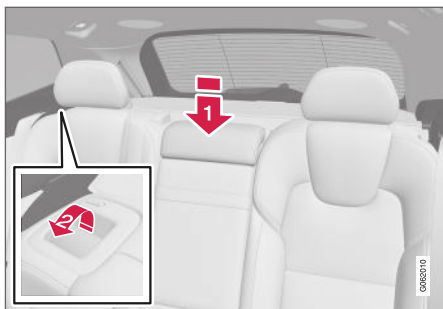
To facilitate folding of the rear seat, the car must be stationary and the tailgate open.



For electronically controlled folding of backrests:

1. Ensure that there are no occupants or objects in the rear seat.
2. Lower the centre seat's head restraint manually.
3. Hold the button for folding depressed. The buttons are marked **L** and **R** for left and right-hand backrest sections respectively.
4. The backrests are lowered automatically to horizontal position. The head restraints are also lowered automatically.

To lower the backrest manually:



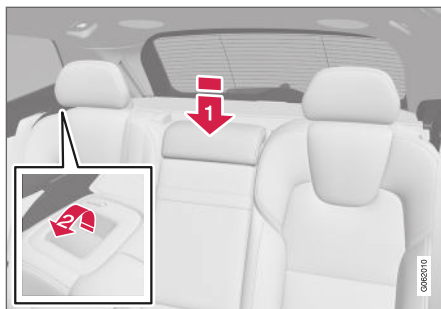




1. Lower the centre head restraint manually .
2. Pull the handles located in the car's left and right-hand rear seat backrests forward .
3. The backrest disengages from the lock and is automatically lowered to the horizontal position.

Car without electronic folding

The rear seat consists of two parts:

- The right-hand seat and centre seat are folded as one unit.
- The left-hand seat is folded separately.



1. Lower the centre head restraint manually .
2. Pull the handles located in the car's left and right-hand rear seat backrests forward .
3. The backrest disengages from the lock and needs to be lowered manually to the horizontal position.

Raising takes place in reverse order.

WARNING

When the backrest has been raised, the red indicator should no longer be showing. If it is still showing then the backrest is not locked in place.

WARNING

Check that the backrests and head restraints in the rear seat are locked properly after being folded up.

The head restraints of the outer seats must always be raised when there are passengers on any of the rear seats.

Raising the backrest

Raising the backrest to upright position is carried out manually:

1. Move the backrest up/down manually.
2. Press the backrest until the lock engages.
3. The head restraint is raised manually.
4. If necessary, raise the centre seat's head restraint.

Related information

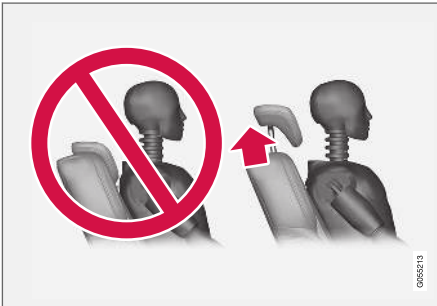
- Adjusting the head restraints in the rear seat (p. 173)

Adjusting the head restraints in the rear seat

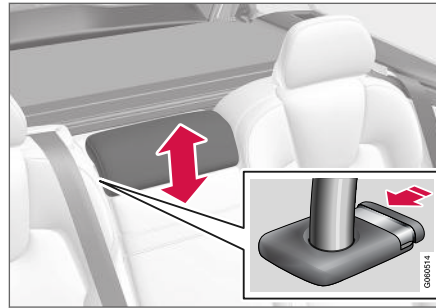
Adjust the centre seat head restraint according to the height of the passenger. Fold down the outer seat head restraints* to improve rearward visibility.

Adjust the centre seat head restraint according to the height of the passenger.

Adjusting the head restraint, centre seat



The centre seat's head restraint must be adjusted according to the passenger's height so that, if possible, the whole of the back of the head is covered. Slide it up manually as required.

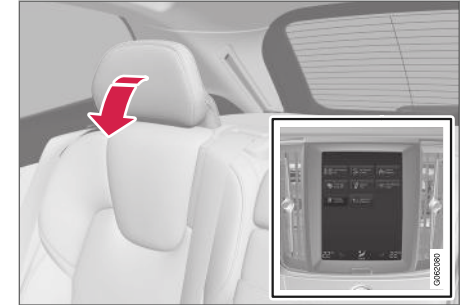


To lower the head restraint, the button (see illustration) must be depressed while the restraint is carefully moved down.

WARNING

The centre seat head restraint must be in its lowest position when the centre seat is not used. When the centre seat is used, the head restraint must be correctly adjusted to the height of the passenger so that it covers the whole of the back of the head if possible.

Electrical lowering of the rear seat's outer head restraints*



The outer head restraints can be retracted via the centre display's function view. You can lower the head restraints in ignition position **0**.



Press the **Headrest Fold** button to activate/deactivate lowering.

Move the head restraint back manually until a click is heard.

WARNING

Do not lower the outer head restraints if there are passengers in any of the outer rear seats.

WARNING

The head restraint must be in locked position after being folded up.

Related information

- Lowering the backrests in the rear seat (p. 171)

Steering wheel controls and horn

The steering wheel houses the horn and controls for e.g. the driver support systems and voice recognition.



Keypads and paddles* in the steering wheel.

- 1** Controls for driver support systems².
- 2** Paddle shifter* for manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox.
- 3** Controls for voice recognition and menu, message and phone handling.

Horn



The horn is located in the centre of the steering wheel.

Related information

- Steering lock (p. 175)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 175)

² Speed Limiter*, Cruise Control, Adaptive Cruise Control*, Distance Warning* and Pilot Assist*.

Steering lock

The steering lock makes steering difficult if the car is e.g. taken unlawfully. A mechanical noise can be perceived when the steering lock locks or unlocks.

Activating the steering lock

The steering lock is activated when the car is locked from the outside and the engine is switched off. If the car is left unlocked then the steering lock will lock automatically after a while.

Deactivating the steering lock

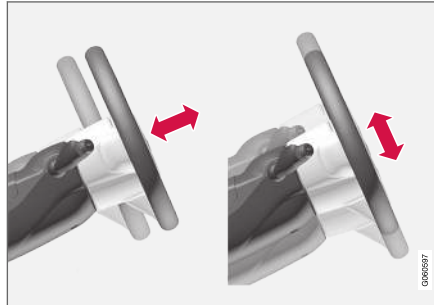
The steering lock is deactivated when the car is unlocked from outside. If the car is not locked, the steering lock will deactivate if the remote control key is inside the passenger compartment and the car is started by turning the start knob clockwise to unlock the steering lock.

Related information

- Steering wheel controls and horn (p. 174)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 175)

Adjusting the steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted in different positions.

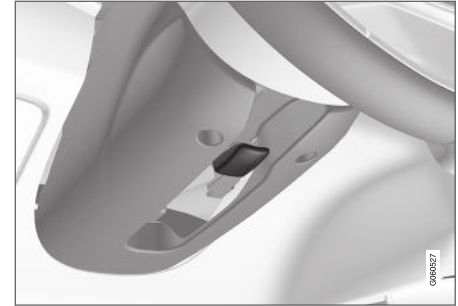


The steering wheel can be adjusted for height and for depth.

WARNING

Adjust the steering wheel and fix it before driving away. The steering wheel must never be adjusted while driving.

With speed related power steering the level of steering force can be adjusted. Steering force is regulated according to the car's speed in order to give the driver enhanced road responsiveness.



Lever for steering wheel adjustment.

1. Push the lever forwards to release the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position that suits you.
3. Pull the lever back to fix the steering wheel in place. If the lever is stiff, press the steering wheel lightly at the same time as you move the lever back.

Related information

- Steering lock (p. 175)
- Steering wheel controls and horn (p. 174)

CLIMATE

Climate

The car is equipped with manual or electronic* climate control. The climate control system cools or heats as well as dehumidifies the air in the passenger compartment.

All climate control system functions are controlled from the centre display and physical buttons in the centre console.

Some functions for the rear seat can also be controlled from the climate controls* at the rear of the tunnel console.

Related information

- Climate zones (p. 178)
- Climate control - sensors (p. 179)
- Perceived temperature (p. 179)
- Controlling climate control with voice recognition (p. 180)
- Parking climate* (p. 203)
- Heater* (p. 211)
- Air quality (p. 181)
- Air distribution (p. 184)
- Climate controls (p. 190)

Climate zones

The number of climate zones that the car is divided into governs the options for setting different temperatures for different parts of the passenger compartment.

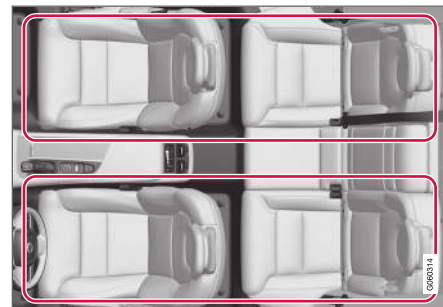
1-zone climate



Climate zones with 1-zone climate.

With 1-zone climate, the temperature in the passenger compartment is set jointly for the left and right-hand sides.

2-zone climate*



Climate zones with 2-zone climate.

With 2-zone climate, the temperature in the passenger compartment can be set separately for the left and right-hand sides.

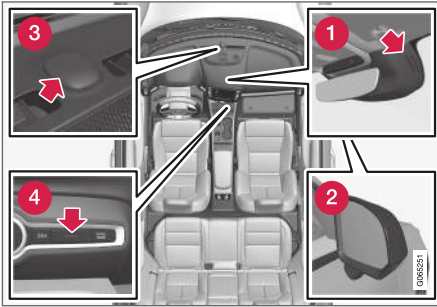
Related information

- Climate (p. 178)

Climate control - sensors

The climate control system has a number of sensors to help control the climate in the car.

Sensor location



- 1 Moisture sensor - in the casing by the interior rearview mirror.
- 2 Outside temperature sensor - in the right-hand door mirror.
- 3 Sun sensor - on the upper side of the instrument panel.
- 4 Temperature sensor for the passenger compartment - by the physical buttons in the centre console.

i NOTE

Do not cover or block the sensors with clothing or other objects.

With the Interior Air Quality System* there is also an air quality sensor that is fitted into the climate control system air intake.

Related information

- Climate (p. 178)
- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 182)

Perceived temperature

The climate control system regulates the climate in the passenger compartment based on the perceived temperature, not on actual temperature.

The temperature you select in the passenger compartment corresponds to the physically perceived temperature as affected by factors such as the ambient temperature, air speed, humidity, solar radiation, etc. in and around the car at the time.


The system includes a sun sensor which detects on which side the sun is shining into the passenger compartment. This means that the temperature can differ between the right and left-hand side's air vents despite the controls being set for the same temperature on both sides.

Related information

- Climate (p. 178)

Controlling climate control with voice recognition¹

Voice recognition commands for the climate control system to e.g. change temperature, activate a heated seat* or change fan level.

Press  and say one of the following commands:

- **"Climate"** - starts a dialogue for climate control and shows examples of commands.
- **"Set temperature to X degrees"** - sets the desired temperature.
- **"Raise temperature"/"Lower temperature"** - raise/lower the temperature setting one step.
- **"Sync temperature"** - synchronises the temperature for all climate zones in the car with the temperature set for the driver's side.
- **"Air on feet"/"Air on body"** - opens the desired air flow.
- **"Air on feet off"/"Air on body off"** - closes the desired air flow.
- **"Set fan to max"/"Turn off fan"** - changes the air flow to **Max/Off**.
- **"Raise fan speed"/"Lower fan speed"** - raises/lowers the fan level one step.
- **"Turn on auto"** - activates automatic climate regulation.

- **"Air condition on"/"Air condition off"** - activates/deactivates the air conditioning.
- **"Recirculation on"/"Recirculation off"** - activates/deactivates the air circulation.
- **"Turn on defroster"/"Turn off defroster"** - activates/deactivates defrosting of windows and door mirrors.
- **"Turn on max defroster"/"Turn max defroster off"** - activates/deactivates the max defroster.
- **"Turn on electric defroster"/"Turn off electric defroster"** - activates/deactivates the heated windscreen*.
- **"Turn on rear defroster"/"Turn off rear defroster"** - activates/deactivates the heated rear window and door mirrors.
- **"Turn steering wheel heat on"/"Turn steering wheel heat off"** - activates/deactivates the heated steering wheel*.
- **"Raise steering wheel heat"/"Lower steering wheel heat"** - raises/lowers the setting for the heated steering wheel* one step.
- **"Turn on seat heat"/"Turn off seat heat"** - activates/deactivates the heated seat*.
- **"Raise seat heat"/"Lower seat heat"** - raises/lowers the setting for the heated seat* one step.

- **"Turn on seat ventilation"/"Turn off seat ventilation"** - activates/deactivates the seat ventilation*.
- **"Raise seat ventilation"/"Lower seat ventilation"** - raises/lowers the setting for the ventilated seat* one step.

Related information

- Climate (p. 178)
- Voice recognition (p. 128)
- Using voice recognition (p. 129)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 131)

¹ Applies to certain markets.

Air quality

The materials selected for the passenger compartment and the air cleaning system ensure that the air quality in the passenger compartment is high.

Materials in the passenger compartment

The interior of the passenger compartment is designed to be pleasant and comfortable, even for people with contact allergies and for asthma sufferers.

Tested materials have been developed in order to minimise the quantity of dust in the passenger compartment and to contribute to making the passenger compartment easier to keep clean.

The carpets in both the passenger compartment and the cargo area are removable and easy to remove and clean.

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo to clean the interior.

Air cleaning system

In addition to the passenger compartment filter, Clean Zone Interior Package* and the Interior Air Quality System* also help to maintain high air quality in the passenger compartment.

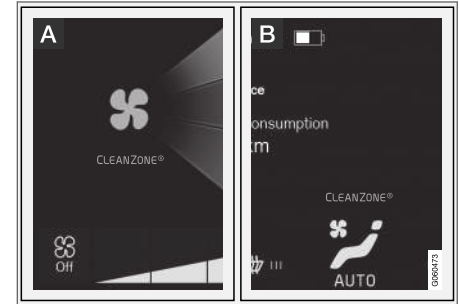
Related information

- Climate (p. 178)
- Clean Zone* (p. 181)

- Clean Zone Interior Package* (p. 182)
- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 182)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 183)

Clean Zone*

The Clean Zone function checks and indicates whether or not all conditions have been met for good air quality in the passenger compartment.



- A** The indicator is visible in the climate view in the centre display.
- B** The indicator is visible in the climate row when the climate view is not open.

If the conditions have not been met then the **Clean Zone** text is white. When all conditions have been met, this is indicated by the text changing colour to blue.

Conditions that are checked:

- That all doors and the tailgate are closed.
- That all side windows and the panorama roof* are closed.
- That the air quality system Interior Air Quality System* is activated.



- That the ventilation fan is activated.
- That the air recirculation is deactivated.

i NOTE

Clean Zone does not indicate that the air quality is good. It only indicates that the conditions for good air quality have been met.

Related information

- Air quality (p. 181)
- Clean Zone Interior Package* (p. 182)
- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 182)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 183)

Clean Zone Interior Package*

Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) comprises a series of modifications that keep the passenger compartment even clearer from allergy and asthma-inducing substances.

The following is included:

- An enhanced fan function that means that the fan starts when the car is unlocked with the remote control key. The fan fills the passenger compartment with fresh air. The function starts when required and is disengaged automatically after a time or when one of the passenger compartment doors is opened. The amount of time the fan runs is reduced gradually due to reduced need up until the car is 4 years old.
- The fully automatic air quality system Interior Air Quality System (IAQS).

Related information

- Air quality (p. 181)
- Clean Zone* (p. 181)
- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 182)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 183)

Interior Air Quality System*

Interior Air Quality System (IAQS) is a fully automatic air quality system that separates gases and particles to reduce the levels of odours and contaminants in the passenger compartment. IAQS is a part of the Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) and cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone.

If the air quality sensor senses that the outside air is contaminated, the air intake is closed and air recirculation is activated.

i NOTE

The air quality sensor must always be enabled to ensure the best air in the passenger compartment.

In a cold climate recirculation is limited so as to prevent misting.

In the event of misting, the defrost functions for windscreen, side windows and rear window should be used.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the air quality sensor* (p. 183)
- Air quality (p. 181)
- Clean Zone* (p. 181)

- Clean Zone Interior Package* (p. 182)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 183)

Activating and deactivating the air quality sensor*

The air quality sensor is part of the fully automatic air quality system Interior Air Quality System (IAQS).

It is possible to set whether the air quality sensor should be activated/deactivated.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Air Quality Sensor** to activate/deactivate the air quality sensor.

Related information

- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 182)

Passenger compartment filter

All air entering the car's passenger compartment is cleaned with a filter.

Replacing the passenger compartment filter

To maintain high climate system performance, the filter must be changed at regular intervals. Follow the Volvo Service Programme for the recommended replacement intervals. If the car is used in a severely contaminated environment, it may be necessary to replace the filter more often.

NOTE

There are different types of passenger compartment filter. Make sure that the correct filter is fitted.

Related information

- Air quality (p. 181)
- Clean Zone* (p. 181)
- Clean Zone Interior Package* (p. 182)
- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 182)

Air distribution

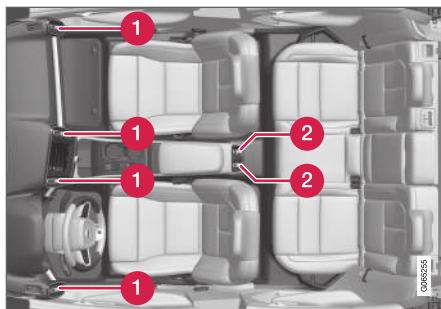
The climate control system distributes the incoming air via a number of different vents in the passenger compartment.

Automatic and manual air distribution

With auto-regulated climate control² running the air distribution takes place automatically. If necessary, the air distribution can be controlled manually.

Adjustable air vents

Some of the air vents in the car are adjustable, which means that you can open/close the vent to aim the air flow.



Location of adjustable air vents in the passenger compartment.

- ❶ With 1-zone climate - four on the instrument panel.
- ❷ Addition with 2-zone climate* - two at the rear of the tunnel console.

i NOTE

At low ambient temperatures, no air is distributed from the adjustable air vents on the rear of the tunnel console.

Related information

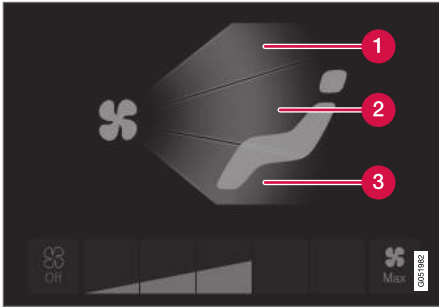
- Climate (p. 178)
- Changing air distribution (p. 185)
- Opening, closing and aiming the air vents (p. 185)

- Table of air distribution options (p. 187)

² Not available with manual climate control.

Changing air distribution

The air distribution can be changed manually if required.



The air distribution buttons in the climate view.

- 1 Air distribution - windscreen defroster vents
- 2 Air distribution - air vents in instrument panel and centre console
- 3 Air distribution - air vents in the floor

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Press one or more of the air distribution buttons in order to open/close the corresponding air flow.
 - > The air distribution is changed and the buttons illuminate/extinguish.

Related information

- Air distribution (p. 184)
- Opening, closing and aiming the air vents (p. 185)
- Table of air distribution options (p. 187)

Opening, closing and aiming the air vents

Some air vents in the passenger compartment can be opened, closed and aimed individually. If the car's outer vents are aimed at the side windows then misting can be eliminated.

If the car's outer vents are aimed inwards then, in a hot climate, a comfortable environment is obtained in the passenger compartment.

Opening and closing the air vents



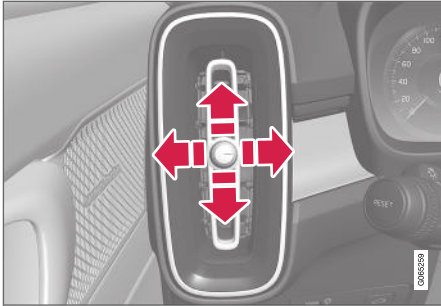
Air vent knob³.

- Turn the knob in order to open/close the air flow from the vent.

The air flow is at maximum when the marking on the knob is in vertical position.

³ The illustration is schematic - nozzle design varies depending on location.

◀ Aiming the air vents



The air vent's lever³.

- Move the lever sideways/vertically in order to aim the air flow from the nozzle.





Related information

- Air distribution (p. 184)
- Changing air distribution (p. 185)
- Table of air distribution options (p. 187)





³ The illustration is schematic - nozzle design varies depending on location.

Table of air distribution options

The air distribution can be changed manually if required. The following options are available for setting.

	Air distribution	Purpose
	If all air distribution buttons are deselected in manual mode, the climate control system returns to automatically regulated climate control. With manual climate control it is not possible to deselect all air distribution buttons.	
	Main air flow from the defroster vents. Some air flows from other air vents.	Counteracts misting and icing in a cold and humid climate (to achieve this, fan level must not be low).
	Main air flow from the air vents in the instrument panel. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides efficient cooling in a hot climate.
	Main air flow from the air vents at the floor. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides heat or cooling to the floor.



	Air distribution	Purpose
	<p>Main air from the defroster vents and air vents in the instrument panel. Some air flows from other air vents.</p>	<p>Provides good comfort in hot and dry climates.</p>
	<p>Main air flow from the defroster vents and air vents at the floor. Some air flows from other air vents.</p>	<p>Provides good comfort and good demisting in a cold or humid climate.</p>
	<p>Main air flow from the air vents in the instrument panel and air vents at the floor. Some air flows from other air vents.</p>	<p>Provides good comfort in sunny weather with cool outdoor temperatures.</p>
	<p>Main air flow from the defroster vents, from the air vents in the instrument panel and air vents at the floor.</p>	<p>Gives balanced comfort in the passenger compartment.</p>

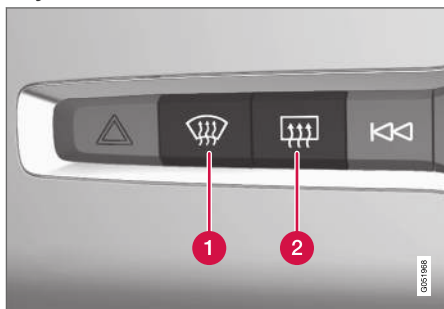
Related information

- Air distribution (p. 184)
- Opening, closing and aiming the air vents (p. 185)
- Changing air distribution (p. 185)

Climate controls

The climate control system's functions are controlled from physical buttons in the centre console, the centre display and the climate controls at the rear of the tunnel console*.

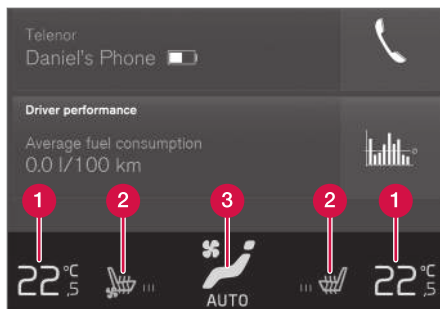
Physical buttons in centre console



- 1 Button for heated windscreen* and max defroster.
- 2 Button for heated rear window and door mirrors.

Climate row in centre display

The most common climate functions can be regulated from the climate row.



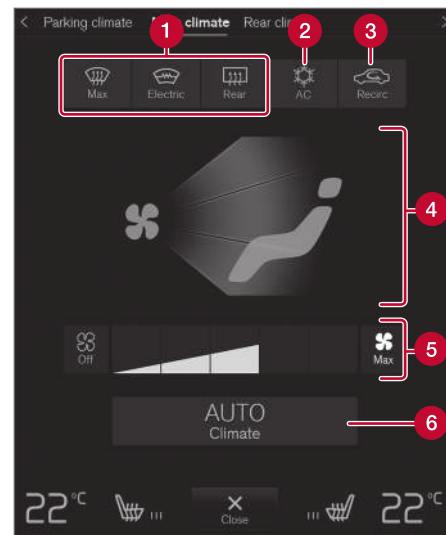
Climate row with 2-zone climate. Climate row with 1-zone climate has some differences regarding the location of the controls.

- 1 Temperature controls for driver and passenger side⁴.
- 2 Controls for heated* and ventilated* driver and front passenger seat, as well as heated steering wheel⁵.
- 3 Button for access to the climate view. The graphic on the button shows activated climate settings.

Climate view in centre display

Main climate

In addition to the climate row's functions, other main climate functions can also be controlled in the **Main climate** tab.



- 1 **Max, Electric, Rear** - Controls for defrosting the windows and door mirrors.
- 2 **AC** - Controls for air conditioning.
- 3 **Recirc** - Controls for air recirculation.
- 4 Controls for air distribution.

⁴ With 1-zone climate, the control is to the right of the centre button. With manual climate control, the set temperature is not shown, simply a scale.

⁵ With 1-zone climate, the buttons are located to the far left and right in the climate row.

- 5 Fan control for front seat (with 2-zone climate, the control is shared with the rear seat).
- 6 **AUTO** - Auto regulating the climate⁶.

Parking climate*

The car's parking climate control can be regulated in the **Parking climate** tab.

Climate controls at rear of tunnel console*

If the car is equipped with heated rear seats* there are physical buttons at the rear of the tunnel console for controlling them.

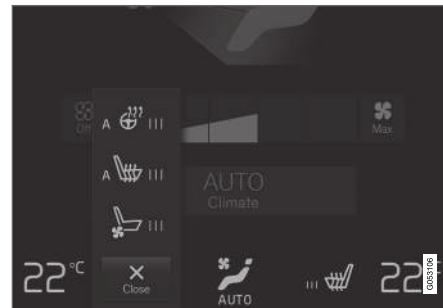
Related information

- Climate (p. 178)
- Activating and deactivating heated front seat* (p. 191)
- Activating and deactivating heated rear seat* (p. 192)
- Activating and deactivating ventilated front seat* (p. 193)
- Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel* (p. 194)
- Activating auto climate control (p. 195)
- Activating and deactivating air recirculation (p. 195)

- Activating and deactivating max defroster (p. 196)
- Activating and deactivating the heated wind-screen* (p. 198)
- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 199)
- Regulating fan level for front seat (p. 200)
- Synchronising temperature (p. 202)
- Activating and deactivating air conditioning (p. 202)

Activating and deactivating heated front seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.



Steering wheel and seat buttons in the climate row⁷.

1. Press the left or right-hand side's steering wheel and seat button in the climate row in the centre display in order to open the controls for seat and steering wheel.

If the car is not equipped with ventilated seats or heated steering wheel, the button for heated seats is immediately available in the climate row.

⁶ Not available with manual climate control.

⁷ With 1-zone climate, the buttons are located to the far left and right in the climate row.

- ◀◀ 2. Repeatedly press the button for heated seats in order to change between the four levels: **Off, High, Medium** and **Low**.
- > The level changes and the button shows the set level.

⚠ WARNING

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats. Otherwise they may suffer burn injuries.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 190)
- Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat* (p. 192)

Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated seats should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start in the event of low ambient temperature.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Driver Seat Heating Level** and **Auto Passenger Seat Heating Level** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated driver's and passenger seat.
4. Select **Low, Medium** or **High** to select level after the function has been activated.

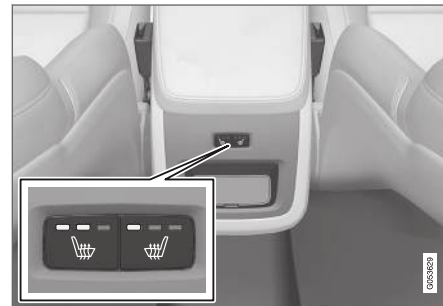
Related information

- Climate controls (p. 190)
- Activating and deactivating heated front seat* (p. 191)

Activating and deactivating heated rear seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

Activating and deactivating the heated rear seat from the rear seat



Buttons for heated seats at the rear of the tunnel console.

- Press repeatedly on the left or right-hand side's physical buttons for heated seats at the rear of the tunnel console to switch between the four levels: **Off, High, Medium** and **Low**.
- > The level changes and the LEDs in the button show the set level.

⚠ WARNING

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats. Otherwise they may suffer burn injuries.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 190)

Activating and deactivating ventilated front seat*

The seats can be ventilated to provide increased comfort in a hot climate, for example.

The ventilation system consists of fans in the seats and backrests that draw air through the seat upholstery. The cooling effect increases the cooler the passenger compartment air becomes. The system can be activated when the engine is running.



Steering wheel and seat buttons in the climate row⁸.

1. Press the left or right-hand side's steering wheel and seat button in the climate row in the centre display in order to open the controls for seat and steering wheel.

If the car is not equipped with heated seats or heated steering wheel, the button for ventilated seats is immediately available in the climate row.
2. Repeatedly press the button for ventilated seats in order to change between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** and **Low**.
 - > The level changes and the button shows the set level.

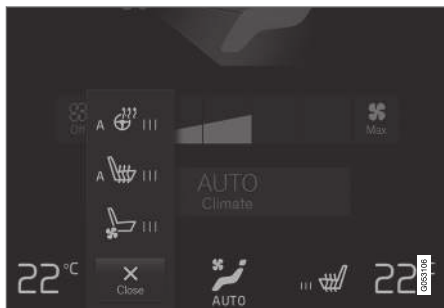
Related information

- Climate controls (p. 190)

⁸ With 1-zone climate, the buttons are located to the far left and right in the climate row.

Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold.



Steering wheel and seat buttons in the climate row⁹.

1. Press the driver's side steering wheel and seat button in the climate row of the centre display in order to open the controls for seat and steering wheel.

If the car is not equipped with heated seats or ventilated seats, the button for heated steering wheel is immediately available in the climate row.

2. Repeatedly press the button for heated steering wheel in order to change between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** and **Low**.
> The level changes and the button shows the set level.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 190)
- Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel* (p. 194)

Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold. It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated steering wheel should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start in the event of low ambient temperature.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Steering Wheel Heating Level** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated steering wheel.
4. Select **Low**, **Medium** or **High** to select level after the function has been activated.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel* (p. 194)

⁹ With 1-zone climate, the buttons are located to the far left and right in the climate row.

Activating auto climate control¹⁰

With auto climate control activated, multiple climate functions are controlled automatically.



Auto-regulation button in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Give a short or long press on **AUTO**.
 - Short press - air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution are controlled automatically.
 - Long press - air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution are controlled automatically, temperature and fan speed are changed to standard settings: 22 °C (72 °F) and level **3**.
 - > Auto-regulation of the climate is activated and the button illuminates.

NOTE

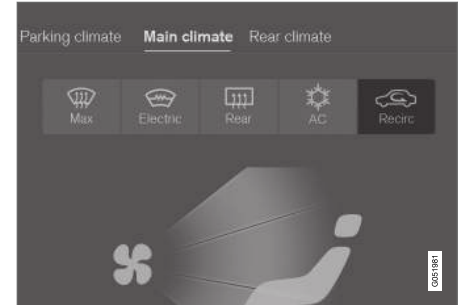
Temperature and fan speed can be changed without deactivating the automatically-regulated climate control system. The automatically-regulated climate control system is deactivated when the air distribution is changed manually or when maximum defroster is activated.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 190)

Activating and deactivating air recirculation

Air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust gases, etc. from outside the car by the climate control system reusing the air in the passenger compartment.



The air recirculation button in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Press **Recirc**.
 - > Air recirculation is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

IMPORTANT

If the air in the car is recirculated for too long then there is a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

¹⁰ Not available with manual climate control.



i NOTE

It is not possible to activate air recirculation when max defroster is activated.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 190)
- Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation (p. 196)

Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation

Air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust gases, etc. from outside the car by the climate control system reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

It is possible to set whether the air recirculation timer should be activated/deactivated. When the timer is activated, air recirculation is automatically switched off after 20 minutes.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Recirculation Timer** to activate/deactivate the air recirculation timer.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating air recirculation (p. 195)

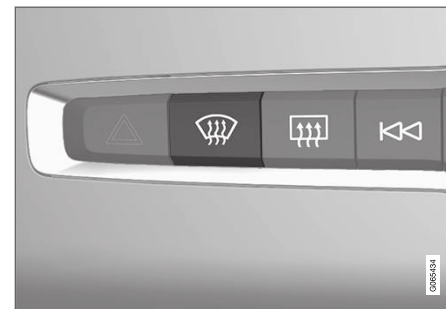
Activating and deactivating max defroster

Max defroster is used to quickly remove mist and ice from windows.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre console

There is a physical button in the centre console for quick access to max defroster.

With heated windscreen* the max defroster can only be activated individually from the climate view in the centre display.



Physical button in the centre console.

Cars without heated windscreen:

- Press the button.
 - > Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

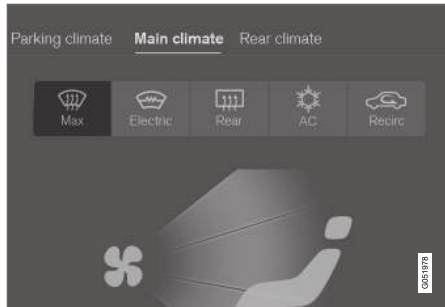
Cars with heated windscreen:

- Press the button repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:
 - Activated heated windscreen
 - Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
 - Deactivated.
- > Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

i NOTE

Max defroster starts with a certain delay in order to avoid a short increase in fan level if the heated windscreen is deactivated by two quick presses of the button.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre display



Max defroster button in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Press **Max**.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Max defroster deactivates auto-regulation of the climate and air recirculation, activates air conditioning and changes the fan level to **5** and the temperature to **HI**.

When max defroster is deactivated, the climate control system returns to the previous settings.

i NOTE

Changing the fan level to **5** increases the noise level.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 190)

Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen*

A heated windscreen is used to quickly remove mist and ice from the window.

Activating and deactivating heated windscreen from centre console

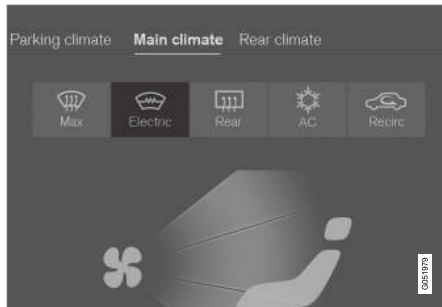
In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated windscreen.



Physical button in the centre console.

- Press the button repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:
 - Activated heated windscreen
 - Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
 - Deactivated.
- > Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated windscreen from centre display



The button for heated windscreen in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Press **Electric**.
 - > Heated windscreen is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

i NOTE

A triangular area at the end of each side of the windscreen is not electrically heated, where de-icing may take longer.

i NOTE

The heated windscreen may affect the performance of transponders and other communication equipment.

i NOTE

If the heated windscreen is activated when the Start/Stop function has auto-stopped the engine then the engine will be restarted.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 190)
- Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated windscreen* (p. 199)

Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated windscreen*

A heated windscreen is used to quickly remove mist and ice from the window.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated windscreen should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start when there is a risk of ice or misting on the windscreen/window. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Front Defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated windscreen.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen* (p. 198)

Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre console

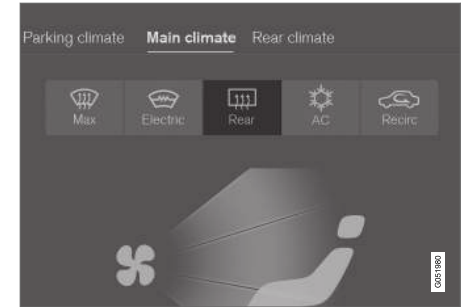
In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated rear window and door mirrors.



Physical button in the centre console.

- Press the button.
 - > Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre display



The button for heated rear window and door mirrors in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Press **Rear**.
 - > Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 190)
- Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 200)

Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start when there is a risk of ice or misting on the windscreen/window. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

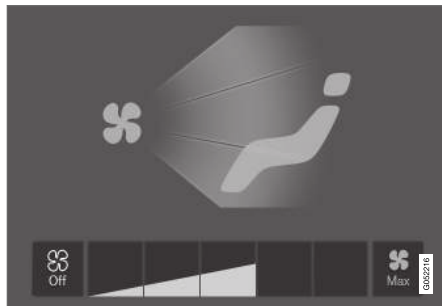
1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Rear Defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 199)

Regulating fan level for front seat¹¹

The fan can be set to several different automatically controlled¹² fan speeds for the front seat.



Fan control buttons in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Tap on the desired fan level, **Off**, **1-5** or **Max**.
 - > Fan level is changed and the buttons for the selected level illuminate.

IMPORTANT

If the fan is fully switched off then the air conditioning is not engaged, which results in a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

NOTE

The climate control system automatically adjusts the air flow within the selected fan level based on requirements. This means that the fan speed may change even though the fan level is the same.¹³

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 190)

¹¹ For 2-zone climate, also rear seat.

¹² Only with electronic climate control.

¹³ Only with electronic climate control.

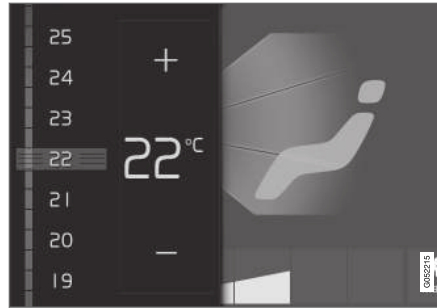
Regulating temperature for front seat¹⁴

The temperature can be set to the desired number of degrees¹⁵ for the front seat's climate zones.



Temperature buttons in the climate row^{16, 15}.

1. Press the left or right-hand side temperature button in the centre display's climate row to open the controls.



Temperature control^{17, 15}.

2. Regulate the temperature by either of the following:
 - drag the control to the desired temperature, or
 - press +/- to raise/lower the temperature gradually.

> The temperature changes and the button shows the set temperature¹⁵.

i NOTE

Heating or cooling cannot be hastened by selecting a higher or lower temperature than the actual desired temperature.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 190)

¹⁴ For 2-zone climate, also rear seat.

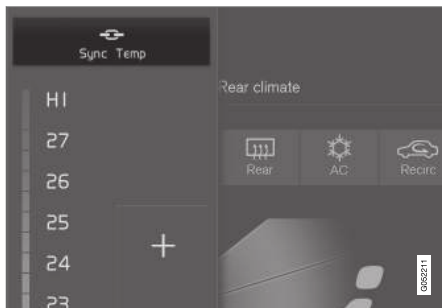
¹⁵ With manual climate control, the set degrees are not shown, simply a scale.

¹⁶ With 1-zone climate, the temperature button is to the right of the centre button.

¹⁷ With 1-zone climate, the control is horizontal instead of vertical.

Synchronising temperature¹⁸

The temperature in the car's different climate zones can be synchronised with the temperature set on the driver's side.



Synchronisation button on the driver's side temperature controls.

1. Press the driver's side temperature button in the centre display's climate row in order to open the controls.
2. Press **Synchronise temperature**.
 - > The temperature for all zones in the car is synchronised with the temperature set for the driver's side and the synchronisation symbol is shown adjacent to the temperature button.

The synchronisation is stopped by means of a further press on **Synchronise temperature** or

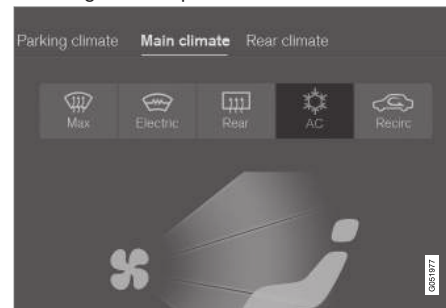
by means of changing the temperature settings for a climate zone other than the driver's.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 190)

Activating and deactivating air conditioning

The air conditioning cools and dehumidifies incoming air as required.



The air conditioning button in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Press **AC**.
 - > The air conditioning is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

When the air conditioning is activated, the climate control system automatically controls starting and switching off as required.

¹⁸ Not available with 1-zone climate.

i NOTE

Close all side windows and the panoramic roof* for air conditioning to work optimally.

i NOTE

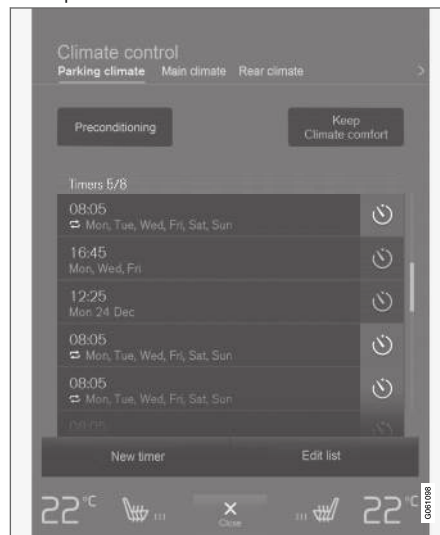
It is not possible to activate the air conditioning when the fan control is in **Off** position.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 190)

Parking climate*

The climate of the car's passenger compartment can be preconditioned or maintained while the car is parked.



Preconditioning and climate comfort retention are controlled from the **Parking climate** tab in the centre display's climate view.

Related information

- Climate (p. 178)
- Preconditioning* (p. 204)

- Climate comfort when parking* (p. 208)
- Symbols and messages for parking climate control* (p. 210)

Preconditioning*

Preconditioning of the car before driving can reduce wear and energy needs during a journey. Preconditioning can use direct start or be set via the timer.

The function utilises several systems in different cases:

- The parking heater*, in a cold climate, warms up both the passenger compartment and the engine.
- When it is warm, the ventilation cools the passenger compartment by blowing in air from outside the car.

i NOTE

During preconditioning of the passenger compartment, the car works to reach comfort temperature and not the temperature set in the climate control system.

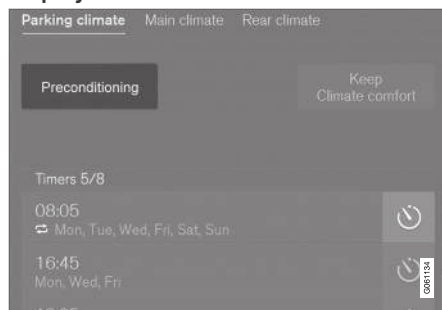
Related information

- Parking climate* (p. 203)
- Starting/stopping preconditioning* (p. 204)
- Preconditioning time setting* (p. 205)

Starting/stopping preconditioning*

Preconditioning warms the passenger compartment and engine or airs the passenger compartment before driving. The function can use direct start from the centre display or a mobile phone.

Starting/stopping from the centre display



Preconditioning button in the **Parking climate** tab in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Press **Preconditioning**.
 - > Preconditioning is started/switched off and the button is illuminated/extinguished.

i NOTE

The car's doors and windows should be closed during the preconditioning of the passenger compartment.

! WARNING

Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a heater*:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow under the front part of the car can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Remember that the preconditioning can be started by a timer that has been set for a long time in advance.

Starting from the app*

Start of preconditioning and information about the selected settings can be managed from a device that has the Volvo On Call* app. Preconditioning heats the passenger compartment to a comfortable temperature or ventilates the passenger compartment by blowing in air from outside.

The passenger compartment can also be preconditioned with the car remote start function (Engine Remote Start - ERS)¹⁹ via the Volvo On Call* app.

Related information

- Parking climate* (p. 203)
- Preconditioning* (p. 204)
- Preconditioning time setting* (p. 205)

Preconditioning time setting*

The timer can be set so that the preconditioning is finished at a predetermined time.

The timer can handle up to 8 different settings for:

- A time on a single date
- A time on one or more days of the week, with or without repetition.

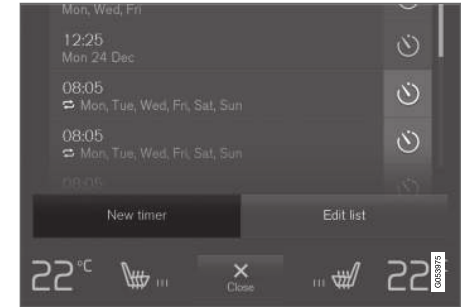
Related information

- Preconditioning* (p. 204)
- Adding and editing time setting for preconditioning* (p. 205)
- Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning* (p. 207)
- Removing time setting for preconditioning* (p. 207)

Adding and editing time setting for preconditioning*

The timer for preconditioning can manage up to 8 time settings.

Adding a time setting



The button to add a time setting in the **Parking climate** tab in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.

¹⁹ Certain markets.

- ◀ 3. Press **Add timer**.
 - > A pop-up window is shown.

i NOTE

It is not possible to add a time setting if there already are 8 settings entered for the timer. Delete a time setting in order to be able to add a new one.

- 4. Tap on **Date** to set the time for a single date.
 - Tap on **Days** to set the time for one or more days of the week.
 - With **Days**: Activate/deactivate repetition by ticking/unticking the box for **Repeat weekly**.
- 5. With **Date**: Select the date for preconditioning by scrolling the date list with the arrows.
 - With **Days**: Select the days of the week for preconditioning by tapping on the buttons for the days of the week.
- 6. Set the time when the preconditioning should be finished by scrolling with the arrows.
- 7. Tap on **Confirm** in order to add the time setting.
 - > The time setting is added to the list and is activated.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a heater*:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow under the front part of the car can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Remember that the preconditioning can be started by a timer that has been set for a long time in advance.

Editing a time setting

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Press the time setting that is to be changed.
 - > A pop-up window is shown.
4. Edit the time setting in the same way as described in "Adding a time setting" above.

Related information

- Preconditioning* (p. 204)
- Preconditioning time setting* (p. 205)
- Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning* (p. 207)

- Removing time setting for preconditioning* (p. 207)

Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning*

A time setting in the timer for preconditioning can be activated or deactivated based on need.



The timer buttons in the **Parking climate** tab in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Activate/deactivate a time setting by tapping on the timer button to the right of the setting.
 - > The time setting is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a heater*:

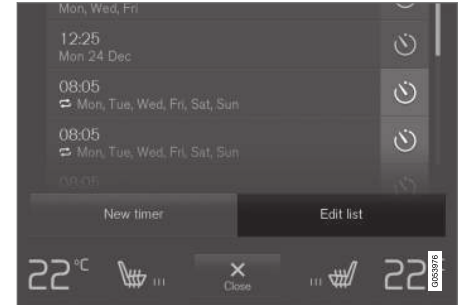
- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow under the front part of the car can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Remember that the preconditioning can be started by a timer that has been set for a long time in advance.

Related information

- Preconditioning* (p. 204)
- Preconditioning time setting* (p. 205)
- Adding and editing time setting for preconditioning* (p. 205)
- Removing time setting for preconditioning* (p. 207)

Removing time setting for preconditioning*



The button for editing the list/deleting the time setting in the tab **Parking climate** in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Press **Edit list**.
4. Press the delete icon to the right in the list.
 - > The icon changes to the text **Delete**.
5. Press **Delete** to confirm.
 - > The time setting is removed from the list.

Related information

- Preconditioning* (p. 204)
- Preconditioning time setting* (p. 205)



- Adding and editing time setting for preconditioning* (p. 205)
- Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning* (p. 207)

Climate comfort when parking*

The climate in the car's passenger compartment can be maintained while the car is parked, e.g. if the engine needs to be switched off but the driver or passenger(s) wants to remain in the car and maintain the level of climate comfort.

Starting climate comfort retention is only possible via direct start.

The function utilises several systems in different cases:

- Residual heat from the engine, in a cold climate, heats the passenger compartment to comfort temperature.
- When it is warm, the ventilation cools the passenger compartment by blowing in air from outside the car.

NOTE

Climate comfort retention is switched off when the car is locked from the outside to avoid using residual heat unnecessarily. Use of the function is intended to maintain climate comfort when driver or passengers remain inside the car.

Related information

- Parking climate* (p. 203)
- Starting and switching off climate comfort when parking* (p. 208)

Starting and switching off climate comfort when parking*

Climate comfort retention maintains the climate in the passenger compartment after driving. The function can use direct start from the centre display.



Button for climate comfort retention in the **Parking climate** tab in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Press **Keep climate comfort**.
 - > Climate comfort retention is started/switched off and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

i NOTE

It is not possible to start climate comfort retention if there is not enough residual heat in the engine to maintain the passenger compartment climate, or if the outside temperature is above approx. 20°C (68°F).

i NOTE

Climate comfort retention is switched off when the car is locked from the outside to avoid using residual heat unnecessarily. Use of the function is intended to maintain climate comfort when driver or passengers remain inside the car.

Related information





- Climate comfort when parking* (p. 208)

Symbols and messages for parking climate control*

A number of symbols and messages regarding parking climate control can be shown in the driver display.



This symbol illuminates in the driver display when the parking heater is active.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Parking climate Service required	Parking climate control is disengaged. Contact a workshop ^A to check the function as soon as possible.
	Parking climate Temporarily unavailable	Parking climate control is temporarily disengaged. If the problem persists for some time, contact a workshop ^A to check the function.
	Parking climate Unavailable Fuel level too low	Parking climate control cannot be activated when the fuel level is too low to start the parking heater*. Filling the vehicle's normal fuel tank.
	Parking climate Unavailable Charge level too low	Parking climate control cannot be activated if the charge level of the starter battery is too low to start the parking heater*. Charging the battery.

^A An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Parking climate* (p. 203)

Heater*

The heater helps the engine and passenger compartment reach the correct temperature before and during driving.

The heater has two subfunctions:

- Parking heater - heats the engine and passenger compartment, if necessary, when the parking climate control's preconditioning* is activated.
- Additional heater - heats the passenger compartment and engine, if necessary, during driving.

The heater is fuel-driven and is fitted inside the engine compartment.

i NOTE

When the heater is running, smoke may be emitted from under the front part of the car and a low hum may be heard. A ticking sound from the fuel pump may also be heard from the rear section of the car. This is perfectly normal.

Battery and charging

The heater is powered by the car's starter battery. If the charge level of the starter battery is too low, then the heater is switched off automatically and the driver display shows a message.

i NOTE

Make sure that there is enough charge in the battery if the heater needs to be used.

Fuel and refuelling



Warning label on fuel filler flap.

The heater uses fuel from the car's normal fuel tank.

If the car is parked on a steep hill, the front of the car should point downhill to ensure that there is a supply of fuel to the heater.

If the level in the fuel tank is too low then the heater is switched off automatically and the driver display shows a message.

i NOTE

Make sure there is enough fuel in the car's normal fuel tank if the heater needs to be used.

! WARNING

Fuel which spills out could be ignited. Switch off the fuel-driven heater before starting to refuel.



Check in the driver display that the heater is switched off. This symbol is lit when it is working as a parking heater.

Related information

- Climate (p. 178)
- Parking heater* (p. 212)
- Additional heater* (p. 213)

Parking heater*

The parking heater heats the passenger compartment as necessary before driving if the car's preconditioning is activated.

The parking heater is one of two subfunctions of the car's heater. The heater is fitted inside the engine compartment.



This symbol illuminates in the driver display when the parking heater is active.

i NOTE

When the heater is running, smoke may be emitted from under the front part of the car and a low hum may be heard. A ticking sound from the fuel pump may also be heard from the rear section of the car. This is perfectly normal.

The parking heater starts automatically if the parking climate's preconditioning* is activated and the passenger compartment needs to be heated up.

It switches off automatically when a set timer time or the heater's maximum run time expires, or if the car is restarted.

The heater's maximum running time is 40 minutes.

i NOTE

Make sure there is enough fuel in the car's normal fuel tank if the parking heater needs to be used.

Make sure that there is enough charge in the starter battery if the parking heater needs to be used.

! IMPORTANT

Repeated use of the parking heater combined with short journeys may discharge the battery and impair starting.

If the heater is used on a regular basis, then the car should be driven for the same amount of time that the heater is used in order to ensure that the car's battery is recharged with the same amount of energy as consumed by the parking heater. The parking heater is used for a maximum of 30 minutes each time.

! WARNING

Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a heater*:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow under the front part of the car can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Remember that the preconditioning can be started by a timer that has been set for a long time in advance.

! WARNING

If there is a smell of fuel, unusual amounts of smoke, black smoke, or unusual sounds coming from the parking heater, switch off the heater and, if possible, pull out its fuse. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair.

Related information

- Heater* (p. 211)
- Additional heater* (p. 213)

Additional heater*

The auxiliary heater helps to heat the passenger compartment and engine while driving.

The additional heater is one of two subfunctions of the car's heater. The heater is fitted inside the engine compartment.

i NOTE

When the heater is running, smoke may be emitted from under the front part of the car and a low hum may be heard. A ticking sound from the fuel pump may also be heard from the rear section of the car. This is perfectly normal.

The additional heater starts and is controlled automatically when heating is required while the car is being driven.

It switches off automatically when the car is switched off.

i NOTE

Make sure there is enough fuel in the car's normal fuel tank if the auxiliary heater needs to be used.

Related information

- Heater* (p. 211)
- Parking heater* (p. 212)

- Activating and deactivating automatic start of auxiliary heater (p. 213)

Activating and deactivating automatic start of auxiliary heater

The auxiliary heater helps to heat the passenger compartment and engine while driving.

It is possible to set whether automatic start for the additional heater should be activated/deactivated.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Additional Heater** to activate/deactivate automatic start of the additional heater.

i NOTE

Volvo recommends that the automatic start for the additional heater should be switched off for short driving distances.

Related information

- Additional heater* (p. 213)

KEY, LOCKS AND ALARM

Lock confirmation

When the car is locked or unlocked the direction indicators confirm that locking or unlocking was correctly performed.

Exterior indication

Locking

- The car's hazard warning flashers indicate locking by flashing and retracting the door mirrors¹.

Unlocking

- The car's hazard warning flashers indicate unlocking by two flashes and extending the door mirrors¹.

All doors, tailgate and bonnet must be closed to indicate the car is locked. If locking is performed with only the driver's door closed², the car will be locked but lock indication with hazard warning flashers will only occur after all doors, tailgate and bonnet have been closed.

Lock and alarm indicator



The lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel show the status of the alarm system.

Long flash indicates locking of the car. When the car is locked, this will be indicated by short, pulsating flashes.

Other indication

The home safe lighting and approach light functions also provide indication of locking and unlocking.

Indication in lock buttons

Front door



Lock buttons with indicator lamp in the front door.

An illuminated indicator lamp in the lock button of either front door indicates that all doors are locked. If any door is opened, the lamp will extinguish in both doors.

¹ Only for cars with retractable power door mirrors.

² Does not apply to cars equipped with the keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*).

In rear door*

An illuminated indicator lamp in the lock button for one of the doors indicates that the door in question is locked. If any door is unlocked, its lamp will extinguish while the others will continue to illuminate.

Related information

- Lock indication setting (p. 217)
- Approach light duration (p. 144)
- Using home safe lighting (p. 143)

Lock indication setting

It is possible to select how the car confirms locking and unlocking in the centre display settings menu.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Locking**.
3. Tap on **Visible Locking Feedback** to select when the car should give a visible response: at **Lock**, **Unlock**, **Both**, or to switch off the function.

Indication with retractable door mirrors*

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Mirrors and Convenience**.
3. Select **Fold Mirror When Locked** to activate or deactivate the function.

Related information

- Lock confirmation (p. 216)

Remote control key

The remote control key locks and unlocks the doors, tailgate and fuel filler flap. The remote control key needs to be inside the car for it to be started.



Remote control key³, on left, and button-less key (Key Tag)^{*}, on right.

The remote control key is not physically used when starting since the car is equipped with support for keyless starting (Passive Start) as standard. The key must be in the front part of the passenger compartment, e.g. in the driver's pocket or the tunnel console cup holder, for it to be possible to start the car.

³ The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

- ◀◀ Keyless locking and unlocking of doors, tailgate (Passive Entry*) is also available as an option. The key then has a range extending in a semicircle with a radius of approx. 1.5 metres (5 feet) out from the driver's door and approx. 1 metre (3 feet) out from the tailgate respectively.

With keyless starting and keyless locking and unlocking, the remote control key can be located anywhere in the passenger compartment or the cargo area and maintain the functionality to start the car.

Each one of the remote control keys included with the car can be linked to a driver profile with unique settings for the car. When a key with a certain profile is used, the car's settings are adapted according to the profile.




Button-less key (Key Tag)

For cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*, a slightly smaller, lighter and button-less key (Key Tag) is supplied. It works the same way as the normal remote control key when it comes to keyless starting and locking and unlocking⁴. It has no detachable key blade and the battery cannot be replaced.


Remote control key buttons



The remote control key has four buttons - one on the left-hand side and three on the right-hand side³.

-  **Locking** - Pressing the button locks the doors, tailgate and fuel filler flap and also arms the alarm*.
Press and hold to close all of the windows and the panorama roof* simultaneously.
-  **Unlocking** - Pressing the button unlocks the doors and tailgate and also disarms the alarm.
A longer press opens all windows simultaneously⁵.
-  **Tailgate** - Unlocks the tailgate only and disarms its alarm. On cars with power operated tailgate*, the tailgate is opened auto-

matically when the button is held depressed. The tailgate is also closed with a long press - acoustic warning signals sound.

-  **Panic function** - Used to attract attention in an emergency. Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press it twice within 3 seconds to activate the direction indicators and the horn. The function can be turned off with the same button once it has been active for at least 5 seconds. Otherwise the function switches off automatically after 3 minutes.

WARNING

If anyone is left in the car, make sure the power windows and panoramic roof* are de-energised by always taking the remote control key with you when you leave the car.

⁴ The key is waterproof to a depth of approx. 10 metres (30 feet) for up to 60 minutes, which makes it suitable for use in activities in and around water.

³ The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

⁵ The total airing function can be used, for example, to quickly air the car in hot weather.

i NOTE

Be aware of the risk of locking the remote control key/Key Tag in the car.

A remote control key/Key Tag left in the car will be deactivated when the car is locked and the alarm is armed using another valid key. The "Double lock" function is also deactivated.

The deactivated key is reactivated when the car is unlocked.

Interference

Remote control key functions for keyless starting and keyless locking and unlocking* can be disrupted by electromagnetic fields and screening.

i NOTE

Avoid storing the remote control key close to metal objects or electronic apparatus, e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers - preferably no closer than 10-15 cm (4-6 inches).

If there is still interference - use the remote control key's detachable key blade to unlock and then place the key in the backup reader in the storage compartment to disarm the car.

⁶ The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

⁷ If the car is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking then all side doors must be closed.

i NOTE

When the remote control key is positioned in the backup reader, make sure that there are no car keys, metal objects or electronic apparatus nearby (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers). Several car keys close to one another in the storage compartment may cause interference with each other.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 219)
- Remote control key range (p. 222)
- Replacing the battery in the remote control key (p. 222)
- Detachable key blade (p. 227)
- Red Key - restricted remote control key* (p. 226)
- Immobiliser (p. 230)

Locking and unlocking with the remote control key

The buttons on the remote control key can be used to lock and unlock all doors, the tailgate and the fuel filler flap simultaneously.

Locking with the remote control key

Remote control key⁶.

- Press the remote control key  button to lock.

The driver's door must be closed in order for the lock sequence to be activated⁷. If any of the other doors or the tailgate is open, then these are not locked and their alarms armed* until they are closed. The alarm's movement detectors* are activated when all the doors and the tailgate are closed and locked.



i NOTE

Be aware of the risk of locking the remote control key/Key Tag in the car.

A remote control key/Key Tag left in the car will be deactivated when the car is locked and the alarm is armed using another valid key. The "Double lock" function is also deactivated.


The deactivated key is reactivated when the car is unlocked.

Locking when the tailgate is open

i NOTE

If the car has been locked while the tailgate is open, be careful not to leave the remote control key in the cargo area when the tailgate is closed and the car is completely locked⁸.

Unlocking with the remote control key

- Press the remote control key  button to unlock.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within two minutes of unlocking, they are locked automatically. This function prevents the car from being left unlocked unintentionally.

When the remote control key does not work

i NOTE

Always try moving closer to the car and making another unlock attempt.

If it is not possible to lock or unlock with the remote control key, the battery may be discharged - in which case, lock or unlock the driver's door with the detachable key blade.

Related information

- Settings for remotely controlled and inside unlocking (p. 220)
- Unlocking the tailgate with the remote control key (p. 221)
- Remote control key (p. 217)
- Replacing the battery in the remote control key (p. 222)
- Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade (p. 229)

Settings for remotely controlled and inside unlocking

It is possible to select different sequences for remotely controlled unlocking.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Locking** → **Remote and Interior Unlock**.
3. Select option:
 - **All Doors**
- unlocks all doors simultaneously.
 - **Single Door**
- unlocks the driver's door. Unlocking all of the doors requires two presses on the remote control key's unlock button.

The settings made here also affect central unlocking via opening handles from the inside.

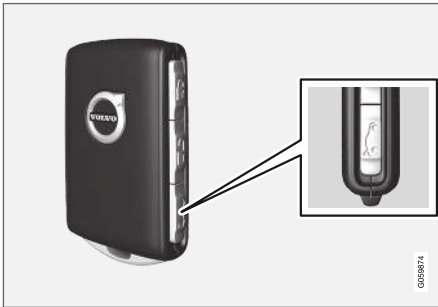
Related information


- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 219)
- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 245)


⁸ If the car is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking and the key is detected inside the car, the tailgate will not lock when it is closed.*

Unlocking the tailgate with the remote control key

It is possible to unlock just the tailgate by pressing a button on the remote control key.



Use the remote control key  button to unlock the tailgate and disable the alarm⁹.


1. Press the remote control key's  button.
 - > The lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel extinguishes in order to show that the alarm is not armed for the whole of the car.

The alarm's level and movement sensors and the sensors for opening the tailgate are disconnected.

The tailgate is unlocked, but remains closed while the doors remain locked and their alarm functions armed.

To open the tailgate, grip the rubber pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle and open the tailgate.

If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.

2. With the power operated tailgate option* - Long press (approx. 1.5 seconds) on the remote control key's  button
 - > The tailgate is unlocked and opened, while the doors remain locked and their alarm functions armed.

Related information



- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 219)
- Opening and closing the power*-operated tailgate (p. 248)

⁹ The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

Remote control key range

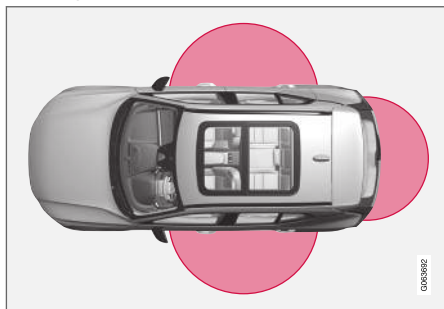
In order for the remote control key to work properly it needs to be within a certain distance from the car.

For manual use

The remote control key's functions for e.g. locking/unlocking that are activated by pressing on  or  have a range that extends approx. 20 metres (65 feet) from the car.

If the car does not verify a button being pressed - move closer and try again.

For keyless use¹⁰



For keyless use, a remote control key or the button-less key (Key Tag) must be within a semi-circular area with a radius of approx. 1.5 metres

(5 feet) on both long sides and approx. 1 metre (3 feet) from the tailgate.

NOTE

The remote control key functions may be disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc. The car can always be locked/unlocked with the key blade.

If the remote control key is removed from the car



If the remote control key is removed from the car when the engine is running, the warning message **Car key not found Removed from car** is shown in the driver display and an acoustic reminder sounds when the last door is closed.

The message extinguishes when the key is returned to the car, followed by a press of the right-hand keypad's **O** button, or when the last door is closed.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 217)
- Antenna locations for the start and lock systems (p. 244)
- Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces* (p. 241)

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

The battery in the remote control key needs to be replaced when it has become discharged.

NOTE

All batteries have a limited service life and must eventually be replaced (does not apply to Key Tag). The service life of the battery varies depending on how often the vehicle/key is used.

The battery for the remote control key should be replaced if:



the information symbol illuminates and the message **Car key battery low** **See Owner's manual** is shown in the driver display

and/or

- the locks repeatedly do not react to signals from the remote control key within 20 metres (65 feet) of the car.

NOTE

Always try moving closer to the car and making another unlock attempt.

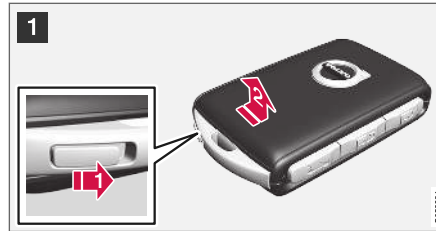
¹⁰ Only applies to cars equipped with the keyless locking/unlocking option (Passive Entry*).

The battery in the button-less key¹¹ (Key Tag) cannot be replaced - a new key can be ordered from an authorised Volvo workshop.

! IMPORTANT

A discharged Key Tag must be handed over to an authorised Volvo workshop. The key must be deleted from the car since it is still possible to use it to start the car via back-up start.

Opening the key and changing the battery



1 ➔ Hold the remote control key with the front visible and the Volvo logo facing the right way - slide the button at bottom edge by the key ring to the right. Slide the front side's shell a few millimetres upwards.

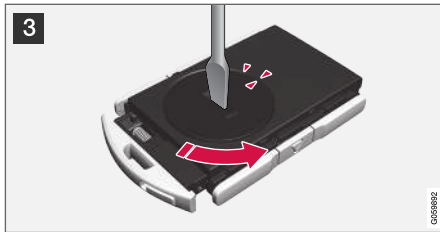
➔ The shell will then come free and can be lifted off the key.



2 ➔ Turn the key, move the button to the side and slide the back shell a few millimetres upwards.

➔ The shell will then come free and can be lifted off the key.

¹¹ This key is supplied with a car equipped with the keyless locking/entry option (Passive Entry*).



- 3** Use a screwdriver or similar to turn the battery cover anticlockwise until the markings meet at the **OPEN** text.

Carefully lift away the battery cover by pressing e.g. a fingernail into the recess.

Then prize the battery cover upwards.



- 4** The battery (+) side is facing upwards. Then carefully prize loose the battery as illustrated.

! **IMPORTANT**

Avoid touching new batteries and their contact surfaces with your fingers as this may impair their function.



- 5** Install a new battery with the (+) side up. Avoid touching the remote control key's battery contacts with your fingers.

1 Place the battery in the holder with the edge down. Then slide the battery forwards so that it fastens under the two plastic catches.

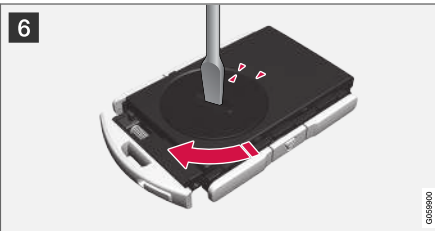
2 Press the battery down so that it fastens under the upper black plastic catch.

i **NOTE**

Use batteries with the designation CR2032, 3 V.

i NOTE

Volvo recommends that the batteries to be used in the remote control key fulfil UN Manual of Test and Criteria, Part III, sub-section 38.3. Batteries fitted in the factory or replaced by an authorised Volvo workshop fulfil the above criteria.



- 6** Refit the battery cover and turn it clockwise until the marking aligns with the **CLOSE** text.



- 7** **1** Reposition the rear side's shell and press it down until a clicking sound can be heard.
2 Then slide the shell back sedan.
 > A further click will indicate that the shell is properly positioned and securely attached.



- 8** **1** Turn the remote control key over and refit the front side's shell by pressing it down until a clicking sound can be heard.
2 Then slide the shell back sedan.
 > A further click will indicate that the shell is securely attached.

i IMPORTANT

Make sure that exhausted batteries are disposed of in a manner which is kind to the environment.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 217)

Ordering more remote control keys

The car is supplied with two remote control keys. A button-less key is supplied if the car is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*. Additional keys can be ordered.

A total of twelve keys can be programmed and used for one single car. If additional keys are ordered, additional driver profiles are added - one per new remote control key. This also applies for the key tag.

Loss of a remote control key

If you lose a remote control key then a new one can be ordered at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The remaining remote control keys must be taken to the workshop. The code of the missing key must be erased from the system as a theft prevention measure.

The current number of keys registered to the car can be checked via driver profiles in the centre display's top view, select **Settings** → **System** → **Driver Profiles**.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 217)

Red Key - restricted remote control key*

A Red Key makes it possible for the car's owner to set limitations for certain of the car's properties. The limitations are intended to encourage the car to be driven in a safe manner, e.g. when being loaned out.



For a Red Key, it is possible to define the car's maximum speed, set speed reminders and determine the loudspeaker system's maximum volume. In addition, some of the car's driver support systems will always be active. Other functions of the key are the same as those of a normal remote control key.

One or more Red Keys can be ordered from a Volvo retailer. A total of eleven keys with restrictions can be programmed and used for a single car - at least one must be a normal remote control key.

The restrictions are intended to act as measures to reduce the risk of accidents, thereby making it feel safer to hand over the car to e.g. young drivers, valet parking or a workshop. The holder of a Red Key cannot change settings defined for it - a regular remote control key is required for this.

Related information

- Red Key settings* (p. 227)
- Remote control key (p. 217)

Red Key settings*

The holder of a regular remote control key can define settings for Red Key. Certain driver support functions are always active.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **System → Driver Profiles → Red Key**.
 - > The following settings can be defined:
 - **Set Time Gap For Adaptive Cruise Control**
 - **Reduced Maximum Volume**
 - **Max Speed Limit**
 - **Speed Limit Warning**

Adaptive cruise control*:

- Setting at first use: Longest intervals

Reduced max. volume (On/Off):

- Setting at first use: On

Speed limiter (On/Off):

- Setting interval: 50-250 km/h (30-160 mph)
- Setting during first use is 120 km/h (75 mph)
- Increments: 1 km/h (1 mph)



The driver display shows the symbol and message

Red key Speed limitation cannot be exceeded.

Speed reminder (On/Off):

- Setting interval: 0-250 km/h (0-160 mph)
- Setting during first use is: 50, 70 and 90 km/h (30, 45 and 55 mph)
- Increments: 1 km/h (1 mph)
- Max. number of simultaneous reminders: 6

Driver support functions

The following driver support functions will always be active for the user of a Red Key:

- Blind Spot Information (BLIS)*
- Lane assistance (LKA)*
- Distance Warning*
- City Safety
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)*
- Road Sign Information*

Related information

- Red Key - restricted remote control key* (p. 226)

Detachable key blade

The remote control key contains a detachable key blade of metal with which a number of functions can be activated and some operations carried out.

The key blade's unique code is provided by authorised Volvo workshops, which are recommended when ordering new key blades.



◀ The key blade's application areas

Using the remote control key's detachable key blade:

- the left-hand¹² front door can be opened manually if central locking cannot be activated with the remote control key.
- all doors are emergency-locked.
- the rear doors' mechanical child safety locks can be activated and deactivated.

The button-less key¹³ (Key Tag) does not have a detachable key blade. If necessary, use the detachable key blade from the normal remote control key.

Detaching the key blade



- 1 Hold the remote control key with the front visible and the Volvo logo facing the right way - slide the button at bottom edge by the key ring to the right. Guide the front side's shell a few millimetres upwards.
- 2 The shell will then come free and can be lifted off the key.



- 2 Detach the key blade by angling it up.



- 3 Return the key blade to its intended position in the remote control key after use.
- 1 Refit the shell by pressing it downward until a clicking sound is heard.
- 2 Then slide the shell back.
 - > A further click will indicate that the shell is securely attached.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade (p. 229)
- Remote control key (p. 217)

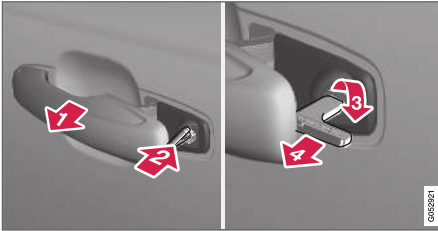
¹² This applies whether the car is left-hand drive or right-hand drive.

¹³ Supplied with cars equipped with the keyless locking/unlocking option (Passive Entry*).

Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade

Amongst other things, the detachable key blade can be used to unlock the car from the outside - e.g. if the remote control key's battery has become discharged.

Unlocking



- 1 Pull out the front door handle on the left-hand side¹⁴ to its end position so that the lock cylinder become visible.
- 2 Insert the key in the lock cylinder.
- 3 Turn clockwise 45 degrees so that the key blade is pointing straight back.
- 4 Turn the key back 45 degrees to its starting position. Remove the key from the lock cylinder and release the handle so that the rear section of the handle is resting against the car again.

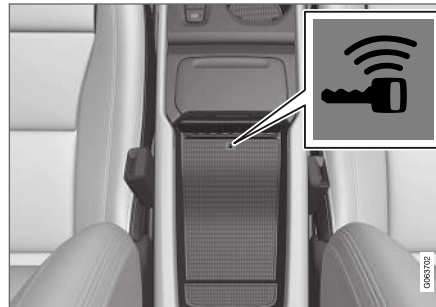
5. Pull out the handle.
 - > The door opens.

Locking will be performed in the same way, but with an anticlockwise turn 45 degrees instead of clockwise in step (3).

Switching off the alarm*

NOTE

When the door is unlocked using the key blade and is then opened, the alarm is triggered.



The backup reader's location in the storage compartment.

Deactivate the alarm as follows:

1. Place the remote control key on the key symbol in the backup reader in the tunnel console's storage compartment.
2. Press the start button.
 - > The control automatically returns to its starting position - the alarm signal stops and the alarm switches off.

Locking

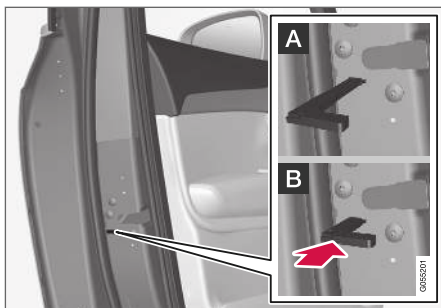
It is also possible to lock the car with the remote control key's detachable key blade e.g. in the event of a loss of power or if the key's battery has become discharged.

The left-hand front door can be locked with its lock cylinder and the detachable key blade.

Other doors have no lock cylinders and instead have a lock switch on the end of each door which must be depressed using the key blade - they are then mechanically locked/blocked to prevent them being opened from outside.

The doors can still be opened from the inside.

¹⁴ This applies whether the car is right-hand drive or left-hand drive.



Manual locking of the door. Not to be mixed up with the child safety locks.

- Remove the detachable key blade from the remote control key. Insert the key blade in the hole for lock reset and press the key in until the key bottoms, approx. 12 mm.

A The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

B The door is blocked against opening from the outside. To return to position A, the inner door handle must be opened.

The doors can also be unlocked with the unlock button on the remote control key or with the central locking button on the driver's door.

i NOTE

- A door's lock reset only locks that particular door - not all doors simultaneously.
- A manually locked rear door with activated manual or electric child safety locks cannot be opened from either the outside or the inside. A rear door that is locked in this way can only be unlocked with the remote control key or central locking button.

Related information

- Detachable key blade (p. 227)
- Activating and deactivating alarms* (p. 256)
- Replacing the battery in the remote control key (p. 222)
- Remote control key (p. 217)

Immobiliser

The electronic immobiliser is a theft protection system that prevents an unauthorised person from starting the car.

The car can only be started with the correct remote control key.

The following error message in the driver display is related to the electronic immobiliser:


Symbol	Message	Specification
	Car key not found See Owner's manual	Error reading the remote control key during starting - place the key on the key symbol in the storage compartment and try again.

Remote-controlled immobiliser with tracking system¹⁵

The car is fitted with a system which makes it possible to track and locate the car and to remotely activate the immobiliser, which prevents starting the engine. Contact your nearest Volvo dealer for more information and assistance with activating the system.

¹⁵ Only certain markets and together with Volvo On Call*.

The following error message in the driver display is related to the remote-controlled immobiliser with tracking system:

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Remotely immobilised Car not possible to start	The remote-controlled immobiliser with tracking system is activated. The car cannot be started. Contact Volvo On Call Service Centre.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 217)
- Ordering more remote control keys (p. 226)

Type approval for the remote control key system

Type approval for the car's remote key system can be seen in the following tables.


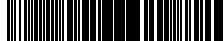
For more information about type approval, see support.volvocars.com.

Lock system keyless start (Passive Start) and keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*)





CEM marking for the remote control key system. For supplementary type approval numbers, see following tables.

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	Delphi Deutschland GmbH, 42367 Wuppertal hereby declares that this CV1-134TRX conforms to the essential property requirements and other relevant provisions contained in directive 2014/53/EU (RED). The full text of the EU declaration of conformity can be found at support.volvocars.com .	
Jordan	TRC/LPD/2014/250	
Serbia	P1614120100	
Argentina	CNC ID: C-14771	

Country/Area	Type approval	
Brazil	MT-3245/2015	 <p>0589-15-6830</p>  <p>(01) 0 7897843840961</p> <p>090812</p>
Indonesia	Nomor: 38301/SDPPI/2015	
Malaysia	RAAT/37A/0315/S(15-0663)	
Mexico	IFETEL: RLVDEVO15-0396	
Russia		 <p>0907905</p>
The United Arab Emirates	ER37847/15 DA0062437/11	



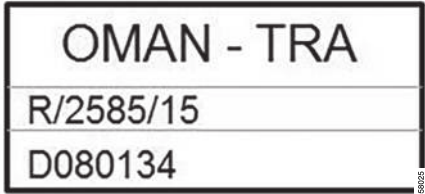
Country/Area	Type approval	
Namibia	TA-2016-02	
South Africa	TA-2014-1868	


Remote control key

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	<p>Huf Hülbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG hereby declares that this type of radio equipment HUF8423 conforms to directive 2014/53/EU.</p> <p>The full text of the EU declaration of conformity can be found at support.volvocars.com.</p> <p>Wavelength: 433.92 MHz</p> <p>Maximum radiated transmission power: 10 mW</p> <p>Manufacturer: Huf Hülbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany</p>	
Jordan	TRC/LPD/2015/104	

Country/Area	Type approval	
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 10668 ANRT 2015 Date d'agrément: 24/07/2015	
Mexico	IFETEL Marca: HUF Modelo (s): HUF8423 NOM-121-SCT1-2009 La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.	
Namibia	TA-2015-102	 <p>The logo for CRAN (Communications Regulatory Authority of Namibia) features a stylized satellite dish or signal icon on the left, followed by the acronym 'CRAN' in large, bold, black letters. Below the acronym, the full name 'Communications Regulatory Authority of Namibia' is written in a smaller font. A small vertical number '006337' is located in the bottom right corner of the logo area.</p>



Country/Area	Type approval	
Oman		 <p>OMAN - TRA R/2585/15 D080134</p>
Serbia		 <p>A I011 15</p>


Country/Area	Type approval	
South Africa	TA-2015-432	
The United Arab Emirates		<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; text-align: center;"> <p>TRA REGISTERED No: ER38970/15 DEALER No: DA36976/14</p> </div>

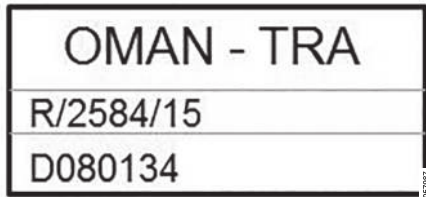
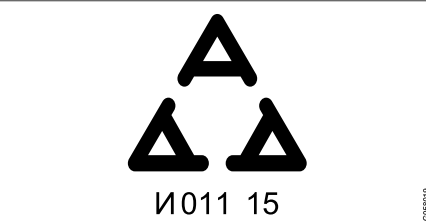
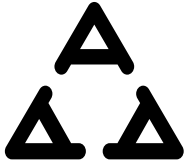
Key Tag

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	<p>Huf Hüsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG hereby declares that this type of radio equipment HUF8432 conforms to directive 2014/53/EU.</p> <p>The full text of the EU declaration of conformity can be found at support.volvocars.com.</p> <p>Wavelength: 433.92 MHz</p> <p>Maximum radiated transmission power: 10 mW</p> <p>Manufacturer: Huf Hüsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany</p>	
Jordan	TRC/LPD/2015/107	


KEY, LOCKS AND ALARM



Country/Area	Type approval	
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 10667 ANRT 2015 Date d'agrément: 24/07/2015	
Mexico	IFETEL Marca: HUF Modelo (s): HUF8432 NOM-121-SCT1-2009 La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.	
Namibia	TA-2015-103	

Country/Area	Type approval	
Oman		 <p>OMAN - TRA R/2584/15 D080134</p> <small>0207187</small>
Serbia		 <p> И011 15</p> <small>0208119</small>



Country/Area	Type approval	
South Africa	TA-2015-414	
The United Arab Emirates		<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; text-align: center;"> <p>TRA REGISTERED No: ER38971/15 DEALER No: DA36976/14</p> </div> <div style="font-size: 8px; text-align: right;">0018002</div>

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 217)

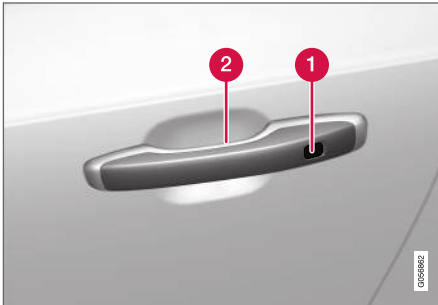
Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces*

If the car is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking, it is sufficient to have the remote control key in the vicinity e.g. in a pocket or a bag, making it more convenient to open the car if your hands are full.

Touch-sensitive surfaces

Door handle

The outside of the door handles contains a recess for locking, while the inside contains a touch-sensitive surface for unlocking.



- 1 Touch-sensitive recess for locking
- 2 Touch-sensitive surface for unlocking

i NOTE

It is important that only one touch-sensitive surface is activated at a time. Gripping the handle while touching the lock surface risks giving double commands. This means that the requested activity (locking/unlocking) will not be executed, or will be executed with a delay.

Tailgate

The tailgate handle has a rubberised pressure plate that is only used for unlocking.



i NOTE

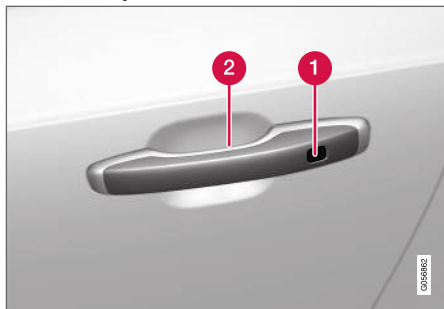
Be aware that the system may be activated in connection with car washing if the remote control key is in range.

Related information

- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 242)
- Keyless unlocking of the tailgate* (p. 243)

Keyless locking and unlocking*

The car is locked and unlocked from the outside using the door or tailgate handles if the car is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry)*.



- 1 Touch-sensitive recess for locking
- 2 Touch-sensitive surface for unlocking



Rubberised pressure plate on the tailgate used for unlocking only.

i NOTE

One of the car's remote control keys must be within range for locking and unlocking to work.

i NOTE

Be aware that the system may be activated in connection with car washing if the remote control key is in range.

Keyless locking

All side doors must be closed to be able to lock the car. The tailgate, on the other hand, can be

open when locking the car with a side door handle.

- Touch the marked surface towards the rear on the outside of a door handle after the door has been closed, or press the lock¹⁶ button on the bottom edge of the tailgate before closing it.
 - > The lock indicator in the windscreen starts to flash to indicate the car is locked.

To close all side windows and the panoramic roof* simultaneously - place a finger against the touch-sensitive recess on the outside of the door handle and hold it there until all of the side windows and the panoramic roof have been closed.

Locking when the tailgate is open

i NOTE

If the car has been locked while the tailgate is open, be careful not to leave the remote control key in the cargo area when the tailgate is closed and the car is completely locked¹⁷.

¹⁶ Applies with power operated tailgate*.

¹⁷ If the key is detected inside the car, the tailgate will not lock when it is closed.

Keyless unlocking

- Grasp a door handle or press the rubberised pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle to unlock the car.
 - > The lock indicator in the windscreen extinguishes to confirm the car is unlocked - open the doors or tailgate as usual.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within two minutes of unlocking, they are locked automatically. This function prevents the car from being left unlocked unintentionally.

Related information

- Settings for Keyless entry* (p. 243)
- Keyless unlocking of the tailgate* (p. 243)
- Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces* (p. 241)

Settings for Keyless entry*

It is possible to select different sequences for Keyless entry.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Tap on **My Car** → **Locking** → **Keyless Unlock**
3. Select option:
 - **All Doors**
- unlocks all doors simultaneously.
 - **Single Door**
- unlocks selected door.

Related information

- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 242)
- Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces* (p. 241)

Keyless unlocking of the tailgate*

For keyless unlocking of the tailgate, all you have to do is have the remote control key in a pocket or bag, for example.

The tailgate is held closed by an electrical lock.

To open the tailgate:

1. Press gently on the rubberised pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle.
 - > The lock is released.

i NOTE

One of the car's remote control keys must be within range behind the car for unlocking to work.

2. Lift by the outside handle in order to fully open the tailgate.

! IMPORTANT

- Minimal force is required to release the rear hatch lock - just gently press the rubberised panel.
- Do not place the lift force on the rubber panel when opening the rear hatch - lift the handle. Using too much force may damage the electrical contacts on the rubber panel.



- ◀◀ It is also possible to unlock the tailgate hands-free with a foot movement under the rear bumper, see separate section.

⚠ WARNING

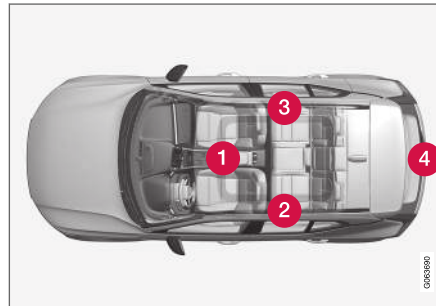
Do not drive with an open tailgate! Toxic exhaust fumes could be drawn into the car through the cargo area.

Related information

- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 242)
- Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces* (p. 241)
- Remote control key range (p. 222)
- Opening and closing the tailgate with foot movement* (p. 252)

Antenna locations for the start and lock systems

The car is equipped with a keyless start and lock system¹⁸ and therefore has a number of built-in antennas positioned at different locations in the car.



- 1 In the storage compartment in the tunnel console
- 2 In the upper front section of the left-hand rear door¹⁹
- 3 In the upper front section of the right-hand rear door¹⁹
- 4 In the cargo area¹⁹

⚠ WARNING

People with pacemaker operations should not come closer than 22 cm (9 inches) to the keyless system's antennas with their pacemaker. This is to prevent interference between the pacemaker and the keyless system.

Related information

- Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces* (p. 241)
- Remote control key range (p. 222)

¹⁸ The keyless lock system only applies to cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking (Passive Entry*).

¹⁹ Only in cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking (Passive Entry*).

Locking and unlocking from inside the car


The doors and tailgate can be locked and unlocked from inside using the central locking controls in the front doors. The lock controls* on the rear doors each lock their own rear door.

Central locking



Locking and unlocking button with indicator lamp in the front door.

Unlocking using a button in the front door

- Press the  button to unlock all side doors and the tailgate.

A long press on the  button opens all the side windows simultaneously²⁰.

Alternative unlocking method





Opening handle for alternative unlocking in the side door²¹.

- Pull the opening handle on one of the side doors and release.
 - > Depending on the settings in the remote control key, either all doors will be unlocked or only the selected door will be unlocked and opened.

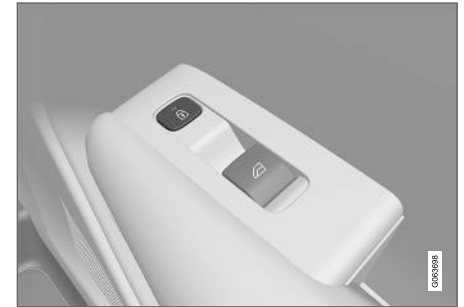
To change this setting, tap on **Settings** → **My Car** → **Locking** → **Remote and Interior Unlock** in the centre display's top view.

Locking using a button in the front door

- Press the  button - both front doors must be closed.
 - > All doors and the tailgate are locked.

A long press on the  button closes all side windows and the panorama roof* simultaneously.

Locking using a button in the rear door*



Locking button with indicator lamp in the rear door.

The rear door lock buttons only lock their respective rear door.

Unlocking the rear door

- Pull the opening handle.
 - > The rear door is unlocked and opened.

²⁰ The total airing function can be used, for example, to quickly air the car in hot weather.

²¹ The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

◀◀ **Related information**


- Settings for remotely controlled and inside unlocking (p. 220)
- Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car (p. 246)
- Activating and deactivating child safety locks (p. 247)

Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car

The tailgate can be unlocked from the inside by pressing a button on the instrument panel.


1.



Brief press on the  button on the instrument panel.

- > The tailgate can be unlocked and opened from the outside by grasping the rubberised pressure plate.

With the power operated tailgate option* -

2. Long press on the  button on the instrument panel.
 - > The tailgate opens.

Related information

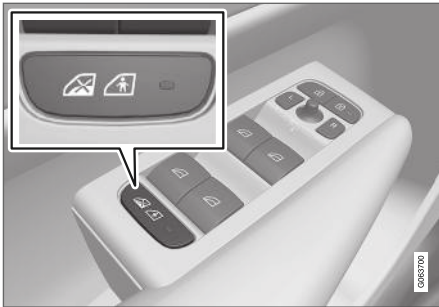
- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 245)
- Opening and closing the power*-operated tailgate (p. 248)

Activating and deactivating child safety locks

The child safety locks prevent children from being able to open a rear door from the inside. There is an electric* and a manual lock.

Activating and deactivating electrically*

The electric child safety locks can be activated and deactivated in all ignition positions higher than **0**. Activation and deactivation can be performed up to 2 minutes after switching off the engine, provided that no door is opened.



Button for electric activation and deactivation.

1. Start the engine or choose an ignition position higher than **0**.

2. Press the button in the driver's door control panel.
 - > The driver display shows the message **Rear child lock Activated** and the button's lamp illuminates - the locks are active.

When the electric child safety lock is active then the rear:

- windows can only be opened with the driver's door control panel
- doors cannot be opened from inside.

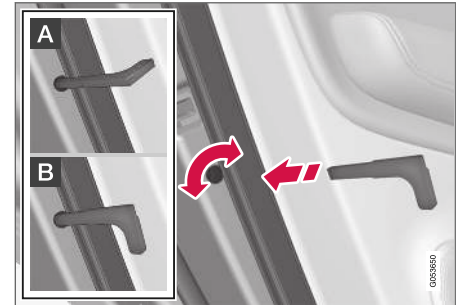
To deactivate the locks:

- Press the button in the driver's door control panel.
 - > The driver display shows the message **Rear child lock Deactivated** and the button's lamp goes out - the locks are deactivated.

The current setting is stored when the engine is switched off - if the child safety locks are activated at engine shutdown, the function will remain activated the next time the engine is started.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Rear child lock Activated	Child safety locks are activated.
	Rear child lock Deactivated	Child safety locks are deactivated.

Activating and deactivating manually



Manual child safety locks. Not to be mixed up with manual door locks.

- Use the remote control key's detachable key blade to turn the knob.
- A** The door is blocked against opening from the inside.
- B** The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.





i NOTE

- A door's knob control only blocks that particular door - not both rear doors simultaneously.
- Cars with an electric child safety lock do not have a manual child lock.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 245)
- Detachable key blade (p. 227)

Automatic locking when driving

The doors and tailgate are locked automatically when the car starts to move.

To change this setting:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Locking**.
3. Select **Auto Lock Doors While Driving** to deactivate or activate this function.

Related information


- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 245)

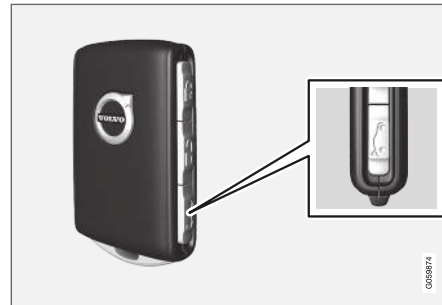
Opening and closing the power*-operated tailgate


The car's tailgate can be opened and closed electrically.

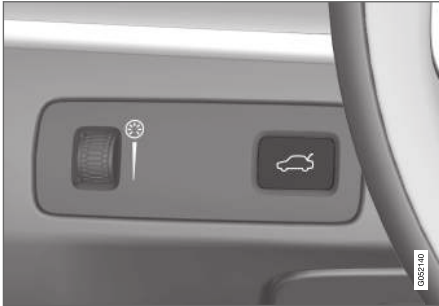
Opening the power operated tailgate

Choose one of the following options to open the tailgate:

- Long press on the remote control key's  button. Keep it depressed until the tailgate starts to open.



- Long press on the instrument panel's  button. Keep it depressed until the tailgate starts to open.



- Light press on the tailgate handle.




- Foot movement* under the rear bumper.



Closing the power operated tailgate

Choose one of the following methods to close²² the tailgate:


- Press the  button on the underside of the tailgate to close.




- > The tailgate closes automatically - the tailgate remains unlocked.

i NOTE


The button is active 24 hours after the hatch has been left open. Thereafter, it must be closed manually.

- Long press on the  button on the remote control key.
 - > The tailgate closes automatically and acoustic signals sound - the tailgate remains unlocked.

²² A car with keyless locking and unlocking (Passive Entry*) has one button for closing and one button for closing and locking.

- ◀ – Long press on the  button on the instrument panel.
 - > The tailgate closes automatically and acoustic signals sound - the tailgate remains unlocked.
- Foot movement* under the rear bumper.
 - > The tailgate closes automatically and acoustic signals sound - the tailgate remains unlocked.

Closing and locking²² the power operated tailgate

- Press the  button on the underside of the tailgate to close it and simultaneously lock the tailgate and doors (all doors must be closed for locking).
 - > The tailgate closes automatically - the tailgate and doors are locked, and the alarm* is armed.

NOTE

- One of the car's remote control keys must be within range for locking and unlocking to work.
- When using keyless* locking or closing, three signals will sound if the key is not detected sufficiently close to the tailgate.

IMPORTANT

During manual tailgate operation, open or close it slowly. Do not use force to open/close it if there is resistance. It may be damaged and stop working correctly.

Cancel opening or closing

Cancel opening or closing in one of the following ways:

- Press the button on the instrument panel.
- Press the remote control key's button.
- Press the closing button on the underside of the tailgate.
- Press the rubberised pressure plate beneath the outside handle.
- Using a foot movement*.

The tailgate's movement is interrupted and stops. The boot lid can then be operated manually.

Pinch protection

If something with sufficient resistance prevents the tailgate from opening or closing then the pinch protection is activated.

- During opening - movement is interrupted, the tailgate stops and a long acoustic signal sounds.
- During closing - movement is interrupted, the tailgate stops, a long acoustic signal sounds

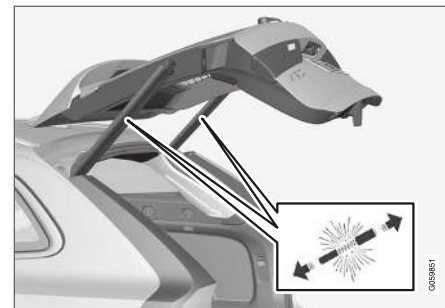
and the tailgate returns to the programmed max. position.

WARNING

Observe the risk of trapping when opening/closing. Before starting opening/closing, check that there is nobody near to the tailgate as trapping may have serious consequences.

Always operate the tailgate with caution.

Pre-tensioned springs



The pre-tensioned springs for the power operated tailgate.

²² A car with keyless locking and unlocking (Passive Entry*) has one button for closing and one button for closing and locking.

⚠ WARNING

Do not open the pre-tensioned springs for the power operated tailgate. They are pre-tensioned with high pressure and can cause injury if opened.

Related information

- Programming maximum opening for power operated tailgate* (p. 251)
- Opening and closing the tailgate with foot movement* (p. 252)
- Remote control key range (p. 222)

Programming maximum opening for power operated tailgate*


Adapt the tailgate's opening position to low roof height.

To adjust max. opening:


1. Open the tailgate - stop it in the open position.

ⓘ NOTE

It is not possible to program an opening position lower than half-open tailgate.

2. Press the  button on the underside of the tailgate for at least 3 seconds.
 - > Two short acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been saved.

To reset max. opening:

- Manually move the tailgate to its highest possible position - press the  button on the tailgate for at least 3 seconds.
 - > Two acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been cleared. The tailgate will then assume its max. position when opened.

ⓘ NOTE

- If the system has been operating continuously for a long time, it is switched off to avoid overload. It can be used again after about 2 minutes.

Related information

- Opening and closing the power*-operated tailgate (p. 248)

Opening and closing the tailgate with foot movement*

To facilitate the operation of the tailgate when your hands are occupied, it can be opened and closed by means of a forward kicking motion under the rear bumper.

If the car is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking* then you can unlock the tailgate with a foot movement.

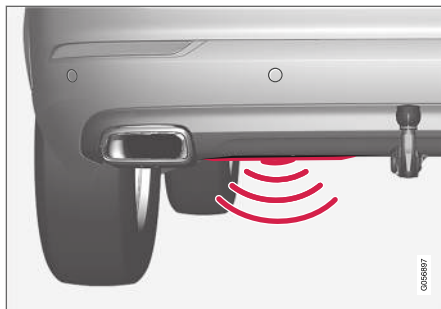
The function with both opening and closing of the tailgate is also available when the car is equipped with power operated tailgate*.

i NOTE

The foot-operated tailgate function is available in two versions:

- Opening and closing with foot movement
- Only unlocking with foot movement (lift up the tailgate manually to open it)

Note that the function for opening and closing with foot movement requires power operated tailgate*.



The sensor is located on left of centre in the bumper.

One of the car's remote control keys must be within range behind the car (approx. 1 metre (3 feet)) for opening and closing to be possible. This also applies to an already unlocked car in order to avoid accidental opening e.g. in a car wash.

Opening and closing with foot movement



Kicking motion within the detector's valid activation area.

- Make **one** slow, forward kicking motion under the left part of the rear bumper. Then take a step back. The bumper must not be touched.
 - > A short acoustic signal sounds when opening or closing is activated - the tailgate is opened/closed.
 - If the tailgate is in open position then it is always closed²³ on activation via foot movement.

If several kicking motions take place without an approved remote control key being located behind the car, opening will not be possible until after a certain delay.

²³ Applies to cars with power operated tailgate*.

Do not leave your foot positioned under the car during the kicking motion. This could cause activation to fail.

Canceling opening or closing with foot movement

- Make **one** slow forward kicking motion when opening or closing is in progress in order to stop the movement of the tailgate.

The remote control key does not have to be in the vicinity of the car to cancel opening or closing.

i NOTE

There is a risk of reduced function, or no function, if the rear bumper is loaded with large amounts of ice, snow, dirt or similar. For this reason, make sure you keep it clean.

i NOTE

Pay attention to the possibility that the system may be activated in a car wash or similar if the remote key is within range.

Related information

- Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces* (p. 241)
- Opening and closing the power*-operated tailgate (p. 248)
- Remote control key range (p. 222)

Private locking

The tailgate can be locked, so-called private locking which prevents it from being opened, e.g. when the car is taken in for service, left at a hotel or similar.



The private locking function button is located in the centre display function view. Depending on the current status of the lock, **Private Locking Unlocked** or **Private Locking Locked** is shown.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating private locking (p. 253)

Activating and deactivating private locking

Private locking is activated with a function button in the centre display and an optional PIN code.

i NOTE

The car needs to be in ignition mode **I** as a minimum for the private locking function to be activated.

Enter the security code before using for the first time

A security code needs to be selected during the first time the function is used. It can then be used to deactivate private locking if the selected PIN code has been lost or forgotten. The security code acts as a PUK code for all subsequent PIN codes set for the private locking function.

Save the security code in a safe place.

To create a security code:

1. Press the button for private locking in the function view.



> A pop-up window is shown.



- ◀ 2. Enter the desired security code.
- > The security code is saved. The private locking function is now ready for activation.

If the system has been reset then the above procedure needs to be repeated.

Activate private locking

1. Press the button for private locking in the function view.



- > A pop-up window is shown.
2. Enter the code to be used in order to unlock the tailgate after locking and tap on **Confirm**.
- > The tailgate is locked. Confirmation of locking takes place by means of a green indicator being shown by the button in the function view.

Deactivate private locking

1. Press the button for private locking in the function view.



- > A pop-up window is shown.
2. Enter the code that was used for locking and tap on **Confirm**.
- > The tailgate is unlocked. Confirmation of unlocking takes place by means of the green indicator by the button in the function view extinguishing.

NOTE

If the PIN code has been lost/forgotten, or if the wrong PIN code has been entered more than three times, the security code can be used to deactivate the private locking.

NOTE

If private locking is activated and the car is unlocked via Volvo On Call* or the Volvo On Call* app, private locking will be deactivated automatically.

Related information

- Private locking (p. 253)

Alarm*

The alarm provides audible and visual warnings if anyone enters the car without a valid remote control key or manipulates the starter battery or alarm siren.

When armed, the alarm is triggered if:

- a door, the bonnet or the tailgate is opened²⁴
- a movement is detected in the passenger compartment (if fitted with a movement detector*)
- the car is raised or towed away (if fitted with a tilt detector*)
- the starter battery's cable is disconnected
- the siren is disconnected.

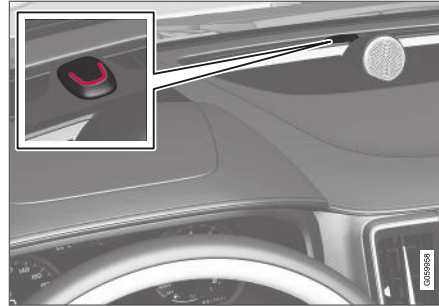
Alarm signals

When the alarm has been triggered, the following happens:

- A siren sounds for 30 seconds or until the alarm is switched off.
- The direction indicators flash for 5 minutes or until the alarm is switched off.

If the cause of alarm activation is not rectified, the alarm cycle is repeated up to 10 times²⁵.

Alarm indicator



A red LED on the instrument panel indicates the alarm system's status:

- LED not lit – alarm not armed.
- The LED flashes once every other second – alarm is armed.
- After the alarm has been disarmed, the LED flashes rapidly for a maximum of 30 seconds or until ignition position I has been selected by turning the start knob clockwise and releasing it - the alarm has been triggered.

Movement and tilt sensors*

Movement and tilt sensors react to movements inside the car, if the window is broken or if anyone tries to steal the wheels or tow the vehicle away.

The movement sensor triggers an alarm in the event of movement in the passenger compartment - air currents are also registered. For this reason the alarm is triggered if the car is left with a window or the panoramic roof* open or if the passenger compartment heater is used.

To avoid this:

- Close the window and panoramic roof when leaving the car.
- If the passenger compartment or parking heater is to be used – direct the airflow from the air vents so that they do not point upwards in the passenger compartment.

Alternatively, use a reduced alarm level to temporarily deactivate the movement and tilt sensors.

Also switch off the movement and tilt sensors when the car is being transported on a ferry or train as these movements may affect the car and trigger the alarm.

In the event of an alarm system fault



If there is a fault in the alarm system, the driver display shows the symbol and the message **Alarm system failure Service required**. In which

case, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

²⁴ Applies to certain markets.

²⁵ Applies to certain markets.



i NOTE

Do not attempt to repair or alter components in the alarm system yourself. Any such attempts may affect the terms of the insurance.

Related information


- Activating and deactivating alarms* (p. 256)
- Reduced alarm level* (p. 258)
- Double lock* (p. 258)


Activating and deactivating alarms*

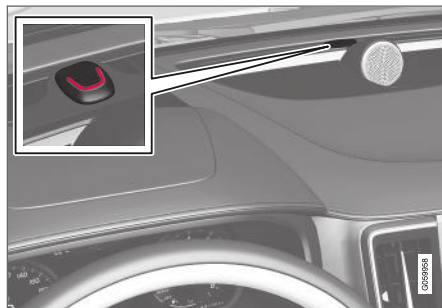
The alarm is armed when the car is locked.

Arming the alarm

Lock and arm the car alarm as follows:

- press the remote control key's lock button 
- touch the marked surface on the outside of the door handles or the tailgate's rubberised pressure plate²⁶.


If the car is equipped with both keyless locking/unlocking* and a power-operated tailgate*, the  button on the underside of the tailgate can also be used to lock the car and arm the car alarm.



A red LED on the instrument panel flashes once every two seconds when the car is locked and the alarm is armed.

Deactivate the alarm

Unlock and disarm the car alarm as follows:

- press the remote control key's unlock button 
- grip one of the door handles or press on the tailgate's rubberised pressure plate²⁶.

²⁶ Only applies to a car with keyless locking and unlocking* (Passive Entry).

Deactivate the alarm without a functioning remote control key

The car can be unlocked and disarmed even if the remote control key does not work, e.g. if the remote control key's battery is dead.

1. Open the driver's door with the detachable key blade.
 - > The alarm is triggered.
- 2.



Place the remote control key on the key symbol in the backup reader in the tunnel console's storage compartment.

3. Press the start button.
 - > The alarm is deactivated.

Switching off a triggered alarm

- Press the remote control key's unlock button or set the car in ignition position I by pressing the start button.

i	NOTE
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remember that the alarm is activated when the car is locked. • If any of the doors are opened from the inside then the alarm is triggered.

Automatic arming and rearming of the alarm

Automatic rearming of the alarm prevents the car being left with the alarm disarmed unintentionally.

If the car is unlocked with the remote control key (which disarms the alarm) but none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within two minutes, then the alarm is automatically re-armed. The car is relocked at the same time.

In certain markets, the alarm is armed automatically after a certain delay after the driver's door has been opened and closed without being locked.

To change this setting:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Locking**.

3. Select **Passive Arming Deactivation** to deactivate the function temporarily.

Related information

- Alarm* (p. 255)

Reduced alarm level*

A reduced alarm level means that the movement and tilt sensors are temporarily switched off.

Switch off the movement and tilt detectors in order to avoid accidental triggering of the alarm - e.g. if a dog is left in a locked car or during transport on a car train or car ferry.



Press the **Reduced Guard** button in the centre display function view to switch off the movement and tilt sensors when subsequently locking the car.

At the same time, the double lock function is deactivated, i.e. unlocking from inside is possible.

If the car is unlocked and then locked again, the reduced alarm level must be reactivated.

Related information

- Alarm* (p. 255)
- Double lock* (p. 258)

Double lock*

Double lock means that all opening handles are disengaged mechanically, which prevents door opening from the inside when the car is locked from the outside.

Double locks are activated with the remote control key and in keyless locking (Passive Entry)*. Double locks are activated with a delay of about 10 seconds after the doors have locked.

If a door is opened within the delay time then the sequence is interrupted and the alarm is deactivated.

NOTE

- Remember that the alarm is activated when the car is locked.
- If any of the doors are opened from the inside then the alarm is triggered.

The car can only be unlocked with the remote control key, keyless unlocking or the Volvo On Call* app when double locks are activated.

The front left door can also be unlocked with the detachable key blade. If the car is unlocked with the detachable key blade, the alarm will be triggered.

WARNING

Do not allow anyone to remain in the car without first deactivating the double lock in order to avoid the risk of anyone being locked in.

Related information

- Temporarily deactivating double locks* (p. 259)
- Alarm* (p. 255)

Temporarily deactivating double locks*

If someone is going to stay in the car but the doors must be locked from the outside, then the double lock function should be deactivated, to allow unlocking from the inside.



Press the **Reduced Guard** button in the centre display's function view in order to deactivate the double lock function temporarily.

This also means that the alarm's movement and tilt detectors* are switched off.

After this, **Reduced Guard** is shown in the centre display and double locks are temporarily deactivated in the subsequent locking of the car.

In conventional locking, the electrical sockets are deactivated immediately, but when double locks are temporarily deactivated, they will be active for a maximum of 10 minutes after locking.

If the car is unlocked and then locked again, the double lock function must be deactivated again.

The system is reset the next time the engine is started.

Related information

- Double lock* (p. 258)
- Alarm* (p. 255)

Detection of unknown car component*

The "Foreign Component Detection" function can detect whether an unknown car component has been connected to the car.

Each LED headlamp* is designed for the car. If an unknown headlamp is connected, the driver display shows a message **Unknown car part. Service required, unknown car part found.** Volvo recommends contacting an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information

- Volvo service programme (p. 560)

DRIVER SUPPORT

Driving support systems

The car is equipped with different driver support systems which can assist the driver in different situations, either actively or passively.

The systems can, for example, help the driver to hold a set speed or a certain time interval to the vehicle in front, prevent a collision by warning the driver and brake the car or help the driver to park.

Some of the systems are fitted as standard, while others are options. This also varies depending on market.

Related information

- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 262)
- Electronic stability control (p. 264)
- Stability system Roll Stability Control (p. 263)
- Rear Collision Warning (p. 337)
- Speed Limiter (p. 268)
- Cruise Control (p. 276)
- Adaptive Cruise Control* (p. 281)
- Pilot Assist (p. 296)
- Radar unit (p. 311)
- Camera unit (p. 321)
- City Safety™ (p. 325)
- BLIS* (p. 338)
- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 343)
- Road Sign Information* (p. 348)

- Driver Alert Control (p. 354)
- Lane assistance (p. 356)
- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 364)
- Park Assist* (p. 372)
- Park assist camera* (p. 377)
- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 386)

Speed-dependent steering force

Speed related power steering causes the steering wheel force to increase with the speed of the car in order to give the driver enhanced sensitivity.

On motorways the steering feels firmer. When parking and at low speed steering is light and requires only a slight effort.

NOTE

In certain situations the power steering may become too hot and then needs to be temporarily cooled - during this time the power steering operates with reduced power and turning the steering wheel may then be perceived to be slightly heavier.

In parallel with the temporarily reduced steering assistance, the driver display shows a message as well as a STEERING WHEEL symbol.

⚠ WARNING

While the power steering is working at reduced power, the driver support functions with steering assistance are not available.

In such a situation, the driver display shows the **Power steering failure** or **Power Steering Assist Temporarily Reduced** message, combined with a STEERING WHEEL symbol.

Change the steering force level*

To select the steering force level, go to the "Drive modes" section and see the description at the alternative INDIVIDUAL under the heading "Selectable drive modes".

For the car models without a drive mode control with its INDIVIDUAL option, the selection of steering force is instead made via the centre display's top view and the following search path:

Settings → My Car → Drive Modes → Steering force

Steering force selection cannot be accessed during a turn if the speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph).

Related information

- Drive modes* (p. 414)
- Pilot Assist (p. 296)
- Lane assistance (p. 356)

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 364)
- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 386)

Stability system Roll Stability Control

The stability system RSC¹ minimises the risk of overturning, for example during a sudden evasive manoeuvre or if the car skids.

The RSC system registers if and how much the car's lateral inclination changes. This information is used to calculate the risk of the car overturning. If the car is at risk, its electronic stability control system engages, the engine torque is reduced and one or more wheels are braked until the car has regained its stability.

⚠ WARNING

Under normal driving conditions, the RSC system improves the car's road safety, but this must not be taken as a reason to increase speed. Always follow the normal precautions for safe driving.

¹ Roll Stability Control

Electronic stability control

Electronic Stability Control (ESC²) helps the driver to avoid skidding and improves the car's traction.



The driver display shows this symbol when the ESC system is engaged.

Braking from the ESC system may be heard as a pulsing sound, and the car may accelerate more slowly than expected when applying the throttle.

The ESC system consists of the following sub-functions:

- Stability function³
- Spin control and traction control system
- Engine Drag Control
- Trailer stability assist

WARNING

- The stability system ESC is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- ESC is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Stability function³

The function checks the driving and brake force of the wheels individually in order to stabilise the car.

Spin control and traction control system

The function is active at low speed and brakes the drive wheels that spin so that additional traction shall be transferred from the drive wheels that are not spinning.

The function also prevents the driving wheels from spinning against the road surface during acceleration.

Engine Drag Control

Engine Drag Control (EDC⁴) prevents involuntary wheel locking, e.g. after shifting down or engine braking when driving in low gear on slippery road surfaces.

Involuntary wheel locking while driving can, amongst other things, impair the driver's ability to steer the car.

Trailer stability assist*⁵

Trailer stability assist (TSA⁶) stabilises a car towing a trailer in situations where they begin snaking. Also see section "Trailer stability assist" for more information.

NOTE

The TSA function is deactivated if **ESC Sport Mode** is activated.

Related information

- Sport mode for electronic stability control (p. 265)
- Activating/deactivating Sport mode in Electronic Stability Control (p. 265)

² Electronic Stability Control

³ Also known as Active Yaw Control.

⁴ Engine Drag Control

⁵ Trailer stability assist is included when the Volvo genuine towbar is installed.

⁶ Trailer Stability Assist

- Limitation for sport mode in Electronic Stability Control (p. 266)
- Symbols and messages for electronic stability control (p. 267)

Sport mode for electronic stability control

The ESC⁷ system is always activated — it cannot be switched off. However, the driver can select **ESC Sport Mode**, which allows for a more active driving experience.

With the **ESC Sport Mode** subfunction selected, intervention from ESC is reduced and the car is allowed to skid more and greater control than normal is thus transferred to the driver.

When **ESC Sport Mode** is selected, ESC can be considered as deactivated, despite helping the driver in many cases.

NOTE

With the **ESC Sport Mode** function selected, Trailer Stability Assist (TSA⁸) is deactivated.

ESC Sport Mode also provides maximum traction if the car has become bogged down or is driving on a loose surface, such as in sand or deep snow.

Related information

- Electronic stability control (p. 264)
- Towbar* (p. 444)

Activating/deactivating Sport mode in Electronic Stability Control

The ESC⁹ system is always activated — it cannot be switched off. However, the driver can select sport mode, which allows for a more active driving experience.



The Sport mode is activated/deactivated in the centre display's function view.

- Tap on the **ESC Sport Mode** button in the function view.
 - > Sport mode is activated/deactivated - a green/grey indicator is displayed in the button.



The driver display indicates activated **ESC Sport Mode** by displaying this symbol with a constant glow until the function is deactivated or the engine is switched off. The next time the engine is started, the ESC system is back in its normal mode again.

Related information

- Electronic stability control (p. 264)

⁷ Electronic Stability Control

⁸ Trailer Stability Assist

⁹ Electronic Stability Control

Limitation for sport mode in Electronic Stability Control

There are certain limitations associated with the ESC¹⁰ system's subfunction **ESC Sport Mode** being activated.

The **ESC Sport Mode** function cannot be selected when one of the following functions is activated:

- Speed limiter
- Cruise control
- Adaptive cruise control
- Pilot Assist.

Related information

- Electronic stability control (p. 264)






¹⁰ Electronic Stability Control


Symbols and messages for electronic stability control

A number of symbols and messages regarding electronic stability control (Electronic Stability

Control -ESC) can be shown on the driver display.

The following table shows some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Constant glow for approx. 2 seconds.	System check when the engine is started.
	Flashing light.	ESC system is being activated.
	Constant glow.	Sport mode is selected. NOTE: The ESC system is not deactivated in this mode — it is partly reduced.
	ESC Temporarily off	ESC system has been temporarily reduced due to excessive brake temperature - the function is reactivated automatically when the brakes have cooled. See the message in the driver display.
	ESC Service required	ESC system disengaged. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop the car in a safe place, switch off the engine and start it again. • Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the  button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

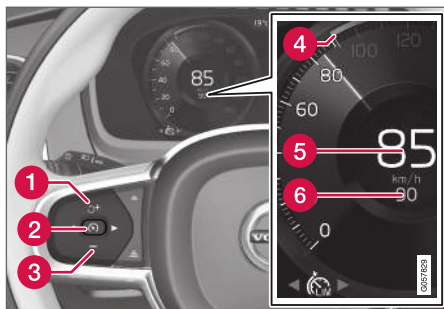
If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Electronic stability control (p. 264)

Speed Limiter

A speed limiter (SL¹¹) can be likened to a reverse cruise control - the driver regulates the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented from accidentally exceeding a pre-selected/set maximum speed by the speed limiter.



Buttons and symbols for functions¹².

- 1 : Activates the speed limiter from standby mode and resumes stored maximum speed
- 1 : Increases the stored maximum speed
- 2 : **From standby mode** - activates the speed limiter and stores current speed
- 2 : **From active mode** - deactivates/changes the speed limiter to standby mode

- 3 : Reduces stored maximum speed
- 4 Marker for stored max speed
- 5 The car's current speed
- 6 Stored maximum speed

WARNING

- The Speed Limiter function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver must always pay attention to traffic conditions and take action if the Speed Limiter is not maintaining a suitable speed.
- The Speed Limiter is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- Limitations for Speed Limiter (p. 272)
- Activating and starting the Speed Limiter (p. 269)
- Managing speed for the Speed Limiter (p. 269)
- Deactivate the Speed Limiter and set it in standby mode (p. 270)
- Reactivating the Speed Limiter from standby mode (p. 271)
- Deactivating the Speed Limiter (p. 271)
- Automatic Speed Limiter (p. 272)
- Limitations for Automatic Speed Limiter (p. 275)
- Activate/deactivate Automatic Speed Limiter (p. 274)
- Changing the tolerance for the Automatic Speed Limiter (p. 275)

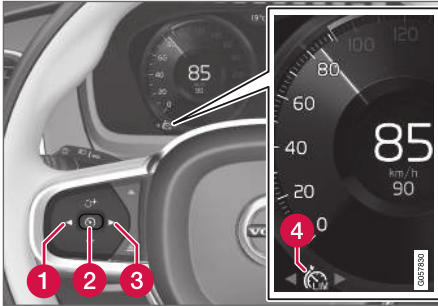
¹¹ Speed Limiter

¹² NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.


Activating and starting the Speed Limiter

The speed limiter function (SL¹³) must first be selected and activated in order to be able to regulate the speed.

Set the speed limiter in standby mode





NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

- Press ◀ (1) or ▶ (3) to browse to the symbol/function for speed limiter  (4).
 - > Symbol (4) is shown and the speed limiter is set in standby mode.

Start the Speed Limiter

The speed limiter cannot be activated until after the engine has been started. The lowest maxi-

imum speed that can be stored is 30 km/h (20 mph).

- When the speed limiter is in standby mode and the  symbol is shown - press the steering wheel button  (2).
 - > The Speed Limiter starts and the current speed is stored as the maximum speed.

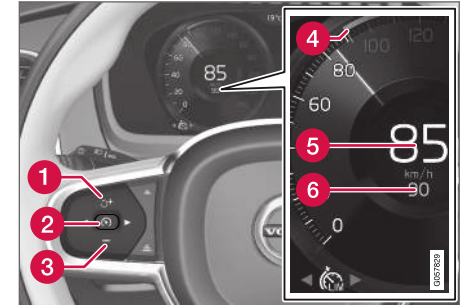
Related information

- Speed Limiter (p. 268)

Managing speed for the Speed Limiter

The speed limiter (SL¹⁴) can be set to different speeds.

Setting/changing the stored speed



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

- Change the set speed with short or long presses on steering wheel button **+** (1) or **-** (3):
 - **Short** press: Each press changes the speed in increments of +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph).
 - **Press and hold:** Release the button when the set speed indicator (4) has moved to the desired speed.

¹³ Speed Limiter

¹⁴ Speed Limiter

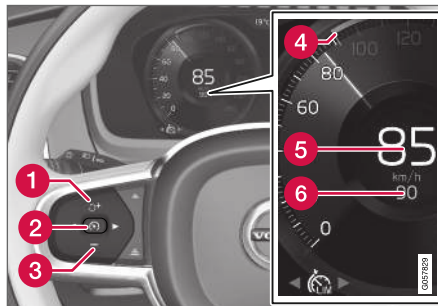
- The speed set after the last button press is stored in the memory.

Related information

- Speed Limiter (p. 268)


Deactivate the Speed Limiter and set it in standby mode

The speed limiter (SL¹⁵) can be temporarily deactivated and set in standby mode.



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

To deactivate the Speed Limiter and set it in standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button  (2).
 - > The speed limit markings and symbols in the driver display change colour from WHITE to GREY - the speed limiter is now temporarily deactivated and the driver can exceed the maximum speed setting.

Temporary deactivation with the accelerator pedal

The speed limiter can also be temporarily deactivated and overridden with the accelerator pedal without the speed limiter first having to be set in standby mode - e.g. to be able to quickly accelerate the car out of a situation.

In which case, proceed as follows:

1. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and release it to interrupt acceleration when the desired speed has been reached.
 - > In this mode, the speed limiter is still activated and the driver display's symbol is therefore WHITE.
2. Fully release the accelerator pedal when the temporary acceleration is finished.
 - > The car is then braked automatically below the last stored maximum speed.

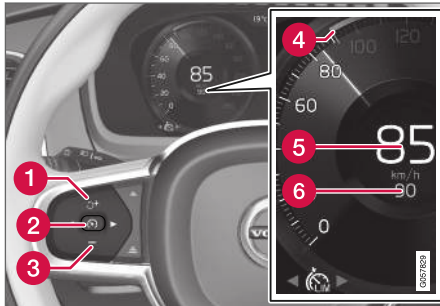
Related information

- Speed Limiter (p. 268)

¹⁵ Speed Limiter


Reactivating the Speed Limiter from standby mode

The speed limiter (SL¹⁶) can be reactivated after having been temporarily deactivated and placed in standby mode.




NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

To reactivate the Speed Limiter from standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button  (1).
 - > The driver display's speed limit markings change colour from GREY to WHITE - the car's speed is then limited again by the last stored maximum speed.

or

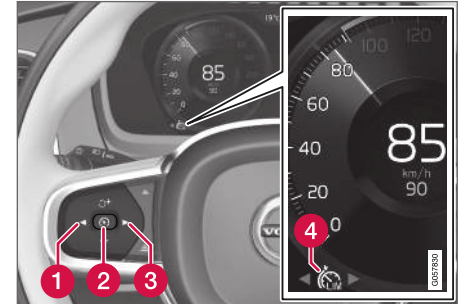
- Press the steering wheel button  (2).
 - > The Speed Limiter indicators and symbols in the driver display change colour from GREY to WHITE — the car will now apply its current speed as the maximum speed.

Related information





- Speed Limiter (p. 268)

Deactivating the Speed Limiter

The speed limiter (SL¹⁷) can be deactivated.



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

1. Press the steering wheel button  (2).
 - > The speed limiter is set in standby mode.
2. Press the steering wheel button  (1) or  (3) to change to another function.
 - > The driver display's symbol and indicator for speed limiter (4) are switched off - which deletes the set/stored maximum speed.
3. Press the steering wheel button  (2) again.
 - > Another function is activated.

¹⁶ Speed Limiter

¹⁷ Speed Limiter

◀◀ Related information

- Speed Limiter (p. 268)

Limitations for Speed Limiter

On steep downhill gradients the speed limiter's braking effect may be inadequate and hence the stored maximum speed may be exceeded. In this case, the driver is alerted by the message **Speed limit exceeded** in the driver display.

 NOTE

A text message that the maximum speed is exceeded will be activated if the speed has been exceeded by at least 3 km/h (approx. 2 mph).
--

Related information

- Speed Limiter (p. 268)

Automatic Speed Limiter

The Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL¹⁸) function helps the driver to adapt the car's maximum speed to the speed shown on the road signs.

The Speed Limiter function (SL¹⁹) can be changed to Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL).

The automatic speed limiter uses speed information from the Road Sign Information²⁰ function to automatically adapt the car's maximum speed.

¹⁸ Automatic Speed Limiter

¹⁹ Speed Limiter



²⁰ Road Sign Information – RSI

⚠ WARNING

- The ASL function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- Even if the driver clearly sees the speed-related road sign, the speed information from the Road Sign Information (RSI) function to ASL may be incorrect – in such cases the driver must intervene him/herself and accelerate or brake to a suitable speed.
- ASL is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.
- See also the heading "Limitations for Road Sign Information".

Is SL or ASL active?

Symbols in the driver display show which speed limiter function is active:

Symbol	SL	ASL
 A	✓	✓
 Sign symbol ^B after "70" = ASL is activated.		✓

A WHITE symbol: Function active, GREY symbol: Standby mode.

B See the following heading "ASL symbol" regarding the meaning of the symbol's colour.

The ASL symbol

The sign symbol (displayed alongside the stored speed, "70", in the centre of the speedometer) can be shown in three colours with the following meanings:

Colour of sign symbol	Meaning
Greenish yellow	ASL is active
Grey	ASL has been set in standby mode
Amber/Orange	ASL is in temporary standby mode - e.g. due to a traffic sign not being read.

Related information

- Speed Limiter (p. 268)

Activate/deactivate Automatic Speed Limiter


The automatic speed limiter function (ASL²¹) can be activated and deactivated as a supplement to the speed limiter (SL²²).


Activate ASL



The **Speed Sign Assist** button is located in the function view of the centre display.

To activate the automatic speed limiter:

1. Press the **Speed Sign Assist** button.
 - > ASL is set in standby mode, a green indicator appears on the button, and the driver display shows a sign symbol in the centre of the speedometer.
2. Press the steering wheel button .
 - > ASL is activated with the car's current speed.

 NOTE
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the Automatic Speed Limiter function is activated, road sign information is shown in the driver display even if RSI is not activated. • To remove road sign information from the driver display, you must deactivate both Automatic Speed Limiter and RSI. • When the Automatic Speed Limiter function is activated but RSI is deactivated, no warnings are given from RSI. In this situation, settings for RSI cannot be adjusted either - to be able to adjust settings as well as receive warnings, RSI must be activated.

Deactivate ASL

To deactivate the automatic speed limiter:

- Tap on the **Speed Sign Assist** button in the function view.
 - > ASL is deactivated and the button's indication becomes GREY - SL is activated instead.

WARNING

After switching from ASL to SL the car will no longer follow the signed speed limit but only the maximum speed stored in memory.

Related information

- Speed Limiter (p. 268)

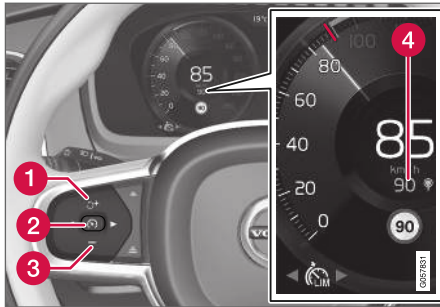
²¹ Automatic Speed Limiter

²² Speed Limiter

Changing the tolerance for the Automatic Speed Limiter

The Automatic Speed Limiter function (ASL²³) can be set for different tolerance levels.

It is possible to increase/decrease the signed speed limit. If, for example, the car follows a signed speed limit of 70km/h (43 mph) the driver can instead choose to allow the car to maintain 75 km/h (47 mph).



Buttons and symbols for functions²⁴.

- Press the steering wheel button **+** (1) until 70 km/h (43 mph) in the centre of the speedometer (4) changes to 75 km/h (47 mph).
- > After which, the car uses the selected tolerance 5 km/h (4 mph) as long as signs passed are showing 70 km/h (43 mph).

The tolerance is followed until a road sign with a lower or higher speed is passed - then the car follows the new signed speed limit instead and the tolerance is deleted from the memory.

If the Road Sign Information* function is activated, the signed speed limit will then be shown with a RED indicator on the speedometer.

The tolerance is adjusted in the same way as the speed setting is in the speed limiter.

i NOTE

The maximum selectable tolerance is +/- 10 km/h (5 mph).

Related information

- Speed Limiter (p. 268)

Limitations for Automatic Speed Limiter

Automatic speed limitation takes place using speed information from the RSI²⁵ function - not from the speed limit road signs that the car passes.

If RSI²⁵ cannot interpret and provide speed information to the ASL, then the ASL is set in standby mode and changes over to SL. In such cases the driver must intervene and brake to a suitable speed.

The ASL will be reactivated when the RSI²⁵ function can once again interpret and provide speed information to the ASL.

See also the section "Limitations for Road Sign Information".

Related information

- Speed Limiter (p. 268)

²³ Automatic Speed Limiter

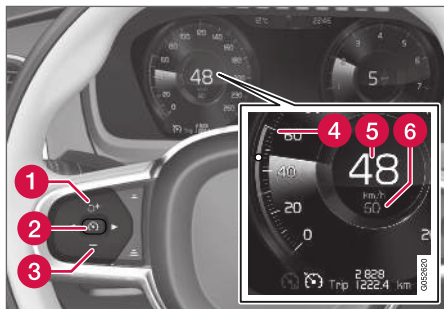
²⁴ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

²⁵ Road Sign Information - RSI

Cruise Control

The cruise control (CC²⁶) helps the driver maintain an even speed, resulting in more relaxed driving on motorways and long, straight roads in regular traffic flows.

Overview



Buttons and symbols for functions²⁷.

- 1 : Activates cruise control from standby mode and resumes stored speed
- 1 : Increases the stored speed
- 2 : **From standby mode** - activates cruise control and stores current speed
- 2 : **From active mode** - deactivates/changes cruise control to standby mode

- 3 : Reduces stored speed
- 4 Marker for stored speed
- 5 The car's current speed
- 6 Stored speed

NOTE

In cars equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control*, it is possible to switch between cruise control and Adaptive Cruise Control – see the heading "Switch between CC and ACC".

WARNING

- The cruise control function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system (see the list of links at the end of this article).
- Cruise control is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- Activating and starting Cruise Control (p. 277)
- Managing speed for the Cruise Control (p. 278)
- Deactivate Cruise Control and set it in standby mode (p. 279)

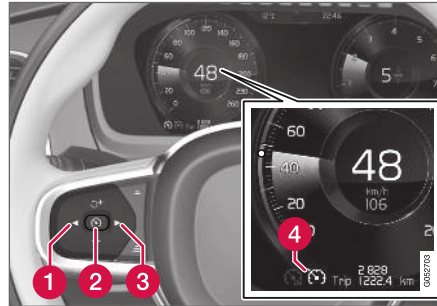
²⁶ Cruise Control

²⁷ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

- Reactivating Cruise Control from standby mode (p. 279)
- Deactivating Cruise Control (p. 280)

Activating and starting Cruise Control


The cruise control function (CC²⁸) must first be selected and activated in order to be able to regulate the speed.



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Set cruise control in standby mode



To set cruise control in standby mode:

- Press ◀ (1) or ▶ (3) to browse to the symbol/function  (4).
- > The symbol is shown and the cruise control can then be activated.

Activating/starting cruise control

In order to start the Cruise control from the standby mode, the car's current speed must be 30 km/h (20 mph) or higher. The lowest speed that can be stored is 30 km/h (20 mph).

To start the cruise control:

- With the symbol/function  displayed, press the steering wheel button  (2).
- > Cruise Control starts and the current speed becomes the stored speed.

NOTE

Cruise Control cannot be enabled at speeds below 30 km/h (20 mph).

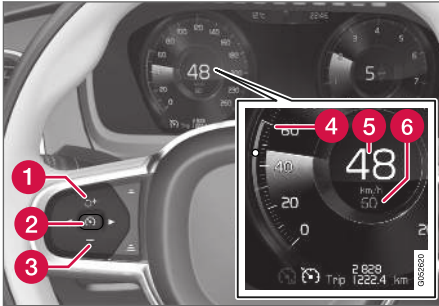
Related information

- Cruise Control (p. 276)

Managing speed for the Cruise Control

Cruise control (CC²⁹) can be set to different speeds.

Setting/changing the stored speed



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

- Change the set speed with short or long presses on steering wheel button **+** (1) or **-** (3):
 - **Short press:** Each press changes the speed in increments of +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph).
 - **Press and hold:** Release the button when the speed indicator (4) has moved to the desired speed

- The speed set after the last button press is stored in the memory.

If the driver increases the car's speed using the accelerator pedal before pressing the steering wheel button **+** (1), the speed stored will be the car's speed when the button is depressed, provided the driver's foot is on the accelerator pedal at the moment when the button is depressed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Using engine braking instead of the foot brake

With Cruise Control, speed is regulated with less frequent application of the foot brake. On a downhill gradient it may sometimes be desirable to start moving a little faster and limit the acceleration by engine braking. In this case the driver can temporarily disable foot brake application by Cruise Control.

To do so, proceed as follows:

- Depress the accelerator pedal about halfway down and release.
 - > Cruise Control will disengage its automatic foot braking and then uses engine braking only.

Cruise control dependence on drive mode

The cruise control's way of maintaining a speed may vary depending on the selected drive mode³⁰.

Cruise control Eco Cruise

In ECO drive mode the cruise control's accelerations and decelerations become smoother compared to other drive modes to optimise fuel and environmental economy. This can cause the car's speed to be temporarily above or below the set speed.

See supplementary information in "ECO drive mode" under "Cruise control Eco Cruise".

Cruise control Dynamic Cruise

In Dynamic drive mode, the cruise control's accelerations and decelerations are felt more strongly and seem more direct compared to other modes.

Related information

- Cruise Control (p. 276)

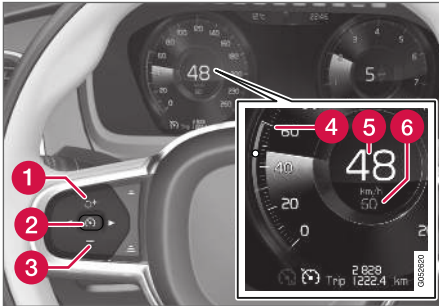
²⁹ Cruise Control

³⁰ See supplementary information in the section "Drive modes".

Deactivate Cruise Control and set it in standby mode


Cruise control (CC³¹) can be temporarily deactivated so that it is set in the standby mode and can be reactivated later.

Deactivate Cruise Control and set in standby mode



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

To set cruise control in standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button  (2).
 - > The cruise control markings and symbols in the driver display change colour from WHITE to GREY - cruise control is now temporarily deactivated and the driver must then manually control the speed.

Standby mode on driver intervention

The cruise control is temporarily deactivated and set in standby mode if:

- the foot brake is used
- the gear selector is moved to **N** position
- the clutch pedal is held depressed for longer than 1 minute
- the driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.

The driver must then control the speed himself/herself.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic standby mode

Cruise control is temporarily disengaged and set in standby mode if:

- wheels lose traction
- engine speed is too low/high
- brake temperature is too high
- speed falls below 30 km/h (20 mph).

The driver must then control the speed himself/herself.

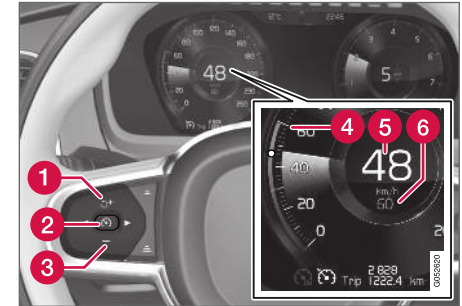
Related information

- Cruise Control (p. 276)

Reactivating Cruise Control from standby mode


Cruise control (CC³²) can be temporarily deactivated so that it is set in the standby mode and can be reactivated later.

Reactivating cruise control from standby mode



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

To start cruise control from standby mode:


- Press the steering wheel button  (1).
 - > The cruise control markings and symbols in the driver display change colour from GREY to WHITE — the car will now follow the most recently stored speed again.

31 Cruise Control


32 Cruise Control

◀ or

To start cruise control from standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button  (2).
 - > The cruise control markings and symbols in the driver display change colour from GREY to WHITE — the car will now follow the current speed.

⚠ WARNING

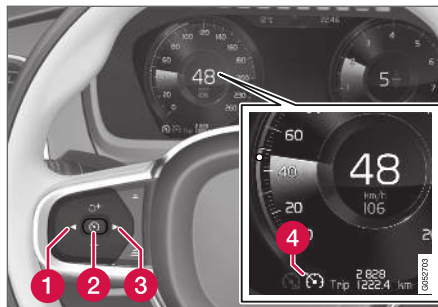
A significant increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the  steering wheel button.

Related information

- Cruise Control (p. 276)




Deactivating Cruise Control

Cruise Control — CC can be deactivated.



Buttons and symbols for functions³³.

To deactivate cruise control:

1. Press the steering wheel button  (2).
 - > Cruise control is set in standby mode.
2. Press the steering wheel button ◀ (1) or ▶ (3) to change to another function.
 - > The driver display's symbol for cruise control  (4) is extinguished - which deletes the set/stored speed.
3. Press the steering wheel button  (2) again.
 - > Another function is activated.

i NOTE
 In cars equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control*, it is possible to switch between cruise control and Adaptive Cruise Control – see the heading "Switch between CC and ACC".

Related information

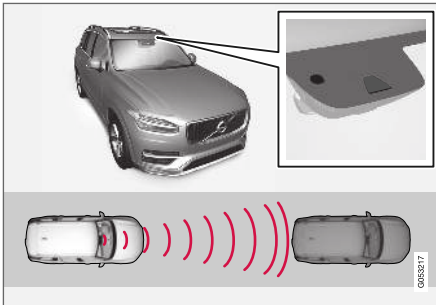
- Cruise Control (p. 276)

³³ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Adaptive Cruise Control*

The adaptive cruise control (ACC³⁴) helps the driver to maintain an even speed combined with a pre-selected time interval to the vehicle ahead.

An adaptive cruise control provides a more relaxing driving experience on long journeys on motorways and long straight main roads in smooth traffic flows.



The camera and radar unit measures the distance to the vehicle ahead³⁵.

The driver selects the desired speed and a time interval to the vehicle ahead. If the camera and radar unit detects a slower vehicle in front of the car, the speed is adapted automatically via the preset time interval to the vehicle. When the road

is clear again the car returns to the selected speed.

WARNING

- The adaptive cruise control function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system (see the list of links at the end of this article).
- The adaptive cruise control is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Adaptive cruise control regulates the speed with acceleration and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a low sound when they are being used to adjust the speed.

The adaptive cruise control aims to control the speed in a smooth way. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies in cases of large speed differences or if the vehicle in front brakes suddenly. Due to the limitations of the radar unit, braking may come unexpectedly or not at all.

The adaptive cruise control aims to follow the vehicle ahead in the same lane at a time interval set by the driver. If the radar unit cannot see any vehicle in front then the car will instead maintain the speed set and stored by the driver. This also takes place if the speed of the vehicle ahead increases and exceeds the stored speed.

The following applies for cars with automatic gearbox:

- Adaptive cruise control can follow another vehicle at speed from 0 km/h up to 200 km/h (125 mph).

The following applies for cars with manual gearbox:

- The Adaptive cruise control can follow another vehicle at speeds from 30 km/h (20 mph) up to 200 km/h (125 mph).

³⁴ Adaptive Cruise Control

³⁵ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.



WARNING

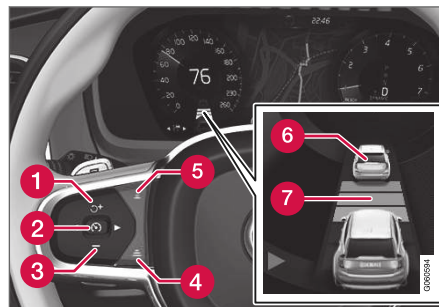
- Adaptive cruise control is not a collision avoidance system. The driver is always responsible and must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle ahead.
- The adaptive cruise control does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for low trailers, oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.
- Do not use the adaptive cruise control in demanding situations, such as in city traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

IMPORTANT

Maintenance of adaptive cruise control components must only be performed at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Overview

Controls



Buttons and symbols for functions³⁵.

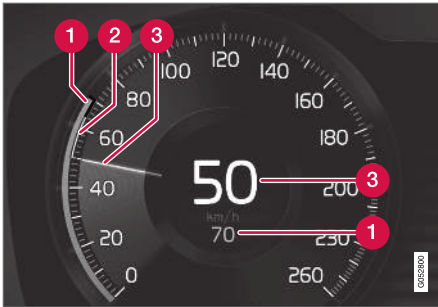
- 1** : Activates the adaptive cruise control from standby mode and resumes stored speed
- 1** **+** : Increases the stored speed
- 2** : **From standby mode** - activates the adaptive cruise control and stores current speed
- 2** : **From active mode** - deactivates/changes the adaptive cruise control to standby mode
- 3** **-** : Reduces stored speed
- 4** : Increases the time interval to vehicles ahead

- 5** Reduces the time interval to vehicles ahead
- 6** Target vehicle indicator: ACC has detected and is following a target vehicle at the preset time interval
- 7** Symbol for time interval to vehicles ahead

NOTE
In cars equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control*, it is possible to switch between cruise control and Adaptive Cruise Control - see the heading "Switch between CC and ACC".

³⁵ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Driver display



Indication of speeds³⁵.

- 1 Stored speed
- 2 Speed of vehicle ahead.
- 3 Current speed of your car.

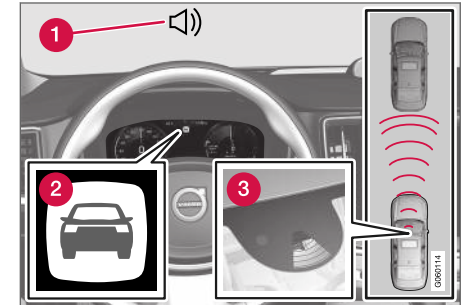
To see different combinations of symbols depending on traffic situation - see the heading "Symbols and messages for the adaptive cruise control".

Related information

- Adaptive Cruise Control and Collision risk warning (p. 283)
- Activating and starting Adaptive Cruise Control (p. 284)

- Managing speed with Adaptive Cruise Control (p. 285)
- Setting time interval for Adaptive Cruise Control (p. 286)
- Deactivating/reactivating Adaptive Cruise Control (p. 287)
- Overtaking assistance with Adaptive Cruise Control (p. 289)
- Starting overtaking assistance with Adaptive Cruise Control (p. 289)
- Limitations for overtaking assistance with Adaptive Cruise Control (p. 290)
- Changing target with Adaptive Cruise Control (p. 290)
- Automatic braking with Adaptive Cruise Control (p. 291)
- Limitations for Adaptive Cruise Control (p. 292)
- Change between Cruise Control and Adaptive Cruise Control (p. 292)
- Symbols and messages for Adaptive Cruise Control (p. 294)

Adaptive Cruise Control and Collision risk warning



Audio and symbol for collision warning³⁶.

- 1 Acoustic warning signal in the event of a risk of collision
- 2 Warning signal in the event of a risk of collision
- 3 Distance measurement with the camera and radar unit

Adaptive Cruise Control uses approx. 40% of the capacity of the foot brake. If the car needs to be braked more heavily than the adaptive cruise control is capable of and the driver does not brake, the warning lamp and acoustic warning are activated to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

³⁵ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

³⁶ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.



⚠ WARNING

The adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles which its radar unit has detected - hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay.

- Never wait for a warning. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

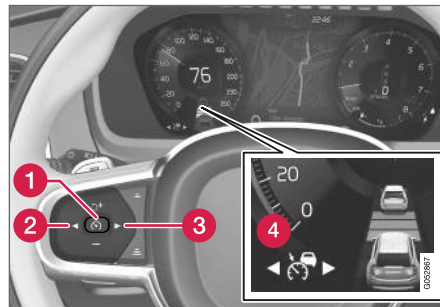
Related information

- Adaptive Cruise Control* (p. 281)

Activating and starting Adaptive Cruise Control


Adaptive cruise control (ACC³⁷) must first be activated and then started if it is to control the speed and distance.

Setting the adaptive cruise control in standby mode



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

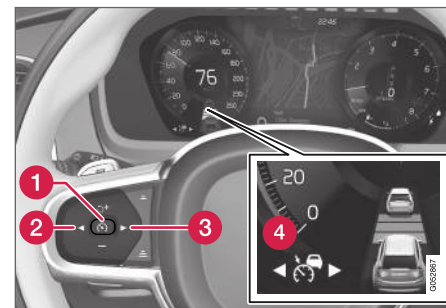
Immediately after the engine is started the Adaptive Cruise Control is in the standby mode. To set it in standby mode from active mode, proceed as follows:

- Press steering wheel button ◀ (2) or ▶ (3) to scroll to the symbol/function  (4).
 - > The symbol is displayed and Adaptive Cruise Control is set in standby mode.

Starting/activating the adaptive cruise control



In order to start the ACC the following requirements apply:

- The driver's seatbelt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.
- There must be a vehicle (the "target vehicle") within reasonable distance in front of the car, or the current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).
- For cars with manual gearbox. Speed must be at the lowest 30 km/h (20 mph).



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

³⁷ Adaptive Cruise Control

- With the symbol/function  (4) displayed, press the steering wheel button  (1).
 - > Adaptive cruise control starts and the current speed is stored, which is shown in figures in the centre of the speedometer.



The time interval is only adjusted to the vehicle ahead by the ACC when the distance symbol shows two vehicles.



At the same time a speed range is marked.

The higher speed is the stored/selected speed and the lower speed is that of the vehicle ahead (target vehicle).

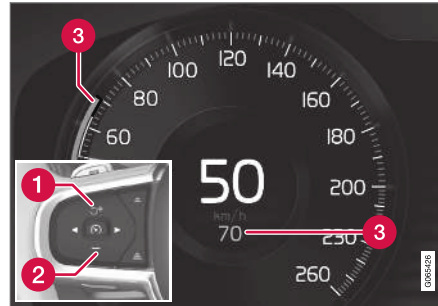
Related information

- Adaptive Cruise Control* (p. 281)

Managing speed with Adaptive Cruise Control

The adaptive cruise control (ACC³⁸) can be set to different speeds.

Setting/changing the stored speed



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model and market.

- 1 **+** : Increases the stored speed.
- 2 **-** : Reduces stored speed.
- 3 Stored speed.

- Change the set speed with short or long presses on steering wheel button **+** (1) or **-** (2):
 - **Short** press: Each press changes the speed in increments of +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph).
 - **Press and hold**: Release the button when the speed indicator (3) has moved to the desired speed.
- The speed set after the last button press is stored in the memory.

If the driver increases the car's speed using the accelerator pedal before pressing the steering wheel button **+**, the speed stored will be the car's speed when the button is depressed, provided the driver's foot is on the accelerator pedal at the moment when the button is depressed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

³⁸ Adaptive Cruise Control

◀ Automatic gearbox

Adaptive cruise control can follow another vehicle at speeds from 0 km/h up to 200 km/h (125 mph).

Note that the lowest programmable speed for the adaptive cruise control is 30 km/h (20 mph) - even though it is capable of following another vehicle down to 0 km/h, a speed lower than 30 km/h (20 mph) cannot be selected/stored.

The maximum speed selectable is 200 km/h (125 mph).

Manual gearbox

The Adaptive cruise control can follow another vehicle at speeds from 30 km/h (20 mph) up to 200 km/h (125 mph).

The lowest programmable speed for the adaptive cruise control is 30 km/h (20 mph) - the maximum speed is 200 km/h (125 mph).

Related information

- Adaptive Cruise Control* (p. 281)

Setting time interval for Adaptive Cruise Control

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC³⁹) can be set to different time intervals.



Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the driver display as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line represents about 1 second to the vehicle

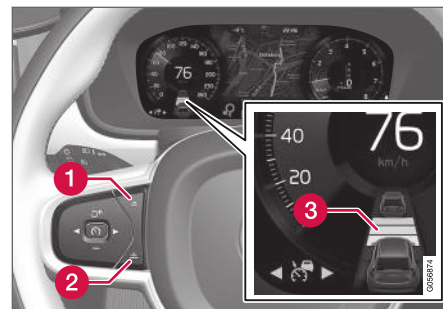
in front, 5 lines represents about 3 seconds.

The same symbol is also shown when the Distance Warning function is activated.

i NOTE

When the symbol in the driver display shows two cars, ACC is following the vehicle in front at a pre-set time interval.

When only one car is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.



Control for time interval⁴⁰.

- 1 Decrease time interval
 - 2 Increase time interval
 - 3 Distance indicator
- Press the steering wheel button (1) or (2) to increase or decrease the time interval.
 - > The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

The adaptive cruise control allows the time interval to vary significantly in certain situations in order to allow the car to follow the vehicle in front smoothly and comfortably. At low speed, when the distances are short, the adaptive cruise control increases the time interval slightly.

³⁹ Adaptive Cruise Control

⁴⁰ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

i NOTE

- The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.
- Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.
- If the adaptive cruise control does not seem to respond with a speed increase when activated, it may be because the time window to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the set time window.

⚠ WARNING

- Only use a time window that suits the current traffic conditions.
- The driver should be aware that short time windows limit the amount of time available to react and take action if an unexpected traffic situation arises.

Select how ACC shall maintain the distance* to the vehicle ahead

The driver can select different driving styles for how the Adaptive cruise control should maintain the preset time interval to the vehicle ahead. Selection is made via the drive mode control

DRIVE MODE.

Select one of the following options:

- **Eco** - ACC focuses on optimal fuel economy, which means longer time interval to the vehicle ahead.
- **Comfort** - ACC focuses on following the set time interval to the vehicle ahead as smoothly as possible.
- **Dynamic** - ACC focuses on following the set time interval to the vehicle ahead more closely, which in certain cases may mean heavier acceleration and braking.

See further information in the "Drive modes" sections.

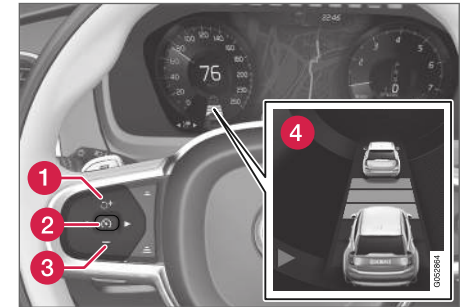
Supplementary information can also be found in the sections "Managing speed for the cruise control" and "Drive mode ECO".

Related information

- Adaptive Cruise Control* (p. 281)

Deactivating/reactivating Adaptive Cruise Control


The Adaptive cruise control (ACC⁴¹) can be temporarily deactivated so that it is set in the standby mode and can later be reactivated.

Deactivate Adaptive Cruise Control and set it in standby mode

NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

⁴¹ Adaptive Cruise Control

◀◀ To temporarily switch off Adaptive Cruise Control and set it in standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button  (2).
- > Stored speed in the centre of the speedometer changes from BEIGE to GREY and the indication for time interval as well as the symbol for the target vehicle, if on, are switched off.

⚠ WARNING

- With the adaptive cruise control in standby mode, the driver must intervene and regulate both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
- When the adaptive cruise control is in standby mode and the car comes too close to a vehicle ahead, the driver is warned of the short distance by the Distance Warning function instead.

Standby mode on driver intervention

The Adaptive cruise control is temporarily deactivated and set in standby mode if:

- the foot brake is used.
- the gear selector is moved to **N** position.
- the driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.

- the clutch pedal is depressed for approx. 1 minute - applies to cars with manual gearbox.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic standby mode

The adaptive cruise control is dependent on other systems, e.g. Electronic Stability Control ESC⁴². If any of the other systems stops working, the adaptive cruise control is deactivated automatically.

⚠ WARNING

With automatic standby mode, the driver is warned via an acoustic signal and a message on the driver display.

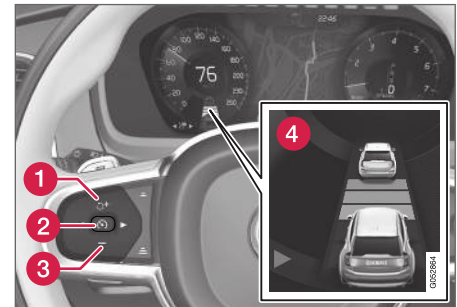
- The driver must then regulate the car's speed, apply the brakes as needed and maintain a safe distance to other vehicles.

Automatic standby mode may occur if:

- the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and ACC is uncertain whether the vehicle ahead is a stationary vehicle or an object, such as a speed bump.
- the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns off so that ACC no longer has a vehicle to follow.

- speed is reduced to below 30 km/h (20 mph) - only applies to cars with manual gearbox.
- the driver opens the door.
- the driver takes off the seatbelt.
- engine speed is too low/high.
- one or more wheels lose traction.
- brake temperature is high.
- the parking brake is applied.
- the camera and radar unit is covered by e.g. snow or heavy rainfall (camera lens/radio waves are blocked).


Reactivating adaptive cruise control from standby mode




NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

⁴² Electronic Stability Control

To reactivate ACC from standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button  (1).
 - > The speed is then set to the most recently stored speed.

WARNING

A significant increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the .

Related information

- Adaptive Cruise Control* (p. 281)

Overtaking assistance with Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive cruise control (ACC⁴³) can assist the driver when overtaking other vehicles.

How overtaking assistance works

When ACC is following another vehicle and the driver indicates the intention to overtake by activating the direction indicator⁴⁴, adaptive cruise control helps by accelerating the vehicle towards the vehicle in front **before** the driver's vehicle reaches the overtaking lane.

The function then delays reducing speed in order to avoid premature braking when the driver's car is approaching a slower vehicle.

The function remains active until the driver's vehicle has cleared the overtaken vehicle.

WARNING

Be aware that this function can be activated in more situations than during overtaking, e.g. when a direction indicator is used to indicate a change of lane or exit to another road – the car will then accelerate briefly.

Related information

- Adaptive Cruise Control* (p. 281)

Starting overtaking assistance with Adaptive Cruise Control

Continuation for Overtaking Assistance

The following conditions must exist for Overtaking Assistance to be activated:

- there must be a vehicle in front (the “target vehicle”)
- your car's **current speed** is at least 70 km/h (43 mph)
- **the stored ACC** speed must be high enough for overtaking to take place safely.

Starting Overtaking Assistance

To start the Overtaking Assistance:

- Activate the direction indicator.

Use the left direction indicator in a car with the steering wheel on the left, or the right direction indicator in a car with the steering wheel on the right.

> Overtaking Assistance is started.

Related information

- Adaptive Cruise Control* (p. 281)

⁴³ Adaptive Cruise Control

⁴⁴ On left flash only in left-hand-drive car, or right flash in right-hand-drive car.

Limitations for overtaking assistance with Adaptive Cruise Control

The overtaking assistance function may have limited functionality in certain situations.

⚠ WARNING

When using the Overtaking Assistance System, the driver should be aware that there may be undesired acceleration if the conditions suddenly change.

Some situations should therefore be avoided, such as if:

- the car is approaching an exit for turn-off that is in the same direction as overtaking would normally occur.
- the vehicle ahead slows down before the driver's car has crossed over into the overtaking lane
- the traffic in the overtaking lane slows down
- a right-hand drive car is driven in a country with left-hand traffic (or vice versa).

Situations of this kind can be avoided by temporarily setting ACC⁴⁵ in the standby mode.

Related information

- Adaptive Cruise Control* (p. 281)

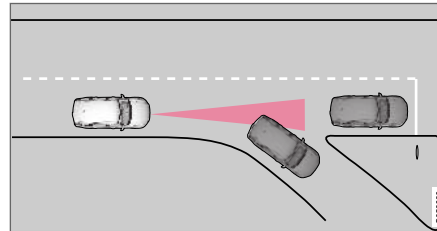
⁴⁵ Adaptive Cruise Control

⁴⁶ Adaptive Cruise Control

Changing target with Adaptive Cruise Control

In combination with automatic gearbox, the adaptive cruise control (ACC⁴⁶) has functionality for change of target at certain speeds.

Change of target



If the target vehicle in front suddenly turns then there may be stationary traffic in front.

When adaptive cruise control is following another vehicle at speeds **below** 30 km/h (20 mph) and changes target from a moving to a stationary vehicle, the adaptive cruise control will slow down for the stationary vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

When the adaptive cruise control is following another vehicle at speeds **in excess of** approx. 30 km/h (20 mph) and the target is changed from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, the adaptive cruise control will **ignore** the stationary vehicle and instead accelerate to the stored speed.

- The driver must then intervene him/herself and brake.

Automatic standby mode with change of target

The adaptive cruise control is disengaged and set in standby mode:

- when the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the adaptive cruise control is uncertain whether the target object is a stationary vehicle or some other object, such as a speed bump.
- when the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns off so the adaptive cruise control no longer has a vehicle to follow.

Related information


- Adaptive Cruise Control* (p. 281)

Automatic braking with Adaptive Cruise Control

The Adaptive cruise control (ACC⁴⁷) has a special brake function in slow traffic and while stationary.

Brake function in slow queues and while stationary

For shorter stops in connection with inching in slow traffic or at traffic lights driving is automatically resumed if the stops do not exceed about 3 seconds - if it takes longer before the car in front starts moving again then the adaptive cruise control is set in standby mode with automatic braking.

- The Adaptive Cruise Control is reactivated in one of the following ways:
 - Press the steering wheel button .
 - Depress the accelerator pedal.
- > The Adaptive Cruise Control resumes following the vehicle ahead if it starts moving forward within 6 seconds.

NOTE

ACC can keep the car stationary for a maximum of 5 minutes. After this the parking brake is applied and adaptive cruise control is disengaged.

The parking brake must be released before the adaptive cruise control can be reactivated.

Cessation of automatic braking

In some situations, automatic braking ceases on reaching 0 km/h and Adaptive Cruise Control is set in standby mode. This means that the brakes are released and the car may start to roll - the driver must therefore intervene and brake the car himself/herself to keep it stationary.

This may take place in the following situations:

- the driver puts his/her foot on the brake pedal
- the parking brake is applied
- the gear selector is moved to **P**, **N**, or **R** position
- the driver sets the adaptive cruise control in the standby mode.

Automatic activation of parking brake

In certain situations the parking brake is applied to keep the car stationary.

This takes place if the adaptive cruise control is holding the car stationary with the foot brake and:

- the driver opens the door or takes off his/her seatbelt
- ACC has kept the car stationary for more than approx. 5 minutes
- the brakes have overheated
- the driver switches the engine off manually.

Related information

- Adaptive Cruise Control* (p. 281)

⁴⁷ Adaptive Cruise Control

Limitations for Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive cruise control (ACC⁴⁸) may have limitations in certain situations.

Steep roads and/or heavy load

Bear in mind that the adaptive cruise control is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. The function may have difficulty in keeping the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill slopes - in which case, be extra attentive and ready to brake.

- Do not use adaptive cruise control if the car has a heavy load or a trailer is connected to the car.

Miscellaneous

- Drive mode **Off Road** cannot be selected when the adaptive cruise control is activated.

i NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

i NOTE

The function uses the car's radar unit, which has some general limitations, see the section "Limitations for radar unit".



Related information

- Adaptive Cruise Control* (p. 281)

Change between Cruise Control and Adaptive Cruise Control

In a car with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC⁴⁹) the driver can change between Cruise Control (CC⁵⁰) and ACC.




A symbol in the driver display shows which cruise control is active:

CC	ACC
	
Cruise control	Adaptive cruise control


A WHITE symbol: Function active, GREY symbol: Standby mode

Changing from ACC to CC

Proceed as follows:

- Set adaptive cruise control to standby mode using steering wheel button .
- Press the **Cruise Control** button in the centre display's function view - the button's indicator changes colour from GREY to GREEN.
 - > The symbol in the driver display changes from  ACC to  CC. Adaptive Cruise Control is now switched off and Cruise Control is set to standby mode.

⁴⁸ Adaptive Cruise Control

3. Press the steering wheel button  .
 - > Cruise control starts and stores the current speed.

WARNING


Switching from ACC to CC means that the car:




- no longer maintains a preset time interval to the vehicle ahead.
- only follows the stored speed, and the driver must therefore apply the brakes when necessary.

If CC is active when the engine is switched off, ACC will be activated automatically the next time the engine is started.

Changing from CC to ACC

Proceed as follows:

1. Set cruise control to standby mode using the  steering wheel button.

2. Tap on the **Cruise Control** button in the function view - the button's indicator changes colour from GREEN to GREY.
 - > The symbol in the driver display changes from  CC to  ACC. Adaptive Cruise Control is now activated and set to standby mode.
3. Press the steering wheel button  .
 - > Adaptive cruise control starts and stores the current speed, together with the preset time interval to the vehicle ahead.

Related information

- Adaptive Cruise Control* (p. 281)

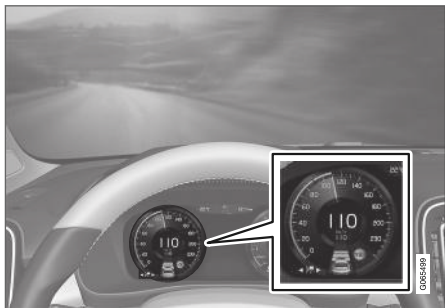
⁴⁹ Adaptive Cruise Control

⁵⁰ Cruise Control

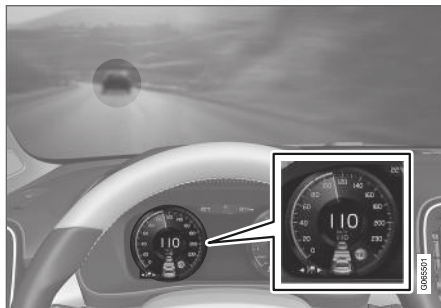
Symbols and messages for Adaptive Cruise Control

A number of symbols and messages regarding the Adaptive cruise control (ACC⁵¹) can be shown in the driver display.

Here are some examples⁵².



The previous illustration⁵³ shows that the adaptive cruise control is set to maintain 110 km/h (68 mph) and that there is no vehicle ahead to follow.







The previous illustration⁵³ shows that the adaptive cruise control is set to maintain 110 km/h


(68 mph) and at the same time is following a vehicle ahead which is keeping the same speed.

⁵¹ Adaptive Cruise Control

⁵² In the following illustrative example, the RSI (Road Sign Information) function informs the driver that the maximum permitted speed is 130 km/h (80 mph).

⁵³ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	The symbol is WHITE.	The car is maintaining the stored/selected speed.
	Adaptive cruise Unavailable The symbol is GREY.	Adaptive cruise control is set to standby mode.
	Adaptive cruise Service required The symbol is GREY.	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual	Clean the windscreen in front of the camera and radar unit's detectors.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the  button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

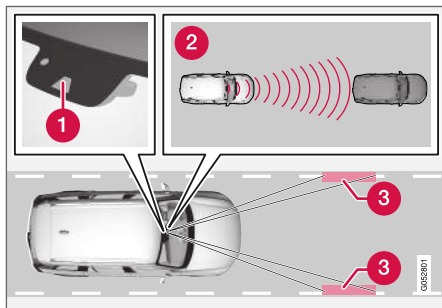
- Adaptive Cruise Control* (p. 281)

Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist helps the driver to drive the car between the lane's side markings using steering assistance as well as to maintain an even speed, combined with a preselected time interval to the vehicle ahead.

How Pilot Assist works

The Pilot Assist function is primarily intended for use on motorways and similar major roads where it can contribute to more comfortable driving and a more relaxed driving experience.



The camera and radar unit measures the distance to the vehicle ahead and detects side markings⁵⁴.

- 1 Camera and radar unit
- 2 Distance readers
- 3 Readers, side markings

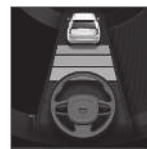
The driver selects the desired speed and a time interval to the vehicle ahead. Pilot Assist scans the distance to the vehicle ahead and the lane's side markings on the road surface using the camera and radar unit. The preset time interval is maintained with automatic speed adjustment whilst the steering assistance helps to position the car in the lane.

Pilot Assist steering assistance takes into account the speed of the preceding car and the lane markings. The driver can at any time ignore the Pilot Assist steering recommendation and steer in another direction, e.g. to change lane or avoid an obstruction on the road.

If Pilot Assist cannot interpret the lane unambiguously, e.g. if the camera and radar unit does not see the lane's side markings, Pilot Assist temporarily deactivates steering assistance, but resumes it if the lane can be interpreted again - although the speed and distance control functions remain active.

WARNING

Pilot Assist steering assistance is automatically deactivated and is resumed without prior warning.



The current status of steering assistance is indicated by the colour of the steering wheel's symbol:

- GREEN steering wheel indicates active steering assistance
- GREY steering wheel (as in illustration) indicates deactivated steering assistance.

⁵⁴ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

⚠ WARNING

- The Pilot Assist function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system (see the list of links at the end of this article).
- Pilot Assist must only be used if there are clear lane lines painted on each side of the lane. All other use involves increased risk of contact with surrounding obstacles that cannot be detected by the function.
- Pilot Assist is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, positioned correctly in the lane, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Pilot Assist regulates the speed with acceleration and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a low sound when they are being used to adjust the speed.

Pilot Assist attempts to regulate the speed smoothly. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies in cases of large speed differences or if the car in front brakes suddenly. Due to the limitations of the camera and radar unit, braking may come unexpectedly or not at all.

Pilot Assist aims to follow the vehicle ahead in the same lane at a time interval set by the driver. If the radar unit cannot see any vehicle in front then the car will instead maintain the speed set and stored by the driver. This also takes place if the speed of the vehicle ahead increases and exceeds the stored speed.

The following applies for cars with automatic gearbox:

- Pilot Assist can follow another vehicle at speeds from 0 km/h up to 200 km/h (125 mph).
- Pilot Assist can give steering assistance from almost stationary up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

The following applies for cars with manual gearbox:

- Pilot Assist can follow another vehicle at speeds from 30 km/h (20 mph) up to 200 km/h (125 mph).
- Pilot Assist can give steering assistance from 30 km/h (20 mph) up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

⚠ WARNING

- Pilot Assist is not a collision avoidance system. The driver must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front.
- Pilot Assist does not brake for people, animals, objects, small vehicles (e.g. cycles and motorcycles), low trailers as well as oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles.
- Do not use Pilot Assist in demanding situations, such as in city traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads, on slip roads, or with a trailer connected to the car.

! IMPORTANT

Maintenance of Pilot Assist internal components must only be performed at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Round bends and when the road splits

Pilot Assist interacts with the driver, who should therefore not await the steering assistance from Pilot Assist but should always be prepared to increase his/her own steering input, especially on bends.



- ◀◀ When the car approaches an exit or if the lane splits, the driver should steer towards the desired lane so that Pilot Assist can specify the desired direction.

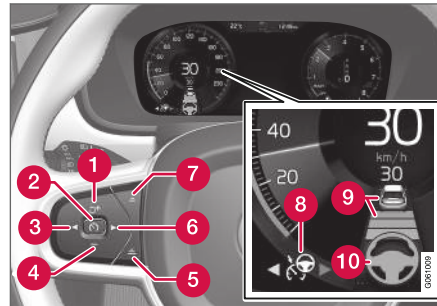
Pilot Assist strives to keep the car in the middle of the lane

When Pilot Assist helps to steer, it strives to position the car in between the lane markings and therefore it is recommended to let the car find the optimal placement to achieve as smooth a driving experience as possible. The driver checks that the car is positioned safely in the lane, and always has the ability to adjust the position by making his/her own steering corrections.

If Pilot Assist does not position the car in an appropriate way in the lane, it is recommended to turn Pilot Assist off or switch to Adaptive cruise control.

Overview

Controls

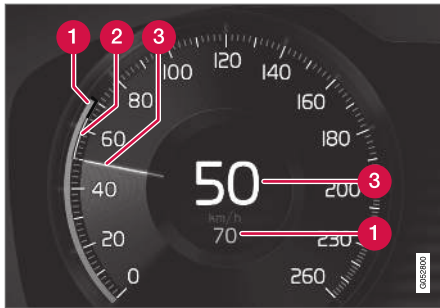


Buttons and symbols for functions⁵⁴.

- 1 : Activates Pilot Assist from standby mode and resumes the stored speed and time interval
- 1 : Increases the stored speed
- 2 : **From standby mode** - activates Pilot Assist and stores the current speed
- 2 : **From active mode** - deactivates/changes Pilot Assist to standby mode
- 3 : Switches from Pilot Assist to adaptive cruise control
- 4 : Reduces stored speed

- 5 : Increases the time interval to vehicles ahead
- 6 : Switches from adaptive cruise control to Pilot Assist
- 7 : Reduces the time interval to vehicles ahead
- 8 : Function symbol
- 9 : Symbols for target vehicle and time interval to vehicles ahead
- 10 : Symbol for activated/deactivated steering assistance

⁵⁴ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Driver display

Indication of speeds⁵⁴.

- 1 Stored speed
- 2 Speed of vehicle ahead
- 3 Current speed of your car

To see different combinations of symbols depending on traffic situation - see the heading "Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist".

Related information

- Pilot Assist and Collision risk warning (p. 299)
- Activating and starting Pilot Assist (p. 300)
- Managing speed for Pilot Assist (p. 301)
- Setting the time interval for Pilot Assist (p. 302)

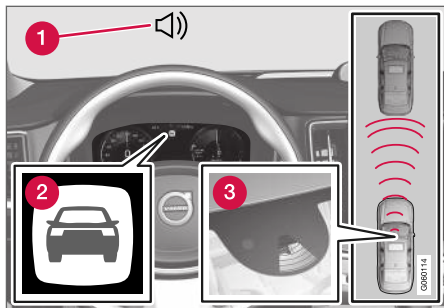
- Deactivating/activating Pilot Assist (p. 304)
- Overtaking assistance with Pilot Assist (p. 306)
- Start overtaking assistance with Pilot Assist (p. 306)
- Limitations for overtaking assistance with Pilot Assist (p. 306)
- Change the target with Pilot Assist (p. 307)
- Automatic braking with Pilot Assist (p. 307)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist (p. 308)
- Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist* (p. 309)

Pilot Assist and Collision risk warning

⁵⁴ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.



Collision risk warning



Audio and symbol for collision warning⁵⁵.

- 1 Acoustic warning signal in the event of a risk of collision
- 2 Warning signal in the event of a risk of collision
- 3 Distance measurement with the camera and radar unit

Pilot Assist uses approx. 40% of the foot brake's capacity. If the car needs to be braked more heavily than Pilot Assist is capable of and the driver does not brake, the warning lamp and acoustic warning are activated to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

WARNING

Pilot Assist only gives warning about vehicles detected by its camera and radar unit – therefore a warning may not occur or be delayed.

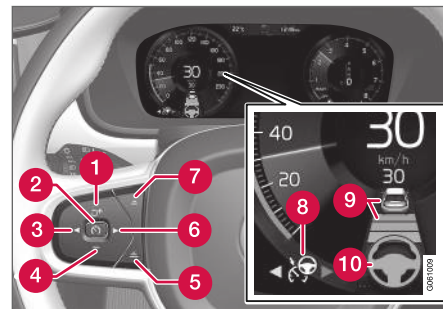
- Never wait for a warning. Apply the brakes when the situation requires!

Related information

- Pilot Assist (p. 296)

Activating and starting Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist must first be activated and then started to be able to control speed and distance and to give steering assistance.





NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

In order to start the Pilot Assist it is required that:

- The driver's seatbelt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.
- There must be a vehicle (the "target vehicle") within reasonable distance in front of the car, or the current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).
- For cars with manual gearbox. Speed must be at the lowest 30 km/h (20 mph).

⁵⁵ The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

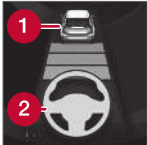
With the Adaptive cruise control in **standby mode**:

1. Press the steering wheel button ▶ (6).
 - > The  symbol changes to Pilot Assist in standby mode (8).
2. Press the steering wheel button  (2).
 - > Pilot Assist is started and current speed is stored, which is shown with figures in the centre of the speedometer.

...or...

With the Adaptive cruise control **started**:

- Press the steering wheel button ▶ (6).
 - > Pilot Assist is started.



Pilot Assist steering assistance is only active when the steering wheel symbol (2) has changed from GREY to GREEN.

Pilot Assist only regulates the time interval to the vehicle ahead when the distance symbol shows a vehicle (1) above the steering wheel symbol.




At the same time a speed range is marked.

The higher speed is the stored/selected speed and the lower speed is that of the vehicle ahead (target vehicle).

Hands on the steering wheel

In order for Pilot Assist to function, the driver's hands must be on the steering wheel. If Pilot Assist detects that the driver is not holding the steering wheel, the driver is prompted to actively steer the car via a text message and an acoustic signal.

If Pilot Assist still cannot detect that the driver is holding the steering wheel, the function shifts to standby mode. Pilot Assist must then be restarted with the steering wheel button .

NOTE

Note that Pilot Assist only works when the driver has hands on the steering wheel.

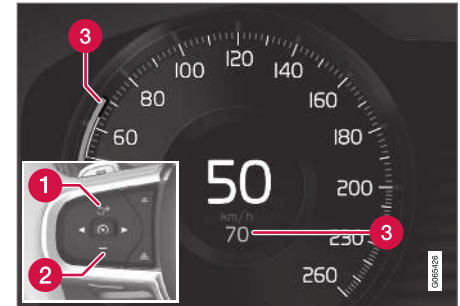
Related information

- Pilot Assist (p. 296)

Managing speed for Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist can be set to different speeds.

Setting/changing the stored speed



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model and market.

- 1** **+** : Increases the stored speed
- 2** **-** : Reduces stored speed
- 3** Stored speed

- ◀ - Change the set speed with short or long presses on steering wheel button **+** (1) or **-** (2):
 - **Short press:** Each press changes the speed in increments of +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph).
 - **Press and hold:** Release the button when the speed indicator (3) has moved to the desired speed.
 - The speed set after the last button press is stored in the memory.

If the driver increases the car's speed using the accelerator pedal before pressing the steering wheel button **+**, the speed stored will be the car's speed when the button is depressed, provided the driver's foot is on the accelerator pedal at the moment when the button is depressed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic gearbox

Pilot Assist can follow another vehicle at speeds from 0 km/h up to 200 km/h (125 mph).

Note that the lowest programmable speed for Pilot Assist is 30 km/h (20 mph) - even though it is capable of following another vehicle down to 0 km/h, a speed lower than 30 km/h (20 mph) cannot be selected/stored.

The maximum speed selectable is 200 km/h (125 mph).

Manual gearbox

Pilot Assist can follow another vehicle at speeds from 30 km/h (20 mph) up to 200 km/h (125 mph).

The lowest programmable speed for Pilot Assist is 30 km/h (20 mph) - the maximum speed is 200 km/h (125 mph).

Related information

- Pilot Assist (p. 296)

Setting the time interval for Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist can be set with different time intervals.



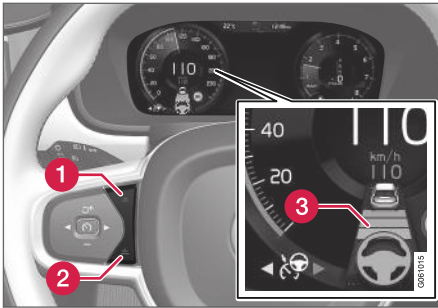
Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the driver display as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line represents about 1 second to the vehicle

in front, 5 lines represents about 3 seconds.

i NOTE

When the symbol in the driver display shows a car and a steering wheel, Pilot Assist follows a vehicle in front at a preset time gap.

When only one steering wheel is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.



Control for time interval⁵⁶.

- 1 Decrease time interval
- 2 Increase time interval
- 3 Distance indicator

- Press the steering wheel button (1) or (2) to increase or decrease the time interval.
 - > The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

In order to follow the vehicle ahead in a smooth and comfortable way, Pilot Assist allows the time interval to vary noticeably in certain conditions. For example, at low speed, when the distances become short, Pilot Assist increases the time interval slightly.

i NOTE

- The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.
- Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.
- If Pilot Assist does not seem to respond with a speed increase when activated, it may be because the time window to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the set time window.

⚠ WARNING

- Only use a time window that suits the current traffic conditions.
- The driver should be aware that short time windows limit the amount of time available to react and take action if an unexpected traffic situation arises.

Select how Pilot Assist shall maintain the distance* to the vehicle ahead

The driver can select different driving styles for how Pilot Assist should maintain the preset time interval to the vehicle ahead. Selection is made via the drive mode control **DRIVE MODE**.

Select one of the following options:

- **Eco** - Pilot Assist focuses on optimal fuel economy, which means longer time interval to the vehicle ahead.
- **Comfort** - Pilot Assist focuses on following the set time interval to the vehicle ahead as smoothly as possible.
- **Dynamic** - Pilot Assist focuses on following the set time interval to the vehicle ahead more closely, which in certain cases may mean heavier acceleration and braking.

See further information in the "Drive modes" sections.

Supplementary information can also be found in the sections "Managing speed for the cruise control" and "Drive mode ECO".

Related information

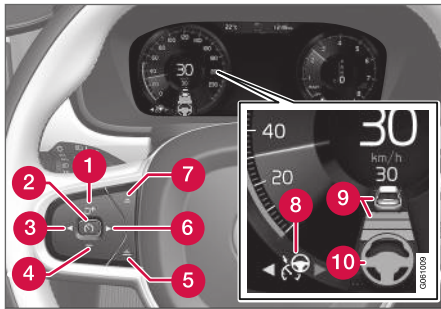
- Pilot Assist (p. 296)

⁵⁶ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Deactivating/activating Pilot Assist


Pilot Assist can be temporarily deactivated so that it is set in the standby mode and can be reactivated later.

Deactivating and setting Pilot Assist in standby mode




NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

To temporarily switch off Pilot Assist and set it in standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button  (2).
 - > Pilot Assist is set in standby mode - the symbol (8) in the driver display changes colour from WHITE to GREY and the stored speed in the centre of the speedometer changes from BEIGE to GREY.

...or...

- Press the steering wheel button  (3).
 - > Pilot Assist is switched off and changes to the Adaptive cruise control in active mode.

WARNING

- With Pilot Assist in standby mode, the driver must intervene and steer, regulating both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
- When Pilot Assist is in standby mode and the car comes too close to a vehicle ahead, the driver is warned of the short distance by the Distance Warning function instead.

Standby mode on driver intervention

Pilot Assist is temporarily deactivated and set in standby mode if:

- the foot brake is used.
- the gear selector is moved to **N** position.
- the direction indicators are used for longer than 1 minute.
- the driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.

- the clutch pedal is depressed for approx. 1 minute - applies to cars with manual gearbox.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

When the direction indicators are used, Pilot Assist steering assistance is temporarily disengaged. When this is no longer the case, steering assistance is automatically reactivated if the lane's side markings can still be detected.

Automatic standby mode

Pilot Assist is dependent on other systems, e.g. stability control/anti-skid ESC⁵⁷. If any of these other systems stops working, Pilot Assist is switched off automatically.

⚠ WARNING

With automatic standby mode, the driver is warned via an acoustic signal and a message on the driver display.

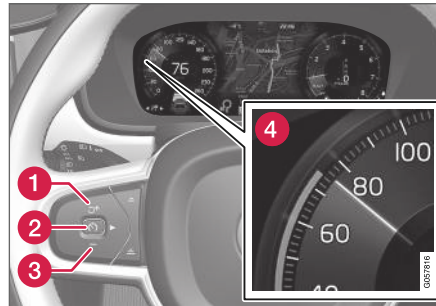
- The driver must then regulate the car's speed, apply the brakes as needed and maintain a safe distance to other vehicles.

Automatic standby mode may occur if, for example:

- the driver opens the door.
- brake temperature is high.
- the driver's hands are not on the steering wheel.
- the parking brake is applied.
- engine speed is too low/high.
- the driver takes off the seatbelt.
- one or more wheels lose traction.
- the camera and radar unit is covered by e.g. snow or heavy rainfall (camera lens/radio waves are blocked).


- the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and Pilot Assist is uncertain whether the vehicle ahead is a stationary vehicle or an object, such as a speed bump.
- the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns off so that Pilot Assist no longer has a vehicle to follow.
- speed is reduced to below 30 km/h (20 mph) - only applies to cars with manual gearbox.

Reactivating Pilot Assist from the standby mode




NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

To reactivate Pilot Assist:

- Press the steering wheel button  (1).
 - > The speed is then set to the most recently stored speed.

⚠ WARNING

A significant increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the  steering wheel button.

Related information

- Pilot Assist (p. 296)

⁵⁷ Electronic Stability Control

Overtaking assistance with Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist can help the driver when overtaking other vehicles.

How overtaking assistance works

When Pilot Assist is following another vehicle and the driver indicates the intention to overtake by activating the direction indicator⁵⁸, Pilot Assist helps by accelerating the vehicle towards the vehicle in front **before** the driver's vehicle reaches the overtaking lane.

The function then delays reducing speed in order to avoid premature braking when the driver's car is approaching a slower vehicle.

The function remains active until the driver's vehicle has cleared the overtaken vehicle.

WARNING

Be aware that this function can be activated in more situations than during overtaking, e.g. when a direction indicator is used to indicate a change of lane or exit to another road – the car will then accelerate briefly.

Related information

- Pilot Assist (p. 296)

Start overtaking assistance with Pilot Assist

Continuation for Overtaking Assistance

The following conditions must exist for Overtaking Assistance to be activated:

- there must be a vehicle in front (the "target vehicle")
- your car's **current speed** is at least 70 km/h (43 mph)
- **the stored** Pilot Assist speed must be high enough for overtaking to take place safely.

Starting Overtaking Assistance

To start the Overtaking Assistance:

- Activate the direction indicator.
 - Use the left direction indicator in a car with the steering wheel on the left, or the right direction indicator in a car with the steering wheel on the right.
 - > Overtaking Assistance is started.

Related information

- Pilot Assist (p. 296)

Limitations for overtaking assistance with Pilot Assist

The overtaking assistance function may have limited functionality in certain situations.

WARNING

When using the Overtaking Assistance System, the driver should be aware that there may be undesired acceleration if the conditions suddenly change.

Some situations should therefore be avoided, such as if:

- the car is approaching an exit for turn-of that is in the same direction as overtaking would normally occur.
- the vehicle ahead slows down before the driver's car has crossed over into the overtaking lane
- the traffic in the overtaking lane slows down
- a right-hand drive car is driven in a county with left-hand traffic (or vice versa).

Situations of this kind can be avoided by temporarily setting Pilot Assist in the standby mode.

Related information

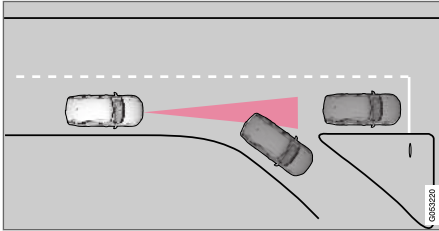
- Pilot Assist (p. 296)

⁵⁸ On left flash only in left-hand-drive car, or right flash in right-hand-drive car.

Change the target with Pilot Assist

In combination with automatic gearbox, Pilot Assist has functionality for change of target at certain speeds.

Change of target



If the target vehicle in front suddenly turns then there may be stationary traffic in front.

When Pilot Assist is following another vehicle at speeds **below** 30 km/h (20 mph) and changes target from a moving to a stationary vehicle, Pilot Assist will slow down for the stationary vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

When Pilot Assist is following another vehicle at speeds **in excess of** approx. 30 km/h (20 mph) and the target is changed from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, Pilot Assist will **ignore** the stationary vehicle and instead accelerate to the stored speed.

- The driver must then intervene him/herself and brake.

Automatic standby mode with change of target

Pilot Assist is disengaged and set in standby mode:

- when the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and Pilot Assist is uncertain whether the target object is a stationary vehicle or some other object, e.g. a speed bump.
- when the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle in front turns off so the Pilot Assist no longer has a vehicle to follow.

Related information


- Pilot Assist (p. 296)

Automatic braking with Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist has a special brake function in slow traffic and while stationary.

Brake function in slow queues and while stationary

For shorter stops in connection with inching in slow traffic or at traffic lights, driving is automatically resumed if the stops do not exceed approx. 3 seconds - if it takes longer before the vehicle in front starts moving again then Pilot Assist is set in standby mode with automatic braking.

- Pilot Assist is reactivated in the following way:
 - Press the steering wheel button .
 - Depress the accelerator pedal.
- > Pilot Assist resumes following the vehicle ahead if it starts moving forward within 6 seconds.

i NOTE

Pilot Assist can hold the car stationary for a maximum of 5 minutes - then the parking brake is applied and the function is disengaged.

Before Pilot Assist can be reactivated, the parking brake must be released.

◀◀ **Cessation of automatic braking**

In some situations, automatic braking ceases on coming to a standstill and Pilot Assist is set in standby mode. This means that the brakes are released and the car may start to roll - the driver must therefore intervene and brake the car himself/herself to keep it stationary.

This may take place in the following situations:

- the driver puts his/her foot on the brake pedal
- the parking brake is applied
- the gear selector is moved to **P**, **N**, or **R** position
- the driver sets Pilot Assist in the standby mode.

Automatic activation of parking brake

In certain situations, the parking brake is applied in order to keep the car stationary.

This takes place if Pilot Assist is holding the car stationary with the foot brake and:

- the driver opens the door or takes off his/her seatbelt
- Pilot Assist has kept the car stationary for more than approx. 5 minutes
- the brakes have overheated
- the driver switches the engine off manually.

Related information

- Pilot Assist (p. 296)

Limitations of Pilot Assist

The Pilot Assist function may have limitations in certain situations.

The Pilot Assist function is an aid which can help the driver in many situations. But the driver is at all times responsible for maintaining a safe distance to surrounding objects and a correct position in the lane.

WARNING

In certain situations, Pilot Assist steering assistance may have difficulty helping the driver in the right way or it may be automatically deactivated - in which case, the use of Pilot Assist is not recommended. Examples of such situations may be that:

- the lane markings are worn, missing or cross each other.
- lane division is unclear, for example, when the lanes divide or merge or at exits or in the event of multiple sets of markings.
- edges or other lines than lane markings are present on or near the road, e.g. kerbs, joints or repairs to the road surface, edges of barriers, roadside edges or strong shadows.
- the lane is narrow or winding.
- the lane contains ridges or holes.
- weather conditions are poor, e.g. rain, snow or fog or slush or impaired view with poor light conditions, back-lighting, wet road surface etc.

The driver should also note that Pilot Assist has the following limitations:

- High kerbs, roadside barriers, temporary obstacles (traffic cones, safety barriers, etc.) are not detected. Alternatively, they may be detected incorrectly as lane markings, with a subsequent risk of contact

between the car and such obstacles. The driver must ensure him/herself that the car is at a suitable distance from such obstacles.

- The camera and radar sensor does not have the capacity to detect all oncoming objects and obstacles in traffic environments, e.g. potholes, stationary obstacles or objects which completely or partially block the route.
- Pilot Assist does not "see" pedestrians, animals, etc.
- The recommended steering input is force limited, which means that it cannot always help the driver to steer and keep the car within the lane.
- Pilot Assist is switched off if the power steering is working with reduced power - e.g. during cooling due to overheating (see section "Speed-dependent steering force").

The driver always has the possibility of correcting or adjusting a steering intervention imposed by Pilot Assist and can turn the steering wheel to the desired position.

Steep roads and/or heavy load

Bear in mind that Pilot Assist is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. The function may have difficulty in keeping

the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill slopes - in which case, be extra attentive and ready to brake.

- Do not use Pilot Assist if the car has a heavy load or a trailer is connected to the car.

NOTE

Pilot Assist cannot be activated if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system.

Miscellaneous

- **Off Road** drive mode cannot be selected when Pilot Assist is activated.

NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

NOTE

The function uses the car's radar unit, which has some general limitations, see the section "Limitations for radar unit".

Related information

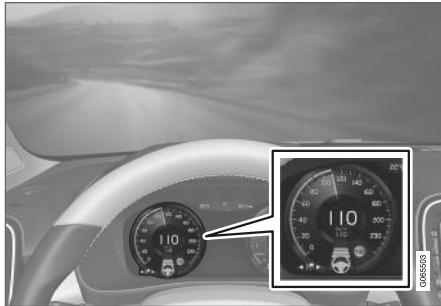
- Pilot Assist (p. 296)
- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 262)

Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist*

A number of symbols and messages regarding Pilot Assist can be shown via the driver display.

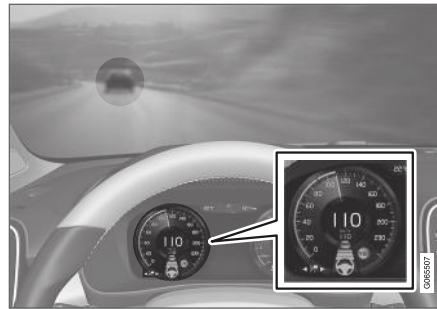


« Here are some examples⁵⁹.



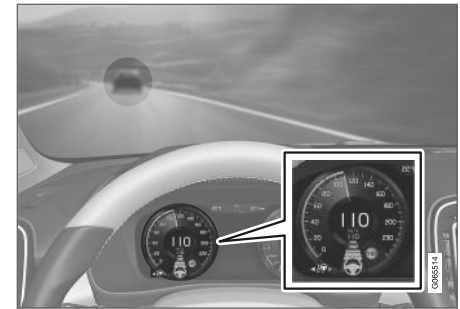
The previous illustration⁶⁰ shows that Pilot Assist is set to maintain 110 km/h (68 mph) and that there is no vehicle ahead to follow.

Pilot Assist provides no steering assistance since the lane's side markings cannot be detected.



The previous illustration⁶⁰ shows that Pilot Assist is set to maintain 110 km/h (68 mph) and at the same time is following a vehicle ahead which is keeping the same speed.

Pilot Assist provides no steering assistance since the lane's side markings cannot be detected.

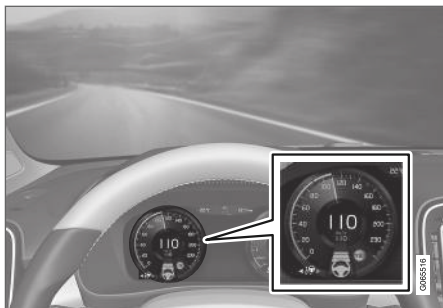


The previous illustration⁶⁰ shows that Pilot Assist is set to maintain 110 km/h (68 mph) and at the same time is following a vehicle ahead which is keeping the same speed.

Here, Pilot Assist also provides steering assistance since the lane's side markings can be detected.

⁵⁹ In the following illustrative example, the RSI (Road Sign Information) function informs the driver that the maximum permitted speed is 130 km/h (80 mph).

⁶⁰ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.



The previous illustration⁶⁰ shows that Pilot Assist is set to maintain 110 km/h (68 mph) and that there is no vehicle ahead to follow.

Here too, Pilot Assist provides steering assistance since the lane's side markings can be detected.

Related information

- Pilot Assist (p. 296)

Radar unit

The radar unit is used by several driver support systems and has the task of sensing other vehicles.



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

The radar unit is used by the following functions:

- Distance Warning*
- Adaptive cruise control*
- Lane assistance
- Pilot Assist*
- City Safety

Modification of the radar unit could result in its use being illegal.

Related information

- Limitations for radar device (p. 312)
- Recommended radar device maintenance (p. 315)
- Type approval for radar device (p. 316)

⁶⁰ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Limitations for radar device

The radar unit has certain limitations - which in turn also limits those functions that use the unit.

Blocked unit



The marked area must be kept free from stickers, objects, shade film, etc.⁶¹.

The radar unit is placed inside the upper section of the windscreen together with the car's camera unit.

! IMPORTANT

Do not place, stick or mount anything on the outside or inside of the windscreen in front of or around the camera and radar unit — this can interfere with camera and radar-dependent functions.

This may mean that functions are reduced, deactivated completely or give incorrect function response.



If the driver display shows this symbol and the message "**Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**", this means that the camera and radar unit cannot detect other vehicles, cyclists, pedestrians and larger animals in front of the car and that the car's camera-based and radar-based functions may be disrupted, reduced, completely deactivated or give an incorrect function response.

The following table presents examples of possible causes for a message being shown, along with the appropriate action:

Cause	Action
The windscreen surface in front of the camera and radar unit is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean dirt, ice and snow from the windscreen surface in front of the camera and radar unit.
Thick fog and heavy rain or snow block the radar signals or the camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work during heavy rain or snowfall.

⁶¹ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Cause	Action
Water or snow from the road surface swirls up and blocks the radar signals or camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work on a very wet or snow-covered road surface.
Dirt has appeared between the inside of the windscreen and the camera and radar unit.	Visit a workshop to have the windscreen inside the unit's cover cleaned - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

i NOTE

Keep the windscreen clean in front of the camera and radar unit.

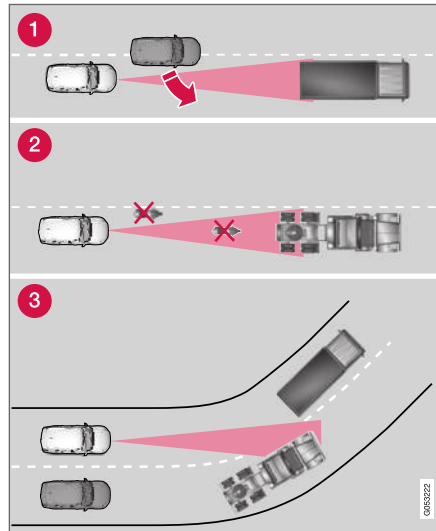
Vehicle speed

The capacity of the radar unit to detect vehicles ahead is reduced significantly if:

- the speed of the vehicle ahead is significantly different from that of your own car

Limited field of vision

The radar unit has a limited field of vision. In some situations another vehicle is not detected, or the detection is made later than expected.



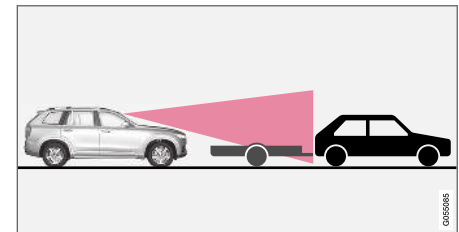
The radar unit's field of vision.

- Sometimes the radar unit is late at detecting vehicles at close distances - e.g. a vehicle

that drives in between your car and the vehicle ahead.

- Small vehicles, such as motorcycles, or vehicles not driving in the centre of the lane can remain undetected.
- In bends, the radar unit may detect the wrong vehicle or lose a detected vehicle from view.

Low trailers



Low trailer in radar shadow.

Low trailers can also be difficult for the radar unit to detect, or are not detected at all - the driver should therefore be particularly careful when driving behind low trailers when the adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist is activated.



◀◀ High temperature

At very high temperatures the camera and radar unit can temporarily be switched off for about 15 minutes after the engine is started so as to protect the unit's electronics. The camera and radar unit restarts automatically when the temperature has fallen sufficiently.

Damaged windscreen

! IMPORTANT

If a crack, scratch or stone chip in the windscreen in front of one of the camera and radar unit "windows" covers an area of approx. 0.5 × 3.0 mm (0.02 × 0.12 in.) or larger, a workshop must be contacted to have the windscreen replaced – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

If not rectified it can lead to reduced performance for the driver support systems that use the camera and radar unit.

This may mean that functions are reduced, deactivated completely or give incorrect function response.

To avoid the risk of failed, deficient or reduced operation of driver support systems that use the radar unit, the following also applies:

- Volvo recommends **against** repairing cracks, scratches or stone chips in the area in front of the camera and radar unit. Instead, the whole windscreen should be replaced.
- Before replacing a windscreen, contact an authorised Volvo workshop to verify that the correct windscreen is ordered and fitted.

- The same type or Volvo-approved windscreen wipers must be fitted during replacement.

! IMPORTANT

When the windscreen is replaced, the camera and radar unit must be recalibrated at the workshop to ensure the functionality of all the car's camera and radar-based systems. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Radar unit (p. 311)

Recommended radar device maintenance

In order that the camera and radar unit shall function correctly, the windscreen in front of the unit must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the camera and radar unit will reduce its function and may prevent measurement.

This may mean that functions are reduced, deactivated completely or give incorrect function response.

Related information

- Radar unit (p. 311)

Type approval for radar device

The type approval for the car's radar units in the ACC⁶², PA⁶³ and BLIS⁶⁴ functions can be read out here.



For BLIS⁶⁴, the information is also on the Internet: www.hella.com/VCC.

Market	ACC ^A & PA ^B	BLIS ^C	Symbol	Type approval
Botswana		✓		
Brazil	✓			<p>Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.</p> <p>Modelo: L2C0054TR 4122-14-8645</p>
		✓		03563-17-05364



⁶² ACC = Adaptive Cruise Control



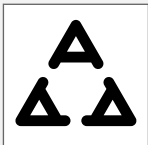
⁶³ PA = Pilot Assist

⁶⁴ BLIS = Blind Spot Information



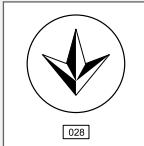
Market	ACCA ^A & PA ^B	BLIS ^C	Symbol	Type approval
Europe	✓			<p>Hereby, Delphi Electronics and Safety declares that L2C0054TR is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU (RED). The original declaration of conformity can be accessed at the following link www.delphi.com/automotive-homologation.</p> <p>Frequency Band: 76GHz – 77GHz</p> <p>Maximum Output Power: 55dBm EIRP</p> <p>The Declaration of Conformity may be consulted at Delphi Electronics & Safety / 2151 E. Lincoln Road / Kokomo, Indiana 46902 USA</p>
		✓		<p>Hereby, Hella KgaA Hueck & Co., declares that RS4 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU.</p> <p>The Declaration of conformity may be consulted at Hella KGaA Hueck & Co., Rixbecker Straße 75/ 59552 Lippstadt, Germany and on the website www.hella.com/vcc.</p> <p>Frequency Band: 24050-24250 MHz</p> <p>Maximum Output Power: 20 dBm EIRP</p>
The United Arab Emirates (UAE)	✓			<p>Registered No: ER37536/15</p> <p>Dealer No: DA37380/15</p>
		✓		<p>Registered No: ER53878/17</p> <p>Dealer No: DA44932/15</p>



Market	ACCA ^A & PA ^B	BLIS ^C	Symbol	Type approval
Indonesia	✓			37295/POSTEL/2014 4927
		✓		Certificate number: 50459/SDPPI/2017 PLG ID: 6051
Jordan	✓			Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2014/255 Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)
		✓		TRC/LPD/2017/63
Korea	✓			Certification No. MSIP-CMI- DPH-L2C0054TR
		✓		MSIP-CMM-HLA-RS4
Lebanon		✓		Not available at time of publication.
Morocco	✓			AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC NUMÉRO D'AGRÉMENT: MR 9929 ANRT 2014 DATE D'AGRÉMENT: 26/12/2014

Market	ACCA ^A & PA ^B	BLIS ^C	Symbol	Type approval
Mexico	✓			IFETEL: RLVDEL215-0299
		✓		Radar de corto alcance RS4 Hella KGaA Hueck & Co IFETEL: RLVHERS17-0286
Moldova	✓	✓		
Russia	✓	✓		
Serbia	✓			U011 14
		✓		U011 17



Market	ACC ^A & PA ^B	BLIS ^C	Symbol	Type approval
Singapore	✓		Complies with IDA standards XXnnnnnn	DA 105753
		✓		DA 103238
South Africa	✓			TA-2014/1824
		✓		TA-2016/3407
Taiwan	✓			CCAB15LP0560T3
		✓		CCAB17LP0470T5
Ukraine	✓			Delphi цім стверджує, що обладнання RACAM відповідає вимогам Про затвердження Технічного регламенту радіобладнання і телекомунікаційного кінцевого (термінального) обладнання (Постанова КМУ № 679 від 24 червня 2009 р.) Декларація відповідності знаходиться на сайті Delphi за адресою: Delphi.
		✓		

A ACC = Adaptive Cruise Control

B PA = Pilot Assist

C BLIS = Blind Spot Information

Related information

- Radar unit (p. 311)

Camera unit

The camera unit is used by several driver support systems and has the task of for example detecting lane lines or traffic signs.



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

The camera unit is used by the following functions:

- Adaptive cruise control*
- Pilot Assist*
- Lane assistance*
- Steering assistance at risk of collision
- City Safety
- Driver Alert Control*
- Road Sign Information*
- Active main beam*

Related information

- Limitations for camera unit (p. 322)
- Recommended camera device maintenance (p. 325)

Limitations for camera unit

The camera unit has certain limitations - which in turn also limits those functions that use the unit.

Impaired vision

The camera has limitations similar to the human eye, i.e. it can "see" worse in for example intense snowfall or rain, dense fog, heavy dust storms and snow flurries. Under such conditions, the functions of camera-dependent systems could be significantly reduced or temporarily disengaged.

Strong oncoming light, reflections in the carriageway, snow or ice on the road surface, dirty road surfaces or unclear lane markings can also significantly reduce camera function when it is used to scan the carriageway to detect pedestrians, cyclists, large animals and other vehicles.

Blocked unit



The marked area must be kept free from stickers, objects, shade film, etc.⁶⁵.

The camera unit is placed inside the upper section of the windscreen together with the car's radar unit.



IMPORTANT

Do not place, stick or mount anything on the outside or inside of the windscreen in front of or around the camera and radar unit — this can interfere with camera and radar-dependent functions.

This may mean that functions are reduced, deactivated completely or give incorrect function response.



If the driver display shows this symbol and the message "**Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**", this means that the

camera and radar unit cannot detect other vehicles, cyclists, pedestrians and larger animals in front of the car and that the car's camera-based and radar-based functions may be disrupted, reduced, completely deactivated or give an incorrect function response.

The following table presents examples of possible causes for a message being shown, along with the appropriate action:

⁶⁵ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Cause	Action
The windscreen surface in front of the camera and radar unit is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean dirt, ice and snow from the windscreen surface in front of the camera and radar unit.
Thick fog and heavy rain or snow block the radar signals or the camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work during heavy rain or snowfall.
Water or snow from the road surface swirls up and blocks the radar signals or camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work on a very wet or snow-covered road surface.
Dirt has appeared between the inside of the windscreen and the camera and radar unit.	Visit a workshop to have the windscreen inside the unit's cover cleaned - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
Strong oncoming light	No action. The camera unit is reset automatically in more favourable light conditions.

NOTE

Keep the windscreen clean in front of the camera and radar unit.

High temperature

At very high temperatures the camera and radar unit can temporarily be switched off for about 15 minutes after the engine is started so as to protect the unit's electronics. The camera and radar unit restarts automatically when the temperature has fallen sufficiently.

Damaged windscreen

IMPORTANT

If a crack, scratch or stone chip in the windscreen in front of one of the camera and radar unit "windows" covers an area of approx. 0.5 × 3.0 mm (0.02 × 0.12 in.) or larger, a workshop must be contacted to have the windscreen replaced – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

If not rectified it can lead to reduced performance for the driver support systems that use the camera and radar unit.

This may mean that functions are reduced, deactivated completely or give incorrect function response.

To avoid the risk of failed, deficient or reduced operation of driver support systems that use the radar unit, the following also applies:

- Volvo recommends **against** repairing cracks, scratches or stone chips in the area in front of the camera and radar unit. Instead, the whole windscreen should be replaced.
- Before replacing a windscreen, contact an authorised Volvo workshop to verify



DRIVER SUPPORT



that the correct windscreen is ordered and fitted.

- The same type or Volvo-approved windscreen wipers must be fitted during replacement.



IMPORTANT

When the windscreen is replaced, the camera and radar unit must be recalibrated at the workshop to ensure the functionality of all the car's camera and radar-based systems. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Camera unit (p. 321)

Recommended camera device maintenance

In order that the camera and radar unit shall function correctly, the windscreen in front of the unit must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

i NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the camera and radar unit will reduce its function and may prevent measurement.

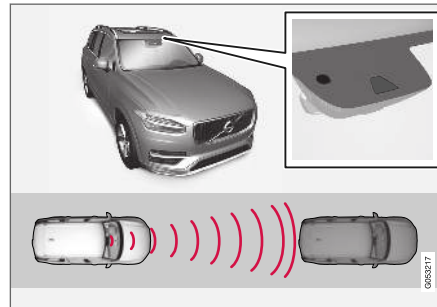
This may mean that functions are reduced, deactivated completely or give incorrect function response.

Related information

- Camera unit (p. 321)

City Safety™

City Safety can alert the driver using a visual, acoustic and brake pulse warning to help him/her detect pedestrians, cyclists, larger animals and vehicles that suddenly appear - the car then attempts to brake automatically unless the driver acts within a reasonable time him/herself.



Location of the radar unit⁶⁶.

City Safety can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed.

City Safety is an aid to assist a driver who is at risk of colliding with a pedestrian, large animal, cyclist or a vehicle.

The City Safety function can help the driver to avoid a collision when driving in queues, e.g. when changes in the traffic ahead, combined with a lapse in attention, could lead to an incident.

The function helps the driver by automatically braking the car in the event of an imminent risk of collision if the driver does not react in time by braking and/or swerving.

City Safety activates a short, sharp braking procedure, normally stopping the car just behind the vehicle in front.

City Safety is activated in situations where the driver should have started braking earlier, which is why it cannot help the driver in every situation.

City Safety is designed to be activated as late as possible in order to avoid unnecessary intervention.

The driver or passengers are not normally aware of City Safety - it only intervenes in a situation where a collision is immediately imminent.

⁶⁶ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.



WARNING

- The City Safety is supplementary driver support intended to improve driving safety – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The City Safety auto-brake function can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed, but to ensure full brake performance the driver should always depress the brake pedal – even when the car auto-brakes.
- The warning is only activated if there is a high risk of collision – you must therefore never wait for a collision warning or for City Safety to intervene.
- The warning and brake intervention for pedestrians and cyclists are deactivated at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- City Safety does not activate any auto-brake functions in the event of heavy acceleration.
- City Safety is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to City

Safety to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system (see the list of links for all subsections).

Related information

- Parameters and subfunctions for City Safety (p. 326)
- Setting the warning distance for City Safety (p. 328)
- Detection of obstacles with City Safety (p. 329)
- City Safety in cross traffic (p. 331)
- Limitations for City Safety in cross traffic (p. 332)
- City Safety when evasive manoeuvres are prevented (p. 332)
- Limitations of City Safety (p. 333)
- Messages for City Safety (p. 336)

Parameters and subfunctions for City Safety

City Safety can avoid a collision with a vehicle, a cyclist, a pedestrian or a larger animal in front by reducing the car's speed with the auto-brake function.

If the speed difference is greater than the following specified speeds, the City Safety auto-brake function cannot prevent a collision but mitigates the consequences of it.

Vehicles

For a vehicle in front, City Safety can reduce the speed by up to 60 km/h (37 mph).

cyclists

For a cyclist, City Safety can reduce the speed by up to 50 km/h (30 mph).

Pedestrians

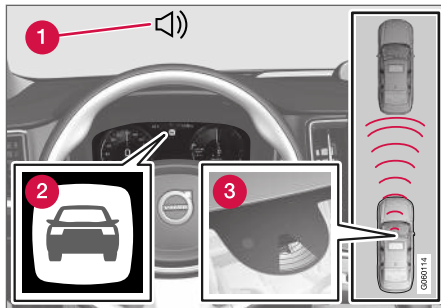
For a pedestrian, City Safety can reduce speed by up to 45 km/h (28 mph).

Large animals

In the event of a risk of a collision with a large animal, City Safety can reduce the car's speed by up to 15 km/h (9 mph).

The brake function for large animals is primarily intended to reduce the force of the impact at higher speeds and is most effective at speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph) but less effective at lower speed.

Subfunctions for City Safety



Function overview⁶⁷.

- 1 Acoustic warning signal in the event of a risk of collision
- 2 Warning signal in the event of a risk of collision
- 3 Distance measurement with the camera and radar unit

City Safety carries out three steps in the following order:

1. Collision warning
2. Brake support
3. Auto Brake

The following text explains what happens during the three steps:

1 - Collision warning

The driver is first warned of a potentially imminent collision.

City Safety can detect pedestrians, cyclists or vehicles that are stationary or moving in the same direction as the car and are ahead. City Safety can also detect pedestrians, cyclists or large animals that are crossing the road in front of the car.

In the event of a risk of collision with a pedestrian, larger animal, cyclist or vehicle (including vehicles described in the "City Safety in cross traffic" section), the driver's attention is alerted by means of a visual, acoustic and brake pulse warning. There is no brake pulse warning at lower speeds, sudden driver braking or acceleration. The brake pulse frequency varies according to the car's speed.

2 - Brake support

If the risk of collision has increased further after the collision warning then the brake support is activated.

Brake support reinforces the driver's braking action if the system considers that the braking is not sufficient to avoid a collision.

3 - Auto Brake

The automatic brake function is activated last.

If in this situation the driver has not yet started to take evasive action and the risk of collision is

imminent then the automatic braking function is deployed - this takes place irrespective of whether or not the driver brakes. Braking then takes place with full brake force in order to reduce collision speed, or with limited brake force if it is sufficient to avoid a collision.

In connection with automatic braking the seatbelt tensioner may also be activated. For more information see the "Seatbelt tensioner" section.

In some situations, the action of Auto-brake may begin with light braking and then progress to full brake action.

When City Safety has prevented a collision with a stationary object, the car remains stationary in anticipation of positive action by the driver. If the car has been braked to avoid collision with a slower vehicle in front, its speed is reduced to match that of the vehicle in front.

i NOTE

On cars with manual gearbox, the engine stops when the Auto-brake function has stopped the car, unless the driver has managed to depress the clutch pedal beforehand.

The driver can always interrupt a braking intervention by firmly depressing the accelerator pedal.

⁶⁷ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.



i NOTE

When City Safety brakes, the brake lights come on.

When City Safety is activated and brakes the vehicle, the driver display shows a text message to the effect that the function is/has been active.

⚠ WARNING

City Safety must not be used by the driver to change his/her driving style - the driver must not rely on City Safety alone and allow it to do the braking.

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 325)

Setting the warning distance for City Safety

City Safety is always activated but the driver can select the warning distance for the function.

i NOTE

The City Safety function cannot be deactivated. It is activated automatically when the engine/electric operation is started and remains switched on until the engine/electric operation is switched off.

The warning distance determines the sensitivity of the system and regulates the distance at which a visual, acoustic and brake pulse warning should be deployed.

To select warning distance:

1. Select **Settings** → **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** in the centre display's top view.
2. Under **City Safety Warning**, select **Late**, **Normal** or **Early** to set the desired warning distance.

If the **Early** setting produces too many warnings, which could be perceived as irritating in certain situations, the **Normal** or **Late** warning distance can be selected.

When warnings are perceived as being too frequent or disturbing, the warning distance can be reduced, which reduces the total number of

warnings and instead leads to City Safety giving a warning at a later stage.

The **Late** warning distance should therefore only be used in exceptional cases, as in dynamic driving.

⚠ WARNING

- No automatic system can guarantee 100 % correct function in all situations. Therefore, never test City Safety by driving at people, animals or vehicles - this may cause severe damage and injury and risk lives.
- City Safety warns the driver when there is a risk of a collision, but it cannot shorten the driver's reaction time.
- Even if the warning distance has been set to **Early** warnings could be perceived as being late in certain situations, e.g. when there are large differences in speed or if vehicles ahead suddenly brake heavily.
- With the warning distance set at **Early**, the warnings will come more in advance. This may mean that the warnings come more frequently than at the warning distance **Normal**, but it is recommended since it can make City Safety more effective.

i NOTE

The warning with direction indicators for Rear Collision Warning is deactivated if the warning distance for collision warning in the City Safety function is set at the lowest level "Late".

The seat belt pre-tensioning and braking functions are, however, still active.

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 325)

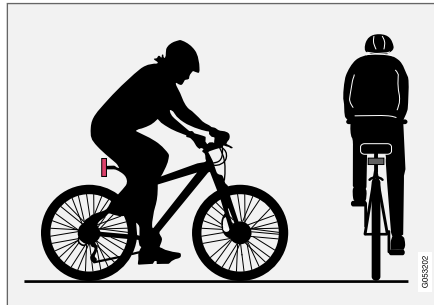
Detection of obstacles with City Safety

The obstructions that City Safety can detect are vehicles, cyclists, large animals and pedestrians.

Vehicles

City Safety detects most vehicles that are either stationary or moving in the same direction as your car, as well as vehicles described in the "City Safety in cross traffic" section.

In order that City Safety shall be able to detect a vehicle in the dark, the vehicle's front and rear lights must be working and clearly illuminated.

Cyclists

Optimal examples of what City Safety interprets as a cyclist — with clear body outline and bicycle outline.

Optimal performance requires that the system function that detects a cyclist must receive the clearest possible information about the body and

bicycle outline, requiring the ability to identify the bicycle, head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body plus a normal human pattern of movement.

If large parts of the cyclist's body or bicycle are not visible to the function's camera then the system cannot detect a cyclist.

For the function to be able to detect a cyclist, he/she must be an adult and riding a bicycle designed for adults.

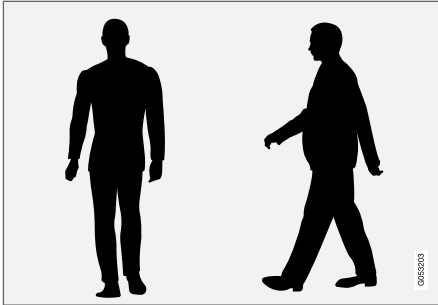
⚠ WARNING

City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all cyclists in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured cyclists.
- cyclists if the background contrast of the cyclist is poor – warning and brake interventions may then be late or not occur at all.
- cyclists wearing clothing that obscures the body outline.
- bicycles loaded with large objects.

The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

◀ Pedestrians



Optimal examples of what the system regards as pedestrians with clear body outlines.

For optimal performance, the system function that detects pedestrians must receive the clearest possible information about the body outline, requiring the ability to identify the head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body plus a normal human pattern of movement.

In order that it shall be possible to detect a pedestrian there must be a contrast with the background and this will be affected by such things as clothes, the background and the weather. With poor contrast the pedestrian may either be detected late or not at all, which may mean that warnings and braking are late or omitted.

City Safety can also detect pedestrians in the dark if they are illuminated by the car's headlamps.

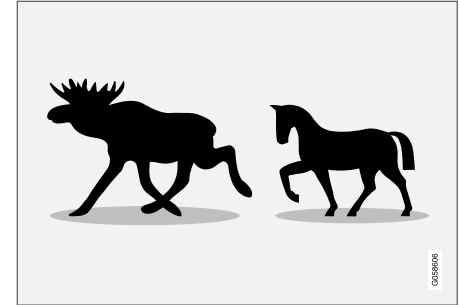
WARNING

City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all pedestrians in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured pedestrians, people in clothing that hides their body contour or pedestrians shorter than 80 cm (32 in.).
- pedestrians if the background contrast of the pedestrians is poor - warning and brake interventions may then be late or not occur at all.
- pedestrians who are carrying larger objects.

The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Large animals



Optimum examples of what City Safety interprets as large animals - standing still or walking slowly and with clear body outline.

Optimal performance requires that the system function that detects a large animal (e.g. elk and horse) must receive the clearest possible information about the body outline, requiring the ability to identify the animal directly from the side in combination with what is a normal pattern of movement for the animal.

If parts of the animal's body are not visible to the function's camera then the system cannot detect the animal.

City Safety can also detect large animals in the dark if they are illuminated by the car's headlamps.

⚠ WARNING

City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all large animals in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured large animals.
- larger animals seen from the front or from behind.
- large animals that run or move quickly.
- large animals if the background contrast of the animals is poor - warning and brake interventions may then be late or not occur at all.
- small animals such as dogs and cats, for example.

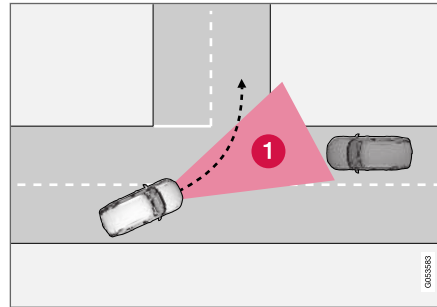
The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 325)

City Safety in cross traffic

City Safety can help the driver when turning and crossing the path of another oncoming vehicle at an intersection.



1 Sector in which City Safety can detect oncoming crossing vehicles.

For City Safety to detect an oncoming vehicle on a collision course, the oncoming vehicle must first enter the sector in which City Safety can analyse the situation.

The following further criteria must also be fulfilled:

- your car must be travelling at no less than 4 km/h (3 mph)
- your car must turn to the left in markets with right-hand traffic (or to the right in left-hand traffic)

- the oncoming vehicle must have its head-lamps switched on.

⚠ WARNING

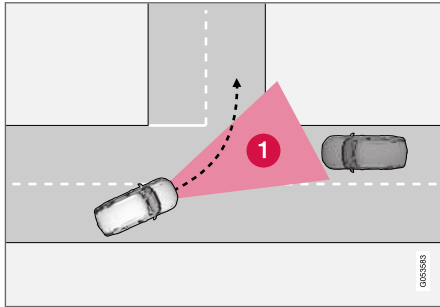
- The "City Safety in crossing traffic" function is supplementary driver support intended to improve driving safety – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- Warnings and brake interventions due to a collision risk with an oncoming vehicle often come very late.
- Never wait for a collision warning or for City Safety to intervene.
- City Safety is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 325)

Limitations for City Safety in cross traffic

In some cases City Safety may have difficulty helping the driver deal with collision risks due to oncoming cross traffic.



Examples are:

- stability control ESC intervenes in the event of slippery driving conditions
- if the oncoming vehicle is detected too late
- if the oncoming vehicle is obscured by something
- if the oncoming vehicle has headlamps switched off
- if the oncoming vehicle drives in an unpredictable manner, for example, abruptly changes lanes at a late stage.

i NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

i NOTE

The function uses the car's radar unit, which has some general limitations, see the section "Limitations for radar unit".

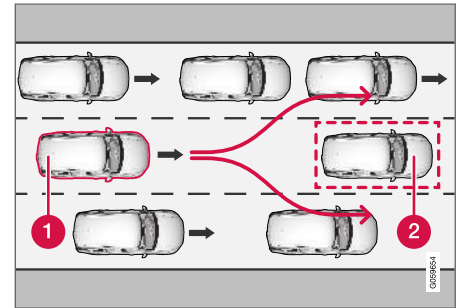
Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 325)

City Safety when evasive manoeuvres are prevented

City Safety has the facility to assist the driver by automatically braking the car earlier when it is not possible to avoid a collision by only steering away.

City Safety assists the driver by continuously attempting to anticipate whether there are "escape routes" to the side in case a slow or stationary vehicle ahead is discovered at a late stage.



Your car (1) "sees" no options for evading the vehicle ahead (2) and can therefore auto-brake earlier.

- 1** Your car
- 2** Slow/stationary vehicle

City Safety does not intervene with the auto-brake function as long as the driver him/herself

has the opportunity to avoid a collision via a steering manoeuvre.

However, if City Safety anticipates that an evasive manoeuvre is not possible due to traffic in an adjacent lane, the function can assist the driver by automatically starting to brake at an earlier stage.

WARNING

- The ability of City Safety to be able to predict a specific situation is supplementary driver support intended to improve driving safety – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- City Safety is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Limitations for City Safety when evasive manoeuvres are prevented

NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

NOTE

The function uses the car's radar unit, which has some general limitations, see the section "Limitations for radar unit".

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 325)

Limitations of City Safety

The City Safety function may have limitations in certain situations.

Surroundings

Low objects

Low-hanging objects, e.g. a flag/pennant for projecting load, or accessories such as auxiliary lamps and bull bars that are higher than the bonnet limit the function.

Skidding

On slippery road surfaces the braking distance is extended, which may reduce the capacity of City Safety to avoid a collision. In such situations, the anti-lock brakes and the stability control ESC⁶⁸ will give the best possible braking force with maintained stability.

Oncoming light

The visual warning signal in the windscreen may be difficult to notice in the event of strong sunlight, reflections, when sunglasses are being worn or if the driver is not looking straight ahead.

Heat

In the event of high passenger compartment temperature caused by e.g. strong sunlight, the visual warning signal in the windscreen may be temporarily disengaged.

⁶⁸ Electronic Stability Control

◀ The camera and radar unit's field of view

The camera's field of vision is limited, which is why pedestrians, large animals, cyclists and vehicles in some situations cannot be detected, or they are detected later than anticipated.

Dirty vehicles may be detected later than others and if it is dark, motorcycles may be detected late or not at all.

If a text message in the driver display indicates that the camera and radar unit is obstructed, City Safety may be unable to detect pedestrians, large animals, cyclists, vehicles or road lines ahead of the car. This means that the functionality of City Safety may be reduced.

However, an error message is not shown in all situations where the windscreen sensors are obstructed. The driver must therefore take care to keep the area of windscreen in front of the camera and radar unit clear.

IMPORTANT

Maintenance and replacement of City Safety components must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Driver intervention

Reversing

When your own car is reversing, City Safety is temporarily deactivated.

Low speed

City Safety is not activated at very low speeds - below 4 km/h (3 mph) - and the system therefore does not intervene in situations where your car is approaching a vehicle ahead very slowly, e.g. when parking.

Active driver

Driver commands are always prioritised, which is why City Safety does not intervene or postpone warning/intervention in situations where the driver is steering and accelerating in a decisive manner, even if a collision is unavoidable.

Active and aware driving behaviour can therefore delay a collision warning and intervention in order to minimise unnecessary warnings.

Miscellaneous

WARNING

- Warnings and brake interventions could be implemented late or not at all if a traffic situation or external influences mean that the camera and radar unit cannot detect pedestrians, cyclists, large animals or vehicles correctly.
- For vehicles to be detected at night, their headlamps and rear lamp cluster must be switched on and shining clearly.
- The camera and radar unit has a limited range for pedestrians and cyclists. The system can provide effective warnings and brake interventions as long as the relative speed is below 50 km/h (30 mph). For stationary or slow-moving vehicles, warnings and brake interventions are effective at vehicle speeds up to 70 km/h (43 mph). Speed reduction for large animals is less than 15 km/h (9 mph) and can be achieved at vehicle speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph). The warning and brake intervention for large animals is less effective at lower speeds.
- Warnings for stationary or slow-moving vehicles and large animals could be disengaged due to darkness or poor visibility.

- Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists are deactivated at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Do not place, stick or mount anything on the outside or inside of the windscreen in front of or around the camera and radar unit — this can interfere with camera-dependent functions.
- Objects, snow, ice or dirt in the area of the camera sensor may reduce its functionality, fully deactivate it or give incorrect function response.

i NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

i NOTE

The function uses the car's radar unit, which has some general limitations, see the section "Limitations for radar unit".

Market limitation

City Safety is not available in all countries. If City Safety does not appear in the centre display's **Settings** menu, the car is not equipped with this function.

Search path in the top view of the centre display:

- **Settings** → **My Car** → **IntelliSafe**

Related information


- City Safety™ (p. 325)

Messages for City Safety

A number of messages regarding City Safety can be shown in the driver display.

The following table shows some examples.

Message	Specification
City Safety Automatic intervention	When City Safety brakes or has done an automatic braking, several of the driver display symbols may be illuminated in connection with a text message being shown.
City Safety Reduced functionality Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the  button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 325)

Rear Collision Warning

The Rear Collision Warning (RCW) function can help the driver to avoid being hit by a vehicle approaching from behind.

RCW is activated automatically each time the engine is started.

The RCW can warn the driver in a vehicle approaching from behind that a collision is imminent by rapidly flashing the direction indicators.

If, at a speed below 30 km/h (20 mph), the RCW function detects that the car is in danger of being hit from behind, the seatbelt tensioners may tension the front seatbelts and activate the Whiplash Protection System safety system.

Immediately before a collision from behind, RCW may also activate the foot brake in order to reduce the forward acceleration of the car during the collision. However, the foot brake is only activated if the car is stationary. The foot brake releases immediately if the accelerator pedal is depressed.

Related information

- Limitations of Rear Collision Warning (p. 337)
- Whiplash Protection System (p. 43)

Limitations of Rear Collision Warning

In certain cases the RCW may have difficulty helping the driver in the event of a collision risk. This can be, for example, if:

- the vehicle approaching from behind is detected too late
- the vehicle approaching from behind changes lane at the last moment
- the vehicle approaching from behind has a speed exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph)
- a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system - the RCW function is then deactivated automatically.

NOTE

In certain markets, RCW does **not** give a warning with the direction indicators due to local traffic regulations - in such cases, this part of the function is deactivated.

NOTE

The warning with direction indicators for Rear Collision Warning is deactivated if the warning distance for collision warning in the City Safety function is set at the lowest level "**Late**".

The seat belt pre-tensioning and braking functions are, however, still active.

Related information

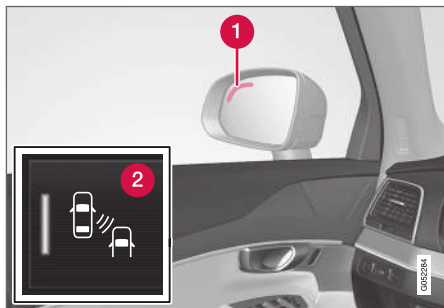
- Rear Collision Warning (p. 337)

BLIS*

The BLIS⁶⁹ function is intended to help the driver detect vehicles diagonally behind and to the side of the car so as to provide assistance in heavy traffic on roads with several lanes in the same direction.

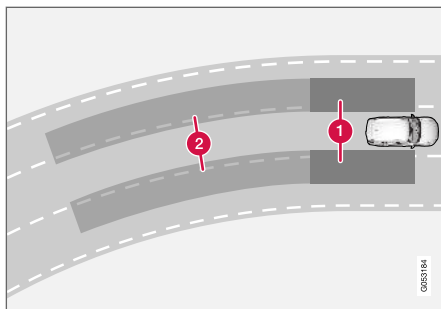
BLIS is a driver aid intended to give a warning of:

- vehicles in the car's blind spot
- quickly approaching vehicles in the left and right lanes closest to the car.



Location of BLIS lamp⁷⁰.

- 1 Indicator lamp
- 2 The function is activated/deactivated using the BLIS button in the centre display's function view.



Principle of BLIS

- 1 Zone in blind spot
- 2 Zone for quickly approaching vehicle.

The BLIS function is active at speeds above 10 km/h (6 mph).

The system is designed to react when:

- your car is overtaken by other vehicles
- another vehicle is quickly approaching your car.

When BLIS detects a vehicle in Zone 1 or a quickly approaching vehicle in Zone 2, the indicator lamp on the door mirror on the affected side illuminates with a constant glow. If the driver activates the direction indicator on the same side as the warning, the indicator lamp will change over

from a constant glow to flashing with a more intense light.

i NOTE

The lamp illuminates on the side of the car where the system has detected the vehicle. If the car is overtaken on both sides at the same time then both lamps illuminate.

! WARNING

- The BLIS function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The responsibility for changing lanes safely and using good judgement always rests with the driver.
- BLIS is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

⁶⁹ Blind Spot Information Systems

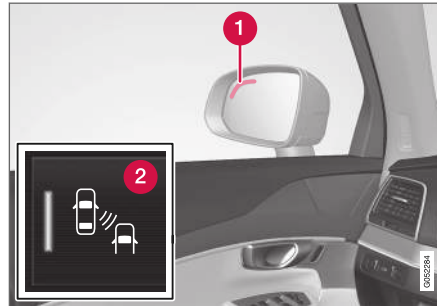
⁷⁰ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Related information

- Activate/deactivate BLIS (p. 339)
- Limitations of BLIS (p. 340)
- Recommended maintenance for BLIS (p. 340)
- Messages for BLIS (p. 342)

Activate/deactivate BLIS

The BLIS⁷¹ function can be activated/deactivated.



Location of BLIS lamp⁷².

- 1 Indicator lamp
- 2 The function is activated/deactivated using the BLIS button in the centre display's function view.
 - Tap on the **BLIS** button in the function view.
 - > BLIS is activated/deactivated - a green/grey indicator is shown in the button.

If BLIS is activated when starting the engine, the function is confirmed by the door mirror indicator lamps blinking once.

If BLIS was deactivated when the engine was switched off, it will continue to be deactivated when the engine is next started and no indicator lights will then be illuminated.

Related information

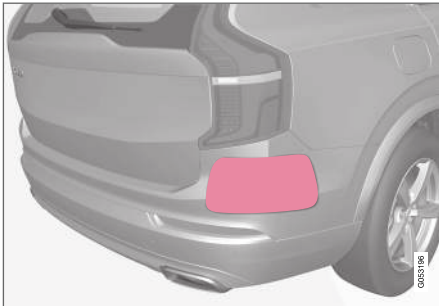
- BLIS* (p. 338)

⁷¹ Blind Spot Information

⁷² NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Limitations of BLIS

The BLIS⁷³ function may have limitations in certain situations.



Keep the surface clean - on both the left and right-hand sides of the car⁷⁴.

Examples of limitations:

- Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may reduce the functions and deactivate alerts.
- The BLIS function is automatically deactivated if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system.
- For optimal performance of BLIS, no bicycle rack, luggage carrier or similar should be mounted on the car's towbar.

⁷³ Blind Spot Information

⁷⁴ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

⁷⁵ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

WARNING

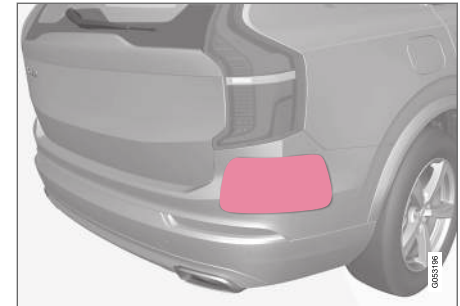
- BLIS does not work on sharp bends.
- BLIS does not work when the car is reversing.

Related information

- BLIS* (p. 338)

Recommended maintenance for BLIS

- To ensure optimal functionality, the surfaces in front of the sensors must be kept clean.
- Do not affix any objects, tape or labels in the area of the sensors.



Keep the surface clean - on both the left and right-hand sides of the car⁷⁵.

The sensors for BLIS are located inside each corner of the rear wing/bumper. The sensors are also used by the Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) and Rear Collision Warning functions.

! **IMPORTANT**

Repair of the BLIS and CTA functions' components or repainting the bumpers must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information


- BLIS* (p. 338)
- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 343)
- Activate/deactivate Cross Traffic Alert (p. 344)
- Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert (p. 344)
- Recommended maintenance for Cross Traffic Alert (p. 345)
- Messages for Cross Traffic Alert (p. 347)
- Rear Collision Warning (p. 337)

Messages for BLIS

A number of messages regarding BLIS⁷⁶ can be shown in the driver display.

The following table shows some examples.

Message	Specification
Blind spot sensor Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
Blind spot system off Trailer attached	BLIS and CTA have been deactivated as a trailer has been connected to the car's electrical system.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the  button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

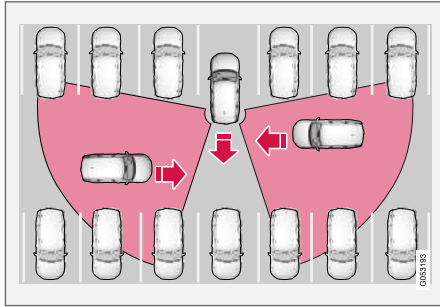
Related information

- BLIS* (p. 338)

⁷⁶ Blind Spot Information

Cross Traffic Alert*

CTA⁷⁷ with **auto-brake** is a driver support that supplements BLIS⁷⁸ and is designed to help the driver detect traffic crossing behind the car when it is reversing. The **auto-brake** subfunction can stop the car in the event of a risk of collision with an unobserved vehicle.



Principle of CTA.

CTA supplements BLIS by detecting the approach of crossing traffic during reversing, such as when reversing out of a parking space.

CTA is primarily designed to detect vehicles. In favourable conditions it may also be able to detect smaller objects, such as cyclists and pedestrians.

CTA is only active if the car rolls backwards or if reverse gear has been selected.

If CTA senses that something is approaching from the side, this is also indicated with:

- an acoustic signal - the sound is heard in the left-hand or right-hand speaker according to the direction from which the object approaches.
- an illuminated icon in the PAS⁷⁹ graphic on the screen.
- an icon on the Park assist camera top view.



Illuminated icon for CTA in the PAS⁷⁹ graphic on the screen⁸⁰.

- If the driver does not observe the warning from CTA and a collision is unavoidable, the

auto-brake function takes effect to stop the car, after which the driver display shows an explanatory text message on why the car was braked.

WARNING

- The Cross Traffic Alert function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The **auto-brake** subfunction can only detect and brake for other vehicles that are moving - **not** for stationary obstacles, a cyclist or a pedestrian, for example.
- The responsibility for reversing the car safely and using good judgement always rests with the driver.
- Cross Traffic Alert is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

⁷⁷ Cross Traffic Alert

⁷⁸ Blind Spot Information

⁷⁹ Park Assist System: Parking assistance system with reversing sensors

⁸⁰ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

◀◀ Related information

- Activate/deactivate Cross Traffic Alert (p. 344)
- Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert (p. 344)
- Recommended maintenance for Cross Traffic Alert (p. 345)
- Messages for Cross Traffic Alert (p. 347)

Activate/deactivate Cross Traffic Alert

The driver can select to switch off the **warning** in the function CTA⁸¹ - subfunction **auto brake** cannot be switched off and continues to be active. Proceed as follows:



Press the **Cross Traffic Alert** button in the centre display function view.

- GREY button indication - warning signal and indication on display for CTA is deactivated.
- GREEN button indication - CTA is activated.

CTA is activated automatically each time the engine is started.

Related information

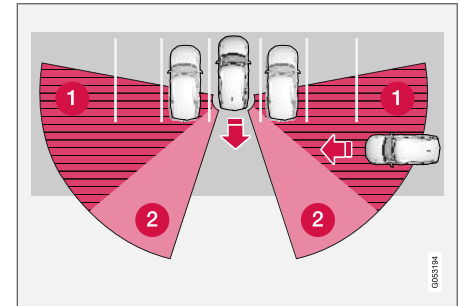
- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 343)

Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert

The CTA⁸² function with **auto-brake** may have limited functionality in certain situations.

CTA does not perform optimally in all situations but has some limitations. For example, the CTA sensors cannot "see" through other parked vehicles or obstructing obstacles.

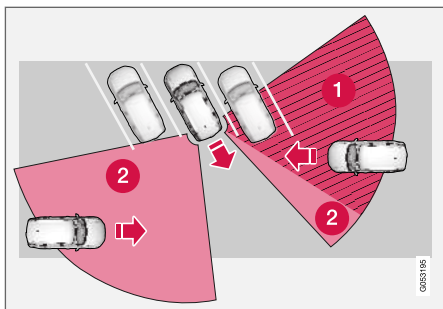
Here are some examples of situations where CTA's "field of vision" may be already limited and approaching vehicles cannot therefore be detected until they are very close:



The car is parked deep inside a parking slot.

81 Cross Traffic Alert

82 Cross Traffic Alert



In an angled parking slot CTA may be completely “blind” on one side.

- ❶ Blind CTA sector.
- ❷ Sector in which CTA can detect/“see”.

However, as your car slowly reverses, the angle it makes with the obstructing vehicle/object changes and the blind sector rapidly decreases.

Examples of further limitations

- The **auto-brake** subfunction only detects moving vehicles and therefore **cannot** “see” and brake for stationary obstacles, a cyclist or a pedestrian, for example.
- Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may reduce the functions and deactivate alerts. See the supplementary information in the section “Recommended maintenance for Cross Traffic Alert”.

- CTA is automatically deactivated if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car’s electrical system.
- For optimal performance of CTA, no bicycle rack, luggage carrier or similar should be mounted on the car’s towbar.

Related information

- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 343)

Recommended maintenance for Cross Traffic Alert

- To ensure optimal functionality, the surfaces in front of the sensors must be kept clean.
- Do not affix any objects, tape or labels in the area of the sensors.



Keep the surface clean - on both the left and right-hand sides of the car⁸³.

The sensors for CTA are located inside each corner of the rear wing/bumper. The sensors are

⁸³ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.



DRIVER SUPPORT

- ◀◀ also used by the BLIS⁸⁴ and Rear Collision Warning functions.

IMPORTANT

Repair of the BLIS and CTA functions' components or repainting the bumpers must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 343)
- BLIS* (p. 338)
- Rear Collision Warning (p. 337)


⁸⁴ Blind Spot Information

Messages for Cross Traffic Alert

A number of messages regarding CTA⁸⁵ with **auto-brake** can be shown in the driver display.

The following table shows some examples.

Message	Specification
Blind spot sensor Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
Blind spot system off Trailer attached	BLIS and CTA have been deactivated as a trailer has been connected to the car's electrical system.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the  button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

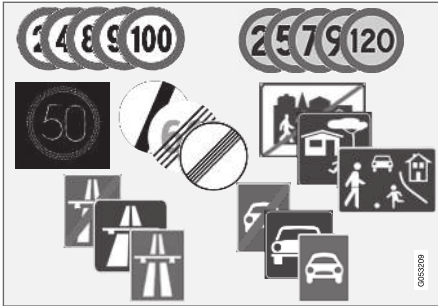
Related information

- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 343)

⁸⁵ Cross Traffic Alert

Road Sign Information*

The Road Sign Information function (RSI)⁸⁶ helps the driver to observe speed-related road signs and certain prohibition signs as the car passes them.



Examples of readable signs⁸⁷.

RSI provides information about such things as current speed, when a motorway or road is starting/ending, when overtaking is prohibited or when the direction of travel is one-way.

If both a sign for motorway/dual carriageway and a sign for the speed limit are passed at the same time, RSI selects to show a sign symbol for motorway/dual carriageway. The new speed limit is shown directly with a line in the driver display's speed scale.

NOTE

In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function (RSI) is only available in combination with Sensus Navigation.

WARNING

- The Road Sign Information function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- Road Sign Information is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- Activating/deactivating Road Sign Information (p. 349)
- Road Sign Information and sign display (p. 349)
- Road Sign Information and Sensus Navigation (p. 351)

- Road Sign Information with Speed Warning and Settings (p. 351)
- Activating/deactivating Speed warning in Road Sign Information (p. 352)
- Road Sign Information with Speed Camera Information (p. 353)
- Limitations of Road Sign Information (p. 353)

⁸⁶ Road Sign Information

⁸⁷ Road signs are market-dependent - illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.

Activating/deactivating Road Sign Information

The Road Sign Information function is selectable - the driver can select **On** or **Off**.



Press the **Road Sign Information** button in the centre display function view.

- GREEN button indication - RSI is activated.
- GREY button indication - RSI is deactivated.

i NOTE

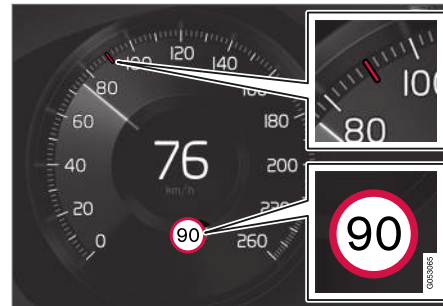
- If the Automatic Speed Limiter function is activated, road sign information is shown in the driver display even if RSI is not activated.
- To remove road sign information from the driver display, you must deactivate **both** Automatic Speed Limiter and RSI.
- When the Automatic Speed Limiter function is activated but RSI is deactivated, no warnings are given from RSI. In this situation, settings for RSI cannot be adjusted either - to be able to adjust settings as well as receive warnings, RSI must be activated.

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 348)

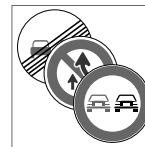
Road Sign Information and sign display

The Road Sign Information function (RSI⁸⁸) registers and shows road signs in different ways depending on the sign and the situation.

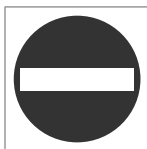


Example⁸⁹ of detected speed information.

When RSI detects a road sign with an imposed speed limit, the driver display shows the sign as a symbol in combination with a RED indication on the speedometer.



An additional⁸⁹ sign, such as "no overtaking", may be shown together with the speed limit symbol.



If the driver enters a road marked with a no-entry sign at the roadside, the symbol for this sign⁸⁹ flashes on and off on the driver display as a warning.

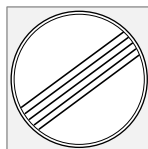
If the car is equipped with Sensus Navigation then information from the map is also used to determine whether the car is being driven in the wrong direction.

The driver can also get an acoustic warning when driving towards a no-entry entrance if the **Road Sign Audio Warning** function is activated - see the heading "Activating/deactivating the acoustic warning" in the section "Activating/deactivating Road Sign Information".

Speed limit or end of motorway

When RSI detects an "indirect speed limit sign" stating the end of the current speed limit - e.g. at the end of a motorway - a symbol appears with the corresponding road sign in the driver's display.

Example of indirect speed limit sign⁸⁹:



End of all restrictions.



End of motorway.

The driver display symbol extinguishes after 10-30 seconds and remains so until the next speed related sign is passed.

Changed speed limit

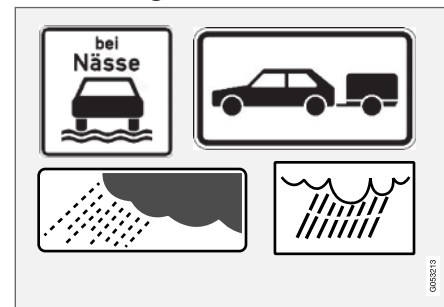
When passing a direct speed limit sign when a speed limit changes, a symbol with the corresponding road sign appears in the driver's display.



Example of direct speed limit sign⁸⁹.

The driver display symbol extinguishes after about 5 minutes and remains so until the next speed related sign is passed.

Additional signs



Examples of additional signs⁸⁹.

Sometimes different speed limits are signed for the same road - an additional sign then indicates the circumstances under which the different speeds apply. The road section may be particularly susceptible to accidents in rain and/or fog, for example.

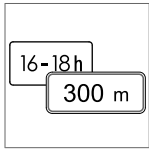
An additional sign relating to rain is displayed only if the windscreen wipers are in use.

If a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system and you pass a speed sign with the addi-

⁸⁸ Road Sign Information

⁸⁹ Road signs are market-dependent - the illustrations in these instructions only show examples.

tional sign "trailer", the indicated speed will appear on the driver display.



Some speed limits only apply after a certain distance or at a certain time of day. The driver's attention is drawn to this fact by means of a symbol for an additional sign below the speed symbol. The additional symbol

in the driver display will show either "DIST" or "TIME".



A symbol for additional sign in the form of an empty frame under the driver display's speed symbol⁸⁹ means that the RSI has detected an additional sign with supplementary information for the current speed limit.

Sign for "School" and "Children at play"



If the warning sign⁸⁹ for "School" or "Children at play" is included in the satellite navigator's map data⁹⁰, the driver display shows a sign of this type.

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 348)

Road Sign Information and Sensus Navigation

If the car is equipped with Sensus Navigation, speed information is read from the navigation unit in the following cases:

- On detection of signs that indirectly indicate a speed limit, such as motorway, dual carriageway and city limit signs.
- If a previously detected speed sign is assumed not to apply any longer, but no new sign has been detected.

i NOTE

In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function (RSI) is only available in combination with Sensus Navigation.

i NOTE

If a downloaded third-party app is used for navigation then there is no support for speed-related information.

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 348)

Road Sign Information with Speed Warning and Settings

The subfunction **Speed Limit Warning** for RSI⁹¹ is selectable - the driver can select **On** or **Off**.

Speed Limit Warning alerts the driver when the speed limit in force or the set "speed limit" is exceeded - after the warning has been repeated one extra time if the driver does not reduce speed.

⁸⁹ Road signs are market-dependent - the illustrations in these instructions only show examples.

⁹⁰ Only in cars with Sensus Navigation.

⁹¹ Road Sign Information



The speed warning is given by the driver display symbol⁹² showing the applicable maximum permitted speed temporarily flashing when this speed is exceeded.



A speed warning is always given if the speed limit is exceeded in connection with speed camera information.

Settings

Adjust the limit for Speed Warning

The driver can select to receive a warning at a higher speed than the signed speed.

Select limit for speed warning as follows:

1. Select **Settings** → **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** → **Road Sign Information** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select **Speed Limit Warning**.
 - > The function is activated and a speed limit selector appears.
3. Adjust the limit for Speed Warning by pressing the up/down arrows on the screen.



Note that the function does not give any consideration to selected limit adjustment when the driver display shows the speed camera symbol.

Acoustic warning On/Off

It is also possible to receive an acoustic warning in connection with Speed Warning.

Change setting for acoustic warning as follows:

1. Select **Settings** → **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** → **Road Sign Information** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select/deselect **Road Sign Audio Warning** to activate/switch off the acoustic warning.

With the **Road Sign Audio Warning** function activated, the driver is also warned when driving towards one-way traffic/no-entry entrance.

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 348)

Activating/deactivating Speed warning in Road Sign Information

The subfunction **Speed Limit Warning** is activated as follows:

1. Select **Settings** → **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** → **Road Sign Information** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select **Speed Limit Warning**.
 - > The function is activated and a speed limit selector appears.
 - (see description for "selecting speed limit" in section "Road Sign Information with Speed warning and Settings")

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 348)
- Road Sign Information with Speed Warning and Settings (p. 351)

⁹² Road signs are market-dependent - the illustration in these instructions only show one example.

Road Sign Information with Speed Camera Information

A car equipped with RSI⁹³ and Sensus Navigation* can provide information on an upcoming speed camera in the driver display.



Speed camera information in the driver display⁹⁴.



If the car exceeds a detected speed limit with the Speed warning function activated, a speed warning is given when the car approaches a speed camera, provided that the navigation map for the area in

question contains information on speed cameras.

For more information about Speed warnings in connection with speed cameras - see section

"Road Sign Information with Speed Warning and Settings" and "Road Sign Information limitations".

i NOTE

- To get an acoustic warning if you exceed the required speed, the **Speed Limit Warning** function must be activated and the **Road Sign Audio Warning** sub-function must be set to **On**. An acoustic warning is then given if the car's speed exceeds the speed indicated by the RSI function in the driver display.
- Information about speed cameras on the navigation map is not available for all markets/areas.

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 348)
- Road Sign Information with Speed Warning and Settings (p. 351)
- Limitations of Road Sign Information (p. 353)

Limitations of Road Sign Information

The Road Sign Information (RSI⁹⁵) function may have limitations in certain situations.

Examples of what can reduce the RSI are as follows:

- Faded signs
- Signs positioned on bends
- Rotated or damaged signs
- Signs positioned high above the roadway
- Fully/partially obscured or poorly positioned signs
- signs completely or partly covered with frost, snow and/or dirt
- digital road maps⁹⁶ are out-of-date, inaccurate or have no speed information⁹⁷.

i NOTE

The RSI function may interpret some types of bicycle rack, connected to the electrical socket for trailers, as a connected trailer. In such cases, the driver display may show incorrect speed information.

⁹³ Road Sign Information

⁹⁴ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model and market/area.



i NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

Related information

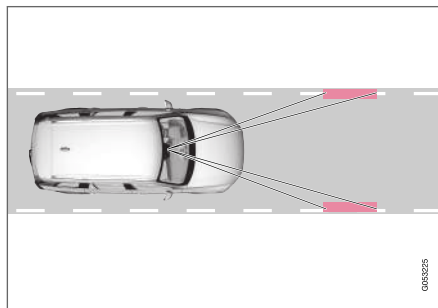
- Road Sign Information* (p. 348)

Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function is intended to help make the driver aware that he or she is starting to drive less consistently, e.g. if the driver becomes distracted or starts to fall asleep.

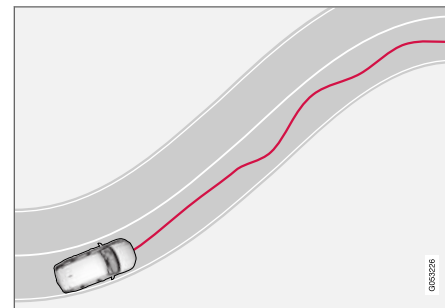
The objective for DAC is to detect slowly deteriorating driving ability and it is primarily intended for major roads. The function is not intended for city traffic.

The function is activated when speed exceeds 65 km/h (40 mph) and remains active as long as the speed is over 60 km/h (37 mph).



A camera detects the edge markings painted on the carriageway and compares the alignment of

the road with the driver's steering wheel movements.



When driving behaviour starts to become inconsistent, the driver is alerted by this symbol in the driver display, together with the text message **Time for a break soon?**

If driving behaviour does not improve but becomes noticeably inconsistent, the driver is alerted by the same symbol in the driver display, combined with an acoustic signal and the text message **Time to take a break**.

If the **Rest Stop Guidance** function is activated in Sensus Navigation*, suggestions for a suitable

⁹⁵ Road Sign Information

⁹⁶ In cars equipped with Sensus Navigation.

⁹⁷ Map data with speed information does not exist for all areas.

location for a break are also shown with the **Time to take a break** warning.

The warnings are repeated after a time if driving behaviour has not improved.

WARNING

- The Driver Alert Control function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- Driver Alert Control should not be used to extend a period of driving. The driver should instead plan for breaks at regular intervals and make sure they are well rested.
- Driver Alert Control is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

WARNING

An alarm from Driver Alert Control should be taken very seriously, as a sleepy driver is often not aware of his/her own condition.

If the alarm sounds or you feel fatigued:

- Stop the car safely as soon as possible and rest.

Studies have shown that it is just as dangerous to drive while tired as it is to drive under the influence of alcohol or other stimulants.

Related information

- Activate/deactivate Driver Alert Control (p. 355)
- Select rest stop guidance in the event of a warning with Driver Alert Control (p. 356)
- Limitations of Driver Alert Control (p. 356)

Activate/deactivate Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function can be activated/deactivated.

On/Off

To change settings in DAC:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** → **Driver Alert Control**.
3. Select/deselect **Alertness Warning** to activate/deactivate DAC.

Related information

- Driver Alert Control (p. 354)

Select rest stop guidance in the event of a warning with Driver Alert Control

It is possible to set whether the **Rest Stop Guidance** function should be activated/deactivated.

With the guide activated, an automatic suggestion for an appropriate rest area is displayed while DAC issues a warning.

To select **Rest Stop Guidance**:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** → **Driver Alert Control**.
3. Select/deselect **Rest Stop Guidance** to activate/deactivate the function.

Related information

- Driver Alert Control (p. 354)

Limitations of Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function may have limitations in certain situations.

In some cases the system may issue a warning despite driving ability not deteriorating, for example:

- in strong side winds
- on rutted road surfaces.

WARNING

In some cases, driving behaviour is not affected despite driver fatigue – e.g. when using the Pilot Assist function – resulting in the driver not getting a warning from DAC.

It is therefore important to always stop and take a break at the slightest feeling of fatigue, whether the DAC function has given a warning or not.

NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

Related information

- Driver Alert Control (p. 354)

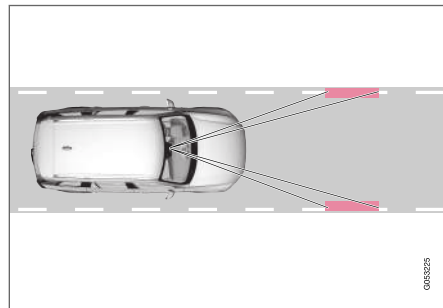
Lane assistance

The function of the Lane Keeping Aid (LKA⁹⁸) is to help the driver to reduce the risk of the car accidentally leaving its own lane on motorways and similar major routes.

Lane Keeping Aid steers the car back into its lane and/or alerts the driver with vibrations in the steering wheel.

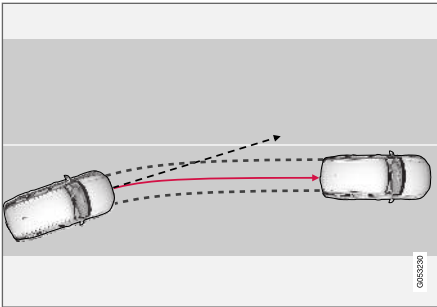
Lane Keeping Aid is active within the speed range 65-200 km/h (40-125 mph) on roads with clearly visible side lines.

On narrow roads the function may be unavailable, in which case it goes into standby mode. The function becomes available again when the road is wide enough.

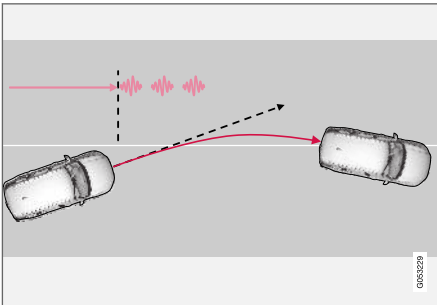


A camera reads the side lines of the road/lane.

⁹⁸ Lane Keeping Aid



Lane assistance steers the car back into its lane.



Lane assistance warns with steering wheel vibrations⁹⁹.

Depending on settings, lane assistance acts in accordance with the following:

- **Assist¹⁰⁰** activated: When the car is approaching a lane line, LKA will actively steer the car back into its lane by applying a slight torque to the steering wheel.
- **Warning¹⁰⁰** activated: If the car is about to cross a lane line, the driver is warned by means of vibrations in the steering wheel.

i NOTE

When a direction indicator is switched on, there are no steering corrections or alerts from Lane assistance.

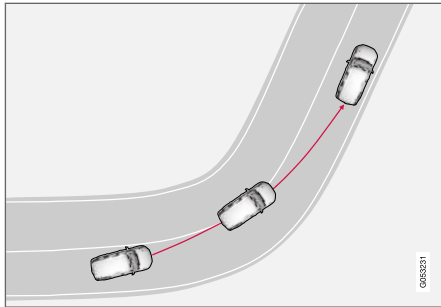
! WARNING

- The Lane Keeping Aid function is supplementary driver support intended to improve driving safety – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The function is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

⁹⁹ The steering wheel vibration varies - the longer the car remains outside the lane lines, the longer the vibration.

¹⁰⁰ See the heading "Assistance alternatives for LKA" in the section "Activating/Deactivating Lane Keeping Aid".

◀ **Lane assistance does not intervene**



Lane assistance does not engage on sharp inside curves.

In some situations, lane assistance allows lane lines to be crossed without intervening with either steering assistance or a warning - e.g. when using the direction indicators or cutting bends.

Related information

- Steering assistance with lane assistance (p. 358)
- Limitations of Lane assistance (p. 359)
- Activate/deactivate Lane Keeping Aid (p. 359)
- Select assistance option for lane assistance (p. 359)
- Symbols and messages for lane assistance (p. 361)

- Lane assistance symbols in the driver display (p. 363)

Steering assistance with lane assistance

For steering assistance LKA¹⁰¹ to function, the driver's hands must be on the steering wheel. The system monitors this continuously.



If the driver does not keep his/her hands on the steering wheel, the driver display shows this symbol combined with a message, which prompts the driver to actively steer the car:

- **Lane Keeping Aid Apply steering**

If the driver does not then start to steer, the symbol is shown again, combined with a warning sound and this message:

- **Lane Keeping Aid Standby until steering applied**

If the driver then still does not follow the prompt to start steering, LKA¹⁰¹ is set in standby mode - the function will then be unavailable until the driver starts to steer the car again.

Related information

- Lane assistance (p. 356)

¹⁰¹Lane Keeping Aid

Activate/deactivate Lane Keeping Aid

The lane assistance LKA¹⁰² function is selectable - the driver can select **On** or **Off**.

On/Off



Press the **Lane Keeping Aid** button in the centre display function view.

- GREEN button indication - LKA is activated.
- GREY button indication - LKA is deactivated.

Related information

- Lane assistance (p. 356)

Select assistance option for lane assistance

The driver can select how LKA¹⁰³ should react if the car leaves its lane.

1. Select **Settings** → **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** in the centre display's top view.
2. In the event of **Lane Keeping Aid Mode**, select how LKA should react:
 - **Assist** - the driver is given steering assistance without a warning.
 - **Both** - the driver is given both a warning and steering assistance.
 - **Warning** — warning to driver only.

Related information

- Lane assistance (p. 356)

Limitations of Lane assistance

In certain demanding conditions Lane assistance may have difficulty helping the driver correctly. In such cases it is recommended to switch off this function.

Examples of such conditions are:

- road works
- winter road conditions
- poor road surface
- a very "sporty" driving style
- poor weather with reduced visibility
- roads with unclear or non-existent side markings
- sharp edges or lines other than the lane's side markings
- when the power steering works at reduced power - e.g. during cooling due to overheating (see section "Speed-dependent steering force").

i NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

¹⁰²Lane Keeping Aid

¹⁰³Lane Keeping Aid





◀◀ **Related information**

- Lane assistance (p. 356)
- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 262)

Symbols and messages for lane assistance


A number of symbols and messages regarding Lane assistance LKA¹⁰⁴ can be shown on the driver display.

The following table shows some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Driver support system Reduced functionality Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual	The ability of the camera to scan the roadway in front of the car is reduced.
	Lane Keeping Aid Apply steering	The LKA steering assistance does not function if the driver does not have his/her hands on the steering wheel. Follow the instruction and steer the car.
	Lane Keeping Aid Standby until steering applied	LKA is set in standby mode until the driver starts to steer the car again.

¹⁰⁴Lane Keeping Aid

DRIVER SUPPORT

- ◀◀ A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the  button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Lane assistance (p. 356)

Lane assistance symbols in the driver display

Lane assistance LKA¹⁰⁵ is visualised by symbols in the driver display depending on the situation.

Here are some examples of symbols and the situations in which they are shown:



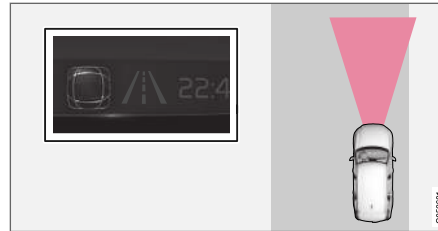
Available



Available — the lane lines in the symbol are WHITE.

Lane assistance is scanning one or both lane lines.

Unavailable



Unavailable — the lane lines in the symbol are GREY.

The Lane assistance cannot detect the lane lines, the speed is too low or the road is too narrow.

Indication of steering assistance/warning



Steering assistance/warning - the lane lines in the symbol are COLOURED.

Lane assistance indicates that the system is giving a warning and/or attempting to steer the car back into the lane.

Related information

- Lane assistance (p. 356)

¹⁰⁵Lane Keeping Aid

Steering assistance at risk of collision

The **Collision avoidance assistance** function is designed to help the driver reduce the risk of the car leaving its lane unintentionally and/or colliding with another vehicle or obstacle by actively steering the car back into its lane and/or swerving.

The **Collision avoidance assistance** function consists of two subfunctions:

- Steering assistance upon risk of run-off
- Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision

After automatic engagement, the driver display indicates that this has occurred via a text message:

- **Collision avoidance assistance**
Automatic intervention

NOTE

It is always the driver who decides how much the car should steer – the car can never take command.

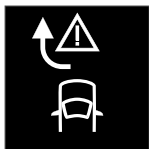
Related information

- Activating/deactivating Steering assistance in the event of a collision risk (p. 364)
- Symbols and messages for steering assistance upon risk of collision (p. 371)

- Steering assistance upon risk of run-off (p. 365)
- Steering assistance level in the event of a run-off risk (p. 366)
- Activating/deactivating Steering assistance in the event of run-off risk (p. 366)
- Limitations for steering assistance upon risk of running off the road (p. 367)
- Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision (p. 368)
- Activating/deactivating Steering assistance in the event of a risk of a head-on collision (p. 369)
- Limitations for steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision (p. 369)

Activating/deactivating Steering assistance in the event of a collision risk

The function can be selected - the driver can choose to have it **On** or **Off**.



Shift between **On** and **Off** using this button in the centre display's function view.

During subsequent engine starting, the function is automatically¹⁰⁶ reactivated or it follows settings made in the remote control key, if it has an activated driver profile¹⁰⁶ (see section "Driver profiles").

i NOTE

When the **Collision avoidance assistance** function is deactivated, all subfunctions are switched off:

- Steering assistance at risk of road departure
- Steering assistance at risk of oncoming collision

Even though it is possible to deactivate the function, it is advisable for the driver to always have it activated since it improves driving safety in most cases.

Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 364)

Steering assistance upon risk of run-off

The subfunction's task is to help the driver **reduce the risk of the car accidentally leaving the road by actively steering the car back onto the road.**

The function is active within the speed range 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane markings/lines.

A camera scans the edges of the road and the painted side markings. If the car is about to leave the side of the road, the car is steered back onto the road and if the steering intervention is not enough to avoid run-off, the brakes are also activated.

However, the function does **not** intervene with either steering assistance or brake intervention if the direction indicators are used. And if the function detects that the driver is actively driving the car, activation of the function will be delayed.

After automatic engagement, the driver display indicates that this has occurred via a text message:

- **Collision avoidance assistance Automatic intervention**

! WARNING

- The "Steering assistance at risk of lane departure" subfunction is supplementary driver support intended to improve driving safety – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The function cannot detect barriers, rails or similar obstacles at the side of the road.
- "Steering assistance at risk of lane departure" is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 364)

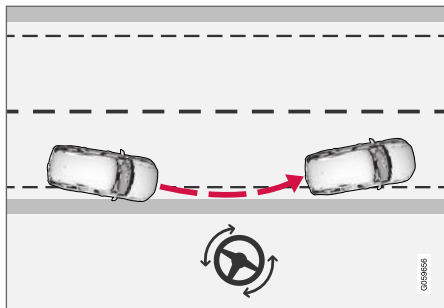
¹⁰⁶These options are market-dependent.

Steering assistance level in the event of a run-off risk

The function has two activation levels on intervention:

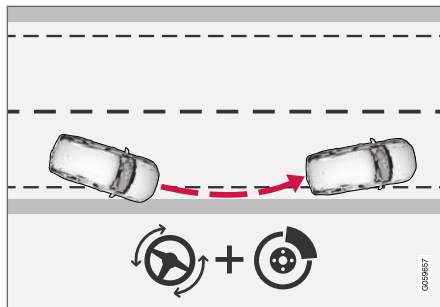
- Steering assistance only
- Steering assistance with brake intervention

Steering assistance only



Intervention with steering assistance.

Steering assistance with brake intervention



Intervention with steering assistance and braking.

Brake intervention helps in situations where steering assistance alone is not sufficient. The brake force is adapted automatically depending on the situation at the time of road run-off.

Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 364)

Activating/deactivating Steering assistance in the event of run-off risk

The function can be selected - the driver can choose to have it **On** or **Off**.



Shift between **On** and **Off** using this button in the centre display's function view.

During subsequent engine starting, the function is automatically¹⁰⁷ reactivated or it fol-

lows settings made in the remote control key, if it has an activated driver profile¹⁰⁷ (see section "Driver profiles").

i NOTE

When the **Collision avoidance assistance** function is deactivated, all subfunctions are switched off:

- Steering assistance at risk of road departure
- Steering assistance at risk of oncoming collision

Even though it is possible to deactivate the function, it is advisable for the driver to always have it activated since it improves driving safety in most cases.

¹⁰⁷These options are market-dependent.

Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 364)

Limitations for steering assistance upon risk of running off the road

In certain demanding conditions the function may have difficulty helping the driver correctly. In such cases it is recommended to switch off this function.

Examples of such conditions are:

- road works
- winter road conditions
- narrow roads
- poor road surface
- a very "sporty" driving style
- poor weather with reduced visibility
- roads with unclear or non-existent side markings
- sharp edges or lines other than the lane's side markings
- when the power steering works at reduced power - e.g. during cooling due to overheating (see section "Speed-dependent steering force").

i NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

i NOTE

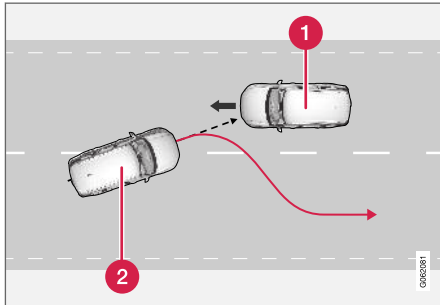
The function uses the car's radar unit, which has some general limitations, see the section "Limitations for radar unit".

Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 364)
- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 262)

Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision

The subfunction can help a distracted driver who does not notice that the car is drifting into the oncoming lane.



The function can assist by guiding the car back to its own lane.

- 1 Oncoming vehicles
- 2 Your car

The function is active within the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane markings/lines.

If the car is about to leave its own lane while an oncoming vehicle is approaching at the same time, the function can help the driver to steer the car back into its own lane.

However, the function does **not** intervene with steering assistance if the direction indicator is used. And if the function detects that the driver is actively driving the car, activation of the function will be delayed.

After automatic engagement, the driver display indicates that this has occurred via a text message:

- **Collision avoidance assistance**
Automatic intervention

WARNING

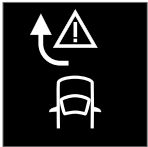
- The "Steering assistance at risk of oncoming collision" subfunction is supplementary driver support intended to improve driving safety – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- Steering assistance is only activated if there is a high risk of collision – you must therefore never wait for the function to intervene.
- The function is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 364)

Activating/deactivating Steering assistance in the event of a risk of a head-on collision

The function can be selected - the driver can choose to have it **On** or **Off**.



Shift between **On** and **Off** using this button in the centre display's function view.

During subsequent engine starting, the function is automatically¹⁰⁸ reactivated or it fol-

lows settings made in the remote control key, if it has an activated driver profile¹⁰⁸ (see section "Driver profiles").

i NOTE

When the **Collision avoidance assistance** function is deactivated, all subfunctions are switched off:

- Steering assistance at risk of road departure
- Steering assistance at risk of oncoming collision

Even though it is possible to deactivate the function, it is advisable for the driver to always have it activated since it improves driving safety in most cases.

Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 364)

Limitations for steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision

In certain situations the function may have limited functionality and fail to intervene in the following cases, for example:

- for small vehicles, such as motorcycles
- on roads where the lane does not have clear lane markings
- if the majority of the car has steered into the adjacent lane
- outside the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph)
- when the power steering works at reduced power - e.g. during cooling due to overheating (see section "Speed-dependent steering force").

Other demanding situations can include:

- road works
- winter road conditions
- narrow roads
- poor road surface
- a very "sporty" driving style
- poor weather with reduced visibility.

In these demanding situations, the function may have difficulty helping the driver correctly. In such

¹⁰⁸These options are market-dependent.

- ◀◀ cases it is recommended to switch off this function.

i NOTE

The function uses the car's camera unit, which has some general limitations, see the "Limitations for camera unit" section.

i NOTE

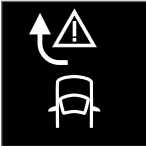

The function uses the car's radar unit, which has some general limitations, see the section "Limitations for radar unit".


Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 364)
- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 262)

Symbols and messages for steering assistance upon risk of collision

A number of symbols and messages regarding the function can be shown on the driver display. The following table shows some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Collision avoidance assistance Automatic intervention	When the function is activated, a message is shown to the driver indicating that the system has been activated.
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual	The ability of the camera to scan the roadway in front of the car is reduced.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the  button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 364)

Park Assist*

The Park Assist Pilot function can assist the driver when manoeuvring in tight spaces by indicating the distance to obstacles through acoustic signals combined with a graphic in the centre display.



Screen view showing obstacle zones and sensor sectors.

The centre display shows an overview of the relationship between the car and detected obstacles.

The highlighted sector indicates the location of the obstacle. The closer the car symbol is to a highlighted sector box, the shorter the distance between the car and detected obstacle.

The shorter the distance to the obstacle, the faster the signal sounds. Other sound from the audio system is muted automatically.

The acoustic signal for obstacles ahead and to the sides is active when the car is moving but

stops after the car has been stationary for approx. 2 seconds. The acoustic signal for obstacles behind is also active when the car is stationary.

At a distance within 30 cm (1 ft) from an obstacle behind or in front of the car, the tone is constant and the active sensor's field closest to the car symbol is filled.

The volume of the parking assistance signal can be adjusted while the signal is sounding by means of the **[>II]** knob on the centre console. Adjustment can also be performed in the top view's **Settings** menu option.

i NOTE

- Acoustic warnings are only given for objects directly on the vehicle's route.

⚠ WARNING

- The Park Assist function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The parking sensors have blind spots where obstacles cannot be detected.
- Be particularly aware of people and animals near the car.
- The Park Assist system is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

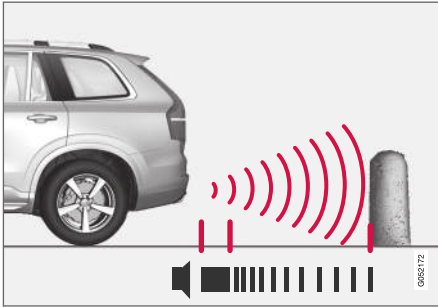
Related information

- Park Assist Pilot front, rear and along the sides (p. 373)
- Activating/deactivating Park Assist Pilot (p. 374)
- Limitations of Parking assistance (p. 374)
- Recommended Park Assist Pilot maintenance (p. 375)
- Symbols and messages for Park Assist Pilot (p. 376)

Park Assist Pilot front, rear and along the sides

Park Assist Pilot has different parameters depending on which part of the car is approaching an obstacle.

Backwards



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

The sensors for reverse are activated if the car rolls backward without a gear engaged or when the gear lever is moved to reverse position.

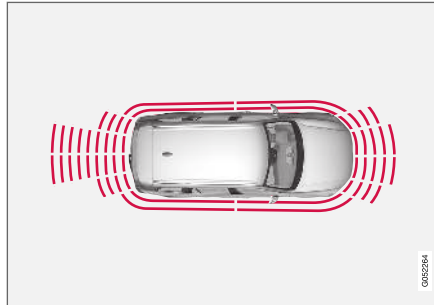
The measuring range starts approx. 1.5 metres (5 ft) behind the car.

When reversing with a hitched trailer, parking assistance backward is deactivated automatically.

i NOTE

When reversing with e.g. a trailer or bike carrier on the towbar - without Volvo genuine trailer wiring - parking assistance may need to be switched off manually in order that the sensors do not react to them.

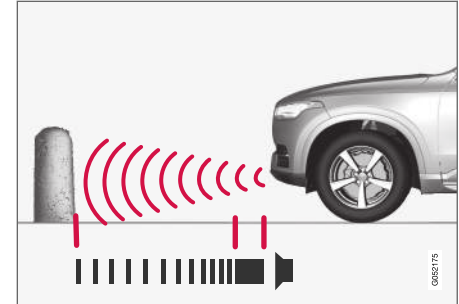
Along the sides



Parking assistance side sensors are activated automatically when the engine is started. They are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The measuring range starts approx. 30 cm (1 ft) from the sides. The acoustic signal for obstacles on the sides comes from the side loudspeakers.

Forwards



NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

The front parking assistance sensors are activated automatically when the engine is started. The front sensors are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The measuring range starts approx. 80 cm (2.5 ft) in front of the car.

i NOTE

Parking assistance is deactivated when the parking brake is applied or **P** mode is selected in a car with an automatic gearbox.



! IMPORTANT

When auxiliary lamps are fitted: Remember that these must not obscure the sensors - the auxiliary lamps may then be perceived as an obstacle.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 372)

Activating/deactivating Park Assist Pilot

The Park Assist Pilot function can be activated/deactivated.

On/Off

The front and side parking assistance sensors are activated automatically when the engine is started. The rear sensors activate if the car rolls backwards or if reverse gear is engaged.



The function is activated/deactivated in function view in the centre display.

- Tap on the **Park Assist** button in the function view.
 - > Park Assist Pilot is activated/deactivated, a GREEN/GREY indicator is displayed in the button.

In cars equipped with a park assist camera, Park Assist Pilot can also be activated/deactivated from the relevant camera view.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 372)

Limitations of Parking assistance

The Parking Assistance System cannot detect everything in all situations and may therefore have limited functionality in some cases.

A driver should be aware about the following examples of Park Assist Pilot's limitations:

! WARNING



Pay additional attention while reversing when this symbol is shown if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is mounted and electrically connected to the car.

The symbol indicates that the parking assistance sensors rearward are **switched off** and will not warn of any obstacles.

! IMPORTANT

Objects e.g. chains, thin glossy poles or low barriers may be in the "signal shadow" and are then temporarily not detected by the sensors - the pulsating tone may then unexpectedly stop instead of changing over to the expected constant tone.

The sensors cannot detect high objects, such as projecting loading docks.

- In such situations, pay extra attention and manoeuvre/reposition the car particularly slowly or stop the current parking manoeuvre - there may be a high risk of damage to vehicles or other objects since information from the sensors is not always reliable in such situations.

! IMPORTANT

In certain conditions the parking assistance system may produce incorrect warning signals that are caused by external sound sources with the same ultrasonic frequencies that the system works with.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes, exhaust noises from motorcycles, etc.

i NOTE

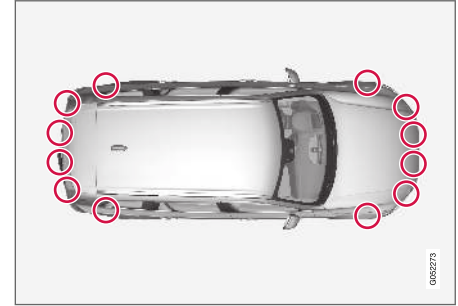
Since a towbar is configured with the car's electrical system, towbar protrusion is included when the function measures the distance to an object behind the car.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 372)

Recommended Park Assist Pilot maintenance

For the Park Assist Pilot function to work optimally, its sensors must be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.



Location of the parking sensors¹⁰⁹.

i NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may cause incorrect warning signals, reduced or no function.

Related information


- Park Assist* (p. 372)


¹⁰⁹NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Symbols and messages for Park Assist Pilot

Symbols and messages for Park Assist Pilot can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display.

The following table shows some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
		The rearward parking assistance sensors are deactivated , so there are no acoustic warnings for obstacles/objects.
	Park Assist System Sensors blocked, cleaning needed	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
	Park Assist System Unavailable Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the  button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 372)

Park assist camera*

The park assist camera can assist the driver when manoeuvring in tight spaces by indicating obstacles with a camera image and graphics in the centre display.

The parking assistance camera is a support function which is activated automatically when reverse gear is selected or manually via the centre display.



Example of camera view¹¹⁰.

- 1 Zoom**¹¹¹ - zoom in/out
- 2 360° view*** - activates/deactivates all cameras
- 3 PAS*** - activates/deactivates the Parking Assistance System

- 4 Lines** - activates/deactivates park assist lines
- 5 Towbar*** - activates/deactivates the towbar park assist line¹¹²
- 6 CTA*** - activates/deactivates Cross Traffic Alert

⚠ WARNING

- The parking camera function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The parking cameras have blind spots where obstacles cannot be detected.
- Be particularly aware of people and animals near the car.
- Objects/obstacles on the display screen may be closer to the car than they appear to be on the screen.
- The parking cameras are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- Parking cameras' camera views (p. 378)
- Park assist lines for parking camera (p. 380)
- Sensor fields from Park Assist Pilot for parking camera (p. 382)

¹¹⁰The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

¹¹¹The park assist lines are switched off when zooming in.

¹¹²Not available on all markets.

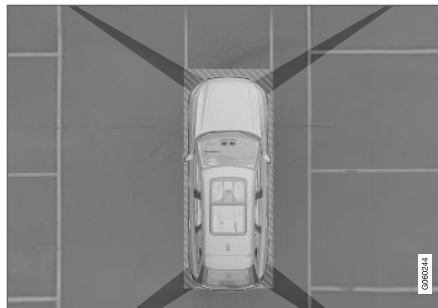


- Starting the park assist camera (p. 382)
- Limitations for park assist camera (p. 383)
- Recommended parking camera maintenance (p. 384)
- Recommended parking camera maintenance (p. 384)
- Symbols and messages for Park assist camera (p. 385)

Parking cameras' camera views

The function can display a composite 360° view and separate views for each of the four cameras: rear, front, left or right camera view.

360° view*



The "field of vision" of the parking cameras with approximate coverage area.

The **360° view** function activates all parking cameras, whereupon the four sides of the car are shown simultaneously in the centre display, which helps the driver to observe what is around the car when manoeuvring at slow speeds.

From the 360° view, each camera view can be activated separately:

- Press the screen for the desired "field of vision" of the camera, e.g. on the surface in front of/above the front camera.



A camera symbol on the centre display's car symbol indicates which of the cameras is active.

If the car is also equipped with **Park Assist System*** then distance to detected obstacles is illustrated with fields in different colours.

The cameras can be activated automatically or manually, see the section "Starting the Park assist camera".

Backwards

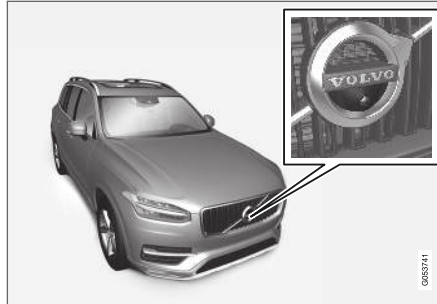


The backwards-facing camera¹¹³ is fitted above the registration plate.

The backward-facing camera shows a wide area behind the car. For certain models, part of the bumper can be seen as well as the towbar in some cases.

Objects shown in the centre display may appear slightly tilted — this is normal.

Forwards



The forwards parking camera¹¹⁴ is located in the grille.

The front camera can be helpful on an exit road with limited visibility to the sides, e.g. when there are high hedges. It is active at speeds up to 25 km/h (16 mph) - following which, the front camera is switched off.

If the car does not reach 50 km/h (30 mph) and the speed falls below 22 km/h (14 mph) within 1 minute after the forward-facing camera has been extinguished, the camera is reactivated.

The sides



The side cameras¹¹⁴ are positioned in each door mirror.

The side cameras can show what is along each side of the car.

Related information

- Park assist camera* (p. 377)

¹¹³NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

¹¹⁴NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Park assist lines for parking camera

The Park assist cameras indicate the position of the car in relation to its surroundings by displaying lines on the screen.



Example¹¹⁵ of park assist lines.

Park assist lines show the intended route for the car's external dimensions with the current steering wheel angle - this facilitates parallel parking,

reversing into tight spaces and when connecting a trailer.

The lines on the screen are projected as if they were at ground level behind the car and respond directly to steering wheel movements, showing the driver the path the car will take - also when the car is turning.

These park assist lines include the car's most protruding parts, e.g. towbar, door mirrors and corners.

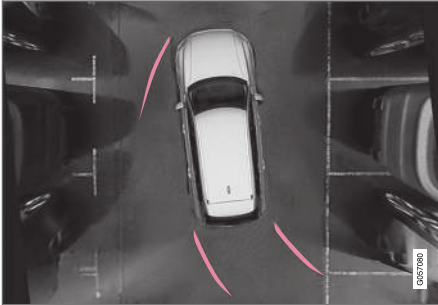
i NOTE

- When reversing with a trailer which is not connected electrically to the car, the park assist lines on the display show the route the **car** will take - not the trailer.
- The screen shows no park assist lines when a trailer is connected electrically to the car's electrical system.
- Park assist lines are not shown when zooming in.

i IMPORTANT

- Remember, that with the rear camera view selected, the monitor only displays the area behind the car. Be aware of the sides and front of the car when manoeuvring in reverse.
- The same applies vice versa - note what happens to the rear parts of the car when the front camera view is selected.
- Note that the park assist lines show the **shortest** route. Therefore, pay extra attention to the car's sides so that they do not go against/over something when the steering wheel is turned when driving forward or that the front sweeps against/over something when the steering wheel is turned when reversing.

¹¹⁵The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

Park assist lines in 360° view*360° view with park assist lines¹¹⁵.

With the 360° view, park assist lines are shown behind, in front of and at the side of the car (depending on the direction of travel):

- When driving forwards: Front lines
- When reversing: Side lines and reversing lines.

With front or rear camera selected, the park assist lines appear regardless of the car's direction of travel.

With one side camera selected, the park assist lines only appear when reversing.

Towbar assist line*Towbar with park assist line¹¹⁵.

- 1 Towbar** - activates the towbar assist line.
- 2 Zoom** - zoom in/out.

The camera can facilitate connecting up to a trailer by showing an assist line representing the towbar's intended "path" to the trailer.

- Press **Towbar** (1).
 - > The park assist lines for the towbar's intended "path" appear - the car's park assist lines disappear simultaneously.

Park assist lines for both car and towbar cannot be shown at the same time.
- Press **Zoom** (2) when a more precise manoeuvring is required.
 - > The camera view zooms in.

Related information

- Park assist camera* (p. 377)

¹¹⁵The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

Sensor fields from Park Assist Pilot for parking camera

If the car is equipped with Parking assistance then the distance is shown in the 360° view with coloured fields for each sensor that registers an obstacle.

Sensor fields backwards and forwards



The screen can show coloured sensor fields on the car symbol¹¹⁶.

The fields for the front and reversing sensors change colour as the distance to the obstacle decreases — from yellow through orange to red.

Colours of front and reversing fields	Distance in metres (feet)
Yellow	0,6-1,5 (2,0-4,9)
Orange	0,4-0,6 (1,3-2,0)
Red	0-0,4 (0-1,3)

Sensor field to the sides

The side fields are only shown in orange.

Colour of side fields	Distance in metres (feet)
Orange	0-0,3 (0-1,0)

Related information

- Park assist camera* (p. 377)

Starting the park assist camera

The park assist camera starts automatically when reverse gear is engaged or manually with one of the centre display's function buttons.

Camera view when reversing

When reverse gear is engaged, the screen shows the 360° view if it or any of the side views was the last used camera view, otherwise the rear view is shown.

Camera view for manual camera start



Start the parking camera with this button in the centre display's function view.

The screen then initially shows the last used camera view.

However, after each engine

start, the previously shown side view is replaced by the 360° view and the previously shown zoomed rear view is replaced by the rear view.

Automatic deactivation of camera

The front view extinguishes at 25 km/h (16 mph) to avoid distracting the driver - it reactivates automatically if the speed drops to 22 km/h (14 mph) within 1 minute, on the condition that the speed has not exceeded 50 km/h (31 mph).

Other camera views are extinguished at 15 km/h (9 mph) and not reactivated.

¹¹⁶The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

Related information


- Park assist camera* (p. 377)

Limitations for park assist camera

The park assist camera cannot detect everything in all situations and may therefore have limited functionality.

A driver should be aware about the following examples of the park assist camera's limitations:

⚠ WARNING



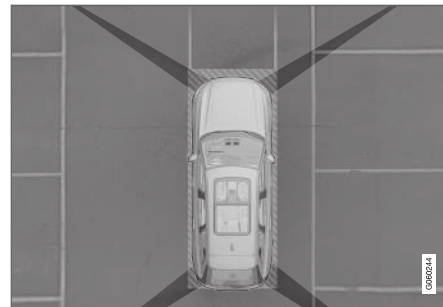
Pay additional attention while reversing when this symbol is shown if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is mounted and electrically connected to the car.

The symbol indicates that the parking assistance sensors rearward are **switched off** and will not warn of any obstacles.

i NOTE

A bike carrier or other accessory mounted on the rear of the car could obscure the camera's view.

Blind sectors



There are "blind" sectors between the cameras' fields of vision.

In 360° view obstacles/objects can "vanish" in the gaps between the individual cameras.

⚠ WARNING

Pay attention to the possibility that, even if it only looks like a relatively small part of the image is obscured, a relatively large sector could be hidden from view. An obstacle could thereby go undetected until the car is very close to it.

◀ Defective camera



If a camera sector is black and contains this symbol then it means that the camera is out of order.

The following illustration shows an example.



The car's left-hand camera is out of order.

Black camera sector

A black camera sector is also shown in the following instances, but then **without** the symbol for defective camera:

- open door
- open tailgate
- folded-in door mirror.

Light conditions

The camera image is adjusted automatically according to prevailing light conditions. Because

of this, the image may vary slightly in brightness and quality. Poor light conditions can result in reduced image quality.

Related information

- Park assist camera* (p. 377)

Recommended parking camera maintenance

The parking cameras positioned beside the rear number plate holder, in the grille and in both door mirrors need a certain amount of maintenance.

Clean camera lenses regularly with lukewarm water and car shampoo - be careful not to scratch the lenses.

i NOTE

Keep the camera lens clear of dirt, snow and ice to ensure optimum function. This is particularly important in poor light.



Related information


- Park assist camera* (p. 377)

Symbols and messages for Park assist camera

Symbols and messages for Park assist camera can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display.

The following table shows examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
		The rearward parking assistance sensors are deactivated , so there are no acoustic warnings and field marks for obstacles/objects.
		The camera is disengaged.
	Park Assist System Sensors blocked, cleaning needed	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
	Park Assist System Unavailable Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the  button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Park assist camera* (p. 377)

Park Assist Pilot*

Park Assist Pilot (PAP¹¹⁷) helps the driver to park in or leave a parking space.

PAP first checks if a space is large enough and if so steers the car into the space.

The centre display indicates with symbols, graphics and text the various operations to be carried out and when to do so.

WARNING

- The PAP function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- Be particularly aware of people and animals near the car.
- PAP is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

NOTE

The PAP function measures the space and steers the car - the driver's task is to:

- keep a close watch around the car
- follow the instructions in the centre display
- select gear (reverse/forward) - a "ping" sound indicates when the driver should change gear
- control and maintain a safe speed
- brake and stop.

Related information

- Parking variants with Park Assist Pilot (p. 386)
- Parking with Park Assist Pilot (p. 387)
- Leaving a car park with Park Assist Pilot (p. 390)
- Limitations of Park Assist Pilot* (p. 391)
- Recommended Park Assist Pilot maintenance (p. 392)
- Messages for Park Assist Pilot* (p. 393)

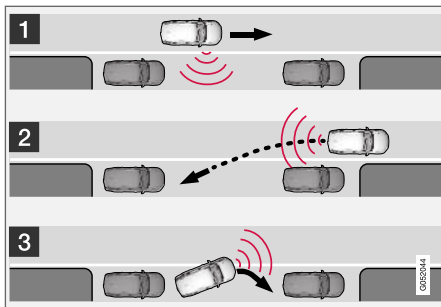
Parking variants with Park Assist Pilot

Park Assist Pilot PAP¹¹⁸ can be used for the following different parking situations.

¹¹⁷Park Assist Pilot

¹¹⁸Park Assist Pilot

Parallel parking



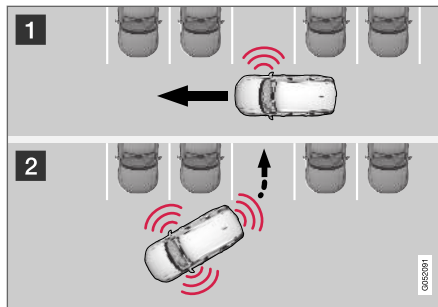
The principal of parallel parking.

The PAP function parks the car using the following steps:

1. A parking space is identified and measured.
2. The car is reversed into the space.
3. The car is positioned in the space by means of driving forward/backward.

Using the **Park Out** function, a parallel-parked car can also be assisted by PAP to leave the parking space - see the heading "Leaving a parking space" in the section "Parking with Park Assist Pilot".

Perpendicular parking



Principle for perpendicular parking.

The PAP function parks the car using the following steps:

1. A parking space is identified and measured.
2. The car is reversed into the space and then positioned in the space by means of driving forward/backward.

i NOTE

A perpendicular-parked car **cannot** be assisted by the PAP **Park Out** function to leave a parking space - the function must only be used for a parallel-parked car.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 386)

Parking with Park Assist Pilot

Park Assist Pilot (PAP¹¹⁹) helps the driver park via three steps. The function can also help the driver to leave a parking space.

i NOTE

The PAP function measures the space and steers the car - the driver's task is to:

- keep a close watch around the car
- follow the instructions in the centre display
- select gear (reverse/forward) - a "ping" sound indicates when the driver should change gear
- control and maintain a safe speed
- brake and stop.

Symbols, graphics and/or text appear on the centre display's screen when the different steps are to be performed.

PAP can be activated if the following criteria are met once the engine has been started:

- No trailer is attached to the car
- Speed must be lower than 30 km/h (20 mph).



i NOTE

The distance between the car and parking spaces should be 0.5-1.5 metres (1.6-5.0 ft) while PAP is searching for a parking space.

Parking

PAP parks the car using the following steps:

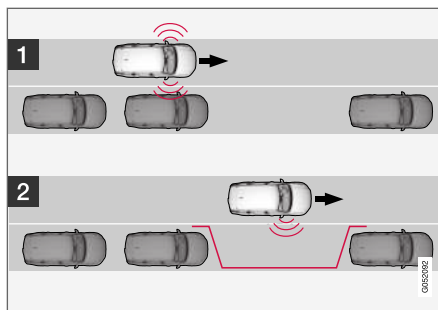
1. A parking space is identified and measured.
2. The car is reversed into the space.
3. The car is positioned into the space - the system may then request that the driver changes gear.

Finding and measuring parking spaces

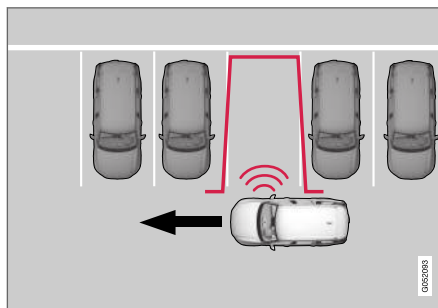


The function can be activated in the centre display's function view.

It can also be accessed from the camera views.



Principle for parallel parking.



Principle for perpendicular parking.

Proceed as follows:

1. Drive at a maximum of 30 km/h (20 mph) before parallel or perpendicular parking.

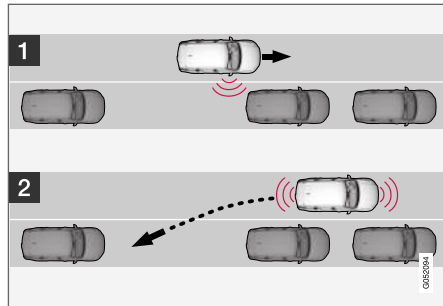
2. Tap on the **Park In** button in the function view or in the camera view.
 - > PAP searches for a parking space and checks whether it is big enough.
3. Be prepared to stop the car when the graphic and message on the centre display state that a suitable parking space has been found.
 - > A pop-up window is shown.
4. Select **Parallel parking** or **Perpendicular parking** and select reverse gear.

i NOTE

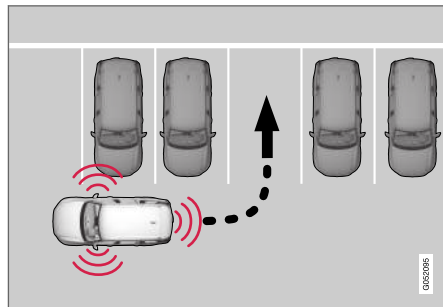
PAP searches the area for parking, displays instructions and guides the car in on its passenger side. But if required the car can also be parked on the driver's side of the street:

- Activate the direction indicator to the driver's side - then the system searches for a parking space on that side of the car instead.

Reversing in to the parking space



Parallel.



Perpendicular.

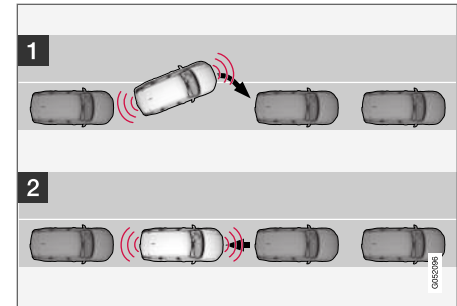
Perform the following to reverse the car into the parking space:

1. Check that the area behind the car is clear, then engage reverse gear.
2. Reverse slowly and carefully without touching the steering wheel - and no faster than 7 km/h (4 mph).
3. Be prepared to stop the car when instructed by the graphic and message on the centre display.

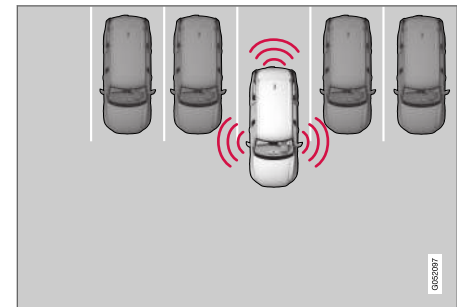
i NOTE

- Keep your hands away from the steering wheel when the PAP function is activated.
- Make sure that the steering wheel is not hindered in any way and can rotate freely.
- To achieve optimum results - wait until the steering wheel is fully turned before starting to drive backward/forward.

Positioning the car in the parking space



Parallel.



Perpendicular.

Proceed as follows:

1. Move the gear selector into the **D** position, wait until the steering wheel has been turned and drive slowly forward.



2. Be prepared to stop the car when instructed by the graphic and message on the centre display.
3. Select reverse gear and drive slowly backwards.
4. Be prepared to stop the car when instructed by the graphic and message on the centre display.

The function is deactivated automatically and the graphics and message show that parking is complete. It may be necessary for the driver to correct the car's position. Only the driver can determine whether the car is properly parked.

! IMPORTANT

The warning distance is shorter when the sensors are used by PAP compared with when Park Assist uses the sensors.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 386)

Leaving a car park with Park Assist Pilot

The function **Park Out** can also help the driver to leave a parking space.

i NOTE

When leaving a parking space, the **Park Out** function must only be used for a parallel-parked car - it does not work for a perpendicular-parked car.



The **Park Out** function is activated in the centre display's function view or in the camera view.

Proceed as follows:

1. Tap on the **Park Out** button in the function view or in the camera view.
2. Use the direction indicator to select the direction in which the car should leave the parking space.
3. Be prepared to stop the car when instructed by the graphic and message on the centre display - follow the instructions in the same way as for the parking procedure.

Note the steering wheel can "spring" back when the function is completed - the driver may then need to turn the steering wheel back to the maxi-

mum steering angle in order to leave the parking space.

If PAP considers that the driver can leave the parking space without any extra manoeuvring then the function will be stopped, even if the driver may consider that the car is still in the parking space.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 386)

Limitations of Park Assist Pilot*

The Park Assist Pilot PAP¹²⁰ function cannot detect everything in all situations and may therefore have limited functionality.

WARNING

- The PAP function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- Be particularly aware of people and animals near the car.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking manoeuvre.
- Objects situated higher than the sensor detection area are not included when calculating the parking manoeuvre, which could cause PAP to swing into the parking space too early – such parking spaces should be avoided for this reason.
- PAP is not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

A driver should be aware about the following examples of Park Assist Pilot limitations:

Parking is discontinued

A parking sequence will be discontinued:

- if the driver moves the steering wheel
- if the car is driven too quickly - above 7 km/h (4 mph)
- if the driver presses **Cancel** in the centre display
- when the anti-lock brakes or the Electronic stability control are engaged - e.g. when a wheel loses grip on a slippery road
- when the power steering works at reduced power - e.g. during cooling due to overheating (see section "Speed-dependent steering force").

Where applicable, a message in the centre display states the reason for a parking sequence being discontinued.

IMPORTANT

Under certain circumstances, PAP is unable to find parking spaces - one reason for this may be the fact that there is interference with the sensors from external sound sources which emit the same ultrasound frequencies as those with which the system works.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes and exhaust noises from motorcycles etc.

NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors will reduce their function and may prevent measurement.

Driver responsibility

The driver should bear in mind that the PAP is an aid – not an infallible, fully-automatic function. The driver must therefore be prepared to interrupt a parking step.

- ◀ There are also a few details to bear in mind while parking, e.g.:
 - The driver is always responsible for determining whether the space selected by PAP is suitable for parking.
 - Do not use PAP if snow chains or a spare wheel are fitted.
 - Do not use PAP if cargo items are protruding from the car.
 - Heavy rain or snow may cause the system to measure the parking space incorrectly.
 - During the search and check-measurement of the parking space, PAP may miss objects positioned deep in the parking space.
 - Parking spaces on narrow streets are not always feasible, since the space required for manoeuvring may not be sufficient.
 - Use approved tyres¹²¹ with the correct tyre pressure - this affects the ability of PAP to park the car.
 - PAP bases itself on the locations of vehicles already parked nearby - if they are inappropriately parked, your own car's tyres and wheel rims may be damaged by contact with the kerb.
 - Perpendicular parking spaces may be missed or offered unnecessarily if one parked car is protruding more than other parked cars.

- PAP is designed for parking on straight streets - not sharp curves or bends. For this reason, make sure the car is parallel to the potential parking spaces when PAP measures the space.

! **IMPORTANT**

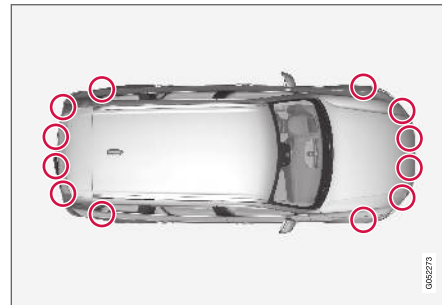
Changing to another approved wheel rim and/or tyre dimension may involve a changed tyre circumference, which means that the PAP system's parameters may then need to be updated. Consult a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 386)
- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 262)

Recommended Park Assist Pilot maintenance

For the Park Assist Pilot PAP¹²² function to work optimally, the parking assistance sensors must be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.



Location of the parking sensors¹²³.

i **NOTE**

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may cause incorrect warning signals, reduced or no function.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 386)


¹²¹"Approved tyres" refers to tyres of the same type and make as those fitted new on delivery from the factory.

Messages for Park Assist Pilot*

Messages for Park Assist Pilot PAP¹²⁴ can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display.

The following table shows examples.

Message	Specification
Park Assist System Sensors blocked, cleaning needed	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
Park Assist System Unavailable Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the  button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 386)

¹²²Park Assist Pilot

¹²³NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

¹²⁴Park Assist Pilot

STARTING AND DRIVING

Starting the car

The car is started using the start button beside the steering wheel when the remote control key is in the passenger compartment.



Start button location.

WARNING

Before starting:

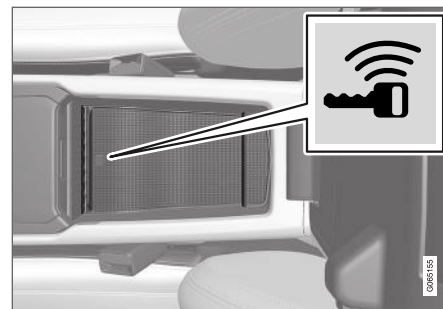
- Fasten the seatbelt.
- Adjust the seat, steering wheel and mirrors.
- Make sure that the brake pedal can be fully depressed.

The remote control key is not physically used when starting the car since it is equipped with support for keyless starting (Passive start).

To start the car:

1. The remote control key must be inside the car. For cars with Passive Start, the key needs to be located in the front part of the passenger compartment. With the option for keyless locking/unlocking* of the car, the key can be anywhere in the car.
2. Hold the brake pedal depressed¹ fully. For cars with automatic gear changing, make sure that gear position **P** or **N** is selected. For cars with a manual gearbox, make sure that the gear lever is in neutral position or that the clutch pedal is depressed.
3. Press the start button.

When the engine is started the starter motor works until the engine is started or until its overheating protection triggers.



Backup reader's location.

If the **Car key not found** message is shown in the driver display when starting, place the remote control key by the backup reader. Then try to start the car again.

NOTE

When the remote control key is positioned by the backup reader, make sure that there are no car keys, metal objects or electronic apparatus by the backup reader, (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers). Several car keys close to one another by the backup reader may cause interference with each other.

¹ If the car is moving, the engine can be started simply by pressing the button.

! IMPORTANT

If the engine fails to start after 3 attempts - wait for 3 minutes before making a further attempt. Starting capacity increases if the battery is allowed to recover.

⚠ WARNING

Always take the remote control key out from the car when leaving the car and make sure the car's electrical system is in ignition position **0** - especially if there are children in the car.

i NOTE

The idling speed can be noticeably higher than normal for certain engine types during cold starting. This is done in order that the emissions system can reach normal operating temperature as quickly as possible, which minimises exhaust emissions and protects the environment.

Related information

- Switching off the car (p. 397)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 175)
- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 443)
- Selecting ignition mode (p. 399)

Switching off the car

The car is switched off using the start button beside the steering wheel.



Start button location.

To switch off the car:

- Press the start button - the car is switched off.

If the gear selector for cars with an automatic gearbox is not in position **P** or if the car rolls:

- Press the start button and hold it depressed until the car is switched off.

Related information

- Starting the car (p. 396)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 175)

- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 443)
- Selecting ignition mode (p. 399)

Ignition positions

The car's electrical system can be set in different levels/positions and in this way make the different functions available.

In order to facilitate the use of a limited number of functions with the engine switched off, the car's electrical system can be set in 3 different levels - **0**, **I** and **II**. These levels are described with the denomination "ignition position" throughout the owner's manual.

The following table shows the functions available in each ignition position/level:

Level	Functions
0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Odometer, clock and temperature gauge are illuminated^A. • The power seats* can be adjusted. • The power windows can be used. • The centre display is started and can be used^A. • The infotainment system can be used^A. <p>The functions are time-controlled in this ignition position and are switched off automatically after a period of time.</p>
I	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Panorama roof, power windows, 12V socket in the passenger compartment, Bluetooth, navigation, phone, ventilation fan and wind-screen wipers can be used. • Power seats can be adjusted. • 12 V sockets in the cargo area can be used. • The infotainment system is started automatically if it was running when the car was left. <p>Power is taken from the battery in this ignition position.</p>

Level	Functions
II	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The headlamps come on. • Warning/indicator lamps illuminate for 5 seconds. • Several other systems are activated. However, heating in seat cushions and the rear window can only be activated after the car has been started. <p>This ignition position consumes a lot of current from the battery and should therefore be avoided!</p>

^A Also activated when the door is opened.

Related information

- Starting the car (p. 396)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 175)
- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 443)
- Selecting ignition mode (p. 399)

Selecting ignition mode

The car's electrical system can be set in different levels/positions and in this way make the different functions available.

Selecting ignition position



Start button location.

- **Ignition position 0** - Unlock the car and store the remote control key inside the car.

i NOTE

To reach level **I** or **II** **without** starting the engine - do **not** depress the brake pedal, or the clutch pedal for cars with manual gear changing, when these ignition positions are to be selected.

- **Ignition position I** - Depress the start button and release.
- **Ignition position II** - Press and hold the button depressed for approx. 5 seconds. Then release the button.
- **Back to ignition position 0** - To return to ignition position **0** from position **I** and **II** - press the start button.

Related information

- Starting the car (p. 396)
- Switching off the car (p. 397)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 175)
- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 443)

Alcohol lock*

The function of the alcohol lock is to prevent the car from being driven by individuals under the influence of alcohol. Before the engine can be started the driver must take a breath test that verifies that he/she is not under the influence of alcohol. Alcohol lock calibration takes place in accordance with each market's limit value in force for driving legally.

The car has an interface for the electrical connection of the different makes and models of alcohol lock recommended by Volvo. The interface facilitates alcohol lock connection, and gives the option of an integrated function including messages related to the alcohol lock in the car's main display. For information about a specific alcohol lock, please refer to the owner's manual from the respective alcohol lock manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

The alcohol lock is an aid and does not exempt the driver from responsibility. It is always the responsibility of the driver to be sober and to drive the car safely.

Related information

- Bypass of the alcohol lock* (p. 400)
- Before starting the engine with the alcohol lock (p. 400)
- Starting the car (p. 396)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)

Bypass of the alcohol lock*

In the event of an emergency situation or the alcohol lock is out of order, it is possible to bypass the alcohol lock in order to drive the car.

For deactivation via the alcohol lock, see the separate instructions for that specific lock.

Activating the bypass function (Bypass)

NOTE

All bypass activation is logged and saved in the memory in the alcohol lock's control unit. It is not possible to undo a bypass.

The message, **Blow into alcohollock Bypass instead?**, is shown in the screen:

- If "Cancel/Yes" is shown - select bypass by pressing the right arrow button on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad and then on the **O** button.
- If "Yes" is shown - select bypass by pressing the **O** button.

The alcohol lock is now bypassed and the car can be started.

The number of bypasses possible before service is required is selected during alcohol lock installation.

Related information

- Alcohol lock* (p. 399)
- Before starting the engine with the alcohol lock (p. 400)
- Starting the car (p. 396)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)

Before starting the engine with the alcohol lock

The alcohol lock is activated automatically and is then ready for use when the car is opened.

To bear in mind

In order to obtain correct function and as accurate a measurement result as possible:

- Avoid eating or drinking approx. 5 minutes before the breath test.
- Avoid excess windscreen washing - the alcohol in the washer fluid may result in an incorrect measurement result.

NOTE

After a completed period of driving, the engine can be restarted within 30 minutes without a new breath test.

Related information

- Bypass of the alcohol lock* (p. 400)
- Alcohol lock* (p. 399)
- Starting the car (p. 396)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)

Brake functions

The car's brakes are used to reduce the speed or prevent the car from rolling.

Besides the foot brake and parking brake, the car is equipped with several automatic brake assist functions. These can assist the driver by not needing to keep his/her foot on the brake pedal when stationary at a traffic light, when starting on an uphill gradient or when driving on a downhill gradient.

Depending on the car's equipment, the following auto braking functions are available:

- Automatic braking when stationary (Auto Hold)
- Hill start assist (Hill Start Assist)
- Auto braking after a collision
- City Safety
- Hill descent control (Hill Descent Control)*

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 401)
- Parking brake (p. 403)
- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 407)
- Auto braking after a collision (p. 408)
- Help when starting on a hill (p. 408)
- City Safety™ (p. 325)
- Hill descent control* (p. 426)

Foot brake

The foot brake is part of the brake system.

The car is equipped with two brake circuits. If a brake circuit is damaged, the brake pedal will engage deeper. Higher pressure on the pedal will therefore be needed to produce the normal braking effect.

The driver's brake pedal pressure is assisted by a brake servo.

WARNING

The brake servo only works when the engine is running.

If the foot brake is used when the engine is switched off then the pedal will feel stiff and a higher pedal pressure must be used to brake the car.

In very hilly terrain or when driving with a heavy load the brakes should be relieved by using engine braking in manual gearshift mode. Engine braking is most efficiently used if the same gear is used downhill as up. Use drive mode Off Road* for increased engine braking while driving on steep downhill gradients at low speeds.



Anti-lock braking system

The car has anti-lock brakes, Anti-lock Braking System (ABS), which can prevent the wheels from locking while braking and allows maintained steering control. Vibration may be felt in the

brake pedal when this is engaged and this is normal.

A short test of the ABS system is made automatically after the car has been started when the driver releases the brake pedal. A further automatic test of the system may be made at low speed. The test may be felt as pulses in the brake pedal.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	Check the brake fluid level. If the level is low, fill with brake fluid and check for the cause of the brake fluid loss.
	Constant glow for 2 seconds when the engine is started: Automatic function check. Constant glow for more than 2 seconds: Fault in the ABS system. The car's normal brake system is still working, but without the ABS function.





WARNING

If both the warning lamps for brake fault and ABS fault illuminate at the same time, a fault has occurred in the brake system.

- If the level in the brake fluid reservoir is normal at this stage, drive carefully to the nearest workshop and have the brake system checked - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
- If the brake fluid is below the **MIN** level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid. The reason for the loss of brake fluid must be investigated.

Related information

- Brake assistance (p. 402)
- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 407)
- Help when starting on a hill (p. 408)
- Braking on wet roads (p. 402)
- Braking on gritted roads (p. 403)
- Brake system maintenance (p. 403)
- Brake lights (p. 142)

Brake assistance

The brake assist system, BAS (Brake Assist System), helps to increase brake force during braking, thereby shortening the braking distance. The system detects the way in which the driver brakes and increases brake force where necessary. The brake force can be boosted up to the level when the ABS system is engaged. The function is suspended when the pressure on the brake pedal decreases.

NOTE

When BAS is activated the brake pedal lowers slightly more than usual, depress (hold) the brake pedal as long as necessary.

When the brake pedal is released, all braking ceases.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 401)

Braking on wet roads

When driving for a prolonged period of time in heavy rain without braking, the braking effect may be delayed slightly when next using the brakes.

This may also be the case after a car wash. It is then necessary to depress the brake pedal more forcefully. You should therefore maintain a greater distance to the vehicles in front.

Brake the car firmly after driving on wet roads or using a car wash. This warms up the brake discs, enabling them to dry faster and protecting them against corrosion. Bear in mind the current traffic situation when braking.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 401)
- Braking on gritted roads (p. 403)

Braking on gritted roads

When driving on salted roads, a layer of salt may form on the brake discs and brake linings.

This may extend braking distance. You should therefore maintain a greater safety distance to vehicles in front. In addition, make sure you do the following:

- Brake now and again to remove any layer of salt. Make sure that other road users are not put at risk by the braking.
- Gently depress the brake pedal after finishing driving and before starting your next trip.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 401)
- Braking on wet roads (p. 402)

Brake system maintenance

Check brake system components regularly for wear.

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service intervals as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet. New and replaced brake linings and brake discs do not provide optimal braking effect until they have been "worn in" for a few hundred kilometres (miles). Compensate for the reduced braking effect by depressing the brake pedal harder. Volvo recommends only fitting brake linings that are approved for your Volvo.

! IMPORTANT

The wear on the brake system's components must be checked regularly.

Contact a workshop for information about the procedure or engage a workshop to carry out the inspection - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 401)

Parking brake

The parking brake prevents the car from rolling away from stationary by means of mechanically locking/blocking two wheels.



A faint electric motor noise can be heard when the electrically-operated parking brake is being applied. The noise can also be heard during the automatic function checking of the parking brake.

If the car is stationary when the parking brake is applied then it only acts on the rear wheels. If it is applied when the car is moving then the normal foot brake is used, i.e. the brake acts on all four wheels. Brake function changes over to the rear wheels when the car is almost stationary.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the parking brake (p. 404)
- Parking on a hill (p. 406)

- In the event of a fault in the parking brake (p. 406)
- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 407)

Activating and deactivating the parking brake


Use the parking brake to prevent the car from rolling from stationary.

Activating the parking brake



1. Pull the control upward.
 - > The symbol in the driver display illuminates when the parking brake is activated.
2. Check that the car is stationary.

Symbol in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	<p>The symbol is illuminated when the parking brake is activated.</p> <p>If the symbol flashes, it indicates a fault has occurred. Read the message in the driver display.</p>

Automatic activation

The parking brake is activated automatically:

- if the Auto hold function (automatic braking when stationary) is activated and the car has been stationary for a longer time (5-10 minutes).
- when gear position **P** is selected on a steep hill.
- when the car is switched off and the setting for automatic activation of the parking brake is activated in the centre display.

Emergency brake

In an emergency, the parking brake can be activated when the car is in motion by pulling and holding up the control. Braking stops when the control is released, or if the accelerator pedal is depressed.

i NOTE
An acoustic signal sounds while emergency braking is active at high speeds.

Deactivating the parking brake



Deactivate manually

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. Press the control down.
 - > The parking brake releases and the symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

Deactivate automatically

1. Put the seatbelt on.
2. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
3. Start the car.
4. Select gear position **D** or **R** and depress the accelerator pedal.
 - > The parking brake releases and the symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

NOTE

When the car is first started, the parking brake can be released automatically without the seatbelt fastened.

Related information

- Automatic parking brake activation setting (p. 405)
- In the event of a fault in the parking brake (p. 406)
- Parking brake (p. 403)
- Parking on a hill (p. 406)

Automatic parking brake activation setting

Choose whether the parking brake is to be activated automatically when the car is switched off.

This choice is made in the settings menu in the centre display.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Parking Brake and Suspension** to select or deselect the function **Auto Activate Parking Brake**.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the parking brake (p. 404)
- Parking brake (p. 403)

Parking on a hill

Always use the parking brake when parking on a hill.

WARNING

Always use the parking brake when parking on an inclined surface. Engaging a gear or the automatic transmission's **P** position is not sufficient to hold the car stationary in all situations.

If the car is parked facing uphill:

- Turn the wheels **away from** the kerb.

If the car is parked facing downhill:

- Turn the wheels **towards** the kerb.

Heavy load uphill

A heavy load, such as a trailer, can cause the car to roll backward when the parking brake is released automatically on a steep incline. Avoid this by pulling the control upwards while driving the car away. Release the control when the engine achieves traction.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the parking brake (p. 404)

In the event of a fault in the parking brake

Contact an authorised Volvo workshop if it is not possible to deactivate or activate the parking brake after several attempts.

An acoustic warning signal sounds when driving with the parking brake applied.

If the car must be parked before a possible fault is rectified, then the wheels must be turned as for parking on a hill and the gear selector must be in position **P**.




Low battery voltage

If the battery voltage is too low then the parking brake can neither be released nor applied. Connect a donor battery if the battery voltage is too low.

Replacing the brake linings

The rear brake linings must be replaced at a workshop due to the design of the electrically-operated parking brake - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	If the symbol flashes, it indicates a fault has occurred. See the message in the driver display.
	Fault in brake system. See the message in the driver display.
	Information message in driver display.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the parking brake (p. 404)
- Starter battery (p. 579)
- Volvo service programme (p. 560)

Automatic braking when stationary

Automatic braking when stationary (Auto hold) means that the driver can release the brake pedal while maintaining braking effect when the car has stopped at traffic lights or a junction. When the car has stopped, the brakes are activated automatically. The function can use either foot brake or parking brake to hold the car stationary and it works on all gradients. When driving away, the brakes disengage automatically if the driver is wearing the seatbelt.



i NOTE

When braking to a standstill on an uphill or downhill slope, the brake pedal should be depressed a little harder before being released to ensure the car does not roll.

The parking brake is activated if:

- the car is switched off
- the driver's door is opened
- the driver's seatbelt is unbuckled
- the car has been stationary for a longer time (5-10 minutes).

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	The symbol is illuminated when the function uses the foot brake to keep the car stationary.
	The symbol is illuminated when the function uses the parking brake to keep the car stationary.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the automatic brake at a standstill (p. 407)
- Foot brake (p. 401)
- Parking brake (p. 403)
- Help when starting on a hill (p. 408)

Activating and deactivating the automatic brake at a standstill

The automatic brake function at a standstill is activated using the button in the tunnel console.



- Press the button in the tunnel console to activate or deactivate the function.
 - > The indicator in the button illuminates when the function is activated. Activated function remains even when the car is started next time.

◀◀ **Applicable when switching off**



If the function is active and holds the car with the foot brake (A-symbol illuminated) then the brake pedal must be depressed at the same time as the button is depressed in order to deactivate.

- The function remains deactivated until it is reactivated.
- When the function is deactivated, hill start assist (HSA) remains active to prevent the car from rolling backwards when starting on an uphill gradient.

Related information

- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 407)

Help when starting on a hill

Hill start assist, Hill Start Assist (HSA), prevents the car from rolling backwards when starting on an uphill gradient. When reversing uphill, it prevents the car from rolling forwards.

The function means that the pedal pressure in the brake system remains for several seconds while the driver's foot is moved from brake pedal to accelerator pedal.

The temporary braking effect releases after several seconds or when the driver starts to drive away.

Hill start assist is available even if the function for automatic braking when stationary (Auto hold) is deactivated.

Related information

- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 407)
- Foot brake (p. 401)

Auto braking after a collision

In the event of a collision in which the activation level is reached for the pyrotechnic seatbelt tensioners or airbags, or if a collision with a large animal is detected, the car's brakes are automatically applied. This function is to prevent or reduce the effects of any subsequent collision.

After a serious collision there is a risk that it is no longer possible to control and steer the car. In order to avoid or mitigate a possible further collision with a vehicle or an object in the vehicle's path, the auto braking system is activated automatically and brakes the car in a safe manner.

Brake lights and hazard warning lights are activated during braking. When the car has stopped, the hazard warning lights continue to flash and the parking brake is applied.

If braking is not appropriate, e.g. if there is a risk of being hit by following traffic, the system can be overridden by the driver depressing the accelerator pedal.

The function assumes that the brake system is intact after the collision.

Brake assist is included in the Rear Collision Warning and Blind Spot Information safety systems.

Related information

- Rear Collision Warning (p. 337)
- BLIS* (p. 338)
- Brake functions (p. 401)

Gearbox

The gearbox is part of the car's powertrain (power transmission) between engine and drive wheels. The function of the gearbox is to change the gear ratio depending on speed and power requirements.




The car has an eight-speed automatic gearbox. The number of gear changes means that the engine's torque and power range can be used effectively. Two of the gears are overdrive gears that save fuel when driving at constant engine speed. It is also possible to select gears manually. The driver display shows which gear position is currently in use.

IMPORTANT

To prevent damage to any drive system components, the working temperature of the gearbox is checked. If there is a risk of overheating, a warning symbol illuminates in the driver display and a text message is shown - follow the recommendation given.

Symbols in the driver display

If a fault should occur in the gearbox, the driver display shows a symbol and a message.

Symbol	Specification
	Information or error message for gearbox. Follow the recommendation given.
	Hot or overheated gearbox. Follow the recommendation given.
	Reduced performance/Acceleration performance reduced In the event of a temporary powertrain fault, the car can go into a Limp home mode with reduced engine power to prevent damage to the powertrain.

Related information

- Gear positions for automatic gearbox (p. 410)
- Gear shift indicator* (p. 413)

Gear positions for automatic gearbox

With an automatic gearbox, the system chooses the gear so that driving is optimal. The gearbox also has a manual gearshift mode.



The driver display shows the gear position selected:

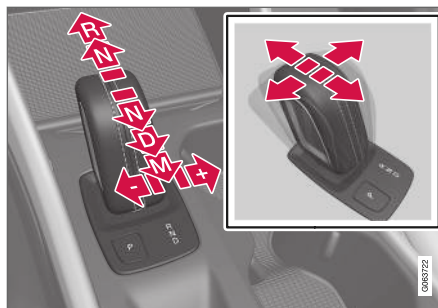
P, R, N, D or M.

In manual gearshift mode, the gear being used is also shown.

Changing gear

The gear selector is the shift-by-wire-type where shifting is performed electronically instead of mechanically. This means simpler shifting and more distinct gear positions.

Change gear position by pressing the spring-loaded gear selector forwards or backwards, or side-ways for manual shifting.



Gear positions

Park position - P

The park position is activated via the **P** button next to the gear selector.

Select the **P** position when the car is parked or when starting the engine. The car must be stationary when the park position is selected.

To select another gear position when the park position is selected, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition position must be **II**.

To park - first apply the parking brake and then select park position.

⚠ WARNING

Always use the parking brake when parking on an inclined surface. Engaging a gear or the automatic transmission's **P** position is not sufficient to hold the car stationary in all situations.

i NOTE

The gear selector must be in **P** position to allow the car to be locked and alarmed.

Help functions

The system will change to **P** position automatically:

- if the car is switched off in position **D** or **R**.
- if the driver unfastens the seatbelt and opens the driver's door when the car is running with the gear selector in a position other than **P**.

To park a car without wearing the seatbelt and with the door open - exit the **P** position by selecting **R** or **D** again.

Reverse position - R

Select position **R** to reverse. The car must be stationary when reverse position is selected.

Neutral position - N

No gear is engaged and the engine can be started. Apply the parking brake if the car is stationary with the gear selector in **N** position.

To be able to change from the neutral position to another gear position, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition position must be **II**.

Drive position - D

D is the normal driving position. Shifting up and down takes place automatically based on the level of acceleration and speed. The car must be stationary when changing gear from **R** position to **D** position.

Manual gearshift mode - M

The manual gearshift mode can be selected at any time while driving. The car engine-brakes when the accelerator pedal is released.

Select manual gear position by moving the gear selector backwards from the **D** position. The driver display shows which gear is engaged at the time.

- Press the gear selector to the right to "+" (plus) to change up one step and release it.
- Press the gear selector to the left to "-" (minus) to change down one step and release it.
- Press the gear selector backwards to return to the **D** position.



Manual gearshift mode in the driver display.

Related information

- Gear selector inhibitor (p. 412)
- Changing gear with steering wheel paddles* (p. 411)
- Kick-down function (p. 413)
- Gear shift indicator* (p. 413)

Changing gear with steering wheel paddles*

The steering wheel paddles are a complement to the gear selector and make it possible to change gear manually without releasing hands from the steering wheel.

Activating the steering wheel paddles

To be able to change gear with the steering wheel paddles they must first be activated:

- Pull one of the paddles toward the steering wheel.
 - > A figure in the driver display indicates current gear.



Driver display when changing gear with steering wheel paddles.

In gear position **M** the steering wheel paddles are automatically activated.



Switch

To change gear one step:

- Pull one of the paddles backwards - towards the steering wheel - and release.



1 "-": Selects the next lower gear.

2 "+": Selects the next higher gear.

A gear change occurs at each pull of the paddle provided that the engine speed does not leave the permitted range.

After each gear change the figure in the driver display changes to show the current gear.

Deactivating the function

Manual deactivation in gear position D.

- Deactivate the steering wheel paddles by pulling the right-hand paddle (+) toward the steering wheel and holding in place until the figure in the driver display for the current gear extinguishes.

Automatic deactivation

In gear position **D** the steering wheel paddles are deactivated after a short time if they are not used. This is indicated by means of the figure for the current gear extinguishing. The exception is during engine braking - then the paddles are activated for as long as engine braking is in progress.

In gear position **M** there is no automatic deactivation.

Related information

- Gear positions for automatic gearbox (p. 410)
- Gear shift indicator* (p. 413)

Gear selector inhibitor

The gear selector inhibitor prevents accidental changing between different gear positions in an automatic gearbox.

Automatic gear selector inhibitor

The automatic gear selector inhibitor has special safety systems.

From park position - P

To be able to move the gear selector from the **P** position, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition position must be **II**.

From neutral position - N

If the gear selector is in the **N** position and the car has been stationary for at least 3 seconds (irrespective of whether the engine is running) then the gear selector is locked.

To be able to move the gear selector from the **N** position to another gear position, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition position must be **II**.

Message in the driver display

If the gear selector is inhibited, a message is shown in the driver display, e.g. **Gear lever Press brake pedal to activate gear lever.**

The gear selector is not inhibited mechanically.

Related information

- Gear positions for automatic gearbox (p. 410)

Kick-down function

Kick-down is used when maximum acceleration is needed, such as for overtaking.

When the accelerator pedal is pressed all the way to the floor (beyond the position normally regarded as full acceleration) a lower gear is immediately engaged. This is known as kick-down.

If the accelerator is released from the kick-down position, the gearbox automatically changes up.

Safety function

To prevent over-revving of the engine, the gearbox control program has a protective downshift inhibitor.

The gearbox does not permit downshifting/kick-down which would result in an engine speed high enough to damage the engine. Nothing happens if the driver still tries to shift down in this way at high engine speed – the original gear remains engaged.

On kick-down the car can shift down one or more steps at a time, depending in engine speed. The car shifts up when the engine has reached its maximum engine speed in order to prevent engine damage.

Related information

- Gear positions for automatic gearbox (p. 410)

Gear shift indicator*

The gear shift indicator in the driver display shows the current gear during manual gearshifting and when it is appropriate to engage the next gear for optimum fuel economy.

For eco-driving during manual gear changing, it is important to drive in the right gear and to change gear in good time.

The gear shift indicator shows the current gear in the driver display and indicates recommended shifting to a higher gear by a flashing plus sign.



Related information

- Gear positions for automatic gearbox (p. 410)

All-wheel drive

All-wheel drive, AWD (All Wheel Drive), means that the car is driving all four wheels at the same time, which improves traction.

To achieve the best possible traction, the motive force is distributed automatically to the wheels with the best grip. The system continuously calculates the need for torque to the rear wheels, and can immediately redistribute up to half of the motor's torque to the rear wheels.

All-wheel drive also has a stabilising effect at higher speeds. Under normal driving conditions, the majority of power is transmitted to the front wheels. When stationary, the all-wheel drive is always engaged in preparation for maximum traction during acceleration.

All-wheel drive characteristics vary depending on the selected drive mode*.

Related information

- Drive modes* (p. 414)
- Low speed control* (p. 425)
- Gearbox (p. 409)

Drive modes*

Selection of drive mode affects the car's driving characteristics in order to enhance the driving experience and facilitate driving in special situations.

Using the drive modes it is possible to quickly have access to the car's numerous functions and settings for different driving needs. The following systems are adapted to obtain the best possible driving characteristics in each respective drive mode:

- Steering
- Engine/gearbox/all-wheel drive
- Brakes
- Shock absorption
- Driver display
- Start/Stop function
- Climate settings

Select the drive mode that best suits the current driving conditions. Remember that not all drive modes are available in all situations.

Selectable drive modes

COMFORT

- This is the car's normal mode.

When the car starts, it is in Comfort mode and the Start/Stop function is activated. These set-

tings mean that the car feels comfortable, the steering is light, the shock absorption is soft and body's movement is smooth.

This drive mode is the certification mode for carbon dioxide emissions.

ECO

- Adapt the car for more energy-efficient and environmentally-conscious driving with the Eco mode.

The drive mode means, for example, that the Start/Stop function is activated and the output of certain climate settings is reduced.

The driver display has an ECO gauge that facilitates fuel-efficient driving.

OFF ROAD

- Maximise the car's traction when driving in difficult terrain and on poor roads.

The steering is light, the all-wheel drive operation and low speed function with hill descent control (Hill Descent Control) are activated. Start/Stop function is deactivated.

The drive mode can only be activated at low speeds and the speedometer shows the range for speed limitation. If this speed is exceeded, Off road mode is suspended and another drive mode is activated.

In the Off road mode the driver display has a compass between the speedometer and tachometer.

i NOTE

The driving mode is not designed to be used on public roads.

DYNAMIC

- Dynamic mode means that the car has sportier characteristics and faster response to accelerating.

The gear changes become faster and more distinct, and the gearbox prioritises a gear with greater traction.

Steering response is faster and shock absorption is harder² which means that the body follows the roadway in order to reduce roll during cornering.

Start/Stop function is deactivated.

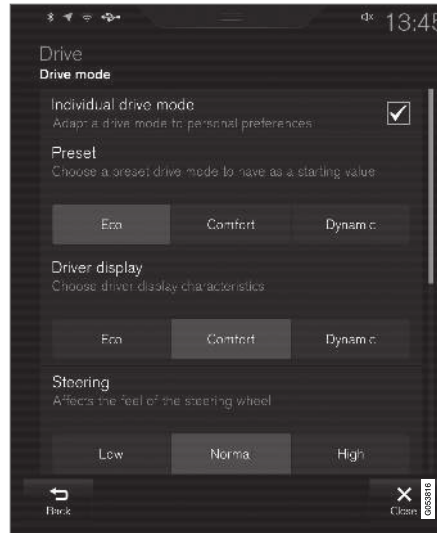
² Applies to Four-C.

INDIVIDUAL

- Adapting a drive mode according to individual preferences.

Select a drive mode to start from, and then adjust the settings according to the desired driving characteristics. These settings are saved in an individual driver profile.

An individual drive mode is only available if it is first activated in the centre display.



Settings view³ for individual drive mode.

- Press **Settings** in the top view.
- Press **My Car** → **Individual Drive Mode** and select **Individual Drive Mode**.

- In **Presets**, select a drive mode to start from: **Eco**, **Comfort** or **Dynamic**.

Possible adjustments apply to settings for:

- Driver Display**
- Steering force**
- Powertrain Characteristics**
- Brake Characteristics**
- Suspension Control**
- ECO Climate**
- Start/Stop**.

Related information

- Changing drive mode* (p. 416)
- Drive mode ECO (p. 416)
- Economical driving (p. 428)
- Start/Stop function (p. 419)
- Low speed control* (p. 425)
- Hill descent control* (p. 426)
- All-wheel drive (p. 413)

³ The figure is schematic - details may vary depending on car model or updated software.

Changing drive mode*

Change the drive mode using the button in the centre console.

Select the drive mode that best suits the current driving conditions. Remember that not all drive modes are available in all situations.

To change drive mode:



1. Press the **DRIVE MODE** button.
 - > A pop-up menu is opened in the centre display with the active drive mode highlighted.

2. Select the drive mode in one of two ways:
 - Tap the desired drive mode directly on the touchscreen to select and activate the drive mode.
 - Press the **DRIVE MODE** button again to move the cursor to the desired drive mode. The selected drive mode is activated after a short delay.

If a drive mode is greyed-out in the pop-up menu then it cannot be selected.

Related information

- Drive modes* (p. 414)
- Activating and deactivating drive mode ECO with the function button (p. 418)
- Activating and deactivating low-speed driving* using a function button (p. 425)
- Activating and deactivating hill descent control* with the function button (p. 427)

Drive mode ECO

Drive mode Eco optimises the car's driving characteristics for more fuel efficient and environmentally-conscious driving.

Use this drive mode to save fuel and the environment.

The following properties are adapted for Eco driving:

- Gearbox gearshift points.
- Engine management and response from the accelerator pedal.
- The Eco Coast freewheel function is activated and engine braking is deactivated when the accelerator pedal is released at speeds between 65 and 140 km/h (40 and 87 mph).
- Some of the climate control system's settings work at reduced power or are deactivated.
- The driver display shows information in an ECO gauge which facilitates environmentally-conscious and fuel-efficient driving.

Free-wheel function Eco Coast

The freewheel function Eco Coast means in practice that engine braking ceases, meaning in turn that the car's kinetic energy is used to freewheel for longer distances. When the driver releases the accelerator pedal the gearbox is automatically disengaged from the engine whose speed is

reduced to idling speed with reduced consumption.

The function is best used where it is possible to freewheel a long way, e.g. roads with a slight downhill gradient or when there is a predictable speed reduction to freewheel into a zone with a lower speed limit.

Activating the freewheel function

The function is activated when the accelerator pedal is fully released, in combination with the following parameters:

- Drive mode Eco is activated.
- The gear selector is in **D** position.
- Speed within the range of approx. 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph).
- The road's downhill gradient is not steeper than approx. 6%.

The driver display shows **COASTING** when the freewheel function is being used.

Limitations

The freewheel function is not available if:

- Engine and/or gearbox are not at normal operating temperature.
- The gear selector is moved from the **D** position and the manual position.
- The speed is outside the range of approx. 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph).

- The road's downhill gradient is steeper than approx. 6%.
- Manual gear changing is performed with the steering wheel paddles*.

Deactivating and switching off the freewheel function

In certain situations it may be desirable to deactivate or switch off the function in order to use engine braking. Examples of such situations may be on steep downhill gradients or before an imminent overtaking manoeuvre - in order to be able to do it in the safest way possible.

Deactivate the freewheel function as follows:

- Actuate the accelerator or brake pedal.
- Move the gear selector to manual position.
- Changing gear with steering wheel paddles*.

Switch off the freewheel function as follows:

- Change drive mode*, or switch off the Eco drive mode in the function view.

Even without the freewheel function, it is possible to freewheel for short distances. This, in turn, reduces consumption. However, for the best fuel economy it is better to have the freewheel function activated and be able to freewheel for longer distances.

Cruise control Eco Cruise

When using the cruise control in the Eco drive mode, the car's acceleration and deceleration will

be lower compared to other drive modes, which enables further fuel savings. This means that the car's speed can be slightly above or below the set speed.

- On a smooth road, the car's speed can deviate from the set speed when the cruise control is active and the car free-rolls.
- On a steep uphill slope, the car's speed drops until a downshift is made, then reduced acceleration starts in order to achieve the set speed.
- On a downhill slope where the car free-rolls, the car's speed can be slightly above or below the set speed. The function uses normal engine braking to maintain the set speed. The foot brake is also used if necessary.

Eco gauge in the driver display

The ECO gauge indicates how fuel-efficient the driving is:

- With fuel-efficient driving, the gauge shows a low value with the pointer in the green zone.
- With non-fuel-efficient driving, e.g. during heavy braking or heavy acceleration, the gauge shows a high value.

The ECO gauge also has an indicator to show how a reference driver would drive the car under the same driving conditions. This is indicated with the short pointer on the gauge.





ECO climate control

In the Eco drive mode, Eco climate control is activated automatically in the passenger compartment in order to reduce energy consumption.

i NOTE

When the ECO function is activated, several parameters in the climate control system's settings are changed, and several electricity consumer functions are reduced. Certain settings can be reset manually, but full functionality is only regained by switching off the ECO function or adapting **Individual*** drive mode with full climate functionality.

In the event of difficulties due to misting, press the button for max. defroster which has normal functionality.

Related information

- Changing drive mode* (p. 416)
- Activating and deactivating drive mode ECO with the function button (p. 418)
- Drive modes* (p. 414)
- Economical driving (p. 428)
- Start/Stop function (p. 419)

Activating and deactivating drive mode ECO with the function button

Any car that is not equipped with a drive mode button in the centre console has a function button for the Eco drive mode in the centre display's function view.

The Eco mode is deactivated when the engine is switched off, and it must therefore be activated after each time the engine is started. The driver display shows **ECO** when the function is activated.

Selecting Eco drive mode in the centre display function view

- Press the **Driving Mode ECO** button to activate or deactivate the function.



- > An indicator in the button illuminates when the function is activated.

Related information

- Drive mode ECO (p. 416)
- Changing drive mode* (p. 416)
- Drive modes* (p. 414)

Start/Stop function

With the Start/Stop function, the engine switches off temporarily when the car has stopped e.g. at traffic lights or in a traffic queue, and then starts again automatically when the journey is resumed.

The start/stop function reduces fuel consumption, which in turn contributes to reduced exhaust emissions.

The system makes it possible to adopt an environmentally-conscious driving style by allowing the car to engine auto-stop when possible.

Related information

- Driving with start/stop function (p. 419)
- Conditions for the Start/Stop function (p. 421)
- Drive modes* (p. 414)

Driving with start/stop function

The Start/Stop function temporarily switches off the engine when stationary and then restarts it automatically when the journey is resumed.

The Start/Stop function is available when the engine is started and can be activated if certain conditions have been met. The driver display indicates whether the function is available, active or not available.

All of the car's normal systems such as lighting, radio, etc. work normally, even when the engine is auto-stopped. However, some equipment may have its output temporarily reduced, e.g. the climate control system's fan speed or extremely high volume on the audio system.

Auto-stop

The following is required for the engine to auto-stop:


- Stop the car with the foot brake and then keep your foot on the brake pedal - the engine stops automatically.

In drive mode Eco or Comfort⁴, the engine may auto-stop before the car is completely stationary.

With adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist activated, the engine will auto-stop after approximately three seconds.

Autostart

The following is required for the engine to auto-start:

- Release the brake pedal - the engine will autostart and you can continue driving. On an uphill gradient hill start assist (HSA) engages, which prevents the car from rolling backwards.
- When the Auto Hold function is activated, auto-start is delayed until the accelerator pedal is depressed.
- When adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist is activated, the engine will auto-start when the accelerator pedal is depressed, or by pressing the  button on the left keypad of the steering wheel.
- Maintain foot pressure on the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal - the engine auto-starts.
- On a downhill gradient: Release pressure on the brake pedal slightly so that the car begins to roll - the engine will auto-start after a slight speed increase.

⁴ Normal start mode.

◀ Symbols in the driver display

- The text **READY** is shown in the tachometer when the function is available.
- A pointer in the tachometer points to **READY** when the function is active and the engine is auto-stopped.
- The text **READY** is greyed out when the function is not available.
- No text is shown when the function is deactivated.



The function is active and the engine is auto-stopped.

Related information

- Deactivating the Start/Stop function temporarily (p. 420)
- Conditions for the Start/Stop function (p. 421)
- Start/Stop function (p. 419)
- Help when starting on a hill (p. 408)

- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 407)

Deactivating the Start/Stop function temporarily

In certain situations it may be desirable to temporarily deactivate the start/stop function.



Deactivate using the **Start/Stop** function button in the centre display's function view. The indication in the button is switched off when the function is deactivated.

The function is deactivated until

- it is reactivated
- the drive mode is changed to Eco or Comfort
- the next time the car is started.

Related information

- Driving with start/stop function (p. 419)
- Conditions for the Start/Stop function (p. 421)

Conditions for the Start/Stop function

For the Start/Stop function to work requires that a number of conditions are met.

If any condition is not met, this will be indicated in the driver display.

The engine does not auto-stop

The engine does not auto-stop in the following cases:

- The car has not reached approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) after starting.
- After a number of repeated auto stops, speed must again exceed approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) before the next auto stop.
- The driver has unfastened the seatbelt.
- The capacity of the starter battery is below the minimum permissible level.
- The engine is not at normal operating temperature.
- The ambient temperature is under -5 °C (23 °F) or above approx. 37 °C (98 °F).
- the windscreen's electric heating is activated.
- The environment in the passenger compartment deviates from the set values.
- the car is reversed.

- The starter battery's temperature is below or above the permitted limit values.
- The driver makes sweeping steering wheel movements.
- The road is very steep.
- The bonnet is opened.
- When driving at high altitudes when the engine has not reached operating temperature.
- The ABS system has been activated.
- In the event of heavy braking (even without the ABS system having been activated).
- Many starts during a short period of time have activated the starter motor's thermal protection.
- The exhaust system's particulate filter is full⁵.
- A trailer is connected electrically to the car's electrical system.
- The gearbox is not at normal operating temperature.
- The gear selector is in **M** (\pm) position.

The engine does not auto-start

In the following cases the engine does not auto-start after having auto-stopped:

- The driver is unbelted, the gear selector is in **P** position and the driver's door is open - a normal start must take place.

The engine auto-starts without the brake pedal having been released

In the following cases, the engine auto-starts even if the driver does not take his/her foot off the brake pedal:

- High humidity in the passenger compartment forms misting on the windows.
- The environment in the passenger compartment deviates from the set values.
- There is a temporarily high current take-off or starter battery capacity drops below the lowest permissible level.
- Repeated pumping of the brake pedal.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The car starts to roll or increase speed slightly if the car auto-stopped without being completely stationary.
- The driver's seatbelt buckle is opened with the gear selector in **D** or **N** position.
- The gear selector is moved from **D** to **R** or **M** (\pm) position.
- The driver's door is opened with the gear selector in **D** position - a "ping" sound and text message indicate that the ignition is on.

⁵ Applies to cars with diesel engines.



WARNING

Do not open the bonnet when the engine has auto-stopped. Switch off the engine normally before lifting up the bonnet.

Related information

- Start/Stop function (p. 419)
- Driving with start/stop function (p. 419)
- Deactivating the Start/Stop function temporarily (p. 420)

Level control* and shock absorption




Level control and shock absorption are regulated automatically in the car.

Shock absorption(Four-C)*

The shock absorption is adapted according to the selected drive mode and according to the speed of the car. Shock absorption is normally set for




the best possible comfort and is regulated continuously depending on the road surface, the car's acceleration, braking and cornering.

Symbols and messages in driver display

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Suspension Deactivated by user	Level control has been switched off manually by the user.
	Suspension Temporarily reduced performance	Level control performance has been temporarily reduced due to extensive system use. If this message appears frequently (e.g. several times in one week) contact a workshop ^A .
	Suspension Service required	A fault has occurred. Visit a workshop ^A as soon as possible.





Symbol	Message	Specification
	Suspension failure Stop safely	A critical fault has occurred. Stop safely, have the car towed to a workshop ^A .
	Suspension Slow down Car too high	A fault has occurred. If the message appears whilst driving, contact a workshop ^A .
	Suspension Auto adjusting car level	

^A An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Drive modes* (p. 414)

Low speed control*

The low speed control function Low Speed Control (LSC) facilitates and improves traction for driving off-road and on slippery surfaces, such as with a caravan on grass or a boat trailer on a launch ramp.

In a car with drive mode button*, the function is included in the Off Road drive mode.

The function is adapted for off-road driving and driving with a trailer at low speed, up to approx. 40 km/h (25 mph).

With low-speed control, low gears and all-wheel drive are prioritised, which help to avoid wheel-spin and provides better traction on all wheels. The accelerator pedal is less responsive in order to facilitate traction and speed control at low speed.

The function is activated together with Hill Descent Control (HDC) which means that speed down steep hills can be controlled with the accelerator pedal, reducing the need to use the brake pedal. The system facilitates a low and even speed while driving on steep downhill gradients.

i NOTE

When LSC with HDC is activated, the feel of the accelerator pedal and engine response are changed.

i NOTE

The driving mode is not designed to be used on public roads.

i NOTE

The function is deactivated when driving at higher speeds and must be reactivated at a lower speed, if required.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating low-speed driving* using a function button (p. 425)
- Changing drive mode* (p. 416)
- Hill descent control* (p. 426)
- All-wheel drive (p. 413)

Activating and deactivating low-speed driving* using a function button

Any car that is not equipped with a drive mode button in the centre console has a function button for low-speed control with Hill Descent Control in the centre display's function view.

Select low-speed driving in the centre display function view

- Press the **Hill Descent Control** button to activate or deactivate the function.



- > An indicator in the button illuminates when the function is activated.

This function is disabled automatically when the engine is switched off.

i NOTE

The function is deactivated when driving at higher speeds and must be reactivated at a lower speed, if required.

◀◀ **Related information**

- Low speed control* (p. 425)
- Changing drive mode* (p. 416)

Hill descent control*

Hill descent control, Hill Descent Control (HDC), is a low speed function with enhanced engine braking. The function makes it possible to increase or reduce vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients using only the accelerator pedal, without using the foot brake.

In a car with drive mode button*, the function is included in the Off Road drive mode.

Hill descent control is adapted for off-road driving at low speeds and facilitates driving on steep downhill gradients with difficult surfaces. The driver does not need to use the brake pedal, but can instead focus on steering.

 **WARNING**

HDC does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

Function

Hill descent control allows the car to roll at inching speed both forward and backward, assisted by the brake system. The speed can be increased by using the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is then released the car slows back down to crawling speed, regardless of the gradient of the hill and without the need for

the foot brake to be used. The brake lights are switched on when the function is operating.

The driver can brake and reduce crawling speed, or stop the car at any time by using the foot brake.

The function is activated together with Low Speed Control (LSC) which facilitates driving and improves traction for driving off-road and on slippery surfaces. The systems are designed for use at low speed, up to approx. 40 km/h (25 mph).

Points to remember when driving with HDC

- If the function is disabled while driving on a steep downhill gradient, the braking effect will gradually decrease.
- HDC can be used in gear position **D, R**, and with 1st or 2nd gear with manual gear changing.
- It is not possible to change to 3rd gear or higher with manual gear changing.

i NOTE

When LSC with HDC is activated, the feel of the accelerator pedal and engine response are changed.

i NOTE

The driving mode is not designed to be used on public roads.

i NOTE

The function is deactivated when driving at higher speeds and must be reactivated at a lower speed, if required.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating hill descent control* with the function button (p. 427)
- Changing drive mode* (p. 416)
- Low speed control* (p. 425)
- All-wheel drive (p. 413)

Activating and deactivating hill descent control* with the function button

Any car that is not equipped with a drive mode button in the centre console has a function button for hill descent control with **Hill Descent Control** in the centre display's function view.

Selecting hill descent control in the centre display function view

Hill descent control only works at low speeds.

- Press the **Hill Descent Control** button to activate or deactivate the function.



- > An indicator in the button illuminates when the function is activated.

This function is disabled automatically when the engine is switched off.

i NOTE

The function is deactivated when driving at higher speeds and must be reactivated at a lower speed, if required.

Related information

- Hill descent control* (p. 426)
- Changing drive mode* (p. 416)

Economical driving

Drive economically and eco-consciously by driving smoothly, thinking ahead, and adjusting your driving style and speed to the prevailing conditions.

- For lower fuel consumption, activate Eco drive mode.
- Use the Eco Coast freewheel function in Eco drive mode - engine braking ceases, meaning that the car's kinetic energy is used to freewheel for longer distances.
- Drive in the highest gear⁶ possible, adapted to the current traffic situation and road - lower engine speeds result in lower fuel consumption. Use the gear shift indicator.
- Drive at a steady speed and keep a good distance to other vehicles and objects to minimise braking.
- High speed results in increased fuel consumption - the wind resistance increases with speed.
- Drive with the correct air pressure in the tyres and check this regularly - select ECO tyre pressure for best results.
- Choice of tyres can affect fuel consumption - seek advice on suitable tyres from a retailer.
- Remove unnecessary items from the car - the greater the load the higher the consumption.

- Use engine braking to slow down, when it can take place without risk to other road users.
- A roof load and space box increase wind resistance, leading to higher consumption - remove the load carriers when not in use.
- Avoid driving with open windows.

WARNING

Never switch off the engine while moving, such as downhill, this deactivates important systems such as the power steering and brake servo.

Related information

- Drive-E - cleaner driving pleasure (p. 28)
- Drive mode ECO (p. 416)
- Checking tyre pressure (p. 522)

Preparations for a long trip

Before a driving holiday or some other type of long journey, it is important to check the car's functions and equipment particularly carefully. Check that:

- the engine is working normally and that fuel consumption is normal
- there are no leaks (fuel, oil or other fluid)
- brake force during braking is optimal
- all lamps are working - adjust headlamp level if the car is heavily laden
- the tyres have sufficient tread depth and pressure. Change to winter tyres when driving to areas where there is a risk of snowy or icy road surfaces.
- starter battery charging is good
- the wiper blades are in good condition
- a warning triangle and high-visibility vest are located in the car - legally required in certain countries.

Related information

- Checking tyre pressure (p. 522)
- Fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions (p. 626)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 609)
- Winter driving (p. 429)

⁶ Applies to driving with manual gear changing.

- Economical driving (p. 428)
- Settings for car modem (p. 501)
- Recommendations for loading (p. 550)
- Driving with a trailer (p. 449)
- Pilot Assist (p. 296)
- Speed Limiter (p. 268)
- Emergency puncture repair kit (p. 537)

Winter driving

For winter driving it is important to perform certain checks of the car in order to ensure that it can be driven safely.

Check the following in particular before the cold season:

- The engine coolant must contain 50% glycol. This mixture protects the engine against frost down to approx. -35°C (-31°F). To avoid health risks, different types of glycol must not be mixed.
- The fuel tank must be kept filled to prevent condensation.
- Engine oil viscosity is important. Oils with lower viscosity (thinner oils) facilitate starting in cold weather and also reduce fuel consumption while the engine is cold.

IMPORTANT

Low viscosity oil must not be used for hard driving or in hot weather.

- The condition of the starter battery and charge level must be inspected. Cold weather places great demands on the starter battery and its capacity is reduced by the cold.
- Use washer fluid with antifreeze to avoid ice forming in the washer fluid reservoir.

Slippery driving conditions

To achieve optimum roadholding Volvo recommends using winter tyres on all wheels if there is a risk of snow or ice.

NOTE

The use of winter tyres is a legal requirement in certain countries. Studded tyres are not permitted in all countries.

Practise driving on slippery surfaces under controlled conditions to learn how the car reacts.

Related information

- Winter wheels (p. 536)
- Snow chains (p. 536)
- Braking on gritted roads (p. 403)
- Braking on wet roads (p. 402)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 609)
- Starter battery (p. 579)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 607)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 606)
- Topping up coolant (p. 572)
- Adverse driving conditions for engine oil (p. 622)

Driving in water

Driving in water means that the car is driven in a deeper amount of water on a road that is under water. Driving in water must be performed with great caution.

The car can be driven through water to a maximum depth of 45 cm (17.7 inches) at no more than walking speed. Extra caution should be exercised when passing through flowing water.

During driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop the car. When the water has been passed, depress the brake pedal lightly and check that full brake function is achieved. Water and mud for example can make the brake linings wet resulting in delayed brake function.

- If necessary, clean the contacts for the electric heater and trailer coupling after driving in water and mud.
- Do not let the car stand with water over the sills for any long period of time - this could cause electrical malfunctions.

! **IMPORTANT**

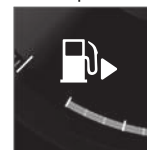
- Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.
- If water enters the transmission, it reduces the lubricating ability of the oil, which shortens the service life of related systems.
- Damage to any component, engine, transmission, turbocharger, differential or its internal components caused by flooding, hydrostatic locking or oil shortage, is not covered by the warranty.
- In the event of the engine stalling in water, do not try restart - tow the car from the water to a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. Risk of engine breakdown.

Related information

- Recovery (p. 456)
- Low speed control* (p. 425)

Opening and closing the fuel filler flap

The car must be unlocked for the fuel filler flap to be opened⁷.



In the driver display, the arrow next to the tank symbol indicates which side of the car the fuel filler flap is located.

1. Open the fuel filler flap with a gentle press on the rear of the flap.
2. After refuelling is finished - close the flap with a gentle press.

Related information

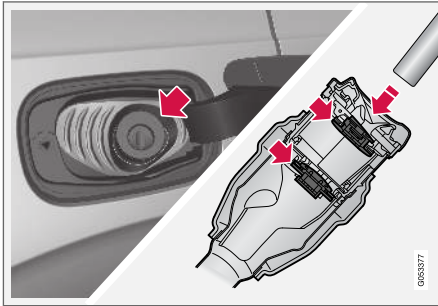
- Filling fuel (p. 431)
- Checking and filling with AdBlue[®] (p. 437)

⁷ Only locking and unlocking with the remote control key, keyless or via Volvo On Call affects the status of the fuel filler flap.

Filling fuel

The fuel tank is fitted with a coverless fuel filler system.

Refuelling the car at a petrol station



Fuel filling is performed in the following way.

1. Switch off the car and open the fuel filler flap.
2. Choose fuel that is approved for use in the car. See information on approved fuels in the sections on "Petrol" and "Diesel" respectively.
3. Insert the pump nozzle in the fuel filler opening. The filler pipe has two opening caps. The pump nozzle must be pushed past both caps before refuelling is started.

4. Do not overfill the tank but fill until the pump nozzle cuts out the first time.
 - > The tank is full.

i NOTE

Overfilled fuel in the tank can overflow in hot weather.

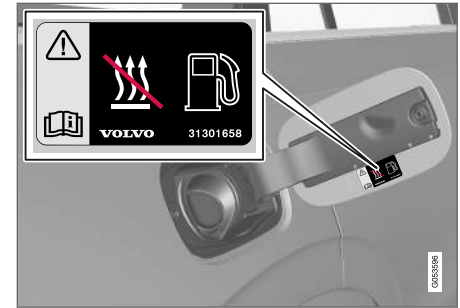
Topping up fuel from a fuel can

When filling with a fuel can, use the funnel located in the foam block under the floor hatch in the cargo area.

1. Open the fuel filler flap.
2. Insert the funnel in the fuel filler opening. The filler pipe has two opening caps. The funnel's pipe must be pushed past both caps before filling can be started.

Applies to cars with fuel-driven heater*

Never use the fuel-driven heater when the car is in a filling station area.



Decal on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Related information

- Opening and closing the fuel filler flap (p. 430)
- Petrol (p. 432)
- Diesel (p. 434)
- Empty tank and diesel engine (p. 435)

Handling of fuel

Do not use fuel with a lower quality than that recommended by Volvo, as this will negatively affect engine power and fuel consumption.

WARNING

Always avoid inhaling fuel vapour and getting fuel splashes in the eyes.

In the event of fuel in the eyes, remove any contact lenses and rinse the eyes in plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical attention.

Never swallow fuel. Fuels such as petrol, bioethanol and mixtures of them and diesel are highly toxic and could cause permanent injury or be fatal if swallowed. Seek medical attention immediately if fuel has been swallowed.

WARNING

Fuel which spills onto the ground can be ignited.

Switch off the fuel-driven heater before starting to refuel.

Never carry an activated mobile phone when refuelling. The ring signal could cause spark build-up and ignite petrol fumes, leading to fire and injury.

IMPORTANT

Mixtures of various fuel types or use of fuels which are not recommended will invalidate Volvo's guarantees and any supplementary service agreements; this is applicable to all engines.

Related information

- Petrol (p. 432)
- Diesel (p. 434)
- Handling AdBlue® (p. 437)

Petrol

Petrol is a type of engine fuel that is intended for cars with a petrol engine.

Only use petrol from well-known producers. Never use fuel of dubious quality. The petrol must fulfil the EN 228 standard.

IMPORTANT

- Fuel that contains up to 10 percent by volume ethanol is permitted.
- EN 228 E10 petrol (max 10 percent by volume ethanol) is approved for use.
- Ethanol higher than E10 (max. 10 percent by volume ethanol) is not permitted, e.g. E85 is not permitted.

Octane rating

- 95 RON can be used for normal driving.
- 98 RON is recommended for optimum performance and minimum fuel consumption.
- An octane rating lower than RON 95 must not be used.

When driving in temperatures above +38 °C (100 °F), fuel with the highest octane rating is recommended for optimum performance and fuel economy.

! IMPORTANT

- Use only unleaded petrol to avoid damaging the catalytic converter.
- Fuel containing metallic additives must not be used.
- Do not use any additives which have not been recommended by Volvo.

Related information

- Handling of fuel (p. 432)
- Filling fuel (p. 431)
- Petrol particle filter (p. 433)
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 626)

Petrol particle filter

Petrol cars are fitted with particle filters for more efficient emission control.

Particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the petrol particle filter during normal driving. In normal driving conditions, passive regeneration takes place, which leads to the particles being oxidised and burned away. The filter is emptied in this way.

If the car is driven at low speed or with repeated cold starts in low outside temperature, active regeneration may be necessary. Regeneration of the particulate filter is automatic and normally takes 10-20 minutes. There may be a smell of burning during regeneration.

Use the parking heater in cold weather - the engine then reaches normal operating temperature more quickly.

When driving short distances at low speeds in a petrol car

The capacity of the petrol emission control system is affected by how the car is driven. It is important to drive varying distances at different speeds to achieve optimal performance.

Driving short distances at low speeds (or in cold climates) frequently, where the engine does not reach normal operating temperature, can lead to problems that can eventually cause a malfunction and trigger a warning message. If the vehicle is mostly driven in city traffic, it is important to regu-

larly drive at higher speeds to allow the petrol emission control system to regenerate.

- The car should be driven on A-roads at speeds in excess of 60 km/h (38 mph) for at least 20 minutes between each refuelling.

Related information

- Petrol (p. 432)

Diesel

Diesel is a type of engine fuel that is intended for cars with a diesel engine.

Only use diesel fuel from well-known producers. Never use fuel of dubious quality. Diesel fuel must fulfil the EN 590 or SS 155435 standard. Diesel engines are sensitive to contaminants in the fuel, such as excessively high volumes of sulphur and metals.

At low temperatures (lower than 0 °C (32 °F)) a paraffin precipitate may form in the diesel fuel, which may lead to starting problems. The fuel qualities that are sold must be adapted for season and climate zone, but for extreme weather conditions, old fuel or moving between climate zones, paraffin precipitate may occur.

The risk of condensation in the fuel tank is reduced if the tank is kept well filled.

When refuelling, check that the area around the fuel filler pipe is clean. Avoid spilling fuel onto the paintwork. Wash off any spillage with detergent and water.

IMPORTANT

Diesel fuel must:

- fulfil the EN 590 and/or SS 155435 standards
- have a sulphur content not exceeding 10 mg/kg
- have a maximum of 7 vol % FAME⁸ (B7).

IMPORTANT

Diesel type fuels that must not be used:

- Special additives
- Marine diesel fuel
- Heating oil
- FAME⁹ and vegetable oil.

These fuels do not fulfil the requirements in accordance with Volvo recommendations and generate increased wear and engine damage that is not covered by the Volvo warranty.

Related information

- Handling of fuel (p. 432)
- Filling fuel (p. 431)
- Empty tank and diesel engine (p. 435)
- Diesel particulate filter (p. 435)

- Emission control with AdBlue® (p. 436)
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 626)

⁸ Fatty Acid Methyl Ester

⁹ Diesel fuel with maximum 7 vol % FAME (B7) is permitted.

Empty tank and diesel engine

Once the engine has stopped due to fuel starvation, the fuel system needs a few moments to carry out a check.

Before starting the car after the fuel tank has been filled with diesel - proceed as follows:

1. The remote control key must be inside the car.
2. Set the car in ignition position **II** - press the start button without depressing the brake pedal and hold the button depressed for approx. 4 seconds. Then release the button.
3. Wait approx. one minute.
4. Start the engine.

i NOTE

Before filling with fuel in the event of fuel shortage:

- Stop the car on as flat/level ground as possible - if the car is tilting there is a risk of air pockets in the fuel supply.

Points to remember when filling with a fuel can

When filling diesel with a fuel can, use the funnel located under the floor hatch in the cargo area. Make sure you insert the funnel's pipe firmly into the filler pipe. The filler pipe has two opening

caps. The funnel's pipe must be pushed past both caps before filling can be started.

Related information

- Filling fuel (p. 431)
- Diesel (p. 434)
- Tool kit (p. 529)

Diesel particulate filter

Diesel cars are fitted with particle filters for more efficient emission control.

Particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the diesel particle filter during normal driving.

When these conditions have been met, regeneration starts to burn off the particles and empty the filter. To start regeneration, the engine must have reached normal operating temperature. Regeneration of the particulate filter is automatic and normally takes 10-20 minutes.

i NOTE

The following may arise during regeneration:

- a smaller reduction of engine power may be noticed temporarily
- fuel consumption may increase temporarily
- a smell of burning may arise.

Use the parking heater* in cold weather - the engine then reaches normal operating temperature more quickly.

! IMPORTANT

If the filter is completely filled with particles, it may be difficult to start the engine and the filter is non-functional. Then there is a risk that the filter will need to be replaced.



◀◀ **When driving short distances at low speeds in a diesel car**

The capacity of the diesel emission control system is affected by how the car is driven. It is important to drive varying distances at different speeds to achieve optimal performance.

Driving short distances at low speeds (or in cold climates) frequently, where the engine does not reach normal operating temperature, can lead to problems that can eventually cause a malfunction and trigger a warning message. If the vehicle is mostly driven in city traffic, it is important to regularly drive at higher speeds to allow the diesel emission control system to regenerate.

- The car should be driven on A-roads at speeds in excess of 60 km/h (38 mph) for at least 20 minutes between each refuelling.

Related information

- Diesel (p. 434)
- Emission control with AdBlue® (p. 436)
- Fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions (p. 626)

Emission control with AdBlue®¹⁰

AdBlue is an additive used in the SCR¹¹ system to reduce emissions of noxious substances from a diesel engine.

In the SCR system, the AdBlue and the nitrous oxide exhaust gas substance are converted to nitrogen and water vapour, which significantly reduces the emissions of harmful nitrous oxides.

AdBlue

AdBlue is a colourless fluid that consists of 32.5% urea¹² in deionised water and is produced in accordance with the ISO 22241 standard. It is specially developed for SCR cleaning technology for diesel engines.

AdBlue has its own tank in the car and is topped up via a separate filler pipe behind the fuel filler flap. Consumption depends on driving style, outside temperature and the operating temperature of the system.

Conditions for driving with AdBlue

There must always be AdBlue of the correct quality in the tank before the car can be started. The SCR system is very sensitive to contaminants.

The emission control system continuously monitors the tank level, quality and dosage of AdBlue.

If something is wrong, a message is shown in the driver display.

! IMPORTANT

AdBlue is required for the function of the SCR system and legal emissions compliance. It is illegal to modify or manipulate the AdBlue supply system in any way so that no AdBlue reagent is consumed when it is required for legal exhaust emissions compliance. Any such tampering may be a criminal offence which may lead to legal prosecution actions.

It is not permitted to operate the car with an empty AdBlue tank, since it will no longer be compliant with the legal requirements for exhaust emissions. Therefore, the car is equipped with a warning system to inform when AdBlue refilling is required. When the fill level in the AdBlue tank is getting low, warnings are displayed to inform that AdBlue refilling is needed.

Related information

- Handling AdBlue® (p. 437)
- Checking and filling with AdBlue® (p. 437)
- Symbols and messages for AdBlue® (p. 440)

¹⁰ Registered trademark that belongs to Ver-band der Automobilindustrie e.V. (VDA)

¹¹ Selective Catalytic Reduction

¹² CO(NH₂)₂

Handling AdBlue®

AdBlue consists primarily of water (approx. 67.5% water and 32.5% urea). The fluid is not flammable but should be handled with care since it can irritate the eyes and skin.

Points to remember when handling

Avoid inhaling vapour as well as contact with skin and eyes. Preferably use gloves that prevent irritation to sensitive skin when handling the fluid.

WARNING

Action for first aid:

- For inhalation - get fresh air.
- For skin contact - wash the skin with soap and water.
- For contact with the eyes - rinse immediately with a lot of water.
- For ingestion - rinse the mouth thoroughly. Do not induce vomiting.

Seek medical attention if the discomfort remains or if a large quantity has been ingested.

Action in the event of a spill

AdBlue spilled on the ground, the car or painted surfaces must be rinsed thoroughly with water. Avoid releasing into the drainage system.

Storage

AdBlue must be stored in tightly sealed original packaging at a temperature above -11 °C (12 °F) and below 30 °C (86 °F). The fluid must not be stored in direct sunlight.

AdBlue freezes at -11 °C (12 °F) but can be used again when the solution has thawed.

Related information

- Checking and filling with AdBlue® (p. 437)
- Emission control with AdBlue® (p. 436)

Checking and filling with AdBlue®

Check the AdBlue level regularly and top up if the message for low AdBlue level is shown in the driver display.

The Volvo workshop tops up AdBlue when the car is serviced, however, it must also be topped up several times between services depending on driving style. If the AdBlue tank is allowed to drain completely then it will no longer be possible to start the car.

NOTE

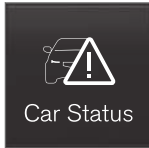
Never run the AdBlue tank dry. Fill the tank in good time before it is empty.

If the tank is run dry, it will not be possible to start the engine after it is switched off – not the regular way or using aids.

The only way to restart the car after the tank has been run dry is to refill with AdBlue of the specified quality, minimum 3 litres.

◀ Checking AdBlue level

1.

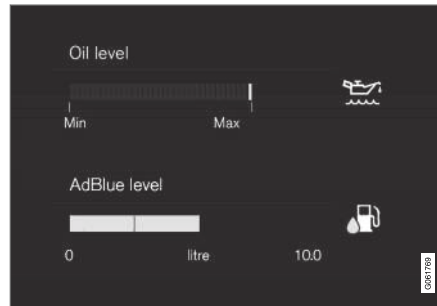


Open the **Car status** app in the app view.

2.



Press **Status** to show the AdBlue level.



Graphic for AdBlue level in the centre display.

Each cursor represents approx. 25% of a full tank.

When less than 25 % of the tank remains available, the colour of the remaining cursor changes to amber, and at less than 10 % it turns red.

Filling



When the AdBlue level starts to become low, a symbol illuminates in the driver display and the **AdBlue level low** message is shown.

1. Open the fuel filler flap with a gentle press on the rear of the flap.

2.



Open the blue cover for the smaller filler pipe intended for AdBlue.

3. Fill with AdBlue of the correct quality¹³.

Do not overfill the tank.

WARNING

When filling from the AdBlue pump at a filling station, it is advisable to use the pump adapted for passenger cars. The AdBlue pump for heavy vehicles can also be used.

IMPORTANT

Exercise caution to prevent AdBlue from coming into contact with the car's paintwork. If it does, rinse with plenty of water since the fluid can affect the paintwork.

Related information



- Handling AdBlue® (p. 437)
- Symbols and messages for AdBlue® (p. 440)
- Tank capacity for AdBlue® (p. 624)




¹³ ISO 22241

Symbols and messages for AdBlue®

The emission control system continuously monitors the level, quality and dosage of AdBlue. If something is wrong, a message is shown in the driver display.



Symbol	Message	Specification
	AdBlue level low	The AdBlue level is low and the tank needs to be topped up.
	AdBlue dosing and AdBlue quality	The system does not function as it should. Contact a workshop ^A to check the function.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Refill AdBlue	The AdBlue level is critically low and the tank needs to be topped up immediately.
	Engine start prohibit. and e.g.: Fill a minimum of 4 litres of AdBlue	The car cannot be started before AdBlue has been filled. Fill with AdBlue to the amount specified in the driver display, or contact a workshop ^A . Note that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The car must be level for the level gauge to be able to correctly register the amount of AdBlue filled. • It can take up to 20 seconds after filling before the system has been updated with the correct level indication.
	Engine start prohibited Service of AdBlue system needed to allow restart	The system does not function as it should. Contact a workshop ^A to check the function.

^A An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Checking and filling with AdBlue[®] (p. 437)
- Handling AdBlue[®] (p. 437)
- Book service and repair (p. 562)

Overheating in the engine and drive system

Under special conditions, for example hard driving in hilly terrain and hot climate, there is a risk that the engine and drive system may overheat - in particular with a heavy load.

- In the event of overheating, the engine's power may be limited temporarily.
- Remove any auxiliary lamps from in front of the grille when driving in hot climates.
- If the temperature in the engine's cooling system becomes too high then a warning symbol is illuminated and the driver display shows the message **Engine temperature High temperature Stop safely**. Stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for several minutes and cool down.
- If the message **Engine temperature High temperature Turn off engine** or **Engine coolant Level low, turn off engine** is shown, stop the car and switch off the engine.
- In the event of overheating in the gearbox, an alternative gear shift program will be selected¹⁴. In addition, a built-in protection function is activated that, amongst other things, illuminates a warning symbol and the driver display shows the message




Transmission warm Reduce speed to lower temperature or **Transmission hot Stop safely, wait for cooling**. Follow the recommendation given, reduce speed or stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for several minutes to enable the gearbox to cool down.

- If the car overheats, the air conditioning may be switched off temporarily.
- Do not turn the engine off immediately you stop after a hard drive.

NOTE

It is normal for the engine's cooling fan to operate for a time after the engine has been switched off.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	High engine temperature. Follow the recommendation given.
	Low level, coolant. Follow the recommendation given.
	Gearbox hot/overheated/cooled. Follow the recommendation given.

Related information

- Topping up coolant (p. 572)
- Driving with a trailer (p. 449)
- Preparations for a long trip (p. 428)
- Gear shift indicator* (p. 413)

¹⁴ Applies to automatic gearbox.

Overloading the starter battery

The electrical functions in the car load the starter battery to varying degrees. Avoid using the ignition position II when the car is switched off. Instead, use ignition position I - which uses less power.

Also, be aware of different accessories that load the electrical system. Do not use functions which use a lot of power when the car is switched off. Examples of such functions are:

- ventilation fan
- headlamps
- windscreen wiper
- audio system (high volume).

If the starter battery voltage is low, a message is shown in the driver display. The energy-saving function then shuts down certain functions or reduces certain functions such as the ventilation fan and/or audio system.

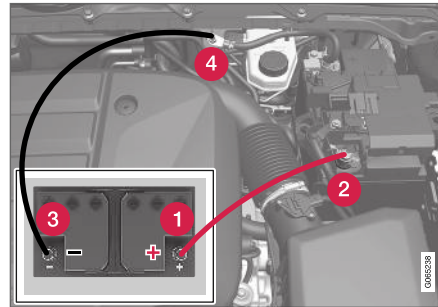
- In which case, charge the starter battery by starting the car and then running it for at least 15 minutes - starter battery charging is more effective during driving than running the engine at idling speed while stationary.

Related information

- Starter battery (p. 579)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)

Using jump starting with another battery

If the starter battery is discharged then the car can be started with current from another battery.



Attachment points for the jump leads.

When jump starting the car, the following steps are recommended to avoid short circuits or other damage:

1. Set the car's electrical system in ignition position 0.
2. Check that the donor battery has a voltage of 12 V.
3. If the donor battery is installed in another car - switch off the donor car's engine and make sure that the two cars do not touch each other.

4. Connect one of the red jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's positive terminal (1).

! IMPORTANT

Connect the start cable carefully to avoid short circuits with other components in the engine compartment.

5. Open the positive jump-starting point's cover (2).
6. Connect the red jump lead's other clamp onto the car's positive jump-starting point (2).
7. Connect one of the black jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's negative terminal (3).
8. Connect the black jump lead's other clamp onto the car's negative jump-starting point (4).
9. Check that the jump lead clamps are affixed securely so that there are no sparks during the starting attempt.
10. Start the engine of the "donor car" and allow it to run a few minutes at a speed slightly higher than idle approx. 1500 rpm.

- ◀◀ 11. Start the engine in the car with the discharged battery.

IMPORTANT

Do not touch the connections between cable and car during the starting attempt. There is a risk of sparks forming.

12. Remove the jump leads in reverse order - first the black and then the red.

Make sure that none of the black jump lead's clamps comes into contact with the car's positive jump-starting point/donor battery's positive terminal or the clamp connected to the red jump lead.

WARNING

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- Do not connect the jump leads to any fuel system component or any moving part. Be careful of hot engine parts.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.
- Never smoke near the battery.

Related information

- Starting the car (p. 396)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 175)
- Selecting ignition mode (p. 399)

Towbar*

The car can be equipped with a towbar that makes it possible to tow e.g. a trailer behind the car.

There may be different towbar variants available for the car. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

IMPORTANT

When the engine is switched off, the constant battery voltage to the trailer connector can be switched off automatically so as not to drain the starter battery.

IMPORTANT

The towball needs regular cleaning and lubrication with grease in order to prevent wear.

NOTE

When a hitch with a vibration damper is used, the towball must not be lubricated.

This also applies when fitting a bicycle rack that is clamped in around the towball.

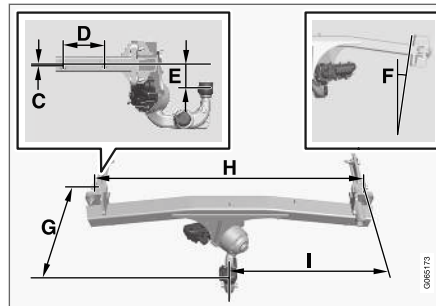
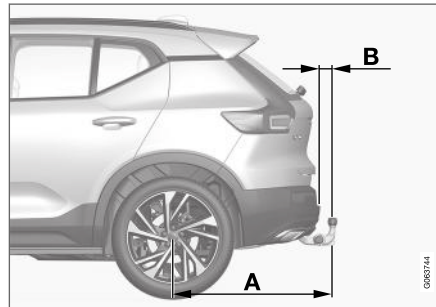
Related information

- Extendable and retractable towbar* (p. 446)
- Driving with a trailer (p. 449)

- Towbar-mounted bicycle rack* (p. 452)
- Specifications for towbar* (p. 445)

Specifications for towbar*

Dimensions and mounting points for towbar.



Dimensions, mounting points in mm (inches)	
A	939 (37)
B	72 (2,8)
C	6 (0,24)
D	145 (5,7)
E	88 (3,5)
F	Side beam tilts 8 degrees
G	353 (13,9)
H	1048 (41,3)
I	524 (20,6)

Related information

- Towbar* (p. 444)
- Towing capacity and towball load (p. 618)

Extendable and retractable towbar*

The extendable/retractable towbar is always easily accessible and simple to extend or retract as needed. In the retracted position, the towbar is completely concealed.

WARNING

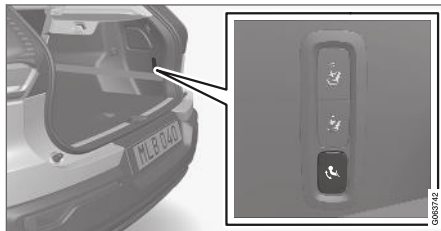
Follow the instructions for retracting and extending the towbar carefully.

Extending the towbar

WARNING

Avoid standing close to the bumper in the centre behind the car when extending the towing hitch.

1.



Open the tailgate. A button for extending/retracting the towbar is located on the right-hand side at the rear of the cargo area. An indicator lamp in the button must illuminate with a constant orange glow for the extension function to be active.

2.



Press and release the button - extension might not start if the button is pressed for too long.

- > The towbar extends out and down in an unlocked position - the indicator lamp flashes orange.

WARNING

Do not press the extend/retract button if a trailer is attached to the towbar.

NOTE

The towbar must finish the extension procedure before it can then be moved to locked position. This procedure may take several seconds. If the towbar is not fixed in locked position, wait a few seconds and try again.

3.



- Move the towbar to its end position, where it is secured and locked in place - the indicator lamp illuminates with a constant orange glow.
- > The towbar is ready for use.

WARNING

Take care to secure the trailer's safety cable in the intended bracket.

Retracting the towbar

IMPORTANT

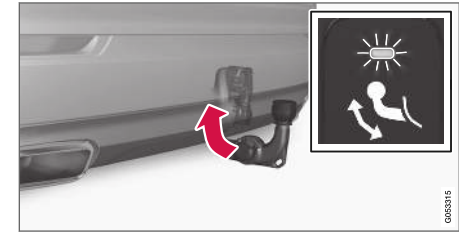
Make sure that there is no plug or adapter in the electrical socket when retracting the towbar.

1.



- Open the tailgate. Press and release the button on the right-hand side at the rear of the cargo area - retraction might not start if the button is pressed for too long.
- > The towbar automatically lowers in an unlocked position - the indicator lamp in the button flashes orange.

2.



- Lock the towbar by moving it back to its retracted position, where it is locked.
- > The indicator lamp will now illuminate with a constant glow if the towbar is correctly retracted.



Related information

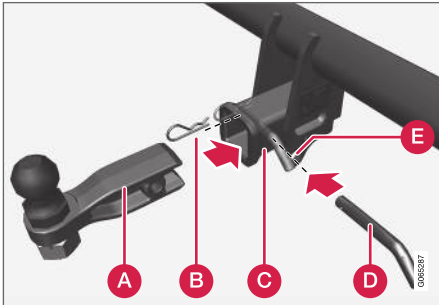
- Driving with a trailer (p. 449)
- Towbar* (p. 444)

Removable towbar*

Volvo recommends use of Volvo's towbars, which are specifically designed for the car.

i NOTE

The detachable towbar may not be available in all markets or for all car models. Contact your Volvo dealer.



- A** Ball holder
- B** Split pin
- C** Towbar unit
- D** Locking bolt
- E** Bracket for safety cable

Install the ball holder

1. If necessary, remove the split pin from the locking bolt and slide the lock bolt out of the towbar unit.
2. Slide the ball holder into the towbar unit.
3. Align the hole in the ball holder with the hole in the towbar unit.
4. Slide in the locking bolt through the towbar unit and the ball holder.
5. Insert the split pin in the hole in the end of the locking bolt.

! WARNING

- Check that the towbar is firmly locked in position before you connect anything to it.
- Always attach the trailer's safety cable in the bracket for the safety cable on the towbar.

Remove the ball holder

1. Remove the split pin from the locking bolt and slide the lock bolt out of the ball holder/towbar unit.
2. Pull out the ball holder from the towbar unit.

Store the ball holder

! WARNING

When not in use, the detachable ball holder must always be stored in the designated area under the cargo area floor.

Related information

- Driving with a trailer (p. 449)
- Towing capacity and towball load (p. 618)

Driving with a trailer

When driving with a trailer, there are a number of points that are important to think about regarding the towbar, the trailer and how the load is positioned in the trailer.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories, e.g. towbar, reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight.

The car is supplied with the necessary equipment for towing a trailer.

- The car's towbar must be of an approved type.
- Distribute the load on the trailer so that the weight on the towbar complies with the specified maximum towball load. Towball load is calculated as part of the car's payload.
- Increase the tyre pressure to the recommended pressure for a full load.
- The engine is loaded more heavily than usual when driving with a trailer.
- Do not tow a heavy trailer when the car is brand new. Wait until it has been driven at least 1000 km (620 miles).
- The brakes are loaded much more than usual on long and steep downhill slopes. Downshift to a lower gear when shifting manually and adjust your speed.

- Follow the regulations in force for the permitted speeds and weights.
- Maintain a low speed when driving with a trailer up long, steep ascents.
- The maximum indicated trailer weight only applies to heights up to 1000 metres above sea level (3280 ft). At higher elevations, the engine output and the vehicle's climbing ability are reduced due to the reduced air density, and the maximum trailer load must therefore be reduced. The weight of the car and trailer must be decreased by 10% for each additional 1000 m (3280 ft) (or part thereof).
- Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines of more than 12%.

NOTE

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes in combination with fuel quality are factors that considerably increase the car's fuel consumption.

Trailer connector

An adapter is required if the car's towbar has a 13 pin connector and the trailer has a 7 pin connector. Use an adapter approved by Volvo. Make sure the cable does not drag on the ground.

IMPORTANT

When the engine is switched off, the constant battery voltage to the trailer connector can be switched off automatically so as not to drain the starter battery.

Trailer weights

WARNING

Follow the stated recommendations for trailer weights. Otherwise, the car and trailer may be difficult to control in the event of sudden movement and braking.

NOTE

The stated maximum permitted trailer weights are those permitted by Volvo. National vehicle regulations can further limit trailer weights and speeds. Towbars can be certified for higher towing weights than the car can actually tow.

Level control*

The car's system for level control endeavours to maintain a constant height regardless of load (up to the maximum permissible weight). When the car is stationary the rear of the car lowers slightly, which is normal.



◀◀ **When driving in hilly terrain and hot climates**

Under certain circumstances, there may be a risk of overheating when towing a trailer. If the engine and drive system overheats, a warning symbol comes on in the driver display together with a message.

The automatic gearbox selects the optimum gear related to load and engine speed.

Steep inclines

Do not lock the automatic gearbox in a higher gear than the engine "can cope with" - it is not always a good idea to drive at a high gear with low engine speed.

Parking on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal fully.
2. Activate the parking brake.
3. Select gear position **P**.
4. Release the brake pedal.

Block the wheels with chocks when parking a car with hitched trailer on a hill.

Starting on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal fully.
2. Select gear position **D**.
3. Releasing the parking brake.
4. Release the brake pedal and start driving off.

Related information

- Trailer stability assist* (p. 450)
- Checking trailer lamps (p. 451)
- Towing capacity and towball load (p. 618)
- Overheating in the engine and drive system (p. 442)
- Adverse driving conditions for engine oil (p. 622)

Trailer stability assist*

The function of trailer stability assist (TSA¹⁵) is to stabilise cars towing trailers in situations where they begin snaking. The function is included in the stability system ESC¹⁶.

Reasons for snaking

The snaking phenomenon can occur with any car/trailer combination. Snaking normally occurs at high speeds. But, there is a risk of it occurring at lower speeds if the trailer is overloaded or the load is improperly distributed, e.g. too far back.

In order for snaking to occur, there must be a triggering factor, e.g.:

- Car with trailer subjected to a sudden and powerful side wind.
- Car with trailer drives on an uneven road surface or in a pothole.
- Sweeping steering wheel movements.

If snaking has started, it could be difficult or even impossible to suppress. This makes the car/trailer combination difficult to control and there is a risk that you could, for example, end up in the wrong lane or leave the carriageway.

Trailer stability assist function

The trailer stability assist function continually monitors the car's movements, particularly lateral

¹⁵ Trailer Stability Assist

¹⁶ Electronic Stability Control

movements. If snaking is detected, the front wheels are individually braked. This serves to stabilise the car/trailer combination. This is often enough to help the driver regain control of the car.

If snaking is not eliminated the first time that trailer stability assist intervenes, the car/trailer combination is braked with all wheels and engine power is reduced. Once snaking has been gradually suppressed and the car/trailer combination is stable once again, the system stops regulating and the driver once again has full control of the car.

NOTE

The stability function is deactivated if the driver selects Sport mode by deactivating **ESC** via the menu system in the centre display.

Trailer stability assist may fail to intervene if the driver uses severe steering wheel movements to try to rectify the snaking because in such a situation the system cannot determine whether it is the trailer or the driver causing the snaking.



When trailer stability assist is operating, the **ESC** symbol flashes in the driver display.

Related information



- Driving with a trailer (p. 449)
- Electronic stability control (p. 264)

Checking trailer lamps

When connecting a trailer - check that all the trailer lamps work before departure.

Direction indicators and brake lights on the trailer

If one or more of the trailer's direction indicators or brake light bulbs is broken, the driver display shows a symbol and a message. Other lights on the trailer must be checked manually by the driver before setting off.

Symbol	Message
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Trailer turn indicator Right turn indicator malfunction • Trailer turn indicator Left turn indicator malfunction
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Trailer brake light Malfunction

If any lamp for the trailer's direction indicators is broken, the driver display symbol for direction indicators will also flash more quickly than normal.

Rear fog lamp on trailer

When connecting the trailer, the rear fog lamp may not light up on the car. In such cases, the rear fog lamp function switches to the trailer. Upon activation of the rear fog lamp, check



- ◀ therefore that the trailer is equipped with a rear fog lamp to travel safely.

Checking trailer lamps*

Automatic checking

After a trailer is connected electrically, it is possible to check that the trailer lamps are working via an automatic lamp activation. The function helps the driver check that the trailer lamps are working before starting off.

The engine must be switched off to perform the check.

1. When a trailer is connected to the towbar, the **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check** message is shown in the driver display.
 - > The lamp check starts.
2. Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's **O** button.
 - > The lamp check starts.
3. Exit the car to check lamp functionality.
 - > All trailer lamps start to flash - then the lamps are switched on one at a time.
4. Visually check that all lamps available on the trailer are operational.
5. After a moment, all lamps on the trailer flash again.
 - > The check is complete.

Switching off automatic checking

The automatic checking function can be switched off in the centre display.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting**.
3. Deselect **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check**.

Manual checking

If the automatic checking is switched off then it is possible to start the check manually.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting**.
3. Select **Manual Trailer Lamp Check**.
 - > The lamp check starts. Exit the car to check lamp functionality.

Related information

- Driving with a trailer (p. 449)

Towbar-mounted bicycle rack*

When using a bicycle rack, the bicycle racks that Volvo has developed are recommended.

This is in order to avoid damage to the car and in order to achieve the maximum possible safety during a journey. Volvo's bicycle racks are available for purchase at authorised Volvo dealers.

Carefully follow the instructions enclosed with the bicycle rack.

- Bicycle rack including load must weigh a maximum of 75 kg (165 pounds).
- The bicycle rack may be designed for a maximum of three bicycles.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the bicycle rack may cause damage to the towbar and car.

The bicycle rack can loosen from the towbar if it:

- is incorrectly fitted on the towball
- is overloaded, see the bicycle rack's instructions for maximum load weight
- is used for carrying something other than bicycles.

The car's driving characteristics are affected when a bicycle rack is fitted on the towbar. For example, due to:

- increased weight
- reduced acceleration capacity
- reduced ground clearance
- changed braking capacity.

Recommendations for loading bicycles on the bicycle rack

The larger the distance between the load's centre of gravity and the towball, the greater the load on the towbar.

Load according to the following recommendations:

- Fit the heaviest bicycle furthest in, closest to the car.
- Keep the load symmetrical and as close to the centre of the car as possible, e.g. by loading the bicycles facing alternately if several bicycles are loaded.
- Remove loose objects from the bicycle for transportation, e.g. bicycle basket, battery, child seat. Partly to reduce the load on the towbar and bicycle rack, and partly to reduce the wind resistance, which affects fuel consumption.
- Do not use protective covers on the bicycles. This may affect manoeuvrability, impair visibil-

ity and increase fuel consumption. It may also lead to an increased load on the towbar.

Related information

- Towbar* (p. 444)

Towing

During towing, the car is towed by another vehicle by means of a towline.

Find out the statutory maximum speed limit for towing before the towing begins.

Preparations and towing

IMPORTANT

Note that the car must always be towed with the wheels rolling forward.

- Do not tow cars with automatic transmission at speeds higher than 80 km/h (50 mph) or for distances in excess of 80 km (50 miles).

WARNING

- Check that the steering lock is unlocked before towing.
- Ignition position **II** must be active - in ignition position **I** all airbags are deactivated.
- Always keep the remote control key in the car when it is being towed.





⚠ WARNING

The brake servo and power steering do not work when the engine is switched off - the brake pedal needs to be depressed about 5 times more heavily and the steering is considerably heavier than normal.

1. Activate the car's hazard warning flashers.
2. Secure the towline in the towing eye.
3. Deactivate the steering lock by unlocking the car.
4. Set the car in ignition position **II** - press the start button without depressing the brake pedal and hold the button depressed for approx. 4 seconds. Then release the button.
5. Move the gear selector to neutral position **N** and release the parking brake.

If the battery voltage is too low, the parking brake cannot be disengaged. Connect a donor battery if the battery voltage is too low.

> The towing vehicle can now start towing.

6. Keep the towline taut when the towing vehicle reduces speed by holding your foot gently pressed on the brake pedal - thereby avoiding unnecessary jerking.
7. Be prepared to brake to stop.

Jump starting

Do not tow the car to jump start the engine. Use a donor battery if the starter battery is discharged and the engine does not start.

⚠ IMPORTANT

The catalytic converter may be damaged during attempts to tow-start the engine.

Related information

- Fitting and removing the towing eye (p. 454)
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 143)
- Recovery (p. 456)
- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 443)
- Selecting ignition mode (p. 399)

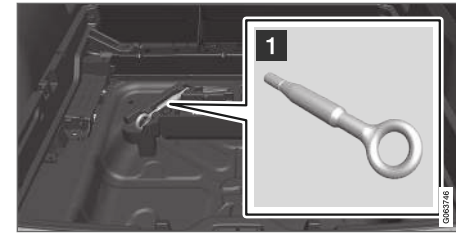
Fitting and removing the towing eye

Use the towing eye for towing. The towing eye is screwed into a threaded socket behind a cover on the right-hand side of the bumper, front or rear.

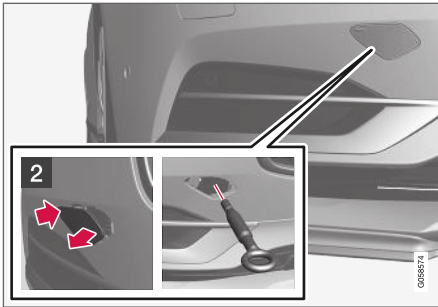
i NOTE

If the car is equipped with a towbar, there is no rear mounting for a towing eye.

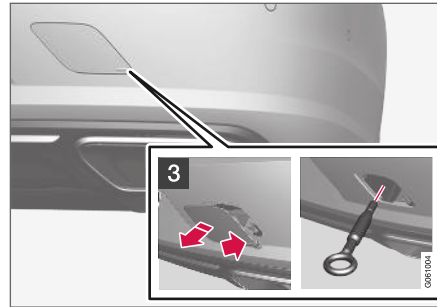
Fitting the towing eye



- 1 Take out the towing eye from the foam block under the floor in the cargo area.

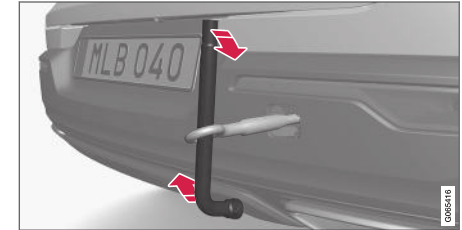


- 2** Front: Remove the cover - press on the marking with a finger.
- > The cover pivots around its centre line and can then be removed.



- 3** Rear: Remove the cover - press on the marking with a finger and, at the same time, fold out the opposite side/corner using a coin or similar.
- > The cover pivots around its centre line and can then be removed.

4. Screw the towing eye right in until it stops. Screw the eye in firmly. For example, thread through the wheel bolt wrench* and use it as a lever.



! IMPORTANT

It is important that the towing eye is firmly screwed into place - right in until it stops.

Removing the towing eye:

- After use, unscrew the towing eye and return it to its place.
- Finish by refitting the cover onto the bumper.



STARTING AND DRIVING

- ◀◀ The towing eye may be used to pull the car up onto a recovery vehicle with a flatbed platform. The car's position and ground clearance determine whether it is possible.

If the slope of the recovery vehicle's ramp is too steep, or if the ground clearance under the car is inadequate, then the car may be damaged if you try to pull it up using the towing eye.

If necessary, raise the car by using the recovery vehicle's lifting device. Do not use the towing eye.

WARNING

No one/nothing is allowed to remain behind the recovery vehicle while the car pulled up onto the flatbed platform.

IMPORTANT

The towing eye is only designed for towing on roads - **not** for pulling the car unstuck or out of a ditch. Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

Related information

- Towing (p. 453)
- Recovery (p. 456)
- Tool kit (p. 529)

Recovery

For recovery, the car is taken away with the help of another vehicle.

Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

The towing eye can be used to pull the car up onto a recovery vehicle with a flatbed platform.

The car's position and ground clearance determine whether it is possible to pull it up onto a flatbed platform. If the slope of the recovery vehicle's ramp is too steep, or if the ground clearance under the car is inadequate, then the car may be damaged if you try to pull it up. The car should then be lifted using the recovery vehicle's lifting device.

WARNING

No one/nothing is allowed to remain behind the recovery vehicle while the car pulled up onto the flatbed platform.

IMPORTANT

The towing eye is only designed for towing on roads - **not** for pulling the car unstuck or out of a ditch. Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

IMPORTANT

Note that the car must always be transported with the wheels rolling forward.

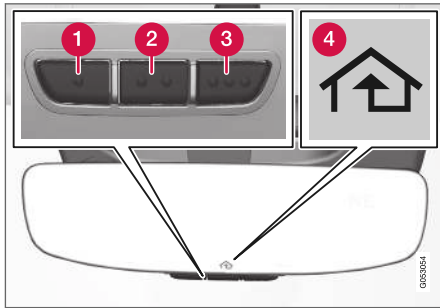
Related information

- Fitting and removing the towing eye (p. 454)

HomeLink®*17

HomeLink®18 is a programmable remote control, integrated in the car's electrical system, which can remotely control up to three different devices (e.g. garage door opener, alarm system, outdoor and indoor lighting, etc.) and thereby replace the remote controls for them.

General



The figure is schematic - the version may vary.

- 1 Button 1
- 2 Button 2
- 3 Button 3
- 4 Indicator lamp

¹⁷ Applies to certain markets.

¹⁸ HomeLink and the HomeLink house symbol are registered trademarks of Gentex Corporation.

¹⁹ Note that the toll-free number may not be available depending on operator.

²⁰ Applies to certain markets.

HomeLink® is supplied built-in to the interior rearview mirror. The HomeLink® panel consists of three programmable buttons and one indicator lamp in the mirror glass.

For more information about HomeLink®, visit www.HomeLink.com, www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex or call the toll-free number 00 8000 466 354 65 (or the toll number +49 6838 907 277)¹⁹.

Save the original remote controls for future programming (e.g. when changing to another car or for use in another vehicle). It is also recommended that the programming for the buttons is deleted when the car is sold.

Related information

- Using HomeLink (p. 459)
- Programming HomeLink®* (p. 457)
- Type approval for HomeLink®* (p. 460)

Programming HomeLink®*20

Follow these instructions to program HomeLink®, reset all programming or reprogram individual buttons.

i NOTE

In certain vehicles the ignition must be switched on or in "accessory position" before HomeLink® can be programmed or used. If possible, fit new batteries in the remote control that shall be replaced by HomeLink® for faster programming and improved transmission of the radio signal. The HomeLink® buttons should be reset before programming.

⚠ WARNING

While programming HomeLink®, the garage door or gate being programmed may activate. For this reason, make sure that nobody is in the vicinity of the door or gate while programming is in progress. The car should be outside the garage while a garage door opener is being programmed.

STARTING AND DRIVING

1. Aim the remote control towards the HomeLink® button to be programmed and hold it approx. 2-8 cm (approx. 1-3 inches) from the button. Do not obstruct the indicator lamp on HomeLink®.

Note: The ability of some remote controls to program HomeLink® is improved at a distance of approx. 15-20 cm (approx. 6-12 inches). Bear this in mind if you encounter problems during programming.

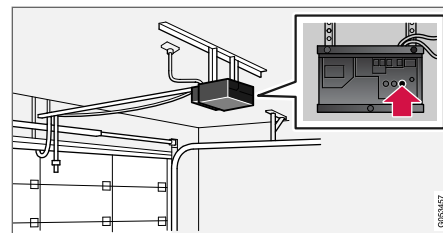
2. Press and hold depressed both the button on the remote control and the button to be reprogrammed on HomeLink®.

3. Do not release the buttons until the indicator lamp has switched from flashing slowly (approx. once per second) to either flashing quickly (approx. 10 times per second) or illuminating with a constant glow.

> **If it illuminates with a constant glow:**

Indication that the programming has finished. Press the programmed button twice to activate.

If it flashes quickly: The device to be programmed to HomeLink® may have a security function that requires extra steps. Test by pressing the programmed button twice to see whether the programming is working. Otherwise, continue with the following steps.



4. Locate programming button²¹ on the receiver for the garage door or similar. It is normally located close to the antenna's bracket on the receiver.
5. Depress and release the receiver's programming button once. The programming must be completed within 30 seconds of the button being depressed.
6. Press and release the button on HomeLink® that you want to program. Repeat the sequence of pressing/holding/releasing a second time and, depending on the receiver model, even a third time.
 - > Programming is now complete and the garage door, gate or similar should now be activated when the programmed button is depressed.

In the event of programming problems, contact HomeLink® at www.HomeLink.com,

²¹ Button designation and colour varies between manufacturers.

www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex or call the toll-free number 00 8000 466 354 65 (or the toll number +49 6838 907 277)²².

Reprogramming individual buttons

To reprogram an individual HomeLink® button, proceed as follows:

1. Press the desired button and hold it depressed for approx. 20 seconds.
2. Once the indicator lamp on HomeLink® starts to flash slowly, programming can continue as normal.

Note: If the button to be reprogrammed is not programmed with a new unit, it will resume the previously saved programming.

Resetting the HomeLink® buttons

It is only possible to reset all of the HomeLink® buttons at the same time, not each button individually. Individual buttons can only be reprogrammed.

- Press and hold depressed the outer buttons (1 and 3) on HomeLink® for approx. 10 seconds.
 - > When the indicator lamp changes over from a constant glow to starting to flash, the buttons are reset and ready to be reprogrammed.

Related information

- Using HomeLink (p. 459)
- HomeLink®* (p. 457)
- Type approval for HomeLink®* (p. 460)

Using HomeLink

When HomeLink® is fully programmed it can be used in place of the separate original remote controls.

Depress the programmed button. The garage door, gate, alarm system or similar is activated (may take a few seconds). If the button is depressed for more than 20 seconds then the reprogramming is started. The indicator lamp illuminates or flashes when the button has been depressed. Naturally the original remote controls can still be used in parallel with HomeLink® if required.

NOTE

If the ignition is switched off, HomeLink® will work for 30 minutes after the driver's door has been opened.

NOTE

HomeLink® cannot be used if the car is locked and the alarm is armed from the outside.

²² Note that the toll-free number may not be available depending on operator.

**WARNING**

- If HomeLink® is used to control a garage door or gate, ensure that nobody is near the door or gate while it is in motion.
- Do not use HomeLink® for any garage door that does not have safety stop and safety reverse.

Related information

- HomeLink®* (p. 457)
- Programming HomeLink®* (p. 457)
- Type approval for HomeLink®* (p. 460)

Type approval for HomeLink®*23**Type approval for EU**

Gentex Corporation hereby declares that HomeLink® Model UAHL5 complies with the Radio equipment directive 2014/53/EU.

Wavelength within which the radio equipment functions:

- 433.05MHz-434.79MHz <10mW E.R.P.
- 868.00MHz-868.60MHz <25mW E.R.P.
- 868.70MHz-868.20MHz <25mW E.R.P.
- 869.40MHz-869.65MHz <25mW E.R.P.
- 869.70MHz-870.00MHz <25mW E.R.P.

Certificate holder address: Gentex Corporation, 600 North Centennial Street, Zeeland MI 49464, USA

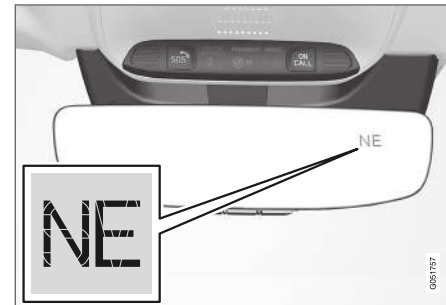
For more information, see support.volvocars.com.

Related information

- HomeLink®* (p. 457)

Compass*

The upper right-hand corner of the rearview mirror has an integrated display that shows the compass direction in which the front of the car is pointing.



Rearview mirror with compass.

Eight different compass directions are shown by their English abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (north east), **E** (east), **SE** (south east), **S** (south), **SW** (south west), **W** (west) and **NW** (north west).

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the compass* (p. 461)
- Calibrating the compass* (p. 461)

²³ Applies to certain markets.

Activating and deactivating the compass*

The upper right-hand corner of the rearview mirror has an integrated display that shows the compass direction in which the front of the car is pointing.

Activating and deactivating the compass

The compass is activated automatically when the car is started.

To deactivate/activate the compass manually:

- Depress the button on the underside of the rearview mirror using e.g. a paper clip.

Related information

- Compass* (p. 460)
- Calibrating the compass* (p. 461)

Calibrating the compass*

The earth is divided into 15 magnetic zones. The compass should be calibrated if the car is moved between several magnetic zones.

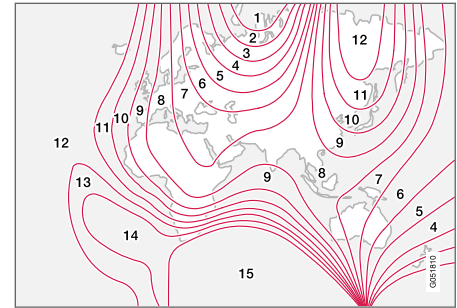
Proceed as follows to perform calibration:

1. Stop the car in a large open area free from steel structures and high-voltage power lines.
2. Start the car and switch off all electrical equipment (air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and ensure that all doors are closed.

NOTE

Calibration may fail or not start at all if electrical equipment is not switched off.

3. Hold the button on the underside of the rearview mirror depressed for approx. 3 seconds (use a paper clip, for example). The number for the current magnetic zone is shown.



Magnetic zones.

4. Press the button repeatedly until the required magnetic zone (1-15) is shown. See the map of magnetic zones for the compass.
5. Wait until the display returns to showing the character **C**, or hold the button on the underside of the rearview mirror depressed for approx. 6 seconds until the character **C** is shown.
6. Drive slowly in a circle at a speed of no more than 10 km/h (6 mph) until a compass direction is shown in the display, indicating that calibration is complete. Then drive a further 2 circles to fine-tune calibration.



STARTING AND DRIVING

- ◀ 7. **Cars with heated windscreen***: If the character **C** is shown in the display when the heated windscreen is activated, perform the calibration in accordance with point 6 above with the heated windscreen activated.
- 8. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

Related information

- Compass* (p. 460)
- Activating and deactivating the compass* (p. 461)

SOUND, MEDIA AND INTERNET

Sound, media and Internet

The audio and media system consists of media player and radio. You can also connect a phone via Bluetooth to use handsfree functions or play music wirelessly in the car. When the car is connected to the Internet you can also use apps for media playback.



Overview of audio and media

Control the functions with your voice, steering wheel keypad or the centre display. The number of speakers and amplifiers depends on which audio system the car is equipped with.

System updating

The audio and media system is continuously improved. When the car is connected to the Internet, it is possible to download system updates for optimal functionality, see support.volvocars.com.

Related information

- Media player (p. 474)
- Radio (p. 468)
- Phone (p. 488)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- Apps (p. 465)
- Voice recognition (p. 128)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)
- Driver distraction (p. 39)
- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 561)
- License agreement for audio and media (p. 507)

Audio settings

The audio system is preset for optimal sound reproduction but can be adapted according to needs.

The volume is normally adjusted with the volume control below the centre display or with the right-hand steering wheel keypad. This applies, for example, during playback of music, radio, ongoing phone calls and active traffic messages.

Optimum sound reproduction

The audio system is pre-calibrated for optimum sound reproduction by means of digital signal processing. This calibration takes into account loudspeakers, amplifiers, passenger compartment acoustics, listener position, etc., for each combination of car model and audio system. There is also a dynamic calibration that takes into account the setting of the volume control and vehicle speed.

Audio settings as required

The following settings can be selected in the top view under **Settings** → **Sound**:

- **Tone** — personal preference for bass, treble, equaliser for example.
- **Balance** - balance between right/left loudspeakers and balance between front/rear loudspeakers.
- **System Volumes** – adjusts volume in the various systems of the car, e.g. **Voice Control**, **Park Assist** and **Phone Ringtone**.

Sound experience*

Sound Experience is opened from the centre display's app view and gives access to further audio settings. The following settings can be made:

- **Surround** - surround sound mode with level settings.

Related information

- Media player (p. 474)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 131)
- Settings for phone (p. 496)
- Sound, media and Internet (p. 464)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)

Apps

The app view contains applications (apps) that give access to certain of the car's services.

Swipe from right to left¹ across the centre display's screen in order to access the app view from the home view. Apps that have been downloaded (third-party apps) and apps for embedded functions, such as **FM radio**, are found here.



App view (generic image, basic apps vary by market and model)

Some basic apps are always available. More apps such as web radio and music services can be downloaded when the car is connected to the Internet.

Certain apps are only available for use if the car is connected to the Internet.

¹ Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.



- ◀ Start an app by pressing the app in the centre display's app view.

Related information

- Downloading apps (p. 466)
- Updating apps (p. 467)
- Deleting apps (p. 467)
- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 483)
- Android Auto* (p. 486)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- Storage space on hard disk (p. 506)
- User terms and conditions and data sharing (p. 504)

Downloading apps

New apps can be downloaded when the car is connected to the Internet.

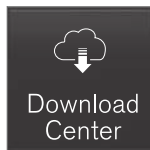
NOTE

Data download may affect other services that transmit data, e.g. Internet radio. If the effect on other services is experienced as disruptive then the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or interrupt other services.

NOTE

When downloading using a phone, pay extra attention to the data traffic costs.

1. Open the **Download Centre** app in the app view.



2. Select **New apps** in order to open a list of apps that are available but not installed in the car.

3. Tap on the row for an app in order to expand in the list and get more information about the app.
4. Select **Install** in order to start the download and installation of the desired app.
 - > The status of the download and installation is shown while it is in progress.

A message is shown if a download cannot be started for the moment. The app will remain in the list and it is possible to try to start a download again.

Cancelling the download

- Tap on **Abort** to cancel a download in progress.

Note that only the download can be cancelled, when the installation phase has started, this cannot be cancelled.

Related information

- Apps (p. 465)
- Updating apps (p. 467)
- Deleting apps (p. 467)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 561)
- Storage space on hard disk (p. 506)

Updating apps

The apps can be updated when the car is connected to the Internet.

NOTE

Data download may affect other services that transmit data, e.g. Internet radio. If the effect on other services is experienced as disruptive then the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or interrupt other services.

NOTE

When downloading using a phone, pay extra attention to the data traffic costs.

If an app is being used during an ongoing update, it will be restarted in order for the installation to be completed.

Update all

1. Open the **Download Centre** app in the app view.



2. Select **Install all**.
> Updating is started.

Update some

1. Open the **Download Centre** app in the app view.
2. Select **Application updates** in order to open a list of all available updates.
3. Locate the desired app and select **Install**.
> Updating is started.

Related information

- Apps (p. 465)
- Downloading apps (p. 466)
- Deleting apps (p. 467)
- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 561)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)

Deleting apps

Apps can be uninstalled when the car is connected to the Internet.

An app that is being used must be closed in order for the uninstallation to be completed.

1. Open the **Download Centre** app in the app view.



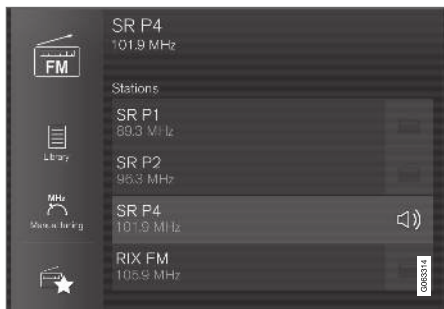
2. Select **Application updates** in order to open a list of all installed apps.
3. Locate the desired app and select **Uninstall** in order to start the uninstallation of the app.
> When the app has been uninstalled, it disappears from the list.

Related information

- Apps (p. 465)
- Downloading apps (p. 466)
- Updating apps (p. 467)
- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 561)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)

Radio

It is possible to listen to the AM and FM bands and to digital radio (DAB)*. When the car is online, it is also possible to listen to Internet radio.



The radio can be operated using voice recognition, the steering wheel keypad or the centre display.

Related information

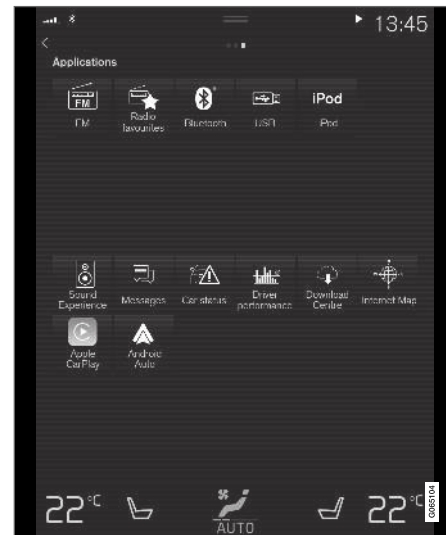
- Start radio (p. 468)
- Changing radio band and radio station (p. 469)
- Setting radio favourites (p. 470)
- Settings for radio (p. 471)
- Digital radio* (p. 473)

- RDS radio (p. 472)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 131)
- Media player (p. 474)

Start radio

The radio is started from the centre display app view.

1. Open the required frequency band (e.g. **FM**) from the app view.



2. Select a radio station.

Related information

- Radio (p. 468)
- Searching for radio stations (p. 470)

- Changing radio band and radio station (p. 469)
- Setting radio favourites (p. 470)
- Settings for radio (p. 471)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 131)

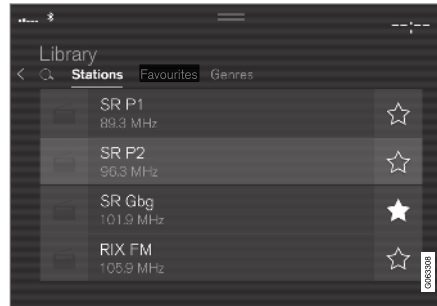
Changing radio band and radio station

There are instructions here for changing the radio band, the list in the radio band and the radio station in the selected list.

Changing radio band

Swipe to show the app view in the centre display and select the preferred radio band (e.g. **FM**), or open the driver display's app menu using the right-hand keypad on the steering wheel and make your selection from there.

Changing lists within the frequency band



1. Press **Library**.

2. Select playback from **Stations**, **Favourites**, **Genres** or **Ensembles**².
3. Tap on the desired station from the list.

Favourites - only plays back selected favourite channels.

Genres — only plays back channels broadcasting the selected genre/programme type, e.g. pop or classical.

Changing stations within the selected list

- Press on **⏮** or **⏭** under the centre display or the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.
- > The highlight moves up or down one place in the selected playlist.

You can also change radio station in the selected list via the centre display.

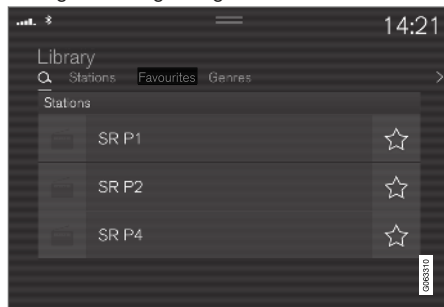
Related information

- Radio (p. 468)
- Searching for radio stations (p. 470)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 131)
- Setting radio favourites (p. 470)
- Settings for radio (p. 471)
- Application menu in driver display (p. 90)

² Only applies to digital radio (DAB*).

Searching for radio stations

The radio automatically compiles a station list of the radio stations within the area that are transmitting the strongest signals.



The parameters you can search on depend on the frequency band selected:

- AM — station and frequency.
- FM — station, genre and frequency.
- DAB* - ensembles and stations.

1. Press **Library**.
2. Press **Q**.
 - > Search view with keyboard is opened.
3. Enter the search terms.
 - > Searching takes place with each input of a character and the search results are shown by category.

Manual tuning



On changing over to manual tuning, the radio no longer changes frequency automatically when reception is poor.

- Press **Manual tuning**, pull the control or press **⏪** or **⏩**. With a long press, the search jumps to the next available station in the frequency band. It is also possible to use the right keypad on the steering wheel.

Related information

- Radio (p. 468)
- Start radio (p. 468)
- Changing radio band and radio station (p. 469)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 131)
- Settings for radio (p. 471)

Setting radio favourites

It is possible to add a radio channel to the **Radio favourites** app and the favourites list for the radio band (e.g. FM). Instructions on how to add and remove favourites can be found below.

Radio Favourites



Radio Favourites shows saved favourites from all frequency bands.

1. Open the app **Radio favourites** from the app view.
2. Tap on the desired station in the list to start listening.

Adding and removing radio favourites

- Tap on **☆** to add or remove a channel to or from frequency band favourites and Radio Favourites.

When a favourite is saved from a station list, the radio will automatically search for the best frequency. But if a favourite is saved from a manual station search, the radio does not automatically change to a stronger frequency.

When you remove a favourite, it will also be removed from frequency band favourites.


Related information

- Radio (p. 468)
- Start radio (p. 468)
- Searching for radio stations (p. 470)
- Changing radio band and radio station (p. 469)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 131)
- Settings for radio (p. 471)
- Application menu in driver display (p. 90)

Settings for radio

There are various radio functions to activate and deactivate.

Cancelling traffic messages

The broadcast of traffic messages etc. can be temporarily interrupted by tapping on  in the right-hand steering wheel keypad or by tapping on **Cancel** in the centre display.

Activating and deactivating radio functions

Drag down the top view and select **Settings** → **Media** and the desired radio band to view available functions.

AM/FM Radio

- **Show Broadcast Information:** shows information on programme content, artists, etc.
- **Freeze Program Name:** select to stop the programme service name from scrolling continuously. Instead it freezes after 20 seconds.
- **Select Announcements:**
 - **Local Interruptions:** interrupts the current media playback and broadcasts information about traffic disruptions in the neighbourhood. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished. The **Local Interruptions** function is a geographically restricted version of the **Traffic Announcements** function. The **Traffic**

Announcements function must be activated at the same time.

- **News** : interrupts the current media playback and broadcasts news. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the news broadcast is finished.
- **Alarm:** interrupts the current media playback and sends alerts about major accidents and disasters. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.
- **Traffic Announcements:** interrupts the current media playback and broadcasts information about traffic disruptions. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.

◀◀ **DAB* (digital radio)**

- **Sort Services:** option for how channels will be sorted. Either alphabetically or by service number.
- **DAB To DAB Handover:** starts the function for linking within DAB. If reception of a radio channel is lost, another channel is found automatically in another channel group (ensemble).
- **DAB To FM Handover:** starts the function for linking between DAB and FM. If reception of a radio channel is lost, an alternative FM frequency is searched for automatically.
- **Show Broadcast Information:** select to show radio text or selected types of radio text, e.g. artist.
- **Show Program Related Images:** select whether or not to show images for programmes on the screen.
- **Select Announcements:** select the types of messages to be received while DAB is playing. Selected messages will interrupt the current media playback to play back the message. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.
 - **Alarm:** interrupts the current media playback and sends alerts about major accidents and disasters. Playback of previous media

source is resumed when the message is finished.

- **Traffic Flash:** receives information about traffic disruptions.
- **News Flash:** receives news.
- **Transport Flash:** receives information about public transport, e.g. ferry and train timetables.
- **Warning/Services:** receives information about incidents of lower significance than the Alarm function, e.g. power failures.

Related information


- Radio (p. 468)
- Digital radio* (p. 473)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 110)


RDS radio

RDS (Radio Data System) means that the radio automatically changes to the strongest transmitter. RDS provides the ability to receive e.g. traffic information and to search for certain programme types.

RDS links FM transmitters into a network. An FM transmitter in such a network sends information that gives an RDS radio the following functions:

- Switch automatically to a stronger transmitter if reception in the area is poor.
- Search for programme category, e.g. programme types or traffic information.
- Receive text information on current radio programme.

 NOTE
Some radio stations do not use RDS or only selected parts of its functionality.

When broadcasting news or traffic messages, the radio can switch stations, interrupting the audio source currently in use. The radio returns to the previous audio source and volume when the set programme type is no longer broadcast. To go back earlier, press  on the right-hand steering wheel keypad or tap **Cancel** in the centre display.

Related information

- Radio (p. 468)
- Settings for radio (p. 471)

Digital radio*

Digital radio (DAB³) is a digital broadcasting system for radio. The radio supports DAB, DAB+ and DMB⁴.



The radio can be operated using voice recognition, the steering wheel keypad or the centre display.



The digital radio app is launched from app view in the centre display.

Digital radio is played back in the same way as other radio bands, such as FM. Besides the option to select playback from **Stations**, **Favourites** and **Genres**, there is also the option to select playback from subchannels and **Ensembles**. An ensemble is a set of radio channels (a channel group) broadcasting on the same frequency.

In the cases where the radio channel transmits its logotype, it is downloaded and shown beside the station name (download time varies).

DAB subchannel

Secondary components are usually named subchannels. These are temporary and can contain e.g. translations of the main programme into other languages. Subchannels are indicated with an arrow symbol in the channel list.

Related information

- Link between FM and digital radio* (p. 474)
- Changing radio band and radio station (p. 469)
- Searching for radio stations (p. 470)
- Setting radio favourites (p. 470)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 131)
- Settings for radio (p. 471)

³ Digital Audio Broadcasting

⁴ Digital Multimedia Broadcasting

Link between FM and digital radio*

The function enables the digital radio (DAB) to switch from a channel with poor or no reception to the same channel in another channel group (ensemble) with better reception, within DAB and/or between DAB and FM.

DAB to DAB and DAB to FM linking

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Media** → **DAB**.
3. Tick/untick **DAB To DAB Handover** and/or **DAB To FM Handover** in order to activate/deactivate the respective functions.

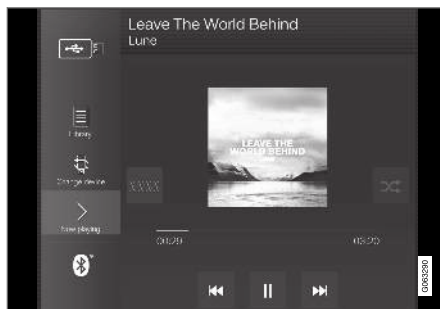
Related information

- Digital radio* (p. 473)
- Radio (p. 468)
- Settings for radio (p. 471)

Media player

The media player can play back audio from external audio sources connected via the USB port or Bluetooth. It can also play back video format via the USB port.

When the car is connected to the internet, it is also possible to listen to web radio, audio books and music services via apps.



The media player is operated from the centre display, but several functions can be operated using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad or voice control.

The radio is operated in the media player and is described in a separate section.

Related information

- Media playback (p. 475)
- Controlling and changing media (p. 476)
- Searching media (p. 477)
- Apps (p. 465)
- Radio (p. 468)
- Video (p. 478)
- Media via Bluetooth® (p. 480)
- Media via USB port (p. 480)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)

Media playback

The media player is controlled from the centre display. Several functions can also be operated using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad or voice control.

The media player also operates the radio, which is described in a separate section.

Starting the media source



App view. (Generic image, basic apps vary by market and model.)

USB memory

1. Insert the USB memory.
2. Open the app **USB** from the app view.
3. Select what to play back.
 - > Playback begins.

Mp3 player and iPod®

i NOTE

To start playback from iPod, use the iPod app (not USB).

When an iPod is used as audio source, the car's audio and media system has a menu structure that is similar to the iPod player's own menu structure.

1. Connect media source.
2. Start playback from the connected media source.
3. Open the app (**iPod, USB**) from the app view.
 - > Playback begins.

Bluetooth connected device

1. Activate Bluetooth in the media source.
2. Connect media source.
3. Start playback from the connected media source.

4. Open the app **Bluetooth** from the app view.
 - > Playback begins.

Media with Internet connection

Play back media from Internet-connected apps:

1. Connect the car to the Internet.
2. Open the current app from the app view.
 - > Playback begins.

Read the separate section on how apps are downloaded.

Video

1. Connect media source.
2. Open the app **USB** from the app view.
3. Tap on the title of the desired item to play back.
 - > Playback begins.

Apple CarPlay

CarPlay is described in a separate section.

Android Auto

Android Auto is described in a separate section.

Related information

- Handling the application menu in the driver display (p. 90)
- Radio (p. 468)
- Controlling and changing media (p. 476)
- Connecting a device via USB port (p. 481)
- Connecting a device via Bluetooth® (p. 480)



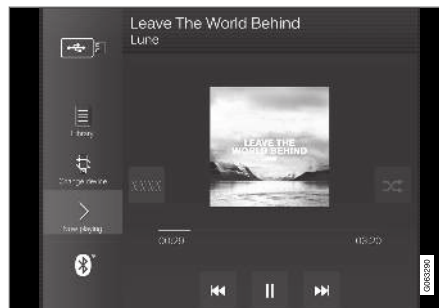
- Downloading apps (p. 466)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- Video (p. 478)
- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 483)
- Android Auto* (p. 486)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 131)
- Compatible media formats (p. 505)

Controlling and changing media

The playback of media can be controlled with voice control, steering wheel keypad or the centre display.



The media player can be operated by voice recognition, from the steering wheel keypad or the centre display.



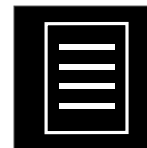
Volume - turn the control knob under the centre display or press ▲ ▼ on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad in order to increase or decrease the volume.

Play/pause - tap on the image belonging to the song being played back, the physical button under the centre display or ○ on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Change track/song - tap on the desired track in the centre display, press on ⏮ or ⏭ under the centre display or on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Fast forward/move in time - tap on the time axis in the centre display and drag sideways, or press and hold ⏮ or ⏭ under the centre display or on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Changing media - select from previous sources in the app, in the app view, press on the desired app or select with the steering wheel's right-hand keypad via the app menu ☰.



Library - tap on the button to play back from the library.



Shuffle - tap on the button to shuffle the playback order.



Similar - tap on the button in order to use Gracenote to search for similar music on the USB device and to create a playlist from it. The playlist can contain a maximum of 50 songs.



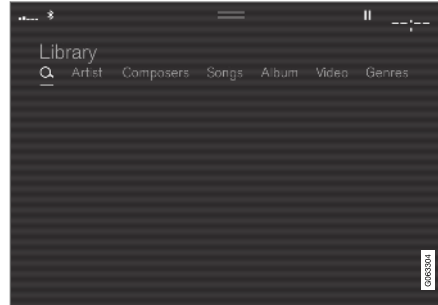
Change device - tap on the button in order to switch between USB devices when several are connected.

Related information

- Media player (p. 474)
- Searching media (p. 477)
- Audio settings (p. 464)
- Apps (p. 465)
- Gracenote® (p. 478)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 131)

Searching media

It is possible to search by artist, composer, song titles, album, video, audio book, playlist and, when the car is connected to the Internet, podcasts (digital media via Internet).



1. Press **Q**.
> Search view with keyboard is opened.
2. Enter the search terms.
3. Press **Search**.
> Connected devices are searched and the search results are listed by category.

Swipe sideways across the screen to show each category separately.

Related information

- Media player (p. 474)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)

- Media playback (p. 475)
- Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display (p. 115)

Gracenote®

Gracenote identifies artist, album, song titles and associated images, which are shown during playback.

Gracenote MusicID® is a standard for music recognition.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Media → Gracenote®**.
3. Select settings for Gracenote data:
 - **Gracenote® Online Search** - searches in Gracenote's online database for playing media.
 - **Gracenote® Multiple Results** - selects how to display Gracenote data if there are more than one search results.
 - 1 - the file's original data are used.
 - 2 - Gracenote data are used.
 - 3 - Gracenote or original data can be selected.
 - **None** - no results are shown.

Updating Gracenote

The content of the Gracenote database is updated continuously. Download the latest update for optimal functionality. For information and download, see support.volvocars.com.

Related information

- Media playback (p. 475)
- License agreement for audio and media (p. 507)

Video

Videos on USB-connected devices can be played back using the media player.

No picture is shown when the car starts to move, but only the audio is played back. The picture is shown again when the car is stationary.

Information on compatible formats for media can be found in a separate section.

Related information

- Playing a video (p. 479)
- Playing back DivX® (p. 479)
- Settings for video (p. 479)
- Compatible media formats (p. 505)

Playing a video

Videos are played using the **USB** app in the app view.

1. Connecting a media source (USB device).
2. Open the app **USB** from the app view.
3. Tap on the title of the desired item to play back.
 - > Playback begins.

Related information

- Video (p. 478)
- Playing back DivX® (p. 479)
- Settings for video (p. 479)
- Compatible media formats (p. 505)

Playing back DivX®

This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play back purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) films.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Tap **Video → DivX® VOD** and retrieve the registration code.
3. Go to vod.divx.com for more information and to complete the registration.

Related information

- Video (p. 478)
- Playing a video (p. 479)
- Settings for video (p. 479)
- Compatible media formats (p. 505)

Settings for video

It is possible to change certain video playback settings, e.g. language.

With the video player in full screen mode, or by opening the top view and pressing **Settings → Video**, the following can be adjusted: **Audio Language, Off** and **Subtitle Language**.

Related information

- Video (p. 478)

Media via Bluetooth®

The car's media player is equipped with Bluetooth and can wirelessly play audio files from external Bluetooth devices, such as mobile phones and tablets.

For the media player to be able to play back audio files wirelessly from an external device, the device must first be connected to the car via Bluetooth.

Related information

- Connecting a device via Bluetooth® (p. 480)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 489)
- Media playback (p. 475)
- Compatible media formats (p. 505)

Connecting a device via Bluetooth®

Connect a Bluetooth® device to the car for wireless playback of media and to provide the car with an Internet connection where possible.

Many phones on the market now have wireless Bluetooth® technology, but not all of them are fully compatible with the car. For compatibility, see support.volvocars.com.

The procedure for connecting a media device is the same as for connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth®.

Related information

- Media via Bluetooth® (p. 480)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 489)
- Media playback (p. 475)

Media via USB port

An external audio source, e.g. an iPod® or MP3 player, can be connected to the audio system via the car's USB port.

Devices with rechargeable batteries are recharged when connected via USB and the ignition is in position **I**, **II** or the engine is running.

The content of the external source can be loaded more quickly if it only consists of compatible formats. Video files can also be played back via the USB port.

Certain MP3 players have their own file system that the car does not support.

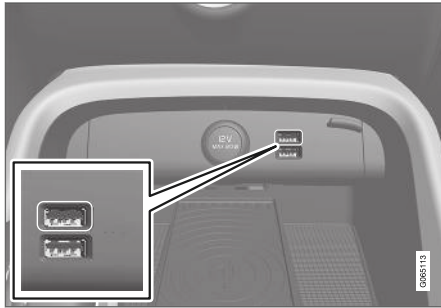
Related information

- Connecting a device via USB port (p. 481)
- Media playback (p. 475)
- Video (p. 478)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)
- Technical specifications for USB devices (p. 506)
- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 483)
- Android Auto* (p. 486)

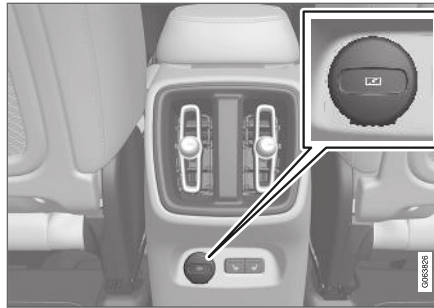
Connecting a device via USB port

An external audio source, e.g. an iPod® or MP3 player, can be connected to the audio system via one of the car's USB ports.

The phone must be connected to the USB port with white frame (when there are two USB ports) when using Apple CarPlay* and Android Auto*.



USB inputs (type A) under the centre display.



USB input* (type C) on rear of tunnel console for charging telephones and tablets for example⁵.

Related information

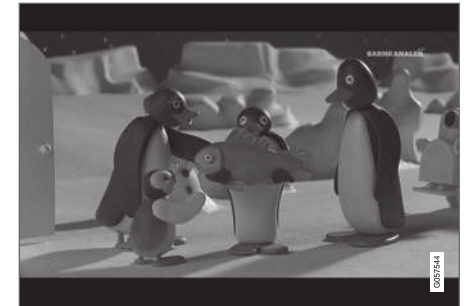
- Media playback (p. 475)
- Media via USB port (p. 480)
- Media player (p. 474)
- Technical specifications for USB devices (p. 506)
- Technical specifications for USB devices (p. 506)
- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 483)
- Android Auto* (p. 486)

⁵ It is not possible to playback media in the car's audio or media system via this input.

⁶ Applies to certain markets.

TV*⁶

No images are shown once the car reaches a certain speed but the sound will be heard the whole time. The picture returns once when the car is almost or completely stationary. The TV is controlled from the centre display. Several functions can also be controlled from the right keypad on the steering wheel or with voice recognition.



Related information

- Using the TV* (p. 482)
- Settings for TV* (p. 482)

Using the TV*7

The TV is started from the app view. Tap on the **TV app** and select a channel.

The TV automatically searches for the channels with best reception.

Change the list of visible channels

1. Press **Library**
2. Select playback from **TV-channels** or **Favourites**.
3. Select the desired channel.

Change channel from selected list

- Press on **⏮** or **⏭** under the centre display or on the steering wheel keypad.
 - > The highlight moves up or down one place in the selected playlist

You can also change stations from the centre display.

Favourites

A TV channel can be saved as a favourite:

- Tap on **☆** in order to add/remove a channel to/from the favourites list.

TV guide

A programme guide is available with information about TV programmes for up to 48 hours.

- Tap on **Guide** to show information about TV programmes.

i NOTE

If the car is moved within the country, e.g. from city to city, it is not certain that **Favourites** are available since the frequency may have changed.

Related information

- TV* (p. 481)
- Settings for TV* (p. 482)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 131)
- License agreement for audio and media (p. 507)

Settings for TV*8

The option to make certain settings is available, both in the top view or when the TV is in full screen mode.

With the TV in full screen mode, or by opening the top view and pressing **Settings → Media → TV**, the following can be adjusted:

- **Subtitle Language**
- **Audio Language**

Pict. format

Tapping on **Picture format** enables you to choose which format the TV picture should be shown in.

1. **Auto** - The TV picture is shown in the image format being transmitted.
2. **Auto fill** - The TV picture is maximised without cropping.

Related information

- TV* (p. 481)
- Using the TV* (p. 482)
- Compatible media formats (p. 505)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 121)

⁷ Applies to certain markets.

Apple® CarPlay®*


CarPlay gives you the option to listen to music, make phone calls, get directions, send/receive messages and use Siri, all while you stay focused on your driving.




CarPlay works with selected Apple devices. If the car does not already support CarPlay there is the option to install it retroactively. Contact a Volvo retailer to install CarPlay.

Information about which apps are supported and which phones are compatible is available on Apple's website: www.apple.com/ios/carplay/. Using apps that are not compatible with CarPlay may sometimes mean that the connection between an iPhone and the car is broken. Please note that Volvo is not responsible for the content in CarPlay.

When using map navigation via CarPlay no guidance is shown in the driver display, but only in the centre display.

The CarPlay apps can be controlled via the centre display, phone or using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad (applies to certain functions). The apps can also be voice-controlled using Siri. A long press on the steering wheel button 

starts voice control using Siri and a short press activates the car's own voice control. If Siri breaks off too early, hold the steering wheel button  ⁹ depressed.

By using Apple CarPlay you acknowledge the following: Apple CarPlay is a service provided by Apple Inc. under its terms and conditions. Volvo Cars is thus not responsible for Apple CarPlay or its features/applications. When using Apple CarPlay, certain information from your car (including its position) is transferred to your iPhone. In relation to Volvo Cars, you are fully responsible for your and any others person's use of Apple CarPlay.

Related information

- Using Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 483)
- Settings for Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 485)
- Voice recognition (p. 128)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 121)

Using Apple® CarPlay®*

To use CarPlay, Siri voice control must be activated in your phone. The phone must also have an Internet connection via Wi-Fi or the mobile network.

Connect an iPhone and start CarPlay

NOTE

CarPlay can only be used if Bluetooth is deactivated. A phone or media player connected to the car via Bluetooth will therefore not be available when CarPlay is active. An alternative Internet source must be used to connect to the Internet for the car's apps. Use Wi-Fi or the car's built-in modem*.

1. Connect an iPhone to the USB port. In the cases where there are two USB ports, the one with the white frame around the port must be used.
2. Read the information in the pop-up window and then tap on **OK**.
3. Tap on **Apple CarPlay** in the app view.

⁸ Applies to certain markets.

⁹ Apple and CarPlay are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

4. Read the terms and conditions and then tap on **Accept** to connect.
 - > The tile with CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown.
5. Tap on the desired app.
 - > The app starts.

Starting CarPlay

CarPlay is started according to the following after an iPhone has been connected.

1. Connect an iPhone to the USB port. In the cases where there are two USB ports, the one with the white frame around the port must be used.
 - > **If the setting for automatic start is selected** - the name of the phone is shown.
2. Tap on the phone name - the tile with CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown.
3. If the tile with CarPlay is not opened, tap on **Apple CarPlay** in the app view.
 - > The tile with CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown.
4. Tap on the desired app.
 - > The app starts.

CarPlay runs in the background if another app is started in the same tile. To show CarPlay in the

tile again - tap on the CarPlay icon in the app view.

Switch the connection between CarPlay and iPod

CarPlay to iPod

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Continue to **Communication** → **Apple CarPlay**.
3. Untick the box for the Apple device that shall no longer start CarPlay automatically when the USB cable is connected.
4. Disconnect and connect the Apple device to the USB port.
5. Open the app **iPod** from the app view.

iPod to CarPlay

1. Tap on **Apple CarPlay** in the app view.
2. Read the information in the pop-up window and then tap on **OK**.
3. Disconnect and connect the Apple device to the USB port.
 - > The tile with Apple CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown¹⁰.

Related information

- Connecting a device via USB port (p. 481)
- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 483)

- Settings for Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 485)
- Connecting the car to the Internet via a mobile device (Wi-Fi) (p. 500)
- Connect the car to the Internet via car modem (SIM card) (p. 500)
- Voice recognition (p. 128)

¹⁰ Apple, CarPlay, iPhone and iPod are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

Settings for Apple® CarPlay®*

Settings for Apple device connected with CarPlay¹¹.

Automatic start

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Continue to **Communication → Apple CarPlay** and select setting:
 - Tick the box - CarPlay starts automatically when the USB cable is connected.
 - Untick the box - CarPlay does not start automatically when the USB cable is connected.

A maximum of 20 Apple devices can be stored in the list. When the list is full and a new device is connected the oldest one is deleted.

To delete the list, the settings must be reset in the centre display (factory reset).

System volumes

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Tap on **Sound → System Volumes** and make the settings for the following:
 - **Voice Control**
 - **Navi Voice Guidance**
 - **Phone Ringtone**

Related information

- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 483)
- Using Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 483)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 121)

Tips for using Apple® CarPlay®*

Here are some useful tips for using CarPlay®.

- Update your iPhone with the latest version of iOS operating system and ensure that the apps have been updated.
- In the event of a problem with CarPlay, disconnect the telephone from the USB port and reconnect. Otherwise, try to close the app on the telephone that is not working and then restart the app, or try closing all apps and restart your phone.
- If the apps do not appear when CarPlay starts (black screen), try minimising and expanding the tile for CarPlay.
- Using apps that are not compatible with CarPlay may sometimes mean that the connection between the phone and the car is broken. Information about supported apps and compatible telephone models can be found on Apple's website. You can also search for CarPlay in the App Store to find information about apps that are compatible with CarPlay on your market.
- CarPlay only works with iPhone¹².

NOTE

Availability and functionality may vary depending on market.

¹¹ Apple and CarPlay are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

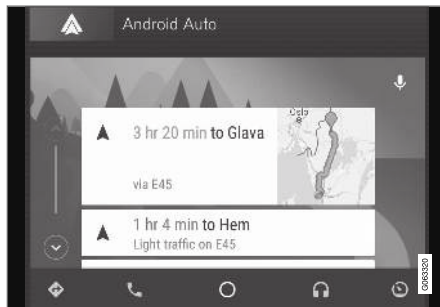
¹² Apple, CarPlay and iPhone are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

◀◀ Related information

- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 483)

Android Auto*

Android Auto gives you the option to listen to music, make phone calls, get directions and use car-adapted apps from an Android device. Android Auto works with selected Android devices.




Information about which apps are supported and which phones are compatible is available on the website: www.android.com/auto/. For third-party apps, see Google Play. Please note that Volvo is not responsible for the content in Android Auto.

Android Auto is started from the app view. After Android Auto has been started once, the app will be started automatically the next time the device is connected. Automatic start can be deactivated under settings.

i NOTE

When a phone is connected to Android Auto it is possible to stream via Bluetooth to another media player. Bluetooth is active while Android Auto is being used.

When using map navigation via Android Auto there is no guidance in the driver display, but only in the centre display.

Android Auto can be controlled via the centre display using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad or voice control. A long press on the steering wheel button  starts voice recognition control and a short press deactivates.

By using Android Auto, you acknowledge the following: Android Auto is a service provided by Google Inc. under its terms and conditions. Volvo Cars is not responsible for Android Auto or its features or applications. When you use Android Auto, your car transfers certain information (including its location) to your connected Android phone. You are fully responsible for your and any other person's use of Android Auto.

Related information

- Using Android Auto* (p. 487)
- Settings for Android Auto* (p. 487)

Using Android Auto*

To use the app **Android Auto**, the telephone must be connected to the car's USB port.

The first time an Android is connected

1. Connect the Android phone to the USB port. In the cases where there are two USB ports, the one with the white frame around the port must be used.
2. Read the information in the pop-up window and then tap on **OK**.
3. Tap on **Android Auto** in the app view.
4. Read the terms and conditions and then tap on **Accept** to connect.
 - > The tile with Android Auto is opened and compatible apps are shown.
5. Tap on the desired app.
 - > The app starts.

Previously connected Android

1. Connect the phone to the USB port.
 - > **If the setting for automatic start is selected** - the name of the phone is shown.
2. Tap on the phone name - the tile with Android Auto is opened and compatible apps are shown.

3. **If the setting for automatic start is not selected** - open the **Android Auto** app from the app view.
 - > The tile with Android Auto is opened and compatible apps are shown.
4. Tap on the desired app.
 - > The app starts.

Android Auto runs in the background if another app is started in the same tile. To show Android Auto in the tile again - tap on the Android Auto icon in the app view.

Related information

- Android Auto* (p. 486)
- Settings for Android Auto* (p. 487)
- Connecting a device via USB port (p. 481)
- Voice recognition (p. 128)

Settings for Android Auto*

Settings for a phone that has been connected the first time with Android Auto.

Automatic start

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** → **Android Auto** and select setting:
 - Tick the box - Android Auto starts automatically when the USB cable is connected.
 - Untick the box - Android Auto does not start automatically when the USB cable is connected.

A maximum of 20 Android devices can be stored in the list. When the list is full and a new device is connected the oldest one is deleted.

A factory reset has to be executed in order to clear the list.

System volumes

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Tap on **Sound** → **System Volumes** and make the settings for the following:
 - **Voice Control**
 - **Navi Voice Guidance**
 - **Phone Ringtone**



◀◀ **Related information**

- Android Auto* (p. 486)
- Using Android Auto* (p. 487)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 121)

Tips for using Android Auto*

Here are some useful tips for using Android Auto.

- Ensure that your apps are updated.
- When starting the car, wait until the centre display has started, connect the telephone and then open Android Auto from the app view.
- In the event of problems with Android Auto, disconnect your Android phone from the USB port and then reconnect via USB. Otherwise, try closing the app on the phone and then restarting the app.
- When a telephone is connected to Android Auto it is still possible to playback media via Bluetooth to another media player. The Bluetooth function is on when Android Auto is used.

Related information

- Android Auto* (p. 486)

Phone

A phone with Bluetooth can be connected wirelessly to the car's built-in hands-free system.

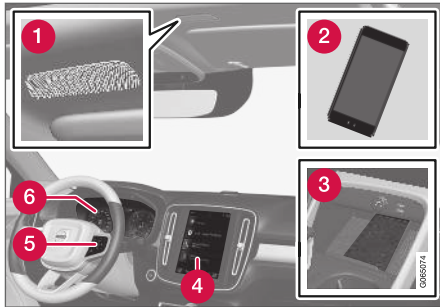
The audio and media system acts as hands-free, with the facility to remotely control a selection of the phone's functions. The phone can still be operated with its own keys even if it is connected to the car.

When a phone has been connected online and connected with the car, it can be used make calls, send/receive messages, play back media wirelessly and be used as an Internet connection.



The phone is operated from the centre display, but some operations are also available via voice recognition and the app menu, which are accessed from the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

Overview



- 1 Microphone.
- 2 Phone.
- 3 Wireless phone charger.
- 4 Phone operation from centre display.
- 5 Keypad for operating phone functions that are shown in the driver display and voice recognition.
- 6 Driver display.

Related information

- Managing phone calls (p. 493)
- Managing the phone book (p. 496)
- Managing text messages (p. 494)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 489)

- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically (p. 491)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually (p. 492)
- Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 492)
- Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones (p. 493)
- Removing a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 493)
- Wireless phone charger* (p. 497)
- Settings for phone (p. 496)
- Voice recognition (p. 128)
- Handling the application menu in the driver display (p. 90)
- Audio settings (p. 464)
- Connecting the car to the Internet via a mobile device (Bluetooth) (p. 499)

Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time

Connect a phone with Bluetooth activated to then be able to make calls from the car, send/receive messages, play back media wirelessly and connect the car to the Internet.

It is possible to have two Bluetooth devices connected at once, in which case one of them can only play back wirelessly. The most recently connected phone will automatically be connected to make calls, send/receive messages, play back media and provide an Internet connection. It is possible to change the use of the phone in the settings for **Bluetooth Devices**.


After the device has been connected/registered a first time via Bluetooth, it no longer needs to be visible/discoverable, but only have Bluetooth activated. To connect the car to the Internet via a phone, tethering must also be activated on the phone. A maximum of 20 connected Bluetooth devices can be stored in the car.

There are two options for connecting. Either search the phone from the car or search the car from the phone.

Option 1 - search phone from car

1. Make the phone searchable/visible via Bluetooth.




- ◀ 2. To connect the car to the Internet via the phone's Bluetooth, activate tethering (portable/personal hotspot) via Bluetooth on the phone.
3. Open the tile for the phone.
- If there is no phone connected to the car, tap on **Add phone**.
 - If there is a phone connected to the car, tap on **Change** . In the pop-up window, tap on **Add phone**.
- > Available Bluetooth devices are listed. The list is updated as new devices are detected.
4. Tap on the name of the phone to be connected.
5. Check that the specified number code in the car matches that in the phone. In which case, choose to accept in both places.
6. On the phone, choose to accept or reject any options for phone contacts and messages.

NOTE

- The message function must be activated in certain phones.
- Not all mobile phones are fully compatible and may therefore not show contacts and messages in the car.

Option 2 - search car from phone

1. Open the tile for the phone.
 - If there is no phone connected to the car, tap on **Add phone** → **Make car discoverable**.
 - If there is a phone connected to the car, tap on **Change** . In the pop-up window, tap on **Add phone** → **Make car discoverable**.
2. Activate Bluetooth on the phone.
3. To connect the car to the Internet via the phone's Bluetooth, activate tethering (portable/personal hotspot) via Bluetooth on the phone.
4. Search on the phone for Bluetooth devices.
 - > Available Bluetooth devices are listed.
5. Select the name of the car on the phone.
6. A pop-up window for the connection is shown in the car. Confirm the connection.
7. Check that the specified number code in the car matches that in the external device. In which case, choose to accept in both places.
8. On the phone, choose to accept or reject any options for phone contacts and messages.

NOTE

- The message function must be activated in certain phones.
- Not all mobile phones are fully compatible and may therefore not show contacts and messages in the car.

NOTE

If the phone's operating system is updated then the connection may be broken. In which case, delete the phone from the car and then connect again.

Compatible phones

Many phones on the market now have wireless Bluetooth technology, but not all of them are fully compatible with the car. For compatibility, see support.volvocars.com.

Related information

- Phone (p. 488)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically (p. 491)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually (p. 492)
- Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 492)
- Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones (p. 493)

- Removing a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 493)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 497)
- Connecting the car to the Internet via a mobile device (Bluetooth) (p. 499)

Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically

It is possible to connect a phone to the car automatically via Bluetooth. The phone has to have been connected to the car for the first time.

It is only the two last connected phones that can be connected automatically.

1. Activate Bluetooth in the phone before setting the car in ignition position I.

To connect the car to the Internet at the same time, tethering (portable/personal hotspot) in the phone must be activated.

2. Set the car in ignition position I or higher.
 - > The phone will connect.

Related information

- Phone (p. 488)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 489)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually (p. 492)
- Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 492)
- Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones (p. 493)
- Removing a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 493)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 497)

- Connecting the car to the Internet via a mobile device (Bluetooth) (p. 499)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)

Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually

It is possible to connect a phone to the car manually via Bluetooth. The phone has to have been connected to the car for the first time.

1. Activate Bluetooth on the phone.

To connect the car to the Internet at the same time, tethering (portable/personal hot-spot) in the phone must be activated.

2. Open the tile for the phone.
 - > Connected phones are listed.
3. Tap on the name of the phone to be connected.
 - > The phone will connect.

Related information

- Phone (p. 488)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 489)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically (p. 491)
- Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 492)
- Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones (p. 493)
- Removing a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 493)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 497)

- Connecting the car to the Internet via a mobile device (Bluetooth) (p. 499)

Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone


Disconnect a Bluetooth-connected phone from the car by deactivating Bluetooth on your phone. When the phone is out of range of the car it is automatically disconnected. If disconnection occurs during an active call then the call can be continued on the phone.

Related information

- Phone (p. 488)
- Settings for phone (p. 496)
- Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones (p. 493)
- Removing a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 493)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 497)

Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones

It is possible to switch between a number of Bluetooth-connected phones.

1. Open the tile for the phone.
2. Tap on **Change**  or drag down the top view and tap on **Settings** → **Communication** → **Bluetooth Devices** → **Add device**.
 - > Available Bluetooth devices are listed.
3. Tap on the phone to be connected.

Related information

- Phone (p. 488)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 489)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 497)
- Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 492)
- Removing a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 493)

Removing a Bluetooth-connected phone

It is possible to remove phones from the list of registered Bluetooth devices.

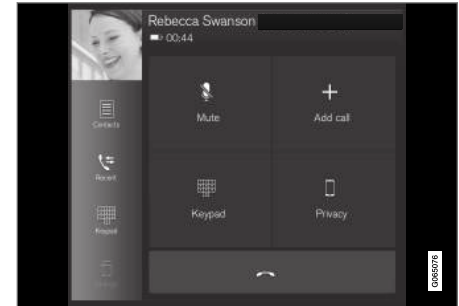
1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** → **Bluetooth Devices**.
 - > Registered Bluetooth devices are listed.
3. Tap on the phone to be removed.
4. Tap on **Remove device** and confirm your selection.
 - > The phone is no longer registered to the car.

Related information

- Phone (p. 488)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 489)
- Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 492)
- Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones (p. 493)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 497)




Managing phone calls


Call handling in the car for a Bluetooth-connected phone.



Generic illustration.



Making phone calls

1. Open the tile for the phone.
2. Select call from: call history, enter number using the keypad or via the contact list. It is possible to search or browse in the contact list. Tap on  in the contact list in order to add a contact under **Favourites**.
3. Press .
4. Tap on  to end the call.

You can also make calls from the call log via the app menu, which is accessed from the right-hand steering wheel keypad .


◀ Making multi-party calls

During a call:

1. Press **Add call**.
2. Choose to make a call from the call log, favourites or the contact list.
3. Tap on an entry/row in the call log, or tap on  alongside the contact in the contact list.
4. Tap on **Swap call** to switch between the parties.
5. Tap on  to end the active call.

Conference calls

During an active multi-party call:


1. Tap on **Join calls** to merge the active multi-party call.
2. Tap on  to end the call.

Incoming phone calls

Incoming phone calls are shown in the driver display and the centre display. Manage the call on the right-hand steering wheel keypad or in the centre display.

1. Tap on **Answer/Reject**.
2. Tap on  to end the call.

Incoming phone call during an active call

1. Tap on **Answer/Reject**.
2. Tap on  to end the call.

Private call

- During the current call, press **Privacy** and select setting:
 - **Switch to mobile phone** - the hands-free function is disconnected and the call continues on your mobile phone.
 - **Driver focused** - the microphone in the roof on the passenger side is switched off and the call continues with the car's handsfree function.

Related information

- Phone (p. 488)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 489)
- Controlling a telephone with voice recognition (p. 130)
- Handling the application menu in the driver display (p. 90)
- Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display (p. 115)
- Managing the phone book (p. 496)
- Managing text messages (p. 494)
- Audio settings (p. 464)

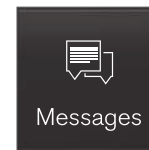
Managing text messages

Message handling in the car for a Bluetooth-connected phone.

In some phones, the message function must be activated. Not all phones are compatible. In such cases, they cannot display contacts and messages in the car. For compatibility, see support.volvocars.com.

Managing text messages in the centre display

Text messages are only shown in the centre display if the setting is selected.



Press **Messages** in the app view to manage text messages in the centre display.

Reading text messages in the centre display



Press the icon to get the message read aloud.

Sending text messages in the centre display¹³

1. You can reply to a message or create a new message.
 - Reply to message — tap on the contact whose message you wish to reply to, then tap on **Answer**.
 - Create new message - tap on **Create new**. Select a contact or enter a number.
2. Compose the message.
3. Press **Send**.

Managing text messages in the driver display

Text messages are only shown in the driver display if the setting is selected.

Reading a new text message in the driver display

- To have the message read aloud – select **Read out** with the steering wheel keypad.

Dictating a reply in the driver display

After the text message has been read out, it is possible to reply briefly with dictation if the car is connected to the Internet.

- Press **Answer** with the steering wheel keypad. A dictation dialogue starts.

Message notification

It is possible to activate and deactivate notifications in the text message settings.

Related information

- Phone (p. 488)
- Settings for text messages (p. 495)
- Settings for phone (p. 496)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- Controlling a telephone with voice recognition (p. 130)
- Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display (p. 115)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 489)

Settings for text messages

Settings for text messages on connected phone.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication → Text Messages** and select settings:
 - **Notification in centre display** - shows message notifications in the centre display's status bar.
 - **Notification in driver display** - displays notifications in the driver's display and incoming messages can be managed using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.
 - **Text message tone** - select tone for incoming text messages.

Related information

- Phone (p. 488)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 489)
- Managing text messages (p. 494)
- Settings for phone (p. 496)

¹³ Only certain phones can broadcast messages from the car. For compatibility, see support.volvocars.com.

Managing the phone book

Contact handling in the car for a Bluetooth-connected phone.



- 1 Browse between the letters and # to find a matching contact. Depending on existing contacts in the phone book, only matching letters are shown.
- 2 **Search contacts** - tap on to search for a phone number or name in the contact list.
- 3 **Favourites** - tap on to add/remove a contact to/from the favourites list.

NOTE

Only contacts from an active Bluetooth-connected phone are shown in the centre display. Up to 3000 contacts can be shown.

Sorting

The contact list is sorted in alphabetical order where special characters and numbers are sorted under #. It is possible to sort by first name or surname, and this setting is adjusted in the telephone setup.

Related information

- Phone (p. 488)
- Settings for phone (p. 496)
- Controlling a telephone with voice recognition (p. 130)
- Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display (p. 115)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 489)

Settings for phone

When the telephone is connected to the car, the following settings can be made:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** → **Phone** and select settings:
 - **Ringtones** - select ringtone. It is possible to use a ringtone from the phone or the car. Some phones are not fully compatible and their ringtones may therefore not be available for use in the car. For compatibility, see support.volvocars.com.
 - **Sort order** - select sort order of contact list.

Related information

- Phone (p. 488)
- Settings for text messages (p. 495)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 497)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 489)
- Audio settings (p. 464)

Settings for Bluetooth devices

Settings for Bluetooth-connected devices.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** → **Bluetooth Devices** and select settings:
 - **Add device** - starts the pairing of a new device.
 - **Previously paired devices** - lists connected devices.
 - **Remove device** - removes the connected device.
 - **Allowed services for this device** - sets device usage options: calling, sending/receiving messages, streaming media and as Internet connection.
 - **Internet connection** - connects the car to the Internet via the device's Bluetooth connection.

Related information

- Phone (p. 488)
- Settings for phone (p. 496)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 489)

Wireless phone charger*

There is a charging plate for wireless phone charging located under the centre display.



A condition for being able to charge the phone is that it supports wireless charging (Qi). Phones not equipped with wireless charging receivers can often be supplemented with a shell that makes wireless charging possible.

Related information

- Phone (p. 488)
- Using the wireless telephone charger* (p. 497)

Using the wireless telephone charger*

The rubber plate under the centre display makes it possible to charge phones without the need to use the phone's cable.



Wireless phone charger in front of gear lever.

- Position the phone in the centre of the charging plate.
 - > Phone charging is started.



If phone charging does not start, check that the phone supports wireless charging (Qi).

If the phone is positioned incorrectly, or if objects prevent charging on the charging plate, a message is shown in the centre display.



⚠ WARNING

Keep the phone and charging plate free of other objects while charging to avoid overheating.

Related information

- Phone (p. 488)
- Wireless phone charger* (p. 497)

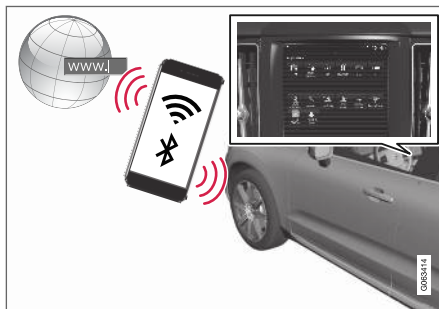
Internet-connected car*

When the car is connected to the Internet, it is possible – for example – to use web radio and music services via apps, download software and contact your retailer from the car.

The car is connected via Bluetooth, Wi-Fi or with the car's built-in modem*.

When the car is online, its Internet connection (Wi-Fi hotspot) can be shared to allow other devices to use the Internet connection¹⁴.

Connection status is indicated by a symbol in the centre display's status bar.



i NOTE

Data is transferred when using the internet (data traffic), which can have a cost.

Activation of data roaming can result in further charges.

Contact your network operator about the cost for data traffic.

i NOTE

When using Apple CarPlay, it is only possible to connect the car to the Internet using Wi-Fi or the car modem*.

i NOTE

When using Android Auto, it is possible to connect the car to the Internet using Wi-Fi, Bluetooth or the car modem*.

Read **Terms and Conditions for Services** and **Customer Privacy Policy** at support.volvocars.com before connecting the car to the Internet.

¹⁴ This does not apply in the case of connection with Wi-Fi.

Related information

- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 110)
- Connecting the car to the Internet via a mobile device (Bluetooth) (p. 499)
- Connecting the car to the Internet via a mobile device (Wi-Fi) (p. 500)
- Connect the car to the Internet via car modem (SIM card) (p. 500)
- Apps (p. 465)
- No or poor Internet connection (p. 503)
- Sharing Internet access from the car via a Wi-Fi hotspot (p. 502)
- Remove Wi-Fi network (p. 503)
- Wi-Fi technologies and security (p. 504)
- Volvo ID (p. 26)
- User terms and conditions and data sharing (p. 504)

Connecting the car to the Internet via a mobile device (Bluetooth)

Create an Internet connection via Bluetooth by sharing your phone's Internet access and access several online services in the car.

The phone and network operator must support tethering (sharing the Internet connection) and the subscription plan must include data.

1. To be able to connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone, the phone has to have already been connected to the car via Bluetooth for a first time. Ensure that the personal hotspot (portable/personal hotspot) is activated in your phone.
2. If the phone has been connected via Bluetooth previously, press **Settings** in the centre display top view.
3. In the centre display: Press **Communication** → **Bluetooth Devices**.
4. Tick the box for **Bluetooth Internet connection** under the heading **Internet connection**.
 - > Your car is now connected to the Internet via the Bluetooth-connected phone.

NOTE

When using Apple CarPlay, it is only possible to connect the car to the Internet using Wi-Fi or the car modem*.

Related information

- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- Connect the car to the Internet via car modem (SIM card) (p. 500)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 489)
- Connecting the car to the Internet via a mobile device (Wi-Fi) (p. 500)
- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 483)
- No or poor Internet connection (p. 503)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 497)

Connecting the car to the Internet via a mobile device (Wi-Fi)

Create an Internet connection via Wi-Fi by sharing your phone's Internet access and access several online services in the car.

The phone and network operator must support tethering (sharing the Internet connection) and the subscription plan must include data.



1. Activate tethering (portable/personal hot-spot) on the phone.
2. Press **Settings** in the top view.
3. Continue to **Communication** → **Wi-Fi**.
4. Activate/deactivate by ticking/unticking the box for Wi-Fi.
5. Tap on the network name of the network to be connected.
6. Enter the network password.
7. If another connection source has been used in the past - confirm the option to change connection.
 - > The car connects to the network.

Note that certain phones switch off tethering after the contact with the car has been disconnected, e.g. when leaving the car and until the next time it is used. The tethering in the phone therefore needs to be reactivated the next time it is used.

When a phone is connected to the car, it is saved for future use. When the maximum number of saved phones (50) is reached, the first connected phones are deleted. To show a list of saved networks or manually delete saved networks, go to **Settings** → **Communication** → **Wi-Fi** → **Saved networks**.

Technical and safety requirements for Wi-Fi connection, are described in a separate section.

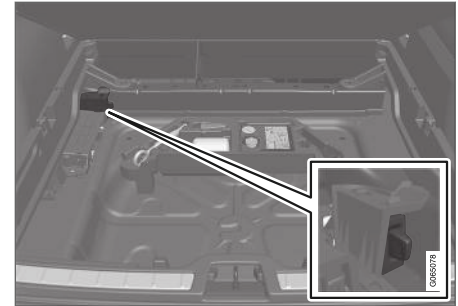
Related information

- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- Remove Wi-Fi network (p. 503)
- No or poor Internet connection (p. 503)
- Wi-Fi technologies and security (p. 504)

Connect the car to the Internet via car modem (SIM card)

For cars equipped with Volvo On Call*, it is possible to establish an Internet connection via the car modem and a personal SIM card (P-SIM). When the car is connected to the Internet via the car modem, Volvo On Call services will use this connection.

1.



Fit a personal SIM card into the holder under the cargo area floor.

2. Press **Settings** in the top view.
3. Press **Communication** → **Car Modem Internet**.
4. Activate/deactivate by ticking/unticking the box for **Car modem Internet**.

5. If another connection source has been used in the past - confirm the option to change connection.
6. Enter the SIM card's PIN code.
 - > The car connects to the network.

Related information

- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- Folding up the cargo area floor (p. 553)
- No or poor Internet connection (p. 503)
- Settings for car modem (p. 501)

Settings for car modem¹⁵

The car is equipped with a modem that can be used to connect the car to the Internet. It is also possible to share the Internet connection via Wi-Fi.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** → **Car Modem Internet** and select settings:
 - **Car modem Internet** - select whether to use the car modem as Internet connection.
 - **Data usage** - tap on **Reset** resets the counters for received and sent data volume.
 - **Network**
 - Select network operator** - automatic or manual selection of network operator.
 - Data roaming** - if the box is ticked, the car modem will attempt to connect to the Internet when the car is abroad and outside its home network. Note that this may result in heavy costs. Check your roaming agreement for data traffic abroad with your network provider in your home country.
 - **SIM card PIN**
 - Change PIN** - a maximum of 4 digits can be entered.
 - Disable PIN** - select whether the PIN code shall be required for access to the SIM card.

- **Send request code** — used e.g. to top up or check the balance on a prepaid card. Functionality depends on the provider.

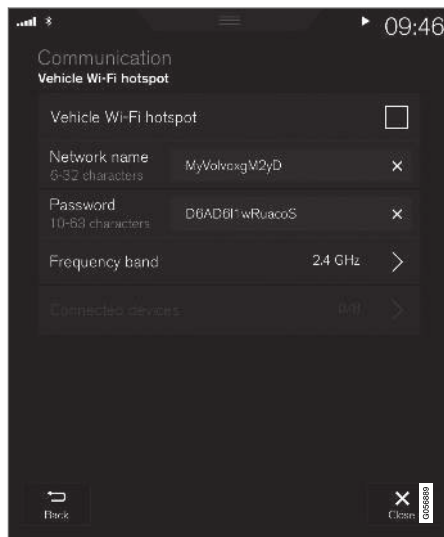
Related information

- Connect the car to the Internet via car modem (SIM card) (p. 500)
- No or poor Internet connection (p. 503)

¹⁵ Only cars with Volvo On Call.

Sharing Internet access from the car via a Wi-Fi hotspot

When the car is online, its Internet connection can be shared to allow other devices to use the Internet connection¹⁶.



The network operator (SIM card) must support tethering (sharing of the Internet connection).

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.

¹⁶ Does not apply when the car is online via Wi-Fi.

2. Press **Communication** → **Car Wi-Fi Hotspot**.
3. Tap on **Network name** and name the shared connection.
4. Tap on **Password** and select a password to be entered on connecting devices.
5. Tap on **Frequency band** and select the frequency on which the hotspot is to transmit data. Note that selection of frequency band is not available in all markets.
6. Activate/deactivate by ticking/unticking the box for **Car Wi-Fi Hotspot**.
7. If Wi-Fi has previously been used as a connection source, confirm the option to change connection.
 - > It is now possible for external devices to connect to the car's tethering (Wi-Fi hotspot).

i NOTE

Activation of Wi-Fi-hotspot can result in further charges from your network operator.

Contact your network operator about the cost for data traffic.

Connection status is indicated by the symbol in the centre display's status bar.

Press **Connected devices** to see a list of the currently connected devices.

Related information

- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 110)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- No or poor Internet connection (p. 503)

No or poor Internet connection

Factors that affect the Internet connection.

The amount of data transferred is dependent on the services or apps in use in the car. For example, streaming audio can require large amounts of data which requires a good connection and good signal strength.

Phone to car

The speed of the Internet connection may vary depending on the location of the phone in the car. Move the phone closer to the centre display in order to increase the signal strength. Ensure that there is no source of interference in between.

Phone to network operator

The speed of the mobile network varies depending on the coverage in the present location. Poor network coverage may occur, for example in tunnels, in mountainous country, in deep valleys or indoors. The speed also depends on the agreement you have with your network.

NOTE

In the event of problems with data traffic, contact your network operator.

Restarting the phone

If there are problems with the Internet connection then it may help to restart the phone.

Related information

- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- Wi-Fi technologies and security (p. 504)

Remove Wi-Fi network

Removing a network that is not to be used.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Continue to **Communication** → **Wi-Fi** → **Saved networks**.
3. Tap on **Forget** alongside the network to be removed.
4. Confirm the selection.
 - > The car will no longer connect to the network in future.

Remove all networks

All networks can be removed simultaneously by restoring factory settings. Please note that all user data and system settings are reset to original factory settings.

Related information

- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- No or poor Internet connection (p. 503)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 121)
- Connecting the car to the Internet via a mobile device (Wi-Fi) (p. 500)

Wi-Fi technologies and security

Possible network types to connect to.

It is only possible to connect to the following types of network:

- Frequency — 2.4 or 5 GHz¹⁷.
- Standards — 802.11 a/b/g/n.
- Security type - WPA2-AES-CCMP.

The car's Wi-Fi system is designed to handle Wi-Fi devices inside the car.

If several devices operate on the frequency at the same time then it may result in reduced performance.

Related information

- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)

User terms and conditions and data sharing

The first time certain services and apps are started, a pop-up window with the headings **Terms and conditions** and **Data sharing may be shown**.

The purpose is to inform about Volvo's user terms and conditions and policy for data sharing. By accepting data sharing, the user accepts that certain information is sent from the car. This is required so that certain services and apps can have full functionality.

Data sharing can be set from the centre display's settings menu.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating data sharing (p. 504)

Activating and deactivating data sharing

Data sharing for services and apps required can be set in the centre display's settings menu.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System** → **Privacy and data**.
3. Select **Data sharing** to activate or deactivate data sharing.
4. When data sharing is activated, settings for individual services and apps can be changed in the list below.

When data sharing is deactivated, the earlier settings for individual services and apps remain available when data sharing is reactivated.

Related information

- User terms and conditions and data sharing (p. 504)

¹⁷ Selection of frequency is not available on all markets.

Compatible media formats

The following file formats must be used for media playback.

Audio files

Format	File extension	Codec
MP3	.mp3	MPEG1 Layer III, MPEG2 Layer III, MP3 Pro (mp3 compatible), MP3 HD (mp3 compatible)
AAC	.m4a, .m4b, .aac	AAC LC (MPEG-4 part III Audio), HE-AAC (aacPlus v1/v2)
WMA	.wma	WMA8/9, WMA9/10 Pro
WAV	.wav	LPCM
FLAC	.flac	FLAC

Video files

Format	File extension
MP4	.mp4, m4v
MPEG-PS	.mpg, .mp2, .mpeg, .m1v

Format	File extension
AVI	.avi
AVI (DivX)	.avi, divx
ASF	.asf, .wmv
MKV	.mkv

Subtitles

Format	File extension
SubViewer	.sub
SubRip	.srt
SSA	.ssa

DivX®

DivX certified devices have been tested for high-quality DivX (.divx, .avi) video playback. When you see the DivX logo, you have the freedom to play DivX films.

Profile	DivX Home Theater
Video codec	DivX, MPEG-4
Resolution	720x576
Bit rate	4.8Mbps
Frame rate	30 fps
File extension	.divx, .avi

Max file size	4 GB
Audio codec	MP3, AC3
Subtitles	XSUB
Special functions	Multiple subtitles, multiple audio, resume play
Reference	Meets all requirements of the DivX Home Theater profile. Visit divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX Home Theater video.

Related information

- Media player (p. 474)
- Video (p. 478)
- Playing back DivX® (p. 479)

Technical specifications for USB devices

The following specifications must be met to allow the contents of the USB devices to be read.

No folder structure will be shown in the centre display during playback.

	Max number
Files	15 000
Folders	1 000
Folder levels	8
Playlists	100
Items in a playlist	1 000
Subfolders	No limit

Technical specification for USB A connector

- Type A socket
- Version 2.0
- Voltage supply 5 V
- Current supply max. 2.1 A

Technical specification for USB C connector

- Type C socket
- Version 3.1

- Voltage supply 5 V
- Current supply max. 3.0 A

Related information

- Media via USB port (p. 480)

Storage space on hard disk

It is possible to view how much free space there is on the car's hard disk.

Storage information for the car's hard disk, including total capacity, available capacity and how much space is used for installed apps can be shown. The information is available under

Settings → System → System Information → Storage.

Related information

- Apps (p. 465)

License agreement for audio and media

A license is an agreement for the right to operate a certain activity or the right to use someone else's entitlement according to the terms and conditions in the agreement. The following texts are Volvo's agreements with manufacturers/developers.

Dirac Unison®



Dirac Unison co-optimises the loudspeakers in frequency, time and space for the best possible bass integration and clarity. It enables a faithful reproduction of the acoustic characteristics of specific performance venues. Using advanced algorithms, Dirac Unison controls all loudspeakers digitally based on acoustic high-precision measurements. Like a conductor of an orchestra, it guarantees that the loudspeakers perform in perfect unison.

DivX®



DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logotypes are trademarks belonging to DivX, LLC and are used under licence.

This DivX Certified® device can play back DivX® Home Theater video files up to 576p (including .avi, .divx). Download free software on www.divx.com to create, play back and stream digital video.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play back purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) films. Get the registration code by locating the DivX VOD section in the device's settings menu. Go to vod.divx.com for more information on how to complete the registration.

Patent numbers

Protected by one or more of the following US patents. 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 8,656,183; 8,731,369; RE45,052.

Gracenote®



Parts of the content are copyright © of Gracenote or its suppliers.

Gracenote, Gracenote logo and logotype, "Powered by Gracenote" and Gracenote MusicID are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote, Inc. in the USA and/or other countries.

« **Gracenote® End User License Agreement**

This program or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California, USA ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote ("Gracenote software") activates this program to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track and title ("Gracenote data") from online servers or embedded databases (together called "Gracenote servers") and in order to perform other actions. You may only use Gracenote data in accordance with the intended end-user functions for this program or this device.

You agree to only use Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers for your own personal non-commercial use. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit this Gracenote software or any Gracenote data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED IN THIS AGREEMENT.

You agree that your non-exclusive right to use Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers will be terminated if you violate these restrictions. If your license is terminated you agree to cease all use of Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers. Gracenote holds exclusive rights to all Gracenote data, all Gracenote software and all Gracenote servers, including all ownership rights. Gracenote will under no circumstances have any obligation

to pay you for any information you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce the company's rights under this agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track enquiries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to enable the Gracenote service to count enquiries without knowing anything about who you are. Additional information is available on the web page for Gracenote's privacy policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote software and everything included in Gracenote data are licensed to you "as is". Gracenote provides no undertakings or warranties, express or implied, as to the accuracy of the Gracenote data contained in the Gracenote servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote servers or to change data categories for any reason that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is provided that the Gracenote software or Gracenote servers are fault-free or that the Gracenote software or Gracenote servers will operate without interruption. Gracenote has no obligation to provide you with new, improved or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future, and the company reserves the right to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING,

BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. GRACENOTE DOES NOT GUARANTEE THE RESULTS OBTAINED THROUGH YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR A GRACENOTE SERVER. GRACENOTE WILL IN NO EVENT BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGE OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR REVENUES.

© Gracenote, Inc. 2009

Sensus software

This software uses parts of sources from clib2 and Prex Embedded Real-time OS - Source (Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1991, 1993, 1994), and Quercus Robusta (Copyright (c) 1990, 1993), The Regents of the University of California. All or some portions are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of

conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. Neither the name of the <ORGANIZATION> nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

This software uses parts of sources from "libtess". The Original Code is: OpenGL Sample

Implementation, Version 1.2.1, released January 26, 2000, developed by Silicon Graphics, Inc. The Original Code is Copyright (c) 1991-2000 Silicon Graphics, Inc. Copyright in any portions created by third parties is as indicated elsewhere herein. All Rights Reserved. Copyright (C) [1991-2000] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to <http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/> shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software. THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE

OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

This software is based in parts on the work of the FreeType Team.

This software uses parts of SSLeay Library: Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (ey@cryptsoft.com). All rights reserved

Linux software

This product contains software licensed under GNU General Public License (GPL) or GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

You have the right of acquisition, modification, and distribution of the source code of the GPL/LGPL software.

You may download Source Code from the following website at no charge: http://www.embedded-carmultimedia.jp/linux/oss/download/TVM_8351_013

The website provides the Source Code "As Is" and without warranty of any kind.

By downloading Source Code, you expressly assume all risk and liability associated with downloading and using the Source Code and



- ◀◀ complying with the user agreements that accompany each Source Code.

Please note that we cannot respond to any inquiries regarding the source code.

camellia:1.2.0

Copyright (c) 2006, 2007

NTT (Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation). All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer as the first lines of this file unmodified.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY NTT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL NTT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Unicode: 5.1.0

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright c 1991-2013 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in <http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html>.




Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Unicode data files and any associated documentation (the "Data Files") or Unicode software and any associated documentation (the "Software") to deal in the Data Files or Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Data Files or Software, and to permit persons to whom the Data Files or Software are furnished to do so, provided that (a) the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear with all copies of the Data Files or Software, (b) both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in associated documentation, and (c) there is clear notice in

each modified Data File or in the Software as well as in the documentation associated with the Data File(s) or Software that the data or software has been modified.

THE DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE.


Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in these Data Files or Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

Declaration of Conformity

 <p>MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC <small>Cor. 99-3, 1st Fl., E-1, Chiba</small></p>	<p>MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION SANDA WORKS <small>2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan</small></p>
<p>DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY For</p>	
	<p>Product: Audio Navigation Unit Model: NR-0V</p>
<p>Supplied by Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan</p>	<p>Technical File held by Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan</p>
<p>Standard used for conformity</p>	
<p>R&TTE Directive (Safety)</p>	<p>EN 60950-1:2006 + Amd.11:2009 + Amd.1:2010 + Amd.12:2011 + Amd.2:2013 LN 63479:2011</p>
<p>RF Directive (EMC)</p>	<p>FN 301 489-1 V2.1.1:2017-02 EN 301 489-17 V3.3.1:2017-02</p>
<p>RF Directive (Spectrum)</p>	<p>FN 300 128 V2.2.1:2016-11 LN 303 345 V1.1.7:2017-05(Final Draft)</p>
<p>Means of Conformity</p>	
<p>We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conform with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio Equipment (RE) Directive (2014/53/EU).</p>	
<p>Date of issue: May 30, 2017</p>	
<p>Signature of Responsible Person:</p>	<p> _____ Hiroaki Mizuno Senior Manager Design B Ore-Motion/In Manufacturing-A Dept. MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION SANDA WORKS Mirato.Hirovaka@jp.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp</p>



Country/ Area	
Brazil:	<div> </div> <p>Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.</p> <p>Para consultas, visite: www.anatel.gov.br</p>
EU:	<div> </div> <p>Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city. Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan</p> <p>Mitsubishi Electric Corporation hereby declares that this type of radio equipment [Audio Navigation Unit] conforms with directive 2014/53/EU.</p> <p>For more information, see support.volvocars.com.</p>
The United Arab Emirates:	<div> </div>

Country/ Area	
Kazakh- stan:	 <p>Model name: NR 0V Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Exporting country: Japan</p>



Country/ Area	
China:	<p>1.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 使用频率：2.4 - 2.4835 GHz ■ 等效全向辐射功率 (EIRP)： 天线增益 < 10dBi 时： ≤100 mW 或 ≤20 dBm ① ■ 最大功率谱密度： 天线增益 < 10dBi 时： ≤20 dBm / MHz (EIRP) ① ■ 载频容限： 20 ppm ■ 带外发射功率 (在 2.4-2.4835GHz 频段以外) ≤-80 dBm / Hz (EIRP) ■ 杂散发射 (辐射) 功率 (对应载波 ±2.5 倍信道带宽以外)： <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ≤-36 dBm / 100 kHz (30 - 1000 MHz) • ≤-33 dBm / 100 kHz (2.4 - 2.4835 GHz) • ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (3.4 - 3.53 GHz) • ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (5.725 - 5.85 GHz) • ≤-30 dBm / 1 MHz (其它 1 - 12.75 GHz) <p>2. 不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率 (包括额外加装射频功率放大器)，不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线；</p> <p>3. 使用时不得对各种合法的无线电电信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有害干扰现象时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用；</p> <p>4. 使用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰；</p> <p>5. 不得在飞机和机场附近使用。</p>

Country/ Area	
Korea:	<p>B 급 기기 (가정용 방송통신기자재)</p> <p>이 기기는 가정용(B 급) 전자파적합기기로서 주로 가정에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 하며, 모든 지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다.</p> <p>해당 무선설비는 전파혼신 가능성이 있으므로 인명안전과 관련된 서비스는 할 수 없습니다.</p>
Malaysia	<div> </div> <p>This device has been certified under the Communications & Multimedia Act of 1998, Communications and Multimedia (Technical Standards) Regulations 2000. To retrieve your device's serial number, please visit (support.volvocars.com) and search for "SIRIM Label Verification".</p> <p>Device category: Navigation equipment for vehicle (Bluetooth)</p> <p>Model: NR-0V</p> <p>Type Approval No.: RBAY/18A/1015S(15-4067)</p>



Country/ Area	
Mexico:	
Taiwan:	<p>低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。</p> <p>第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。</p>

Related information

- Sound, media and Internet (p. 464)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)
- Media player (p. 474)
- Gracenote® (p. 478)
- Sensus - online connectivity and entertainment (p. 32)

WHEELS AND TYRES

Tyres

Amongst other things, the function of the tyres is to carry load, provide grip on the road surface, dampen vibration and protect the wheel from wear.

The tyres greatly affect the car's driving characteristics. The type of tyre, dimensions, tyre pressure and speed rating are important for how the car performs.

The car is fitted with tyres according to the tyre information sticker found on the driver's side door pillar (between the front door and the rear door).

WARNING

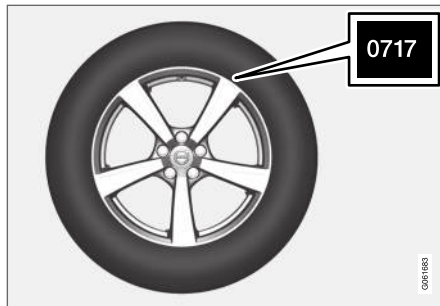
A damaged tyre may lead to loss of control over the car.

Recommended tyres

On delivery, the car is equipped with Volvo original tyres that have the VOL¹ marking on the side of the tyres. These tyres are carefully adapted to the car. In the event of changing tyres, it is therefore important that the new tyres also have this marking in order for the car's driving characteristics, comfort and fuel consumption to be maintained.

¹ There may be deviations for certain tyre dimensions.

New tyres



Tyres are perishable. After a few years they begin to harden at the same time as the friction capacity/characteristics gradually deteriorate. For this reason, aim to get as fresh tyres as possible when you replace them. This is especially important with regard to winter tyres. The last four digits in the sequence mean the week and year of manufacture. This is the tyre's DOT marking (Department of Transportation), and this is stated with four digits, for example 0717. The tyre is then manufactured in week 07, year 2017.

Tyre age

All tyres older than 6 years old should be checked by an expert even if they seem undamaged. Tyres age and decompose, even if they are hardly ever or never used. The function can therefore be affected. This applies to all tyres that

are stored for future use. Examples of external signs which indicate that the tyre is unsuitable for use are cracks or discolouration.

Tyre economy

- Maintain the correct tyre pressure.
- Avoid fast starts, heavy braking and squealing tyres.
- Tyre wear increases with speed.
- Correct wheel alignment is very important.
- Unbalanced wheels worsen tyre economy and travelling comfort.
- The tyres must have the same direction of rotation during their entire service life.
- When you change tyres, the tyres with the best tread must be fitted on the rear wheels to reduce the risk of oversteer during heavy braking.
- If you drive over kerbstones or deep holes you can damage the tyres and/or wheel rims permanently.

Tyre rotation

The car has no mandatory tyre rotation. Driving style, tyre pressure, climate and road condition affect how quickly the tyres age and wear. Correct tyre pressure results in more even wear.

To avoid differences in tread depth and to prevent wear patterns forming on the tyres, the front

and rear wheels should be switched with each other. A suitable distance for the first change is approx. 5000 km (approx. 3100 miles) and then at 10000 km (approx. 6200 miles) intervals.

Volvo recommends the an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted for checking if you are uncertain about tread depth. If significant differences in wear (> 1 mm difference in tread depth) between tyres have already occurred, then the least worn tyres must always be fitted on the rear. Understeer is normally easier to correct than oversteer, and leads to the car continuing forwards in a straight line rather than having the rear end skidding to one side, resulting in possible complete loss of control over the car. This is why it is important for the rear wheels never to lose grip before the front wheels.

Storing wheels and tyres

When you store complete wheels (tyres fitted on wheel rims) they should be hung up or positioned lying on their sides on the floor.

Tyres not fitted on rims must be stored lying on their sides or standing upright, but not hung up.

! **IMPORTANT**

Tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and dark place, and should never be stored close to solvents, petrol, oils, etc.

! **WARNING**

- Wheel rim size and tyre size for your Volvo are specified to meet stringent requirements for stability and driving characteristics. Unapproved combinations of wheel rim size and tyre size may have a negative effect on the car's stability and driving characteristics.
- Any damage caused by the fitting of unapproved combinations of wheel rim size and tyre size is not covered by the new car warranty. Volvo accepts no liability for death, personal injury or any costs caused by such installations.

Related information

- Checking tyre pressure (p. 522)
- Tyres' rotation direction (p. 521)
- Tread wear indicators on the tyres (p. 521)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system* (p. 524)
- Emergency puncture repair kit (p. 537)
- Dimension designation for tyre (p. 519)
- Recommendations for loading (p. 550)

Dimension designation for tyre

Designations for tyre dimension, load index and speed rating.

The car has an approval for the complete vehicle with certain combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

Designation of dimensions

All tyres have a dimension designation, for example: 235/55 R18 100V.

235	Tyre width (mm)
55	Ratio between tyre wall height and tyre width (%)
R	Radial ply
18	Rim diameter in inches
100	Codes for the maximum permitted tyre load, tyre load index (LI)
V	Speed rating for maximum permitted speed, speed rating (SS). (In this case 240 km/h (149 mph).)

Load index

Each tyre has a certain capacity to carry a load, a load index (LI). The car's weight determines the load capacity required of the tyres.



◀ **Speed rating**

Each tyre can withstand a certain maximum speed. Tyre speed rating, SS (Speed Symbol), must at least correspond with the car's top speed. The table below shows the maximum permitted speed for each speed rating (SS). The only exception to these regulations is winter tyres², where a lower speed rating may be used. If such a tyre is chosen, the car must not be driven faster than the speed rating of the tyre (for example, class Q can be driven at a maximum of 160 km/h (100 mph).) The top speed at which the car can be driven depends on road conditions, not the speed rating of the tyres.

i NOTE
The maximum permitted speed is specified in the table.

Q	160 km/h (100 mph) (used only on winter tyres)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

² Both those with metal studs and those without.

⚠ WARNING

The lowest permitted load index (LI) and speed rating (SS) for the tyres for each respective engine variant are shown in the car's registration document. If a tyre with too low a load index or speed rating is used, it may overheat and be damaged.

Related information

- Tyres (p. 518)
- Dimension designation for wheel rim (p. 520)

Dimension designation for wheel rim

Wheel and rim dimensions are designated in accordance with the examples in the table below.

The car has an approval for the complete vehicle with certain combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

All wheel rims have a dimension designation, for example: 7.5Jx18x50.5.

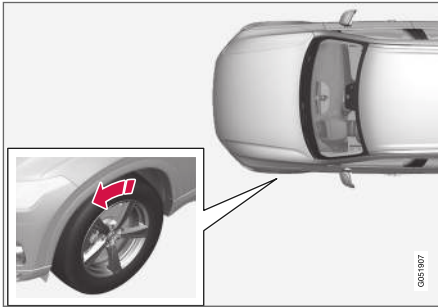
7,5	Rim width in inches
J	Rim flange profile
18	Rim diameter in inches
50,5	Off-set in mm (distance from wheel centre to wheel contact surface against the hub)

Related information

- Tyres (p. 518)
- Dimension designation for tyre (p. 519)

Tyres' rotation direction

Tyres with a tread pattern which are designed to only turn in one direction have the direction of rotation marked with an arrow.



The arrow shows the tyre's direction of rotation.

- The tyre must always rotate in the same direction throughout its lifespan.
- Tyres should only be switched between front and rear positions, never between left and right-hand sides, or vice versa.
- If the tyres are fitted incorrectly, the car's braking characteristics and capacity to force rain and slush out of the way are adversely affected.
- Tyres with the greatest tread depth should always be fitted to the rear of the car (to decrease the risk of skidding).

i NOTE

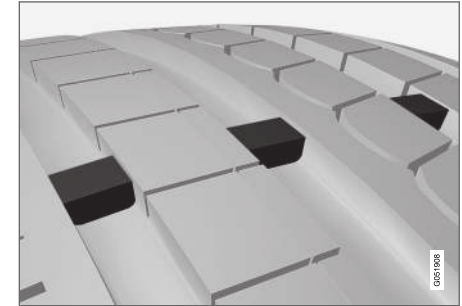
Make sure that both pairs of wheels have the same type and dimension, and also the same make.

Related information

- Tyres (p. 518)

Tread wear indicators on the tyres

Tread wear indicators show the status of the tyre's tread depth.



A tread wear indicator is a narrow elevation across the longitudinal grooves of the tyre's tread pattern. On the side of the tyre are the letters TWI (Tread Wear Indicator). When the tyre's tread depth is down to 1.6 mm (1/16 inch), the tread will be level in height with the tread wear indicators. Change to new tyres as soon as possible. Remember that tyres with little tread depth provide very poor grip in rain and snow.

Related information

- Tyres (p. 518)

Checking tyre pressure

Correct tyre pressure helps to improve driving stability, saves fuel and extends the service life of the tyres.

Tyre pressure decreases over time, this is a natural phenomenon. Tyre pressure also varies depending on ambient temperature. Driving on tyres with tyre pressure that is too low could result in the tyres overheating and being damaged. Tyre pressure affects travelling comfort, road noise and driving characteristics.

Check the tyre pressures monthly. Use the tyre pressure recommended for cold tyres in order to achieve optimal tyre performance and optimal wear. Tyre pressure that is too low or too high may cause uneven wear on the tyres.

WARNING

- Tyre pressure that is too low is the most common cause of tyre failure and may result in serious cracks in the tyre, the tread loosening or the tyre exploding, with unexpected loss of control of the car and increased risk of personal injury.
- Tyres with pressure that is too low reduce the load capacity of the car.

Cold tyres

The tyre pressure must be checked when the tyres are cold.

Tyres are considered cold when they have the same temperature as the surrounding air.

This temperature is normally reached when the car has been parked for at least three hours.

After having driven approximately 1.6 km (1 mile) these tyres are considered as warm. If you have to drive further than this to inflate the tyres, first check and record the tyre pressure and inflate to a suitable tyre pressure when you arrive at the pump.

When the outside temperature changes, the tyre pressure also changes. A decrease in temperature of 10 degrees causes the tyre pressure to decrease 1 psi (7 kPa). Check the tyre pressure regularly and adjust to the correct pressure, which is specified on the car's tyre information plate or certification label.

If you check the tyre pressure when the tyres are warm then you must never release any air. The tyres are warm due to driving and it is normal for the pressure to increase above the recommended pressure for cold tyres. A warm tyre with tyre pressure equal to or below the recommendation for cold tyres may have a pressure that is far too low.

Related information

- Adjusting tyre pressure (p. 522)
- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 523)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system* (p. 524)
- Tyres (p. 518)

Adjusting tyre pressure

Tyre pressure decreases over time, this is a natural phenomenon. The tyre pressure must therefore sometimes be adjusted in order to maintain the recommended tyre pressure.

Use the tyre pressure recommended for cold tyres in order to achieve optimal tyre performance and optimal wear.

NOTE

To avoid incorrect tyre pressure, the pressure should be checked on cold tyres. "Cold tyres" means the tyres are the same temperature as the ambient temperature (approx. 3 hours after the car has been driven). After a few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.

1. Remove the cap from the valve on one tyre and then press the tyre pressure gauge firmly down onto the valve.
2. Inflate to the recommended pressure.

- Refit the dust cap.

i NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

- Check the tyres visually for any implanted nails or other objects that could puncture the tyre and cause leakage.
- Check the sidewalls for any cavities, cuts, bumps or other irregularities.
- Repeat this for all tyres, including the spare tyre*.

i NOTE

If you have over-inflated, release air by pressing in the metal pin in the centre of the valve. Then check the pressure again using the tyre pressure gauge.

Some spare tyres require a higher tyre pressure than other tyres. Check in the tyre pressure table or on the tyre pressure plate.

Related information

- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 523)
- Checking tyre pressure (p. 522)
- Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit (p. 542)
- Approved tyre pressures (p. 627)

Recommended tyre pressure

The tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (between frame and rear door) shows which pressures the tyres should have at different loads and speed conditions.



The plate displays the designation for the factory-fitted tyres on the car, as well as load limits and tyre pressure.

Improved fuel economy with ECO pressure

For a light load (max. 3 people) and a speed of up to 160 km/h (100 mph), the ECO pressures can be chosen for optimum fuel economy. However, the lower comfort pressures are recommended instead if optimum noise and travelling comfort are desired.

Related information

- Checking tyre pressure (p. 522)
- Approved tyre pressures (p. 627)

pillar for Volvo's recommended tyre pressures.

- If you change to tyres of a different size to the ones fitted at the factory, the system must be calibrated for these tyres to avoid false warnings.
- If a spare wheel* is used, it is possible that the tyre pressure monitoring system does not work correctly due to the differences between the wheels.
- The system does not replace the need for regular tyre inspection and maintenance.
- It is not possible to switch off the tyre pressure monitoring system.

WARNING

- Incorrect tyre pressure may lead to tyre failure, which could result in the driver losing control of the car.
- The system cannot indicate sudden tyre damage in advance.

Related information

- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 523)
- See tyre pressure statue in the centre display* (p. 527)
- Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure (p. 528)

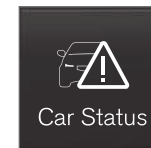
- Calibrate the system for tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 525)

Calibrate the system for tyre pressure monitoring*

In order for the system for tyre pressure monitoring, Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS) to work correctly, a reference value for the tyre pressure must be determined. This must be performed each time the tyres are changed or the tyre pressure is changed.

For example, when driving with a heavy load or at high speed above 160 km/h (100 mph), the tyre pressure should be adjusted in accordance with Volvo's recommended tyre pressure values. Following which, the system must be recalibrated.

1. Switch off the car.
2. Inflate the tyres to the desired pressure in accordance with the tyre pressure label on the door pillar on the driver's side.
3. Start the car.
4. Open the **Car status** app in the app view.



5. Press **TPMS**.



i NOTE

The car must be stationary when calibration is started.

6. Press **Calibrate**.

7. Tap on **OK** to confirm that the tyre pressure in all four tyres has been checked and adjusted.

8. Run the car until calibration is complete.

Calibration is performed when the car is driven at a speed above 35 km/h (22 mph).

- > When sufficient data has been collected to enable the system to detect low tyre pressure, the tyres in the centre display change colour from grey to green. The system provides no additional confirmation that the calibration is complete.

If the car's ignition is switched off before calibration is complete, the tyres in the centre display change colour from grey to green upon next start-up, even if calibration is not complete. Perform calibration again and allow it to complete within the same operating cycle to ensure that the calibration is carried out correctly.

If start-up of calibration fails, the following message appears: **Calibration unsuccessful. Try again..**

i NOTE

Remember to always calibrate the tyre pressure monitoring system when you have changed a wheel or if the tyre pressure has been changed according to the tyre pressure label or tyre pressure table.

If correct reference values have not been set, the system may not warn correctly about low tyre pressure.

The car must be stationary with the engine running for you to have access to the calibration button and start the calibration process.

! WARNING

The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, which is invisible and odourless, but highly toxic. For this reason, calibration must always be performed outside or in a workshop with exhaust extraction.

Related information

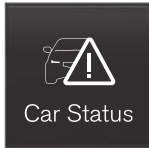
- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 523)
- Adjusting tyre pressure (p. 522)
- See tyre pressure statue in the centre display* (p. 527)
- Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure (p. 528)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system* (p. 524)

See tyre pressure status in the centre display*

With the system for tyre pressure monitoring, Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS), tyre pressure status can be viewed in the centre display.

Checking status

1. Open the **Car status** app in the app view.

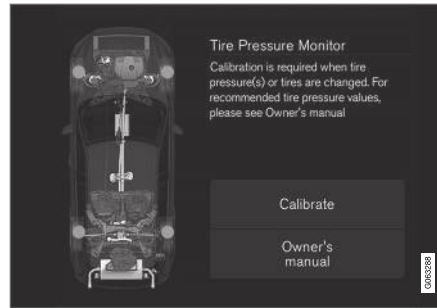


2. Tap on **TPMS** to show the status of the tyres.



Status indication

The graphics in the centre display show the status for each tyre³.



Green tyre:

- The tyre pressure is above the limit value for a warning.

Yellow tyre:

- The tyre's pressure is too low. Stop and check/rectify the tyre pressure by inflating as soon as possible. Calibrate the system after the tyre pressure has been adjusted.

All tyres yellow:

- The pressure is too low in two or more tyres. Stop and check/rectify the tyre pressures by inflating as soon as possible. Calibrate the system after the tyre pressures have been adjusted.

All tyres grey:

- Calibration in progress.
- Unknown status.

Several minutes driving above 35 km/h (22 mph) may be required for the system to become active.

All tyres grey and a message:

- **Tyre pressure system Temporarily unavailable.** The indicator symbol flashes and changes to constant glow after approx. 1 minute. The system is currently unavailable, activated shortly.
- **Tyre pressure system Service required.** The indicator symbol flashes and changes to constant glow after approx. 1 minute. The system is not working correctly, contact a workshop⁴.

Related information

- Calibrate the system for tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 525)
- Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure (p. 528)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system* (p. 524)
- Car status (p. 562)

³ The figure is schematic. Layout may vary depending on car model or updated software.

⁴ An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure

When the tyre pressure monitoring system, Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS) gives a warning, the tyre pressure in one or more of the car's tyres is too low and action is required.



Check and rectify the tyre pressure when the indicator symbol for the system is illuminated and the **Tyre pressure low** message is shown.

1. Switch off the car.
2. Check the tyre pressure in all four tyres with a tyre pressure gauge.
3. Inflate the tyres to the correct pressure as indicated on the tyre pressure label on the door pillar on the driver's side.
4. Perform calibration of the system via the centre display after tyre pressure adjustment.

Note that the indicator symbol does not extinguish until the low tyre pressure has been rectified and new calibration has been performed.

i NOTE

To avoid incorrect tyre pressure, the pressure should be checked on cold tyres. "Cold tyres" means the tyres are the same temperature as the ambient temperature (approx. 3 hours after the car has been driven). After a few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.

i NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

⚠ WARNING

- Incorrect tyre pressure may lead to tyre failure, which could result in the driver losing control of the car.
- The system cannot indicate sudden tyre damage in advance.

- Calibrate the system for tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 525)
- See tyre pressure statue in the centre display* (p. 527)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system* (p. 524)
- Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit (p. 542)

Related information

- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 523)
- Adjusting tyre pressure (p. 522)

When changing wheels

The car's wheels can be changed, e.g. to winter wheels or a spare wheel. Follow the relevant instructions for removing and fitting wheels.

When changing to another tyre dimension

Check that the tyre dimension is approved for use on the car.

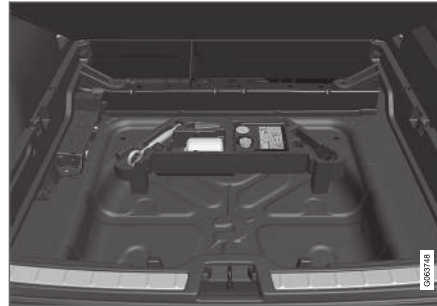
Contact an authorised Volvo workshop for updating the software at each change of tyre dimension. A software download may be necessary both when changing to larger and smaller dimensions, and also when switching between summer and winter wheels.

Related information

- Removing a wheel (p. 531)
- Fitting the wheels (p. 533)
- Tool kit (p. 529)
- Winter wheels (p. 536)
- Spare wheel* (p. 534)
- Wheel bolts (p. 530)

Tool kit

Tools that can be useful during towing, wheel changes or similar are found in the car's cargo area.



The foam block under the cargo area floor contains the car's towing eye, puncture repair kit, tool for removing the plastic caps from the wheel bolts and a socket for the lockable wheel bolts.

If the car is equipped with spare wheel* then a jack and wheel wrench are included, as well as a package with disposable gloves and a bag for the damaged wheel.

Related information

- Folding up the cargo area floor (p. 553)
- When changing wheels (p. 529)
- Jack* (p. 529)

Jack*

The jack can be used to raise the car, for example, to change to the spare wheel.



The figure is schematic - the version may vary.



! IMPORTANT

- When the jack* is not in use it must be stored in its storage space under the cargo area floor.
- The jack included with the car is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to have space.

Related information

- Folding up the cargo area floor (p. 553)
- Tool kit (p. 529)

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts are used to attach the wheels to the hubs.

! IMPORTANT

The wheel bolts must be tightened to 140 Nm (103 ft. lbs.). Overtightening or loose tightening may damage the nuts and the bolts.

Only use rims that are tested and approved by Volvo and which are Volvo genuine accessories.

Check the tightening torque of the wheel bolts with a torque wrench.

Do **not** use lubricant on the threads of the wheel bolts.

! WARNING

The wheel bolts may need to be re-tightened several days after the change. Temperature differences and vibration may mean that they are not attached equally as tightly.

Locking wheel bolts*

In the foam block under the cargo area floor there is space for the sleeve for the lockable wheel bolts.

Related information

- Removing a wheel (p. 531)
- Fitting the wheels (p. 533)

Removing a wheel

Instructions for removing a wheel when changing wheels. Wheel changes must always be performed correctly.

! IMPORTANT

- When the jack* is not in use it must be stored in its storage space under the cargo area floor.
- The jack included with the car is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

! WARNING

- Apply the parking brake and set the gear selector in Park position (P).
- Chock the wheels standing on the ground using solid wood blocks or large stones.
- Check that the jack is not damaged, that the threads are thoroughly lubricated and that it is free from dirt.
- Check that the jack is resting on a firm, level surface that is not slippery and is not slanted.
- The jack must be correctly attached in the jack's bracket.
- Never position anything between the ground and the jack, nor between the jack and the car's jacking point.
- Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack.
- If a wheel must be changed in a trafficked environment, passengers must stand in a safe place.
- Use a jack designed for the car when changing tyres. Use supports to secure the car for all other work.
- Never crawl under the car or reach under with a part of your body when it is raised on a jack.

1. Set up the warning triangle and activate the hazard warning lights if a tyre is being changed in a trafficked location.
2. Apply the parking brake and engage gear position **P**, or engage first gear if the car has a manual gearbox.
3. Take out the jack*, wheel wrench* and tools for the wheel bolts' plastic caps that are fitted in the foam block.



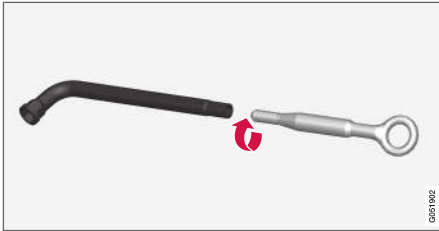
Tool for removing the plastic caps on the wheel bolts.

4. Chock in front of and behind the wheels that remain on the ground. Use, for example, heavy wooden blocks or large stones.



WHEELS AND TYRES

5. Screw together the towing eye with the wheel wrench* until the stop position as per the instructions.

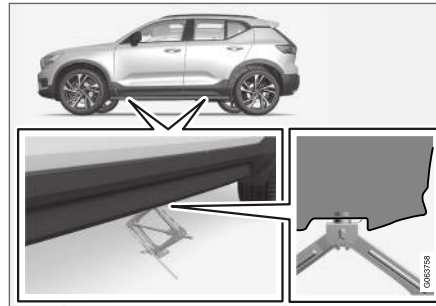


! IMPORTANT

The towing eye must be screwed into the wheel bolt wrench* as far as possible.

6. Remove the plastic caps from the wheel bolts with the intended tool.
7. With the car still on the ground, use the wheel bolt wrench/towing eye to undo the wheel bolts $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 turn by pressing downwards (anticlockwise).

8. When raising the car, it is important that the jack* or lifting arms are fitted in the intended points on the car's underbody. The triangle markings in the plastic cover indicate the locations of the jacking/lifting points. There are two jacking points on each side of the car. There is a recess for the jack at each point.



9. Position the jack on level, firm and non-slippery ground under the jacking point that will be used.
10. Crank up until it is correctly aligned and so that it makes contact with the car's jacking point. Check that the head of the jack (or the lift arms at a workshop) is correctly positioned in the jacking point so that the bump in the centre of the head fits into the jacking point hole and the base is positioned vertically below the jacking point.

11. Turn the jack so that the crank is as far away from the side of the car as possible, at which point the jack's arms are perpendicular to the direction of the car.
12. Raise the car high enough to allow the wheel to be removed to move freely. Remove the wheel bolts and lift off the wheel.

Related information

- When changing wheels (p. 529)
- Raise the car (p. 565)
- Jack* (p. 529)
- Tool kit (p. 529)
- Fitting the wheels (p. 533)

Fitting the wheels

Instructions for fitting a wheel when changing wheels.

i NOTE

The jack included with the car is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

⚠ WARNING

- Apply the parking brake and set the gear selector in Park position (P).
- Chock the wheels standing on the ground using solid wood blocks or large stones.
- Check that the jack is not damaged, that the threads are thoroughly lubricated and that it is free from dirt.
- Check that the jack is resting on a firm, level surface that is not slippery and is not slanted.
- The jack must be correctly attached in the jack's bracket.
- Never position anything between the ground and the jack, nor between the jack and the car's jacking point.
- Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack.
- If a wheel must be changed in a trafficked environment, passengers must stand in a safe place.
- Use a jack designed for the car when changing tyres. Use supports to secure the car for all other work.
- Never crawl under the car or reach under with a part of your body when it is raised on a jack.

1. Clean the contact surfaces between wheel and hub.
2. Put on the wheel. Tighten the wheel bolts thoroughly.
Do **not** use lubricant on the threads of the wheel bolts.
3. Lower the car so that the wheels cannot rotate.
4. Tighten the wheel bolts crosswise. It is important that the wheel bolts are tightened properly. Tighten to 140 Nm (103 ft.lbs.). Check the tightening torque with a torque wrench.



5. Refit the plastic caps on the wheel bolts.



⚠ WARNING

The wheel bolts may need to be re-tightened several days after the change. Temperature differences and vibration may mean that they are not attached equally as tightly.

i NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

Related information

- When changing wheels (p. 529)
- Raise the car (p. 565)
- Jack* (p. 529)
- Tool kit (p. 529)
- Removing a wheel (p. 531)

Spare wheel*

The spare wheel, the Temporary spare type, can be used to temporarily replace a punctured normal wheel.

The spare tyre is only designed for temporary use. Replace it with a normal wheel as soon as possible.

The car's driving characteristics can be changed when the spare wheel is used and the ground clearance is reduced. Do not wash the car in an automatic car wash if the Temporary Spare is being used.

Recommended tyre pressure must be maintained regardless of the position of the temporary spare wheel on the car.

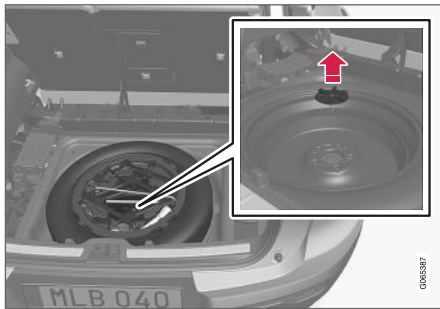
If the spare tyre is damaged then a new one can be purchased from a Volvo dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) with a spare wheel fitted on the car.
- The car must never be driven fitted with more than one spare wheel of the type "Temporary Spare" at the same time.
- The car may have different driving characteristics while driving with the spare wheel. The spare wheel must be replaced with a normal wheel as soon as possible.
- The spare wheel is smaller than the normal wheel, which affects the car's ground clearance. Look out for high kerbs and do not machine-wash the car.
- Follow the manufacturer's recommended tyre pressure for the spare wheel.
- On all-wheel drive cars, the drive on the rear axle can be disengaged.
- If the spare wheel is fitted to the front axle then it is not possible to use snow chains at the same time.
- The spare wheel must not be repaired.

! IMPORTANT

The car must not be driven with tyres of different sizes or with a spare tyre other than the one supplied with the car. Using different-sized wheels can cause serious damage to the car's transmission.



The spare wheel is located in the spare wheel well with the outside down. The foam block contains all the tools for changing a wheel.

Related information

- When changing wheels (p. 529)
- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 523)

Taking out the spare wheel

Follow these instructions for handling the spare wheel.

1. Fold up the cargo area floor, from the rear and forwards.
2. Lift out the foam block with its tools.
3. Undo the retaining screw.
4. Lift out the spare wheel.

Storing the punctured tyre

1. Take out the wheel bag enclosed in the foam block and put the wheel in the bag.
2. Put the tools back in their right place in the foam block and lift it back into the car.
3. Screw in the foam block using the mounting screws and then fold down the cargo area floor.
4. Place the punctured tyre in the cargo area.

Storing the punctured tyre

1. Take out the wheel bag enclosed in the foam block and put the wheel in the bag.
2. Screw back the mounting screw that held the tyre in place.
3. Put the tools back in their right place in the foam block and lift it back into the car.
4. Then fold down the cargo area floor and place the punctured tyre in the cargo area.

Related information

- Spare wheel* (p. 534)
- Folding up the cargo area floor (p. 553)

Winter wheels

Winter wheels are adapted for winter road conditions.

Volvo recommends winter tyres with particular dimensions. Tyre dimensions are dependent on engine variant. When driving on winter tyres, the correct type of tyres must be fitted to all four wheels.

NOTE

Contact a Volvo dealer for advice about which wheel rim and type of tyre are most suitable.

Tips for changing to winter tyres

When summer and winter wheels are changed, mark which side of the car they were mounted on, for example **L** for left and **R** for right.

Studded tyres

Studded winter tyres should be run in gently for 500-1000 km (300-600 miles), so the studs settle properly into the tyres. This gives the tyre, and especially the studs, a longer service life.

NOTE

The legal provisions for the use of studded tyres vary from country to country.

Tread depth

Road conditions with ice, slush and low temperatures place considerably higher demands on tyres than summer conditions. Volvo therefore recommends not to drive on winter tyres that have a tread depth of less than 4 mm (0.15 inches).

Related information

- When changing wheels (p. 529)
- Winter driving (p. 429)
- Tread wear indicators on the tyres (p. 521)

Snow chains

Use of snow chains and/or winter tyres can help to improve the traction in winter conditions.

WARNING

Use Volvo genuine snow chains or equivalent chains designed for the car model, and tyre and rim dimensions. Only **single-sided** snow chains are permitted.

In the event of uncertainty about the snow chain, Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted. The wrong snow chains may cause serious damage to the car and lead to an accident.

14. As soon as possible, drive at least 3 km (2 miles) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) so that the sealing fluid can seal the tyre, and then perform a follow-up check.

i NOTE

Sealant will spurt out of the puncture during the first few rotations of the tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that nobody is standing near the car and gets the sealing fluid splashed onto them when the car is driven away. The distance should be at least 2 metres (7 feet).

15. Follow-up inspection

Connect the air hose on the tyre valve and screw in the valve connection to the bottom of the tyre valve's thread. The compressor must be switched off.

16. Read the tyre pressure on the pressure gauge.

- If it is below 1.3 bar (19 psi) then the tyre is insufficiently sealed. The journey should not be continued. Call roadside assistance for recovery.
- If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar (19 psi), the tyre must be inflated to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (1 bar = 100 kPa = 14.5 psi). Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.

i NOTE

The sealing fluid bottle and the hose must be replaced after use. Volvo recommends that this replacement is performed by an authorised Volvo workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Check the tyre pressure regularly.

Volvo recommends that the car is driven to the nearest authorised Volvo workshop for the replacement/repair of the damaged tyre. Advise the workshop that the tyre contains sealing fluid.

⚠ WARNING

Maximum mileage with tyres containing sealing fluid is 200 km (120 miles).

i NOTE

The compressor is an electrical device. Follow local regulations related to waste management.

Related information

- Folding up the cargo area floor (p. 553)
- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 523)
- Emergency puncture repair kit (p. 537)
- Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit (p. 542)

Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit

The car's original tyres can be inflated using the compressor in the emergency puncture repair kit.

1. The compressor must be switched off. Make sure that the switch is in position **O** (Off), and take out the electrical cable and the air hose.
2. Unscrew the tyre's dust cap and screw in the air hose's valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre's air valve.

Check that the pressure reducing valve on the air hose is fully screwed in.

3. Connect the electrical cable to the closest 12 V socket and start the car.

WARNING

Inhaling car exhaust fumes could result in danger to life. Never leave the engine running in sealed areas or areas that lack sufficient ventilation.

WARNING

Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the engine is running.

4. Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position **I** (On).

IMPORTANT

Risk of overheating. The compressor must not run for more than 10 minutes.

5. Inflate the tyre to the pressure specified on the tyre pressure label on the driver side door pillar. Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.
6. Switch off the compressor. Detach the air hose and the electrical cable.
7. Refit the dust cap on the tyre.

NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

NOTE

The compressor is an electrical device. Follow local regulations related to waste management.

Related information

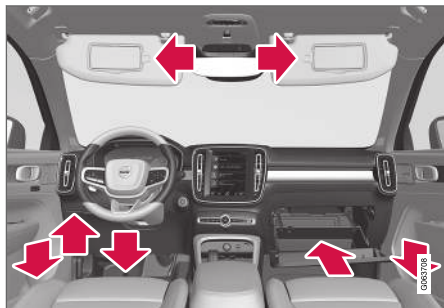
- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 523)
- Using a puncture repair kit (p. 538)
- Emergency puncture repair kit (p. 537)

LOADING, STORAGE AND PASSENGER COM-
PARTMENT

Passenger compartment interior

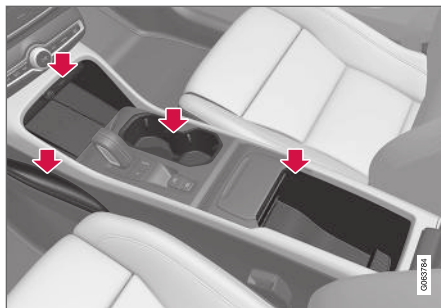
Overview of the passenger compartment's interior and storage locations.

Front seat



Storage compartment in door panel, card holder on left of steering wheel, storage under driver's seat¹, glovebox with extensible hook and sun visor.

¹ A maximum of 1 kg (2.2 lbs) can be stored here.



Storage compartment for legroom, electrical socket and USB port above the wireless phone charger*, cup holder and storage under armrest in tunnel console.

Rear seat



Storage compartment in the door panel, cup holder* in the centre seat backrest, storage pocket* on the front seat backrest and also USB ports* in the tunnel console.

⚠ WARNING

Keep loose objects such as mobile phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

⚠ IMPORTANT

Keep in mind that high gloss surfaces, for example, are easily scratched by metal objects. Do not place keys, phones and other items on sensitive surfaces.

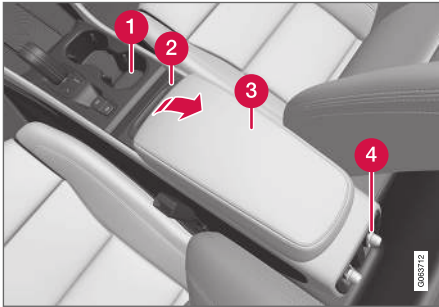
Related information

- Emptying the ashtray* (p. 546)
- Using the cigarette lighter* (p. 545)
- Electrical sockets (p. 546)
- Using the glovebox (p. 548)
- Sun visors (p. 549)
- Tunnel console (p. 545)
- Wireless phone charger* (p. 497)
- Connecting a device via USB port (p. 481)

* Option/accessory.

Tunnel console

The tunnel console is located between the front seats.



- 1 Storage compartment with cup holder for driver and passenger.
- 2 Waste bin² that can be removed and emptied.
- 3 Storage compartment under the armrest.
- 4 Climate controls for the rear seat climate functions* or storage compartment. There is also a USB port underneath*.

WARNING

Keep loose objects such as mobile phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

NOTE

One of the detectors for the alarm* is located under the tunnel console's cup holder. Avoid leaving coins, keys and other metal objects in the cup holder, since this may trigger the alarm.

IMPORTANT

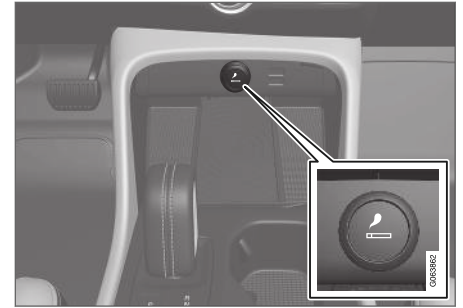
Keep in mind that high gloss surfaces, for example, are easily scratched by metal objects. Do not place keys, phones and other items on sensitive surfaces.

Related information

- Emptying the ashtray* (p. 546)
- Using the cigarette lighter* (p. 545)
- Passenger compartment interior (p. 544)
- Electrical sockets (p. 546)
- Climate controls (p. 190)

Using the cigarette lighter*

The cigarette lighter can be a complement to the 12 V socket in the front section of the tunnel console.



Cigarette lighter in tunnel console, front seat.

1. Press the button on the lighter.
 - > The button jumps up when the lighter starts to glow.
2. Pull the lighter out from the socket and use the glow to give a light.
3. Refit the lighter in the socket.

WARNING

Take care when the lighter is activated so that the glowing part does not, for example, damage the interior or injure passengers.

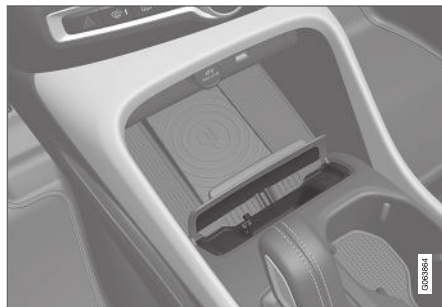
² Only in cars with automatic gearbox.

◀◀ **Related information**

- Passenger compartment interior (p. 544)
- Emptying the ashtray* (p. 546)

Emptying the ashtray*

When there is a cigarette lighter fitted in the car there is a detachable ashtray in the tunnel console.



1. Detach the ashtray by pulling it straight up and empty the contents.
2. Refit the ashtray in the tunnel console.

 **WARNING**

Exercise caution with smouldering glow and ash so that they do not damage the interior or injure passengers, for example. Only extinguish cigarettes on the intended surface.

Related information

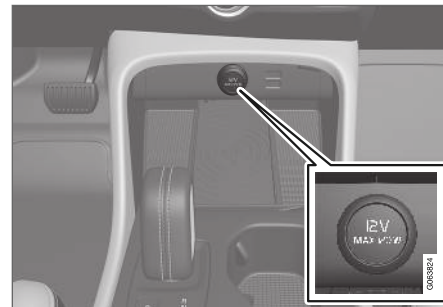
- Passenger compartment interior (p. 544)
- Using the cigarette lighter* (p. 545)

Electrical sockets

There is one 12 V electrical socket in the tunnel console and one 12 V electrical socket* in the cargo area.

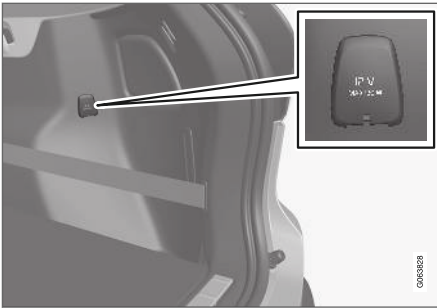
If a problem occurs with an electrical socket, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

12 V electrical socket



12 V electrical socket in tunnel console, front seat.

The 12 V sockets can be used for various accessories designed for this, such as music players, cooler boxes and mobile phones.



12 V electrical socket in cargo area*.

Related information

- Passenger compartment interior (p. 544)
- Using electrical sockets (p. 547)

Using electrical sockets

12 V sockets can be used for various accessories designed for this, such as music players, cooler boxes and mobile phones.

For the sockets to supply current, the car's electrical system must be set in the lowest ignition position I. The sockets are then active as long as the starter battery level does not become too low.

If the engine is switched off and the car is locked, the sockets are deactivated. If the engine is switched off and the car is not locked, or is locked with double lock temporarily deactivated, then the sockets continue to be active for a further seven minutes.

NOTE

Remember that use of the electrical socket with the engine switched off entails a risk of discharging the starter battery, which can limit functionality.

Accessories that are connected to the electrical sockets may be activated even when the car's electrical system is disconnected or if preconditioning is used. For this reason, disconnect the connectors when they are not in use in order to avoid the starter battery being discharged.

WARNING

- Do not use accessories with large or heavy connectors - they can damage the socket or come loose when driving.
- Do not use accessories that can cause interference to the car's radio receiver or electrical system for example.
- Position the accessory so that it is not at risk of injuring the driver or passengers in the event of heavy braking or collision.
- Keep an eye on connected accessories as they can generate heat that can burn passengers or the interior.

Using 12 V sockets

1. Remove the blanking plug (tunnel console) or fold down the cover (cargo area) in front of the socket and plug in the accessory's connector.
2. Unplug the accessory's connector and refit the blanking plug (tunnel console) or fold up the cover (cargo area) when the socket is not in use or if the socket is left unattended.

IMPORTANT

Maximum socket output is 120 W (10 A) per socket.

◀◀ Related information

- Electrical sockets (p. 546)
- Passenger compartment interior (p. 544)

Using the glovebox

The glovebox is located on the passenger side. The printed owner's manual and maps can be kept in the glovebox, for example. There is also space for a pen and card holder.

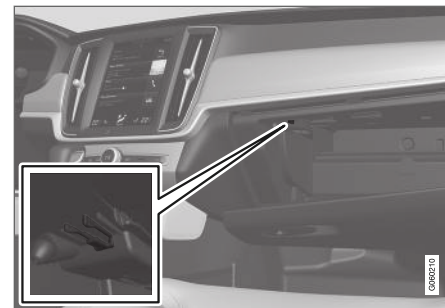


Glovebox with extensible hook.

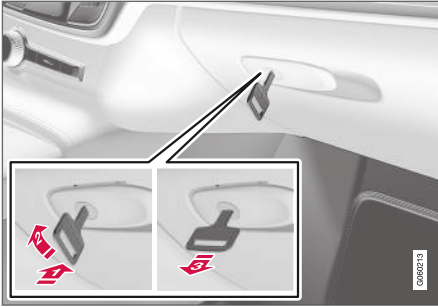
The hook on the glovebox can be extended when the glovebox is open so that it can be used after the glovebox has been closed.

Locking and unlocking the glovebox*

The glovebox can be locked, e.g. when the car is taken in for service, left at a hotel or similar. The glovebox can only be locked/unlocked with the accompanying key.



The key's designated storage space. The figure is schematic - the design may vary.



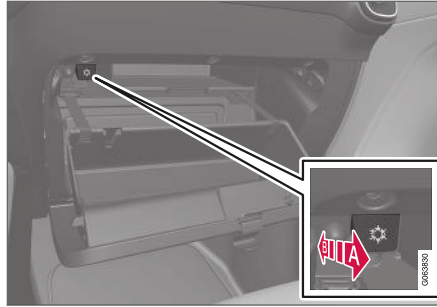
The figure is schematic - the design may vary.

Locking the glovebox:

- ➊ Insert the key in the glovebox lock cylinder.
 - ➋ Turn the key 90 degrees clockwise.
 - ➌ Pull out the key.
- Unlock by carrying this out in reverse order.

Using the glovebox as a cooled area*

The glovebox can be used for cooling of e.g. drinks or food. The cooling works when the climate control system is active (i.e. when the car is set in ignition position **II** or when the engine is running).



The figure is schematic - the design may vary.

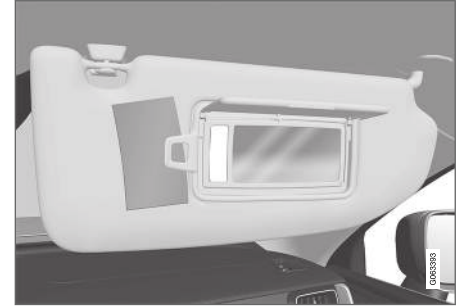
- Activating cooling
 - ➥ Deactivating cooling
- Activate or deactivate the cooling by moving the control to the end position toward the passenger compartment/glovebox.

Related information

- Passenger compartment interior (p. 544)
- Private locking (p. 253)

Sun visors

There are sun visors in the roof in front of the driver and the front seat passenger which can be folded down and angled out to the side when necessary.



The figure is schematic - the design may vary.

The mirror lighting* is switched on automatically when the lid is lifted.

The mirror frame incorporates a holder for e.g. cards or tickets.

Related information

- Passenger compartment interior (p. 544)

Cargo area

The car has a flexible cargo area that makes it possible to transport and secure large objects. By folding down the backrests in the rear seat, the cargo area can become quite spacious. Use the load retaining eyelets or bag holders available for holding the load securely in place. The parcel shelf can be both easily removed and stored under the cargo area floor to make space for bulky loads.

The car's towing eye and puncture repair kit or spare wheel* are stored under the cargo area floor.

Related information

- Recommendations for loading (p. 550)
- Bag hooks (p. 551)
- Load retaining eyelets (p. 552)
- Folding up the cargo area floor (p. 553)

Recommendations for loading

There are a number of things to remember when loading the car.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight.

WARNING

The car's driving properties change depending on the weight and positioning of the load.

Loading in the cargo area

- Position the load firmly against the rear seat's backrest.
- Centre the load.
- Heavy objects should be placed as low as possible. Avoid placing heavy loads on lowered backrests.
- Cover sharp edges with something soft to avoid damaging the upholstery.
- Secure all loads to the load retaining eyelets with straps or web lashings.

WARNING

A loose object weighing 20 kg (44 pounds) can, in a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph) carry the impact of an item weighing 1000 kg (2200 pounds).

WARNING

Leave 10 cm (4 inches) space between the load and the side windows if the car is loaded to above the top edge of the door windows. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.

WARNING

Always secure the load. During heavy braking the load may otherwise shift, causing injury to the car's occupants.

Cover sharp edges and sharp corners with something soft.

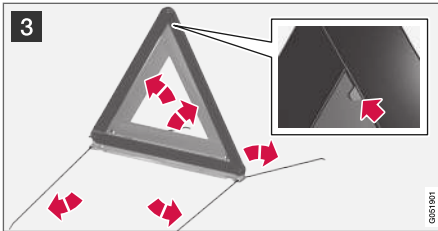
Switch off the engine and apply the parking brake when loading/unloading long items. Otherwise you may accidentally knock the gear lever or gear selector with the load into a drive position - and the car could then move off.

Increasing the space in the cargo area

To expand the cargo area and simplify loading, the rear seat's backrest can be lowered. Note that objects must not prevent the function of the WHIPS system for the front seats if any of the rear seat's backrests is folded down.

A through-load hatch* in the rear seat can be folded down for carrying long and narrow loads.

* Option/accessory.



1 Open the hatch by first turning the knob a quarter turn and then pulling the hatch from its brackets in the top and bottom edges.

Press the latch that secures the warning triangle slightly to the right and remove the case.

2 Remove the warning triangle from the case, unfold it and put the ends together.

3 Fold out the warning triangle's support legs.

Follow the regulations for the use of a warning triangle. Position the warning triangle in a suitable place with regard to traffic.

Make sure that the warning triangle and case are properly secured in their storage space and that the hatch is fully closed after use.

Related information

- Cargo area (p. 550)
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 143)

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

Volvo service programme

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service programme as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to perform the service and maintenance work. Volvo workshops have the personnel, special tools and service literature to guarantee the highest quality of service.

IMPORTANT

For the Volvo warranty to apply, check and follow the instructions in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Related information

- Car status (p. 562)
- Book service and repair (p. 562)
- Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket (p. 38)
- Servicing the climate control system (p. 568)
- Brake system maintenance (p. 403)
- Engine compartment overview (p. 569)


Data transfer between car and workshop via Wi-Fi

Volvo's workshops have a specific Wi-Fi network for secure data transfer between your car and the workshop. Your workshop visit will be simpler and more efficient when the transfer of diagnostic information and software can take place via the workshop's network.

When you reach the workshop for your visit, your technician may want to connect your car to the workshop's network via Wi-Fi to perform fault-tracing and software download. For this type of communication, the car only connects to the workshop's network. It is therefore not possible to connect the car to another Wi-Fi network, such as at home, but only the workshop's specific network.

Manual connection to the workshop

Manual connection is normally handled by the service technician. The technician uses your remote control key's buttons to connect the car, which is why it is important to bring a key with buttons with you for the workshop visit. Press three times on the lock button on the remote control key to connect the car to the workshop's network via Wi-Fi.

When the car is connected to a Wi-Fi network, the  symbol appears in the centre display.

WARNING

The car must not be driven when connected to the workshop's networks and systems.

Related information

- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 561)
- Book service and repair (p. 562)

Sending car information to a workshop⁸

It is possible to send information for the car at any time, e.g. if you book a workshop appointment and want to help your workshop by providing them with better data so that your visit can be planned. Sending car information is not the same as booking a service appointment.



1. Open the **Car status** app from the app view in the centre display.
2. Press the **Appointments** button.
3. Press the **Send car data** button.
 - > A message that vehicle data are being sent is shown at the top of the centre display. You can cancel data transmission by tapping the X in the activity indicator.

The information is sent via the car's Internet connection⁹.

This car information can be accessed by any retailer if they have the car's identification number (VIN¹⁰).

⁸ Applies to certain markets.

⁹ Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

¹⁰ Vehicle Identification Number.

Car information content

The data sent is the last information saved (the last time the car was running) and includes information in the following areas:

- service requirement
- time since last service
- function status
- fluid levels
- meter reading
- the car's vehicle identification number (VIN¹⁰)
- the car's software version
- the car's diagnostics data.

Related information

- Book service and repair (p. 562)
- Car status (p. 562)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 101)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 498)

Raise the car

When raising the car it is important that the car jack or the workshop/garage jack is fitted to the intended points on the car's underbody.

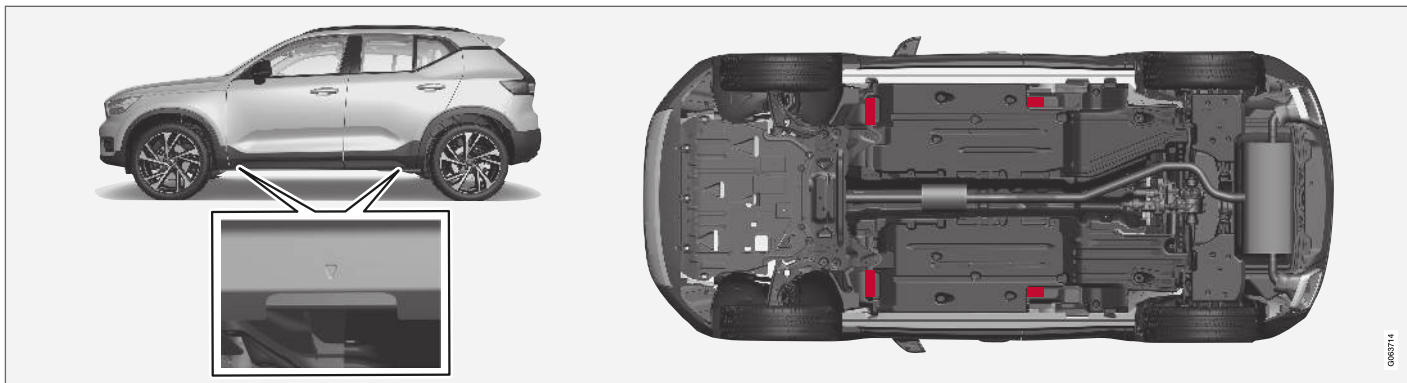
WARNING

If the car is raised using a workshop jack, this must be placed beneath one of the four jacking points. Take care to position the workshop jack so that the car cannot slip off. Make sure that the jack plate is fitted with a rubber guard so that the car remains stable and is not damaged. Always use axle stands or similar.

NOTE

Volvo recommends only using the jack that belongs to the car model in question. If a jack is selected other than the one recommended by Volvo, follow the instructions supplied with the equipment.

The normal car jack is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.



The triangles in the plastic cover indicate the locations of the lifting points (marked in red).

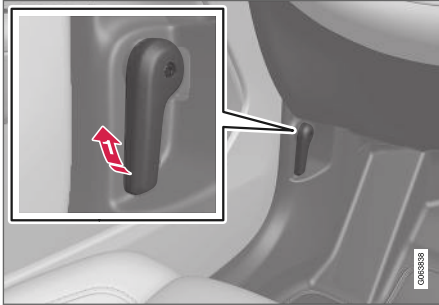
Related information

- Removing a wheel (p. 531)
- Jack* (p. 529)

Opening and closing the bonnet

The bonnet can be opened using the handle in the passenger compartment and a handle under the bonnet.

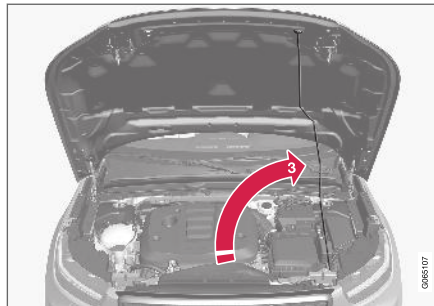
Open the bonnet



- 1 Pull the handle near the foot pedals to release the bonnet from its fully closed position.



- 2 Move the handle under the bonnet upwards to release the bonnet from the lock catch and lift the bonnet.



- 3 Use the support pin to hold the bonnet raised and attach it securely.

Warning - bonnet not closed



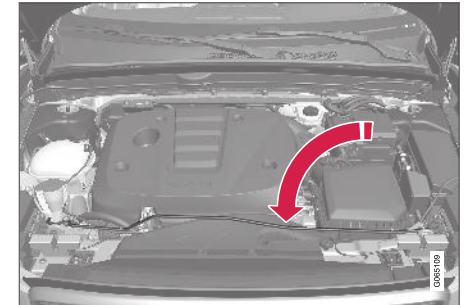
When the bonnet is released, the warning symbol and the graphics in the driver display will light up and an acoustic reminder will sound. If the car starts rolling, an acoustic warning signal will repeat.

NOTE

If the warning symbol is lit or the warning signal is heard despite the bonnet being closed properly, contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

Close the bonnet

1. Detach the support pin and secure it in its place.



2. Lower the bonnet manually.
3. When the bonnet stops against the lock catch, push the bonnet to close it completely.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of crushing! Ensure that the closing path under the bonnet is not obstructed, otherwise there is a risk of personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Check that the bonnet locks properly when closed. The bonnet must engage at both sides audibly.



Bonnet not completely closed. The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.



Bonnet completely closed. The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive with an open bonnet!

If there are any signs that the bonnet is not properly closed whilst driving, stop immediately and close it.

Related information

- Engine compartment overview (p. 569)
- Door and seatbelt reminder (p. 47)

Servicing the climate control system

The air conditioning system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Troubleshooting and repair

The air conditioning system contains fluorescent tracing agents. Ultraviolet light must be used during leak detection.

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.

Cars with R134a refrigerant

⚠ WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. This system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Cars with R1234yf refrigerant

⚠ WARNING

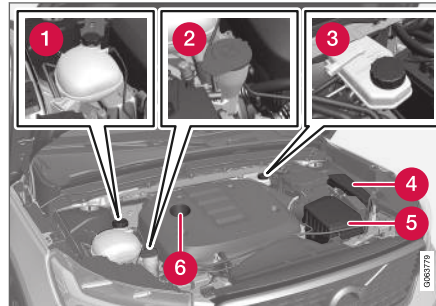
The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R1234yf. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repair of the refrigerant system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

Related information

- Volvo service programme (p. 560)

Engine compartment overview

The overview shows some service-related components.



The appearance of the engine compartment may differ depending on model and engine variant.

- ❶ Coolant expansion tank
- ❷ Washer fluid filler pipe¹¹
- ❸ Reservoir for brake fluid (located on the driver's side)
- ❹ Central electrical unit
- ❺ Air filter
- ❻ Engine oil filler pipe

¹¹ Fill the washer fluid at regular intervals, e.g. when refuelling.

WARNING

Remember that the radiator fan (located at the front of the engine compartment, behind the radiator) may start or continue to operate automatically for up to approx. 6 minutes after the engine has been switched off.

Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

WARNING

The ignition system works at a very high and hazardous voltage. The car's electrical system must always be in ignition position **0** when work is being performed in the engine compartment.

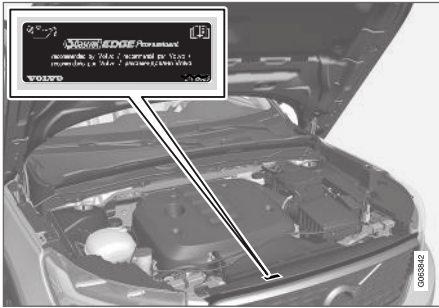
Do not touch the spark plugs or ignition coil when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II** or when the engine is hot.

Related information

- Opening and closing the bonnet (p. 567)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 609)
- Topping up coolant (p. 572)
- Fuses in engine compartment (p. 586)
- Checking and filling with engine oil (p. 571)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)

Engine oil

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals and warranty can be applied.



Volvo recommends:



If the engine oil cannot be checked on a regular basis and the level falls too low, there is a risk that this will cause serious damage to the engine.

! IMPORTANT



In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise there is a risk of the service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact of the car being affected.

If engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used, engine related components may become damaged. Volvo Car Corporation disclaims any liability for any such damage.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

Volvo uses different systems to warn about the oil level if it is too low/high, or in the event of low oil pressure. Certain engine variants have an oil pressure sensor, and then the driver display's

warning symbol for low oil pressure  is used. Other variants have an oil level sensor, when the driver is informed via the driver display's warning symbol  and display texts. Certain variants have both systems. Contact a Volvo retailer for more information.

Change the engine oil and oil filter in accordance with the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet. Using oil of a higher than specified grade is permitted. If the car is driven in adverse conditions, Volvo recommends using an oil of a higher grade than the one specified.

Related information

- Checking and filling with engine oil (p. 571)
- Engine oil — specifications (p. 621)
- Adverse driving conditions for engine oil (p. 622)



i NOTE

If the right conditions for measuring the oil level (time after engine shutdown, the car's inclination, outside temperature, etc.) are not met, then the message **No value available** will be shown in the centre display. This does **not** mean that there is something wrong in the car's systems.

Related information

- Engine oil (p. 570)
- Adverse driving conditions for engine oil (p. 622)
- Engine oil — specifications (p. 621)
- Ignition positions (p. 398)
- Car status (p. 562)

Topping up coolant

The coolant cools the internal combustion engine to the correct operating temperature. The heat that is transferred from the engine to the coolant can be used to heat the passenger compartment.

When topping up the coolant, follow the instructions on the packaging. Never top up with water only. The risk of freezing increases with both too little and too much coolant concentrate.

If there is coolant under the car, if there is coolant smoke, or if more than 2 litres (approx. 2 quarts) have been filled, always call for recovery to avoid the risk of engine damage due to a defective cooling system when attempting to start the car.



WARNING

The coolant may be very hot. Never open the cap when the coolant is hot. If a top-up is required, unscrew the expansion tank cap slowly to allow any overpressure to disappear.



Coolant expansion tank.

- Screw off the cap and top up with coolant if necessary. The coolant level must not exceed the **MAX** mark inside the expansion tank.

! IMPORTANT

- Mix the coolant with approved quality water. In the event of any doubt about water quality, used ready-mixed coolant in accordance with Volvo recommendations.
- Make sure that the coolant mixture is 50% water and 50% coolant.
- Always use coolant with anti-corrosion agent as recommended by Volvo.
- Only new coolant should be used when replacing major cooling system components to ensure the system has sufficient corrosion protection.
- The engine must only be run with a well-filled cooling system. Otherwise, temperatures that are too high may occur resulting in the risk of damage (cracks) in the cylinder head.
- A high content of chlorine, chlorides and other salts may cause corrosion in the cooling system.

Related information

- Engine compartment overview (p. 569)
- Coolant — specifications (p. 623)

Bulb replacement

The bulbs for the rear direction indicator, brake light bulb and rear fog lamp can be replaced without assistance from a workshop.

Halogen headlamps are not available for all models and markets. Contact a Volvo retailer for more information.

An LED¹³ type lamp must be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

i NOTE

For information about bulbs not covered in this article, contact a Volvo dealer or a certified Volvo service technician.

Contact a workshop¹⁴ if faults other than bulbs occur in lamps. If a fault occurs in LED¹³ lamps, the entire lamp unit usually must be replaced.

⚠ WARNING

The car's electrical system must be in ignition position **0** when replacing bulbs.

! IMPORTANT

Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

i NOTE

If an error message remains after the broken bulb has been replaced then we recommend visiting an authorised Volvo workshop.

i NOTE

Outside lighting such as headlamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

Related information

- Exterior lamp positions (p. 574)
- Replacing the rear direction indicator bulb (p. 575)
- Changing brake light bulb (p. 576)

¹³ LED (Ligh Emitting Diode)

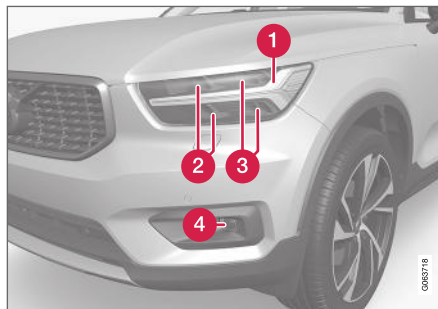
¹⁴ An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

- Replacing the rear fog lamp bulb (p. 577)
- Bulb specifications (p. 578)

Exterior lamp positions

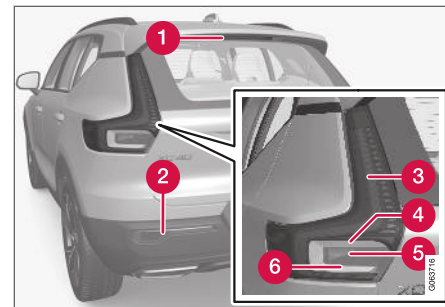
The exterior lighting of the car uses a number of different lamps. An LED¹⁵ type lamp must be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Lamps, front



- 1 Daytime running lights/position lamps/direction indicators (LED)¹⁵
- 2 Main beam (LED)
- 3 Dipped beam (LED)
- 4 Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (LED)

Lamps, rear



- 1 Brake light - central, high-level (LED)¹⁵
- 2 Fog lamp
- 3 Position lamps (LED)
- 4 Direction indicators
- 5 Brake lights
- 6 Reversing lamps (LED)

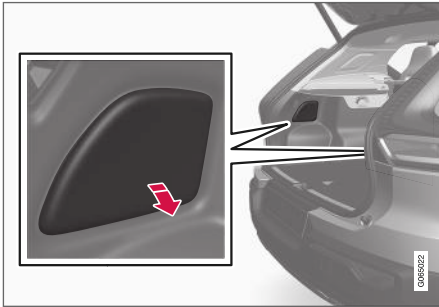
Related information

- Bulb replacement (p. 573)
- Bulb specifications (p. 578)
- Lighting control (p. 134)

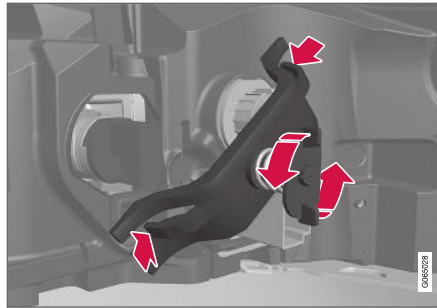
¹⁵ LED (Light Emitting Diode)

Replacing the rear direction indicator bulb

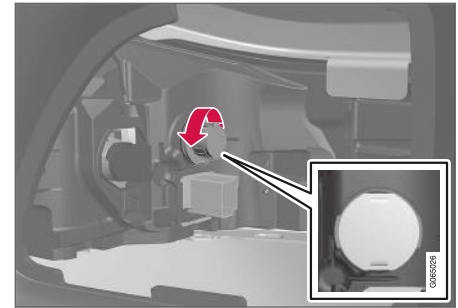
Bulbs for rear direction indicators are located behind the panel in the side of the cargo area.



1. Press in the panel hatch at the upper edge to detach it.
2. Move the insulation aside to access the supporting bridge.



3. Unscrew the spring bolt anticlockwise and remove the supporting bridge. It is easiest to allow the screw to remain in the supporting bridge.



4. Undo the grey bulb holder by turning it anticlockwise and pulling it out.
5. Remove the bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
6. Fit a new bulb by pressing it in and turning it clockwise.
7. Attach the bulb holder by turning it clockwise.
8. Fit the supporting bridge with associated spring bolt and make sure that the clips align in the correct position. Tighten the spring bolt until it stops (max. 2 Nm).
9. Move back the insulation and then hook in the panel and press it back into place.



! IMPORTANT

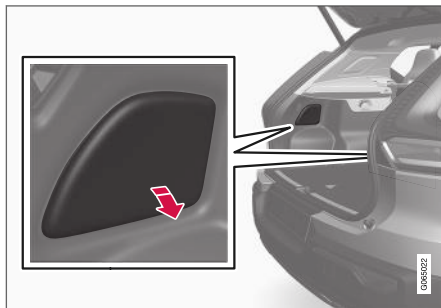
Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

Related information

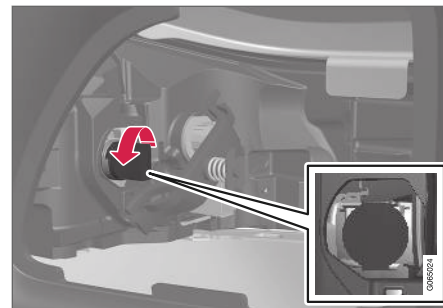
- Exterior lamp positions (p. 574)
- Bulb specifications (p. 578)
- Bulb replacement (p. 573)

Changing brake light bulb

Bulbs for brake lights are located behind the panel in the side of the cargo area.



1. Press in the panel hatch at the upper edge to detach it.
2. Move the insulation aside to access the brake light bulb.



3. Undo the black bulb holder by turning it anticlockwise and pulling it out.
4. Remove the bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise
5. Fit a new bulb by pressing it in and turning it clockwise.
6. Attach the bulb holder by turning it clockwise.
7. Move back the insulation and then hook in the panel and press it back into place.

! IMPORTANT

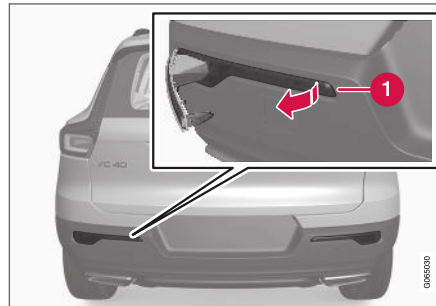
Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

Related information

- Exterior lamp positions (p. 574)
- Bulb specifications (p. 578)

Replacing the rear fog lamp bulb

The rear foglight is fitted in the rear bumper on the driver's side.



The rear fog light is only fitted on the driver's side.

1. Loosen the foglight unit on the driver's side by inserting a flat object, such as a table knife or a screwdriver, on the bulb kit's narrower short side of the keypad and then prize the foglight unit out.
2. Unplug the connector.
3. Undo the bulb holder by turning it anticlockwise and pulling it out.
4. Remove the bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
5. Fit a new bulb by pressing it in and turning it clockwise.
6. Attach the bulb holder by turning it clockwise.

7. Plug in the connector.
8. Insert the hook on the wide part of the foglight unit in the rear bumper and rotate the unit inwards so that the clips engage.

Related information

- Exterior lamp positions (p. 574)
- Bulb specifications (p. 578)

Bulb specifications

The specifications apply to the bulbs for the rear direction indicator bulbs brake light bulb and rear fog light bulb.

Contact a workshop¹⁶ if faults occur in other lamps.

Function	W ^A	Type
Rear direction indicators	24	PY24W
Brake lights	21	H21W LL
Rear fog lamp	21	H21W LL

^A Watt

Related information

- Exterior lamp positions (p. 574)
- Bulb replacement (p. 573)

¹⁶ An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Starter battery

The electrical system is single-pole and uses the chassis and engine casing as a conductor.

The starter battery is used to start up the electrical system and drive the starter motor as well as other electrical equipment in the car.

The starter battery should be replaced by a workshop¹⁷.

The car has a voltage-regulated AC alternator.

The starter battery is a 12 V battery, designed for the carbon dioxide reducing functions Start/Stop and regenerative charging, and to support the functionality of the car's different systems.

The service life and function of the starter battery is influenced by factors such as the number of starts, discharging, driving style, driving conditions, climatic conditions etc.

- Never disconnect the starter battery when the engine is running.
- Check that the cables to the starter battery are correctly connected and properly tightened.

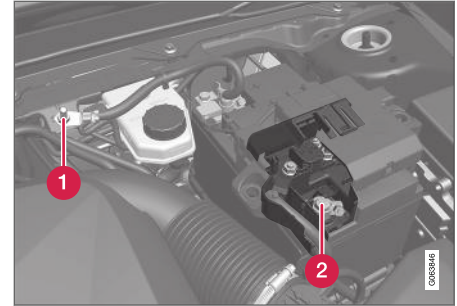
WARNING

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- Do not connect the jump leads to any fuel system component or any moving part. Be careful of hot engine parts.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.
- Never smoke near the battery.

Charging points

When connecting an external starter battery or battery charger, use the car's charging points in the engine compartment.

During charging, both the starter battery and the support battery are charged.



- ❶ Negative charging point
- ❷ Positive charging point

IMPORTANT

When charging the starter battery and the support battery, only use a modern battery charger with controlled charging voltage. Fast charging function must not be used since it may damage the battery.

¹⁷ An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.



! IMPORTANT

If the following instruction is not observed then the energy saving function for infotainment may be temporarily disengaged, and/or the message in the driver display about the starter battery's state of charge may be temporarily inapplicable, following the connection of an external starter battery or battery charger:

- The negative battery terminal on the car's starter battery must **never** be used for connecting an external starter battery or battery charger - only the **car's negative charging point** may be used as the grounding point.

i NOTE

The life of the battery is shortened if it becomes discharged repeatedly.

The life of the battery is affected by several factors, including driving conditions and climate. Battery starting capacity decreases gradually with time and therefore needs to be recharged if the car is not used for a longer time or when it is only driven short distances. Extreme cold further limits starting capacity.

To maintain the battery in good condition, at least 15 minutes of driving/week is recommended or that the battery is connected to a battery charger with automatic trickle charging.

A battery that is kept fully charged has a maximum service life.

Location



The starter battery is located in the engine compartment.

! WARNING

If the starter battery is disconnected, the automatic opening and closing function must be reset to work properly. A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

! IMPORTANT

On certain models, the battery is attached with a retaining strap. Make sure the retaining strap is properly tightened.

Specifications

Battery	H6 AGM	H6 EFB	H7 AGM
Voltage (V)	12	12	12
Cold start capacity ^A - CCA ^B (A)	760	720	800
Size, L×B×H	278×175×190 mm (10.9×6.9×7.5 inches)	278×175×190 mm (10.9×6.9×7.5 inches)	315×175×190 mm (12.4×6.9×7.5 inches)
Capacity (Ah)	70	70	80

^A According to EN standard.

^B Cold Cranking Amperes.

Volvo recommends entrusting battery replacement to an authorised Volvo workshop.

! IMPORTANT

When replacing the starter battery or support battery, a battery of the same type must be fitted.

! IMPORTANT

If the starter battery is replaced, make sure you replace it with a battery with the same cold starting capacity and type as the original battery (see the label on the battery).

i NOTE

The starter battery's container size must be consistent with the dimensions for the original battery.

Related information

- Symbols on the batteries (p. 583)
- Support battery (p. 582)
- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 443)

Support battery

Cars with Start/Stop function, in addition to the starter battery, are equipped with a support battery.

Cars with the Start/Stop function are equipped with two 12 V batteries - one extra powerful starter battery for starting and one support battery that helps during the Start/Stop function's starting sequence.



The support battery is located down in the engine compartment. The starter battery is also shown here (top).

i	NOTE
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The higher the current take-off in the car, the more the alternator must be working and the batteries charging = Increased fuel consumption. • When the capacity of the starter battery has fallen below the lowest permissible level then the Start/Stop function is disengaged.

Temporarily reduced Start/Stop function due to high current take-off means:

- The engine auto-starts without the driver lifting his/her foot from the foot brake pedal.

The support battery normally requires no more service than the normal starter battery. A workshop should be contacted in the event of questions or problems - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

!	IMPORTANT
	<p>If the following instruction is not observed then the Start/Stop function may temporarily cease to work after the connection of an external starter battery or battery charger:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The negative battery terminal on the car's starter battery must never be used for connecting an external starter battery or battery charger - only the car's negative charging point may be used as the grounding point.

i NOTE

If the starter battery has been discharged so much that the car has no normal electrical functions and the engine is then jump-started with an external battery or a battery charger, the Start/Stop function may continue to be activated. If the Start/Stop function then auto-stops the engine shortly after, there is a great risk that engine auto-start will fail due to insufficient battery capacity, because the battery has not had the opportunity to recharge.

If the car has been jump-started, or if there is insufficient time to charge the battery with a battery charger, the recommendation is to temporarily deactivate the Start/Stop function until the battery has been recharged by the car. In an outside temperature of approx. +15 °C (approx. 60 °F), the battery needs to be charged for at least 1 hour by the car. In a lower outside temperature, the charging time may increase to 3-4 hours. The recommendation is to charge the battery using an external battery charger.

Specifications

Voltage (V)	12
Cold start capacity ^A - CCA ^B (A)	170

Size, LxBxH	150x90x130 mm (5.9x3.5x5.1 inches)
Capacity (Ah)	10

^A According to EN standard.

^B Cold Cranking Amperes.

i IMPORTANT





When replacing the starter battery or support battery, a battery of the same type must be fitted.

Related information

- Starter battery (p. 579)
- Start/Stop function (p. 419)
- Symbols on the batteries (p. 583)

Symbols on the batteries

There are information and warning symbols on the batteries.

	Use protective goggles.
	Further information in the owner's manual for the car.
	Store the battery out of the reach of children.
	The battery contains corrosive acid.



	<p>Avoid sparks and naked flames.</p>
	<p>Risk of explosion.</p>
	<p>Must be taken for recycling.</p>

i NOTE

An expended starter battery or support battery must be recycled in an environmentally safe manner since it contains lead.

Related information

- Starter battery (p. 579)
- Support battery (p. 582)

Fuses and central electrical units

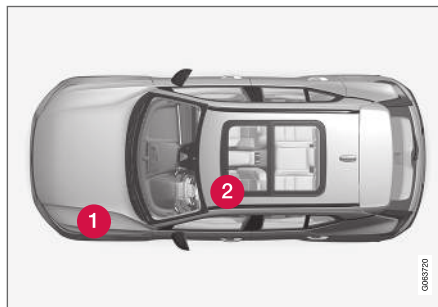
All electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the car's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

⚠ WARNING

Never use a foreign object or a fuse with an amperage higher than that specified when replacing a fuse. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system and possibly lead to fire.

If an electrical component or function does not work, it may be because the component's fuse was temporarily overloaded and failed. If the same fuse fails repeatedly then there is a fault in the circuit. Volvo recommends contacting an authorised Volvo workshop for checking.

Location of central electrical units



- 1 Engine compartment
- 2 Under the left-hand front seat

Related information

- Replacing a fuse (p. 585)
- Fuses in engine compartment (p. 586)
- Fuses under the left-hand front seat (p. 590)

Replacing a fuse

All electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the car's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

1. Look in the fuse diagram to locate the fuse.
2. Pull out the fuse and check from the side to see whether the curved wire has blown.
3. If this is the case, replace it with a new fuse of the same colour and amperage.

WARNING

Never use a foreign object or a fuse with an amperage higher than that specified when replacing a fuse. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system and possibly lead to fire.

WARNING

Contact an authorised Volvo workshop about the fuses not mentioned in the owner's manual. If this is not performed correctly, it can cause serious damage to the electrical systems.

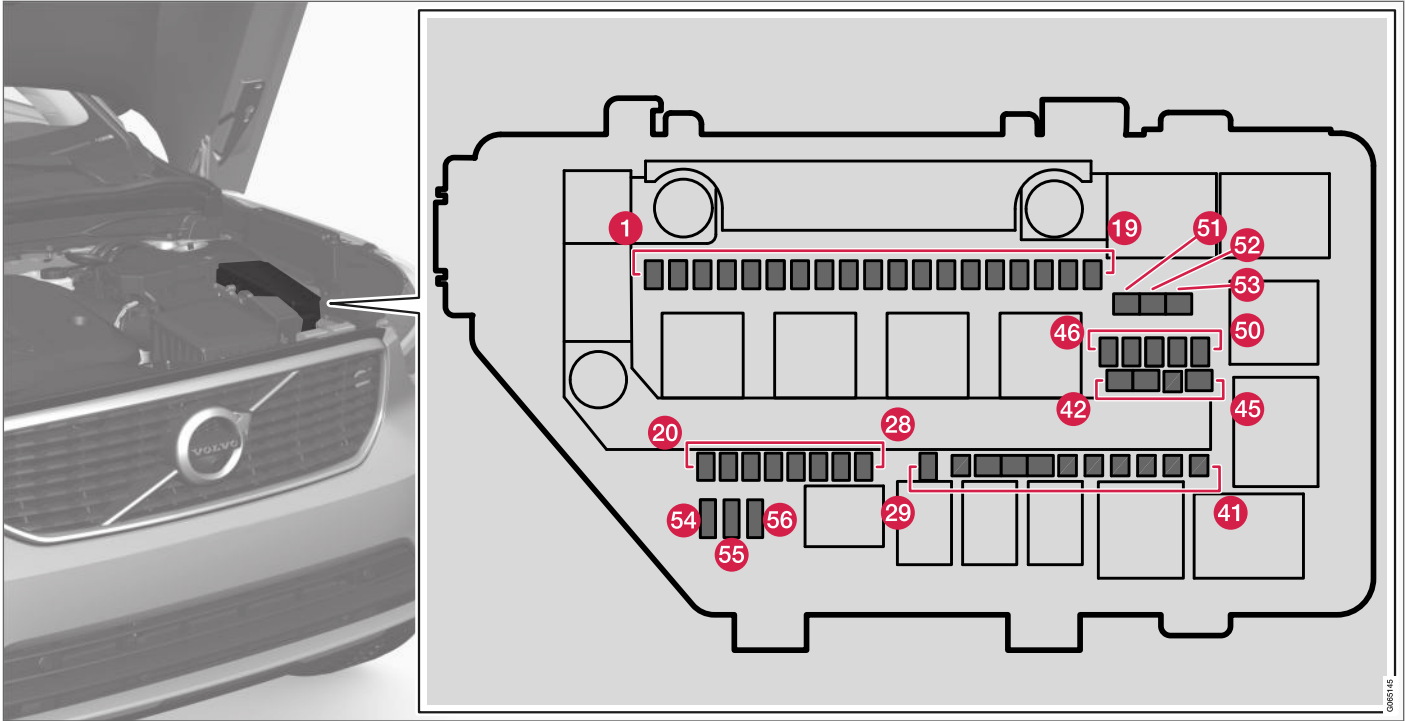
Related information

- Fuses and central electrical units (p. 584)
- Fuses in engine compartment (p. 586)

- Fuses under the left-hand front seat (p. 590)

Fuses in engine compartment

Fuses in the engine compartment protect engine and brake functions, amongst other things.



On the inside of the cover there are tweezers that facilitate the procedure for the removal and fitting of fuses.

The fuse box also provides space for several spare fuses.

Positions

On the inside of the cover is a label that shows the location of the fuses.

	Function	A ^A
34	–	–
35	Actuator for transmission	25
36	–	–
38	Right-hand headlamp; Left-hand headlamp	30
39	–	–
40	–	–
41	Towbar control module*	25
42	Towbar control module*	40
43	–	–
44	Power driver seat*	20
45	–	–
46	–	–
47	–	–
48	–	–
	–	–
49	–	–
50	–	–

	Function	A ^A
51	Fuel filter heater (diesel)	30
52	Heated windscreen*, left	40
53	Heated windscreen*, right	40
54	Control function for support battery	5
55	Left-hand headlamp	20
56	Right-hand headlamp	20

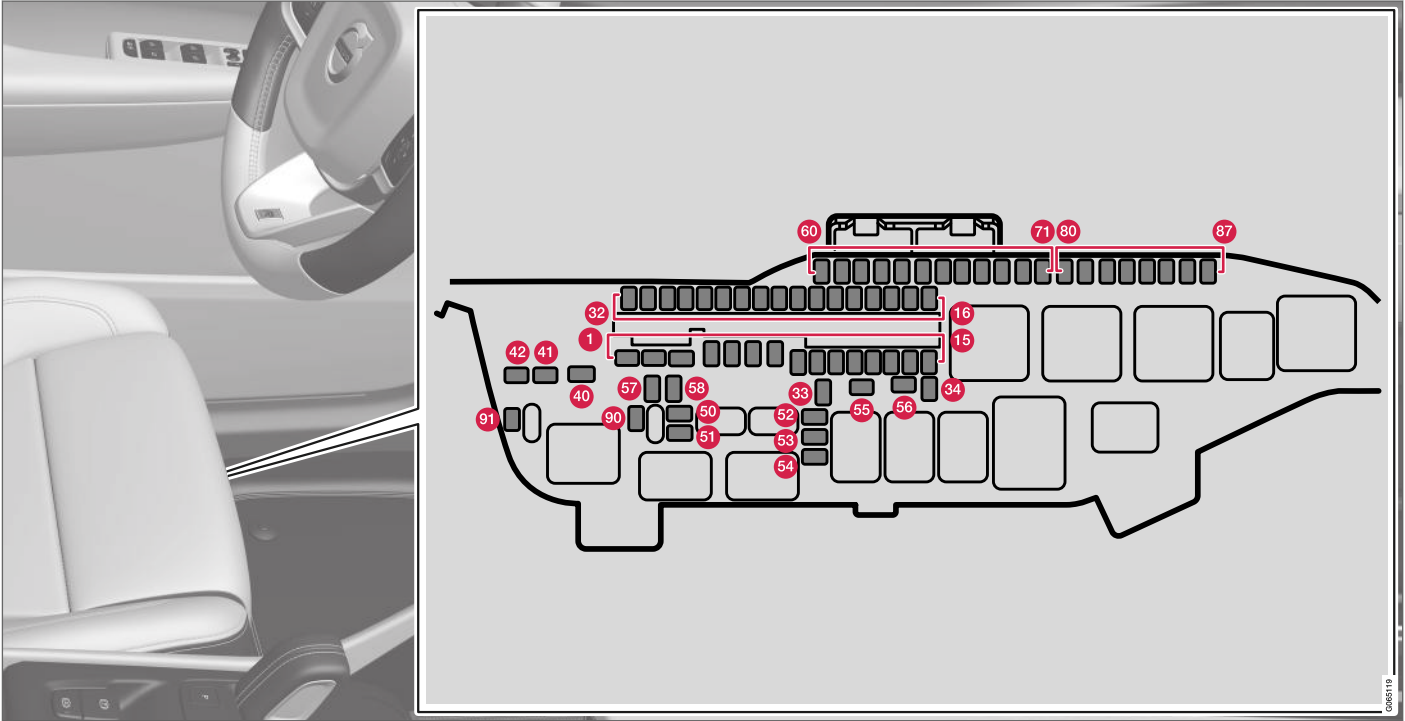
^A Ampere

Related information

- Fuses and central electrical units (p. 584)
- Replacing a fuse (p. 585)

Fuses under the left-hand front seat

Fuses under the left-hand front seat protect, amongst other things, electrical sockets, displays and door modules.





	Function	A ^A
34	Lock motor for backrest on rear right-hand side	15
40	Rear window defroster	30
41	Seatbelt pretensioner module, left-hand side	40
42	Seatbelt pretensioner module, right-hand side	40
50	Humidity sensor	5
51	Control module for fuel pump	20
52	Coolant pump	10
53	Steering wheel module for heated steering wheel*	15
54	-	-
55	Headlamp washers*	25
56	Rear window washer	25
57	-	-
58	-	-
59	-	-
60	-	-

	Function	A ^A
61	-	-
62	-	-
63	Seatbelt pretensioner module	5
64	Blind Spot Information (BLIS)*: control module, exterior reversing sound	5
65	-	-
66	Sun sensor	5
67	All Wheel Drive (AWD) control module*	15
68	Coolant pump	10
69	Parking camera*	5
70	-	-
71	Control module for airbags and seatbelt tensioners	5
80	Rear window wiper	15
81	Panorama roof with sun blind*	20
82	-	-

	Function	A ^A
83	Interior lighting; Dimming of interior rearview mirror*; Rain and light sensor*; Control panels in rear doors and cargo area	7,5
84	-	-
85	Control module for driver support functions	5
86	Alcohol lock	5
87	Wireless mobile charger*; USB port	5
90	-	-
91	-	-

^A Amperes

Related information

- Fuses and central electrical units (p. 584)
- Replacing a fuse (p. 585)

Cleaning the interior

Only use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and treat stains at once for best results. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

! IMPORTANT

- Certain items of coloured clothing (e.g. dark jeans and suede garments) may stain the upholstery. If this occurs, it is important to clean and treat these parts of the upholstery as soon as possible.
- Never use strong solvents such as washer fluid, pure petrol or white spirit or concentrated alcohol to clean the interior, since this may damage the upholstery as well as other interior materials.
- Never spray the cleaning agent directly onto components that have electrical buttons and controls. Wipe them instead using a moistened cloth containing the cleaning agent.
- Sharp objects and Velcro may damage the fabric upholstery.

Related information

- Cleaning the centre display (p. 593)
- Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining (p. 594)
- Cleaning the seatbelts (p. 595)

- Cleaning floor mats and inlay mats (p. 595)
- Cleaning leather upholstery (p. 596)
- Cleaning the leather steering wheel (p. 596)
- Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts (p. 597)

Cleaning the centre display

Dirt, stains and grease from fingers can affect the centre display's performance and readability. Clean the screen frequently with a microfibre cloth.



To clean the centre display:

1. Turn off the centre display with a long press on the home button.
2. Wipe the screen with the microfibre cloth supplied or use another microfibre cloth of equivalent quality. The screen should be wiped with a clean and dry microfibre cloth with small circular movements. If necessary, lightly moisten the microfibre cloth with clean water.
3. Activate the display with a short press on the home button.





! **IMPORTANT**

The microfibre cloth used to clean the centre display must be free from sand and dirt.

! **IMPORTANT**

When cleaning the centre display, only use gentle pressure on the screen. Heavy pressure can damage the screen.

! **IMPORTANT**

Do not spray any liquid or caustic chemicals directly on the centre display. Do not use window cleaning agent, other cleaning agents, aerosol spray, solvents, alcohol, ammonia or cleaning agent containing abrasive.

Never use abrasive cloths, paper towels or tissue paper, these can scratch the centre display.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 593)
- Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining (p. 594)
- Cleaning the seatbelts (p. 595)
- Cleaning floor mats and inlay mats (p. 595)
- Cleaning leather upholstery (p. 596)

- Cleaning the leather steering wheel (p. 596)
- Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts (p. 597)

Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining

Only use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and treat stains at once for best results. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Fabric upholstery and ceiling upholstery

Never scrape or rub a stain since this risks destroying the upholstery. Never use strong stain removers since this risks destroying the colour of the upholstery.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 593)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 593)
- Cleaning the seatbelts (p. 595)
- Cleaning floor mats and inlay mats (p. 595)
- Cleaning leather upholstery (p. 596)
- Cleaning the leather steering wheel (p. 596)
- Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts (p. 597)

Cleaning the seatbelts

Only use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and treat stains at once for best results. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Seatbelts

Use water and a synthetic detergent. A special textile cleaning agent is available from Volvo retailers. Ensure that the seatbelt is dry before allowing it to retract.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 593)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 593)
- Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining (p. 594)
- Cleaning floor mats and inlay mats (p. 595)
- Cleaning leather upholstery (p. 596)
- Cleaning the leather steering wheel (p. 596)
- Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts (p. 597)

Cleaning floor mats and inlay mats

Only use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and treat stains at once for best results. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Inlay mats and floor mat

Remove inlaid carpets for separate cleaning of the floor carpet and the inlaid carpets. Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust and dirt. Each inlay mat is secured with pins.

Remove the inlay mat by taking hold of the inlay mat at each pin and lifting the mat straight up.

Fit the inlay mat in place by pressing it in at each pin.

WARNING

Only use one inlaid mat at each seat, and check before setting off that the mat by the driver's seat is firmly affixed and secured in the pins so that it does not get caught adjacent to and under the pedals.

A special textile cleaner is recommended for stains on the floor mat after vacuuming. Floor mats should be cleaned with agents recommended by Volvo retailers.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 593)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 593)

- Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining (p. 594)
- Cleaning the seatbelts (p. 595)
- Cleaning leather upholstery (p. 596)
- Cleaning the leather steering wheel (p. 596)
- Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts (p. 597)

Cleaning leather upholstery

Only use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and treat stains at once for best results. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Leather upholstery*

Volvo's leather upholstery is treated to preserve its original appearance.

Leather upholstery is a natural product that changes and acquires a beautiful patina over time. Regular cleaning and treatment are required in order that the properties and colours of the leather shall be preserved. Volvo offers a comprehensive product – Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes – for the cleaning and treatment of leather upholstery which, when used in accordance with the instructions, preserves the leather's protective coating.

To achieve best results, Volvo recommends cleaning and application of the protective cream one to four times per year (or more if required). Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes is available from Volvo retailers.

Cleaning the leather upholstery

1. Apply the leather cleaner to a damp sponge and squeeze until a foam is created.
2. Use the sponge on the stain in a circular motion.

3. Thoroughly dampen the stain using the sponge, allow the sponge to absorb the stain without scrubbing.
4. Wipe the stain with a soft cloth and allow the leather to dry thoroughly

Protecting the leather upholstery

1. Apply a small amount of leather protective agent to a cloth and then apply it to the leather in light circular motions.
2. Allow to dry for about 20 minutes.

Protecting the leather upholstery makes it more resistant to the stresses from the sun's UV radiation.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 593)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 593)
- Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining (p. 594)
- Cleaning the seatbelts (p. 595)
- Cleaning floor mats and inlay mats (p. 595)
- Cleaning the leather steering wheel (p. 596)
- Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts (p. 597)

Cleaning the leather steering wheel

Only use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and treat stains at once for best results. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Leather steering wheel

Leather needs to breathe. Never cover the leather steering wheel with protective plastic. We recommend Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes for cleaning the leather steering wheel. First remove dirt, dust, etc. with a damp sponge or cloth.



IMPORTANT

Sharp objects, e.g. rings, can damage the leather on the steering wheel.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 593)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 593)
- Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining (p. 594)
- Cleaning the seatbelts (p. 595)
- Cleaning floor mats and inlay mats (p. 595)
- Cleaning leather upholstery (p. 596)
- Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts (p. 597)

Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts

Only use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and treat stains at once for best results.

Interior plastic, metal and wood parts

A fibrillated fibre or microfibre cloth, lightly moistened with water, available from Volvo retailers, is recommended for cleaning interior parts and surfaces.

Do not scrape or rub stains. Never use strong stain removers.

IMPORTANT

Do not use solvent that contains alcohol when cleaning the glass for the driver display.

IMPORTANT

Keep in mind that high gloss surfaces are easily scratched. Clean these surfaces with a clean, dry microfibre cloth using small, circular motions. If needed, dampen the microfibre cloth with a little clean water.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 593)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 593)

- Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining (p. 594)
- Cleaning the seatbelts (p. 595)
- Cleaning floor mats and inlay mats (p. 595)
- Cleaning leather upholstery (p. 596)
- Cleaning the leather steering wheel (p. 596)

Cleaning the exterior

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This means that the car is easier to clean since the dirt does not attach as firmly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the car fresh. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 597)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 598)
- Handwashing (p. 598)
- Automatic car wash (p. 600)
- High-pressure washing (p. 601)
- Cleaning the wiper blades (p. 601)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 602)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 603)
- Rustproofing (p. 603)

Polishing and waxing

Polish and wax the car if the paintwork is dull or to give the paintwork extra protection. The car does not need to be polished until it is at least one year old. However, the car can be waxed during this time. Do not polish or wax the car in direct sunlight, the surface being polished should be a maximum of 45 °C (113 °F).

- Wash and dry the car thoroughly before you begin polishing or waxing. Clean off asphalt and tar stains using tar remover or white spirit. More stubborn stains can be removed using fine rubbing paste designed for car paintwork.
- Polish first with a polish and then wax with liquid or solid wax. Follow the instructions on the packaging carefully. Many preparations contain both polish and wax.

! IMPORTANT

Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.

When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.

Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

! IMPORTANT

Only paint treatment recommended by Volvo should be used. Other treatment such as preserving, sealing, protection, lustre sealing or similar could damage the paintwork. Paintwork damage caused by such treatments is not covered by Volvo warranty.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 597)
- Handwashing (p. 598)
- Automatic car wash (p. 600)
- High-pressure washing (p. 601)
- Cleaning the wiper blades (p. 601)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 602)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 603)
- Rustproofing (p. 603)

Handwashing

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This means that the car is easier to clean since the dirt does not attach as firmly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the car fresh. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo.

Handwashing

The following steps are good to remember when washing the car:

- Avoid washing the car in direct sunlight. This can cause the detergent or wax to dry and have an abrasive effect.
- Remove bird droppings from the paintwork as soon as possible. Bird droppings contain chemicals that affect and discolour paintwork very quickly. For example, use soft paper or sponge soaked in plenty of water. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended for the removal of any discolouration.
- Wash the underbody, including wheel housings and bumpers.
- Rinse the entire car until the dissolved dirt has been removed so as to reduce the risk of scratches from washing. Do not spray directly onto the locks.
- If necessary, use cold degreasing agent on very dirty surfaces. Note that in this case, the surfaces must not be hot from the sun.

- Wash using a sponge, car shampoo and plenty of lukewarm water.
- Clean the wiper blades with a lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo.
- Dry the car using a clean, soft chamois or a water scraper. If you avoid allowing drops of water to dry in strong sunlight, you reduce the risk of water drying stains which may need to be polished out.
- After the car has been washed, tar from asphalt may remain. Use tar remover to get rid of the last spots after the car has been washed.

⚠ WARNING

Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

! IMPORTANT

Dirty headlamps have impaired functionality. Clean them regularly, e.g. when refuelling.

Do not use any corrosive cleaning agents but use water and a non-scratching sponge instead.

i NOTE

Outside lighting such as headlamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

! IMPORTANT

- Make sure that the panoramic roof and sun visor are closed before washing the car.
- Never use polishing agent with abrasive properties on the panoramic roof.
- Never use wax on the rubber mouldings around the panoramic roof.

! IMPORTANT

Remember to remove dirt from the drain holes in the doors and in the sills after washing the car.

- Cleaning the wiper blades (p. 601)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 602)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 603)
- Rustproofing (p. 603)

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 597)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 598)
- Automatic car wash (p. 600)
- High-pressure washing (p. 601)

Automatic car wash

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This means that the car is easier to clean since the dirt does not attach as firmly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the car fresh.

Automatic car wash

An automatic car wash is a simple and quick way of washing the car, but it cannot reach everywhere. Washing the car by hand is recommended to achieve a good result, or to supplement automatic car washes with washing by hand.

i NOTE

Volvo recommends that the car is not washed in an automatic car wash during the first few months (this is because the paintwork has not fully hardened).

! IMPORTANT

Before driving the car into an automatic car wash, deactivate the functions for automatic braking when stationary and automatic parking brake application. If these functions are not deactivated, the brake system will jam when the car is stationary and the car will not be able to move.

! IMPORTANT

For car washes where the car is pulled forward with rolling wheels, the following applies:

1. Before washing the car, make sure that the automatic rain sensor is deactivated, otherwise there is the risk of it starting and damaging the wiper arms.
2. Make sure that the door mirrors are retracted, any auxiliary lamps secured, antennas retracted or removed, otherwise they risk being damaged by the automatic car wash.
3. Drive into the car wash.
4. Switch off the "Automatic braking at standstill" function using the switch on the tunnel console.
5. Switch off the "Automatic parking brake application" function via the top view of the centre display.
6. Switch off the engine by pressing the start button next to the steering wheel. Hold the button depressed for at least 2 seconds.

The car is ready for the car wash.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 597)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 598)

- Handwashing (p. 598)
- High-pressure washing (p. 601)
- Cleaning the wiper blades (p. 601)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 602)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 603)
- Rustproofing (p. 603)

High-pressure washing

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This means that the car is easier to clean since the dirt does not attach as firmly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the car fresh. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo.

High-pressure washing

When using high-pressure washing, use sweeping movements and make sure that the nozzle does not come closer than 30 cm (13 in.) to the surface of the car. Do not spray directly onto the locks.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 597)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 598)
- Handwashing (p. 598)
- Automatic car wash (p. 600)
- Cleaning the wiper blades (p. 601)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 602)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 603)
- Rustproofing (p. 603)

Cleaning the wiper blades

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This means that the car is easier to clean since the dirt does not attach as firmly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the car fresh. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo.

Wiper blades

Asphalt, dust and salt residue on wiper blades, as well as insects, ice etc. on the windscreen, impair the service life of wiper blades.

When cleaning, set the wiper blades in service position.

NOTE

Wash the wiper blades and windscreen regularly with a lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo. Do not use any strong solvents.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 597)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 598)
- Handwashing (p. 598)
- Automatic car wash (p. 600)
- High-pressure washing (p. 601)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 602)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 603)

- Rustproofing (p. 603)

Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This means that the car is easier to clean since the dirt does not attach as firmly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the car fresh. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo.

Exterior plastic, rubber and trim components

A special cleaning agent available from Volvo retailers is recommended for the cleaning and care of coloured plastic parts, rubber and trim components, e.g. glossy trim mouldings. When using such a cleaning agent the instructions must be followed carefully.

Avoid washing the car with detergent with a pH value below 3.5 or above 11.5. This can cause discolouration of anodised aluminium components*, as illustrated. We advise against use of abrasive polishing agents, as illustrated.



Parts that should be washed using a cleaning agent with a pH value between 3.5 and 11.5.

! IMPORTANT

Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.

When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.

Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

! IMPORTANT

Avoid washing the car with cleaning agent with a pH value lower than 3.5 or higher than 11.5. This may result in discolouration of anodised aluminium parts such as roof rack and around the side windows.

Never use metal polishing agent on anodised aluminium parts, this can result in discolouration and destroy the surface treatment.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 597)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 598)
- Handwashing (p. 598)
- Automatic car wash (p. 600)
- High-pressure washing (p. 601)
- Cleaning the wiper blades (p. 601)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 603)
- Rustproofing (p. 603)

Cleaning wheel rims

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This means that the car is easier to clean since the dirt does not attach as firmly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the car fresh. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo.

Rims

Only use rim cleaning agent recommended by Volvo.

Strong rim cleaning agents can damage the surface and cause stains on chrome-plated aluminium rims.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 597)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 598)
- Handwashing (p. 598)
- Automatic car wash (p. 600)
- High-pressure washing (p. 601)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 602)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 603)
- Rustproofing (p. 603)

Rustproofing

The car has effective protection against corrosion.

Anti-corrosion protection for the body consists of metallic protective coatings on the sheet metal, a high-quality painting process, corrosion-protected and minimised metal overlap, and shielding plastic components, abrasion protection and supplemental rust inhibitor on exposed areas. In the chassis, exposed components of the wheel suspension are made of corrosion-resistant cast aluminium.

Inspection and maintenance

The car's anti-corrosion protection normally requires no maintenance, but a good way to further reduce the risk of corrosion is to keep the car clean. Strong alkaline or acidic cleaning solutions must always be avoided on glossy trim components. Any stone chips should be rectified as soon as they are discovered.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 597)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 598)
- Handwashing (p. 598)
- Automatic car wash (p. 600)
- High-pressure washing (p. 601)
- Cleaning the wiper blades (p. 601)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 602)

- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 603)

Car paintwork

The paintwork consists of several layers and is an important part of the car's rustproofing, and should therefore be checked regularly.

The most common types of paintwork damage are stone chips, scratches, and marks on the edges of wings, doors and bumpers. To avoid the onset of rust, damaged paintwork should be rectified immediately.

Related information

- Touching up minor paintwork damage (p. 604)
- Colour codes (p. 605)

Touching up minor paintwork damage

Paint is an important part of the car's rustproofing and should therefore be checked regularly. The most common types of paintwork damage are stone chips, scratches, and marks on the edges of wings, doors and bumpers.

When repairing paint damage, the car must be clean, dry and have a temperature of over 15 °C.

Touching up minor paintwork damage

To avoid the onset of rust, damaged paintwork should be rectified immediately.

i NOTE

When repairing the paintwork, it must be clean and dry and at a temperature of at least 15°C.

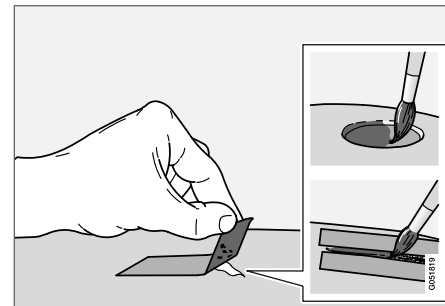
Materials that may be needed

- Primer²⁰ - a special adhesive primer in a spray can is available for e.g. plastic-coated bumpers.
- Basecoat and clearcoat - available in spray cans or as touch-up pens/sticks²¹.
- Masking tape.
- fine sand paper²⁰.

If the damage has not reached down to the metal, the touch-up paint can be applied directly after the surface has been cleaned.

i NOTE

When paint is repaired the surface must be clean and dry. The temperature of the surface should be at least 15 °C (60 °F).



²⁰ If required.

²¹ Follow the instructions that are included with the package for the touch-up pen/stick.

1. Apply a piece of masking tape over the damaged surface. Then remove the tape to remove any loose paint.

If the damage is down to the metal, use of a primer is appropriate. In the event of damage to a plastic surface, an adhesive primer should be used to give better results - spray into the lid of the spray can and brush on thinly.

2. Before painting, gentle polishing using a very fine polishing agent may be carried out locally if required (e.g. if there are any uneven edges). The surface is cleaned thoroughly and left to dry.
3. Stir the primer well and apply using a fine brush, a matchstick or similar. Finish off with a basecoat and clearcoat once the primer has dried.

For scratches, proceed as described above, but mask around the damaged area to protect the undamaged paintwork.

Touch-up pens and spray paints are available from Volvo retailers.

i NOTE

If the stone chip has not penetrated down to the metal and an undamaged layer of paint remains in place, fill in with base coat and clear coat as soon as the surface has been cleaned.

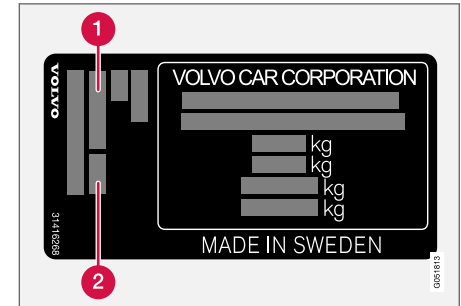
Related information

- Car paintwork (p. 604)
- Colour codes (p. 605)

Colour codes

Colour code

The colour code label is located on the car's right-hand rear door pillar and becomes visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.



1 Exterior colour code

2 Any secondary exterior colour code

It is important that the correct colour is used.

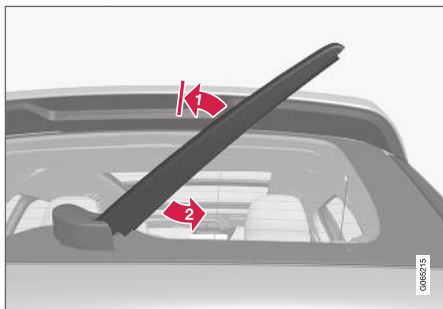
Related information

- Car paintwork (p. 604)
- Touching up minor paintwork damage (p. 604)

Replacing the wiper blade, rear window

The wiper blades sweep water away from the windscreen and rear window. Together with the washer fluid they clean the windows and ensure visibility for driving. Windscreen and rear window wiper blades can be replaced.

Replacing the wiper blade, rear window



Lift the wiper arm from the window and pull the lower section of the blade to the right.

1. Grip the centre of the wiper arm and lift it from the windscreen to lock position.

NOTE

There is a lock position at half extension angle that may feel like resistance, this lock prevents the arm from falling back against the windscreen. The wiper arm must be pulled past the lock for wiper blade replacement.

2. Grip the lower part of the blade and pull to the right until the blade loosens from the arm.
3. Press the new wiper blade into place. You should hear a click. Check that it is firmly installed.
4. Lower the wiper arm.

IMPORTANT

Check the blades regularly. Neglected maintenance shortens the service life of the wiper blades.

Related information

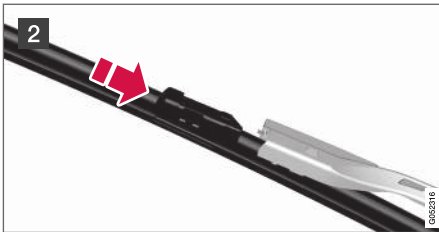
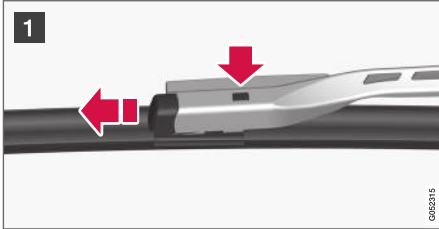
- Using the rain sensor (p. 160)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 162)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 164)

- Heated windscreen wiper nozzles* (p. 160)
- Using the rain sensor's memory function (p. 161)
- Using the rear window wiper and washer (p. 163)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 609)
- Wiper blades in service position (p. 608)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 607)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 159)

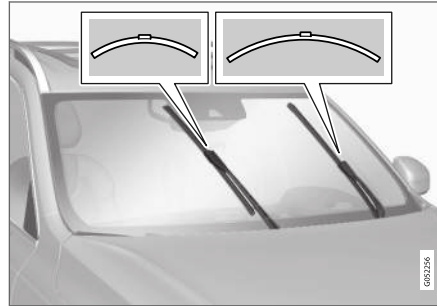
Replacing windscreen wiper blades

The wiper blades sweep water away from the windscreen and rear window. Together with the washer fluid they clean the windows and ensure visibility for driving. Windscreen and rear window wiper blades can be replaced.

Replacing a windscreen wiper blade



- 1 Fold up the wiper arm when it is in service position. Service position is activated/deactivated via the function key in the centre display when the car is stationary and the windscreen wipers are not on. Press the button located on the wiper blade mounting and pull straight out parallel with the wiper arm.
 - 2 Slide in the new wiper blade until a "click" is heard.
3. Check that the blade is firmly installed.
 4. Fold the wiper arm back towards the windscreen.



The wiper blades are different lengths.

i NOTE

The wiper blades are different lengths. The blade on the driver's side is longer than on the passenger side.

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 160)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 162)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 164)
- Heated windscreen wiper nozzles* (p. 160)
- Using the rain sensor's memory function (p. 161)
- Using the rear window wiper and washer (p. 163)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 609)
- Wiper blades in service position (p. 608)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 606)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 159)

Wiper blades in service position

The windscreen wiper blades must be in service position (vertical position) when, for example, they are being replaced.



Wiper blades in service position.

In order to change, clean or lift the wiper blades (e.g. for scraping off ice from the windscreen) they must be in service position.

! IMPORTANT

Before placing the wiper blades in the service position, make sure that they are not frozen down.

Activating/deactivating service mode

Service mode can be activated/deactivated when the car is stationary and the windscreen wipers

are not on. Service mode is activated/deactivated via the function view in the centre display:



Press the **Wiper Service Position** button. The light indicator in the button illuminates when the service position is activated. Upon activation, the wipers move to standing straight up. To deactivate the

service mode, press **Wiper Service Position** again. The light indicator in the button extinguishes when the service position is deactivated.

The wiper blades also exit service position if:

- Windscreen wiping is activated.
- Windscreen washing is activated.
- Rain sensor activated.
- The car is driven away.

! IMPORTANT

If the wiper arms in service position have been folded up from the windscreen, they must be folded back down onto the windscreen before the activation of wiping, washing or the rain sensor, as well as before driving. This is to avoid scraping the paint on the bonnet.

Related information

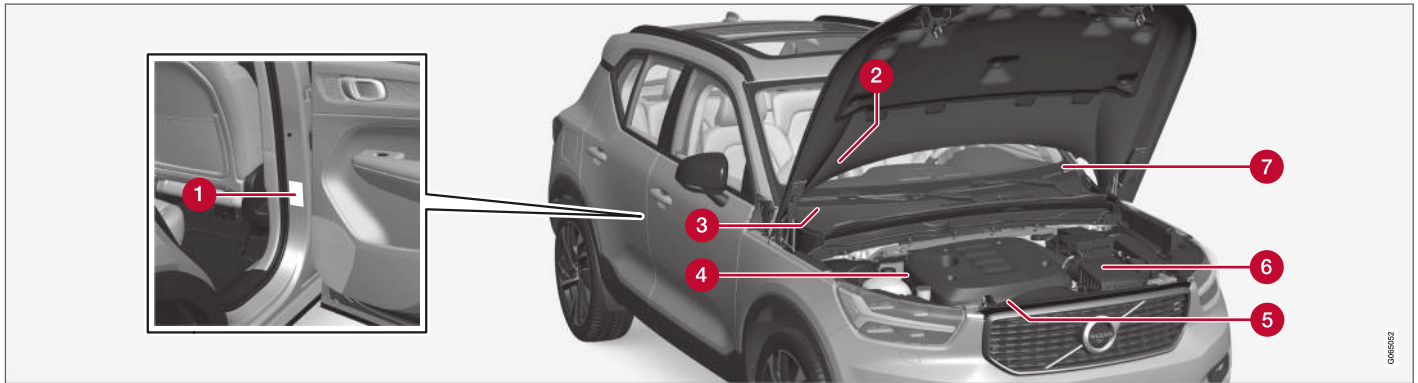
- Using the rain sensor (p. 160)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 162)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 164)
- Heated windscreen wiper nozzles* (p. 160)
- Using the rain sensor's memory function (p. 161)
- Using the rear window wiper and washer (p. 163)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 609)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 607)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 606)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 159)

SPECIFICATIONS

Type designations

The decals in the car contain information such as chassis number, type designation, colour code, etc.

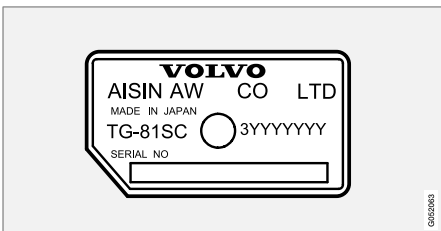
Label location



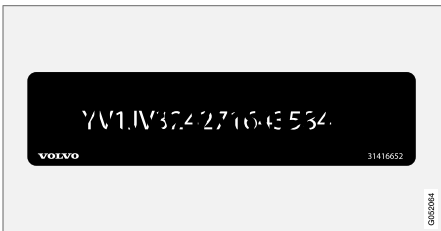
The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on market and model.

Knowing the car's type designation, vehicle identification and engine numbers can facilitate all contact with an authorised Volvo retailer regarding the car and when ordering spare parts and accessories.

SPECIFICATIONS



- 6** Decal for gearbox type designation and serial number.



- 7** Decal for the car's identification number - VIN (Vehicle Identification Number).

Further information on the car is presented in the registration document.

i NOTE

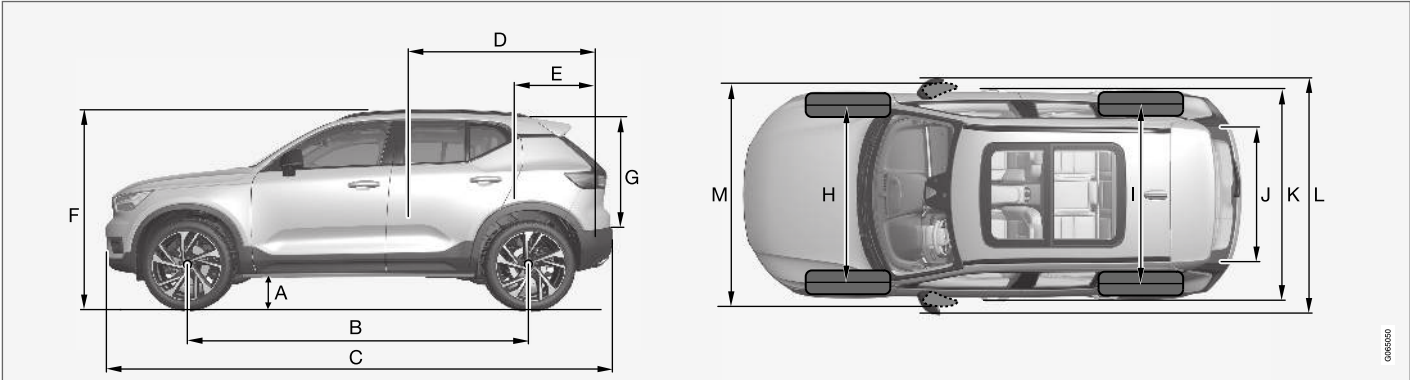
It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and locations in the car. The information that applies to your particular car can be found on the decal on the car.

Related information

- Air conditioning — specifications (p. 624)

Dimensions

Measurement of car length, height, etc. can be read in the table.



	Dimensions	mm	inches
A	Ground clearance ^A	205	8.1
B	Wheelbase	2702	106.4
C	Length	4425	174.2
D	Load length, floor, folded seat	1670	65.7

	Dimensions	mm	inches
E	Load length, floor	887	34.9
F	Height	1658	65,3
G	Load height	733	28.9
H	Front track	1601	63.0
I	Rear track	1626	64.0
J	Load width, floor	1059	41.7

	Dimensions	mm	inches
K	Width	1873 (1863 ^B)	73,7 (73,3 ^B)
L	Width including door mirrors	2034	80,1
M	Width including folded-in door mirrors	1910	75.2

^A For kerb weight + 1 person. Varies slightly depending on tyre dimension, chassis alternative, etc.)
^B Body width.



◀◀ **Related information**

- Weights (p. 617)

Weights

Max. gross vehicle weight, etc. can be read on a label in the car.

Kerb weight includes the driver, the fuel tank 90% full and all fluids.

The weight of passengers and accessories, and towball load (when a trailer is hitched) influence the load capacity and are not included in the kerb weight.

Permitted max. load = Gross vehicle weight - Kerb weight.

NOTE

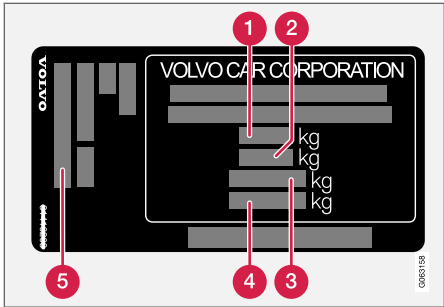
The documented kerb weight applies to cars in the standard version - i.e. a car without extra equipment or accessories. This means that for every accessory added the loading capacity of the car is reduced correspondingly by the weight of the accessory.

Examples of accessories that reduce load capacity are the different equipment levels (e.g. Kinetic, Momentum, Summum), as well as other accessories such as towbar, load carrier, space box, audio system, auxiliary lamps, GPS, fuel-driven heater, safety grille, carpets, cargo cover, power seats, etc.

Weighing the car is a certain way of ascertaining the kerb weight of your own particular car.

WARNING

The car's driving characteristics change depending on how heavily it is loaded and how the load is distributed.



The decal is positioned on the door pillar, and will be visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.

- 1 Max. gross vehicle weight
- 2 Max. train weight (car+trailer)
- 3 Max. front axle load
- 4 Max. rear axle load
- 5 Equipment level

Max. load: See registration document.

Max. roof load: 75 kg.

Related information

- Type designations (p. 612)
- Towing capacity and towball load (p. 618)

Towing capacity and towball load

Towing capacity and towball load for driving with a trailer can be read in the tables.

Max. weight braked trailer** NOTE**

Use of vibration dampers on the towbar is recommended for trailers heavier than 1800 kg.

Engine	Engine code ^A	Gearbox	Max. weight braked trailer (kg)	Max. towball load (kg)
T5 AWD	B4204T14	Automatic	2100	110 (160 ^B)
T5 AWD	B4204T18	Automatic	2100	110 (160 ^B)
T5 AWD	B4204T36	Automatic	2100	110 (160 ^B)
D4 AWD	D4204T12	Automatic	2100	110 (160 ^B)

A The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

B 160 kg only applies to Australia.

 IMPORTANT

When driving with a trailer, it is permitted to exceed the vehicle's gross vehicle weight (including towball load) by a maximum of 100 kg (220 lbs), provided that speed is limited to 100 km/h (62 mph). National legal requirements for the vehicle combination, such as speed, etc. must be observed.

Max. weight unbraked trailer

Max. weight unbraked trailer (kg)	Max. towball load (kg)
750	50

Related information

- Type designations (p. 612)
- Weights (p. 617)
- Driving with a trailer (p. 449)
- Trailer stability assist* (p. 450)

Engine specifications

Engine specifications (power, etc.) for each respective engine alternative can be found in the table below.

i NOTE
Not all engines are available in all markets.

Engine	Engine code ^A	Output (kW/rpm)	Output (hp/rpm)	Max. rated power (kW/rpm)	Max. rated power (hp/rpm)	Torque (Nm/rpm)	No. of cylinders
T5 AWD	B4204T14	182/5500	247/5500	-	-	350/1800-4800	4
T5 AWD	B4204T18	185/5500	252/5500	206/5500	280/5500	350/1500-4800	4
T5 AWD	B4204T36	183/5500	249/5500	-	-	350/1800-4500	4
D4 AWD	D4204T12	140/4000	190/4000	-	-	400/1750-2500	4

^A The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

Related information

- Type designations (p. 612)
- Engine oil — specifications (p. 621)
- Coolant — specifications (p. 623)
- Performance (p. 628)

Engine oil — specifications

Engine oil grade and volume for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

Volvo recommends:



Engine	Engine code ^A	Oil grade	Volume, incl. oil filter (litres)
T5 AWD	B4204T14	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20	approx. 5.6
T5 AWD	B4204T18		approx. 5.6
T5 AWD	B4204T36		approx. 5.6
D4 AWD	D4204T12	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20	approx. 5.2

^A The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

Related information

- Type designations (p. 612)
- Adverse driving conditions for engine oil (p. 622)
- Checking and filling with engine oil (p. 571)
- Engine oil (p. 570)

Adverse driving conditions for engine oil

Adverse driving conditions can lead to abnormally high oil temperature or oil consumption. Below are some examples of adverse driving conditions.

Check the oil level more frequently for long journeys:

- towing a caravan or trailer
- in mountainous regions
- at high speeds
- in temperatures colder than -30 °C (-22 °F) or hotter than +40 °C (+104 °F).

The above also apply to shorter driving distances at low temperatures.

Choose a fully synthetic engine oil for adverse driving conditions. It provides extra protection for the engine.

Volvo recommends:



! IMPORTANT

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise there is a risk of the service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact of the car being affected.

If engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used, engine related components may become damaged. Volvo Car Corporation disclaims any liability for any such damage.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information

- Engine oil — specifications (p. 621)
- Engine oil (p. 570)

Coolant — specifications

Prescribed grade: Coolant recommended by Volvo mixed with 50% water¹, see the packaging. Consult a Volvo retailer if unsure.

To avoid health risks, different types of glycol must not be mixed.

Related information

- Topping up coolant (p. 572)

Transmission fluid — specifications

Under normal driving conditions, the transmission fluid does not need to be changed during its service life. However, it may be necessary in adverse driving conditions.

Automatic gearbox

Prescribed transmission fluid:	AW1
---------------------------------------	-----

Brake fluid — specifications

The medium in a hydraulic brake system is called brake fluid, and it is used to transfer pressure from e.g. a brake pedal via a master brake cylinder to one or more slave cylinders, which in turn act on a mechanical brake.

Prescribed grade: Volvo Original Dot 4 class 6 or equivalent.

NOTE

It is recommended that brake fluid is changed or filled by an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information

- Engine compartment overview (p. 569)

¹ Water quality must fulfil the standard STD 1285.1.

Fuel tank - volume

The fuel tank's filling capacity can be read in the table below.

	All models
Litres (approx.)	54
US gallons (approx.)	14.2

Related information

- Filling fuel (p. 431)

Tank capacity for AdBlue®²

The refillable tank capacity for the additive AdBlue is approx. 14.5 litres.

Related information

- Checking and filling with AdBlue® (p. 437)

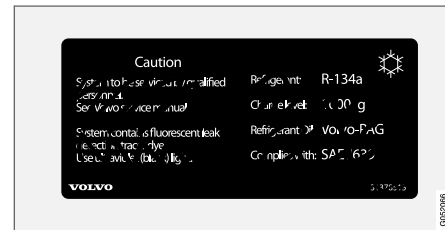
Air conditioning — specifications

The car's climate control system uses a freon-free refrigerant, either R1234yf or R134a depending on market. Information about which refrigerant the car's climate control system uses is printed on a decal located on the inside of the bonnet.

Prescribed grades and volumes of fluids and lubricants in the air conditioning system can be read in the tables below.

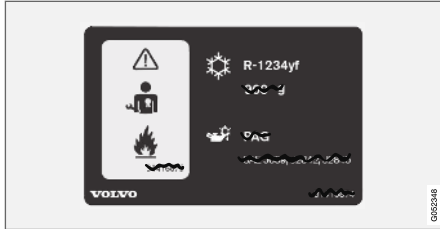
A/C decal

Decal for R134a



² Registered trademark that belongs to Ver-band der Automobilindustrie e.V. (VDA)

Decal for R1234yf



Symbol explanation R1234yf

Symbol	Meaning
	Caution
	Mobile air conditioning system (MAC)
	Lubricant type

Symbol	Meaning
	A trained and certified technician is required in order to service the mobile air conditioning system (MAC)
	Flammable refrigerants

Refrigerant

Cars with R134a refrigerant

Weight	Prescribed grade
540 g (1.19 lbs)	R134a

⚠ WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. This system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Cars with R1234yf refrigerant

Weight	Prescribed grade
480 g	R1234yf

⚠ WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R1234yf. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repair of the refrigerant system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

Compressor oil

Volume	Prescribed grade
130 ml (4.40 fl. oz.)	VC100yf

Evaporator

ⓘ IMPORTANT

The A/C system's evaporator must never be repaired or replaced with a previously used evaporator. A new evaporator must be certified and labelled in accordance with SAE J2842.

Related information

- Servicing the climate control system (p. 568)

Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions

Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions can be negatively impacted by a number of factors.

Examples of causes of increased fuel consumption include:

- If the car is equipped with extra equipment that affects its weight.
- Driving style.
- If the customer chooses wheels other than those mounted as standard on the basic version of the model, as this could increase rolling resistance.
- High speed causes increased air resistance.
- Fuel quality, road and traffic conditions, weather and the condition of the car.

A combination of the examples above could increase consumption considerably.

NOTE

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes in combination with fuel quality are factors that considerably increase the car's fuel consumption.

Related information

- Type designations (p. 612)
- Weights (p. 617)
- Economical driving (p. 428)

Approved tyre pressures

Approved tyre pressures for each engine alternative can be found in the table.

i NOTE
All engines, tyres or combinations of these are not always available in all markets.

Engine	Tyre size	Speed	Load, 1-3 persons		Max. load		ECO pressure ^A
			Front (kPa) ^B	Rear (kPa)	Front (kPa)	Rear (kPa)	Front/rear (kPa)
All engines	235/60 R17	0-160 km/h (0-100 mph)	230	230	260	260	260
	235/55 R18						
	235/50 R19	160+ km/h (100+ mph)	240	240	260	260	-
	245/45 R20						
	245/40 R21						
Temporary Spare Tyre		max 80 km/h (max 50 mph)	420	420	420	420	-

^A Economical driving.

^B In certain countries the "bar" unit is used alongside the SI unit "Pascal": 1 bar = 100 kPa.

Related information

- Type designations (p. 612)
- Checking tyre pressure (p. 522)

Performance

Top speed can be read in the table below.

Engine	Engine code ^A	Top speed	
		(km/h)	(mph)
T5 AWD	B4204T18	230	140
D4 AWD	D4204T12	210	130

^A The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

i NOTE

If there are no performance data then they are available in the accompanying supplement.

Related information

- Engine specifications (p. 620)

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

1, 2, 3 ...

4WD 413

A

A/C (Air conditioning) 202

ABS
anti-lock brakes 401

ACC – Adaptive cruise control 281, 283,
284, 285, 286, 287, 289, 290, 291, 292, 294

Accessories and extra equipment 37
installation 37

Active bending lights 140

Active main beam 138

Active Park Assist 386, 387, 390, 391,
392, 393
function 386, 387, 391, 392, 393
Limitations 391
operation 387, 390
Symbols and messages 393

Active Yaw Control 264

Adapting driving characteristics 262, 414

Adaptive Cruise Control 281, 283, 284,
285, 286, 287, 289, 290, 291, 292, 294
change cruise control functionality 292
fault tracing 292

function 281
managing speed 284, 285
overtaking 289, 290
radar sensor 311
setting the time interval 286, 287

AdBlue 436
filling 437
operation 437
Symbols and messages 440
tank volume 624

Additional heater (Auxiliary heater) 213

Adjusting the steering wheel 175

Aerial
location 244

Airbag 49
Activating/deactivating 52
driver's side 49
passenger side 50, 52

Airbag, see Airbag 49

Air conditioning 202

Air conditioning, fluid
volume and grade 624

Air conditioning system 178, 190
repair 568

Air distribution 184
Air vents 184, 185
change 185
defrosting 196

Recirculation 195
table of options 187

Air quality 181, 182
allergies and asthma 182
passenger compartment filter 183

Air recirculation 195

Alarm 255
deactivation 256
motion and tilt sensors 255
reduced alarm level 258

Alcohol lock 399, 400

Allergy and asthma inducing substances. 182

All Wheel Drive (AWD) 413

Ambience lights 146

Android Auto 486, 487, 488

Apple CarPlay 483, 485

Approach lighting 144

Apps 465

Ashtray 546

Assistance at risk of collision 364, 365,
366, 367, 368, 369, 371

Audio and media 464

Audio settings 464, 495
phone 496
play media 475, 476
Text message 495

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Auto climate control	195
Auto hold	407
Automatic brake	407
activate and deactivate	407
after collision	408
Automatic car wash	600
Automatic car washes	600
Automatic engine stop	
auto-stop	419
Automatic gearbox	410
kickdown	413
oil	623
trailer	449
Automatic locking	248
Automatic relocking	219, 242
Automatic speed limiter	272, 274, 275
Auxiliary heater	213
AWD, All Wheel Drive	413

B

Backrest	
front seat, adjusting	166, 167, 169, 170
rear seat, lowering	171
Bag holder	551

Battery	443, 579
jump starting	443
maintenance	579
overload	443
start	579
support	582
symbols on the battery	583
warning symbols	583
Bicycle rack	
towbar mounted	452
BLIS	338, 339, 340
Bluetooth	
connect	480
connect car to Internet	499
phone	488
settings	497
Bonnet, opening	567
Book service and repair	562
Brake assist	
after collision	408
Brake fluid	
grade	623
Brake functions	401
Brake light	142
Brakes	401
Anti-lock braking system, ABS	401
automatic when stationary	407
brake assist system, BAS	402

brake light	142
brake system	401
emergency brake lights	142
handbrake	403
maintenance	403
on gritted roads	403
on wet roads	402
Brake system	
fluid	623
bulbs, specifications	578
bypass alcohol lock	400

C

Camera sensor	333
Camera unit	321
Car care	597, 598, 600, 601, 602, 603
Leather upholstery	596
Car functions	
in centre display	108
Cargo area	550
electrical socket	546, 547
lighting	145
mounting points	552
parcel shelf	555
protective net	553
Cargo area floor	553

Car holiday	428	Child safety	57	Clean Zone Interior Package	182
Car key battery low	222	Child safety locks	247	Climate control	178, 190
Car modem		Child seat	57, 58, 60, 62	auto-regulation	195
connect car to Internet	500	i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points	60	centre display	190
settings	501	lower mounting points	59	experienced temperature	179
Car status	562	overview table	63	fan control	200
Tyre pressure	527	positioning/fitting	60, 62	Parking	203
Car upholstery	593, 594, 595, 596, 597	table for location	64	rear seat	190
Car washing	597, 598, 600, 601, 602, 603	table of i-Size	66	sensors	179
Catalytic converter		table of ISOFIX	67	temperature control	201, 202
Recovery	454	Upper mounting points	58	voice control	180
central locking	245	Cigarette lighter	545	zones	178
Centre display		City Safety in crossing traffic	331, 332	Climate control system	
change appearance	117	City Safety with obstructed evasive manoeuvre	332	Refrigerant	624
cleaning	593	City Safety™	325, 326, 328, 329, 333, 336	Clock, adjustment	82
climate control	190	Cleaning	595, 596, 597	CO2 emissions	626
function view	108	automatic car wash	600	Coat hanger	553
Keyboard	112	car washing	597, 598, 600, 601, 602, 603	Collision	42, 44, 49, 55
messages	126, 127, 128	centre display	593	Collision warning	325, 337
operation	98, 101, 105, 110	Fabric upholstery	593, 594, 596	Collision warning system	
overview	95	rims	603	Pedestrian detection	329
settings	118, 119, 120	Seatbelts	595	Radar sensor	311
switch off and change volume	117	upholstery	593, 594, 595, 596, 597	Colour code, paint	605
symbols in status bar	110	Cleaning wheel rims	603	Colour codes	605
views	101	Cleaning wiper blades	601	Combined instrument panel settings	75 77
Change of owner	120	Clean Zone	181		
Checking the engine oil level	571				

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Compass	460, 461
calibration	461
Condensation in headlamps	598, 600, 601, 602
Connect car to Internet	
no or poor connection	503
via a mobile device (WiFi)	500
via car modem	500
via mobile device (Bluetooth)	499
Connect phone	489
Controls lighting	146
Coolant	623
Coolant, filling	572
Cooling system	
overheating	442
Cornering lights	141
Corner Traction Control	264
Crash, see Collision	42
Cross Traffic Alert – CTA	343, 344, 345, 347
Cruise control	276, 277
deactivate	280
managing speed	277, 278
temporary deactivation	279
CTA – Cross Traffic Alert	343, 344, 345, 347
Cyclist detection	329
CZIP (Clean Zone Interior Package)	182

D

Data	
recording	35
transfer between car and workshop	560
Data link connector	38
Data sharing	504
Daytime running lights	136
Deadlock	258
deactivation	259
Defrosting	196
Diesel	434
run out of fuel	435
Diesel particle filter	435
Digital radio (DAB)	473
Dimensions	615
Towbar	445
dipped beam	137
Dipstick, electronic	571
Direction indicator	139
Direction indicators	139
direction of rotation	521
Display lighting	146
DivX®	479

Door mirrors	151, 153
Dipping	152
resetting	153
Drive-E	
Environmental philosophy	28
Driver Alert Control	354
operation	355, 356
Driver display	
application menu	90
messages	91
Driver performance	80, 81
Driver profile	123
edit	125
select	124
driver support system	262
Drivetrain	
Gearbox	409
Driving	
cooling system	442
with a trailer	449
Driving economy	428
Driving in water	430
Driving mode	414
change	416
Driving with a trailer	
towball load	618
towing capacity	618

E

ECO climate	416	Engine braking, automatic	426
ECO mode	416	Engine compartment	
activate with function button	418	coolant	572
Economical driving	416, 428	Engine oil	570
ECO pressure	523, 627	overview	569
Electrical socket	546	Engine drag control	264
using	547	Engine oil	570, 622
Electrical system	579	adverse driving conditions	622
Electric parking brake	403	filling	571
emergency brake lights	142	filter	570
Emergency equipment		grade and volume	621
first aid kit	556	Engine specifications	620
warning triangle	556	Engine temperature	
Emergency puncture repair kit	538	high	442
implementation, follow-up inspection	538	Environment	28
location	537	Error messages	
overview	537	Adaptive Cruise Control	294
Pump up tyre	542	see Messages and symbols	294, 309
sealing fluid	537	Error messages in BLIS	342
Emissions of carbon dioxide	626	Ethanol content	
Engine		maximum 10 percent by volume	432
deactivate	397	Exhaust system	436
overheating	442	External dimensions	615
start	396		
Start/Stop	419		

F

Fan	
Air distribution	185
Air vents	185
Control	200
Fault tracing for the camera sensor	322
Ferry transport	423
First aid	556
First aid kit	556
Flooded road	430
Fluids, capacities	609, 624
Fluids and oils	623, 624
Fog lamp	
front	141
rear	141
Foot brake	401
Four-C	423
Front seat	
Climate control	190
Fan	200
heating	191, 192
Temperature	201
Ventilation	193
Front seat, manual	166
Front seat, power	167
adjusting seat	167

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Lumbar support	170
massage	169
memory function	168, 169
multi-function control	169, 170
FSC, ecolabelling	23
Fuel	432, 434
fuel consumption	626
identifier	434
fuel gauge	77
Fuelling	
filling	431
fuel filler flap	430
Fuel tank	
volume	624
Fuel vapour	432
Fuse box	584
Fuses	
changing	585
General	584
in engine compartment	586
under glovebox	590

G

Gearbox	409
automatic	410
Gear positions	
automatic gearbox	410
Gear selector inhibitor	412
Gear shift indicator	413
Glass	
laminated/reinforced	148
Glovebox	548
Gracenote®	478
Gross vehicle weight	617
GSI - Gear selector assistance	413

H

Handbrake	403, 404
Handwash	598
Hard disk	
space	506
Hazard warning flashers	143
HDC	426
Headlamp control	134, 146
head restraint	173

Heated washer nozzles	160
Heater	211
auxiliary heater	213
parking heater	212
Heating	
seats	191, 192
steering wheel	194
Windows	198, 199
High engine temperature	442
High-pressure washing	601
Hill descent control	426
activate with function button	427
Hill Descent Control	425, 426, 427
Hill start assist	
Hill Start Assist (HSA)	408
Hill Start Assist	408
HomeLink®	457
program	457
using	459
Home safe light duration	143
Horn	174

I

IAQS (Interior Air Quality System)	182
IC (Inflatable Curtain)	55

ID, Volvo	26	Internet-connected car		L	
Identification number	39	book service and repair	562	<hr/>	
Ignition position	398, 399	send car information	564	Labels	
Immobiliser	230	system updates	561	location of	612
Immobilizer		iPod®, connection	480	Laminated glass	148
Immobiliser	230	ITPMS - Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System	524	Lamps	
Indicator symbols	83			change	573
Individual drive mode	414	J		location	574
Inflatable curtain	55	<hr/>		specifications	578
Inflatable Curtain	55	Jack	529	trailer	451
Information display	75, 77	Journey statistics	80	Lane assistance	
Infotainment system (Audio and media)	464	Jump starting	443	operation	359
Instrument lighting	146			Lane assistance - Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)	356, 358, 359, 361, 363
Instrument overview		K		Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)	356, 358, 359, 361, 363
left-hand drive car	72	<hr/>		Language	118
right-hand drive car	73	Kerb weight	617	Leather upholstery, washing instructions	596
Instruments and controls	72, 73	Key	217	Level control	
IntelliSafe		Keyboard	112, 115	damping	423
Driver support	31	change language	115	License agreement	86, 507
Interior Air Quality System	182	Keyless		Lifting tool	529
Interior lighting	144, 146	Locking/unlocking	242	Lighting	
Interior rearview mirror	151	settings	243	active bending lights	140
Dipping	152	touch-sensitive surfaces	241	approach lighting	144
Intermittent wiping	159	Keypad in the steering wheel	174	automatic lighting, passenger compartment	144
Internet, see Internet-connected car	498	Key tag	217		

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Automatic main beam	138	Loading		Max. roof load	617
brake light	142	General	550	Media player	474, 475, 476
bulbs, specifications	578	load retaining eyelets	552	compatible file formats	505, 506
controls	134, 144, 146	long load	550	voice control	131
controls lighting	146	Loading hooks	551	Messages and symbols	
cornering lights	141	Load retaining eyelets		Adaptive Cruise Control	294
daytime running lights	136	cargo area	552	Collision Warning with Auto Brake	336
dipped beam	137	Lock		Messages in BLIS	342
direction indicators	139	locking	219	Messages in displays	91, 126
display lighting	146	unlocking	219	manage	93, 127
emergency brake lights	142	Lockable wheel bolts	530	saved	94, 128
fog lamp	141	Lock confirmation	216	Meters	
Hazard warning flashers	143	setting	217	fuel gauge	77
home safe lighting	143	Locking/unlocking		Mileage	78
instrument lighting	146	tailgate	221, 243	Misting	
in the passenger compartment	144, 146	Low battery voltage		condensation in headlamps	597, 600
lamp positions	574	Battery	443	Mobile phone, see Phone	489
main beam	137, 138	Low speed control	425	Mood lighting	145
position lamps	135	activate with function button	425	Motion sensor	255
rear fog lamp	141				
settings	135				
Lighting, bulb replacement	573				
brake light	576	M		N	
direction indicator, rear	575	<hr/>		<hr/>	
rear fog lamp	577	Main beam	137, 138	Net	
Limitations for Driver Alert Control	356	Maintained climate comfort	208	cargo area	553
Limp home	409	start/shut-off	208		
Load carriers	551	maintenance			
		Rustproofing	603		

O

octane rating	432
Oil, see also Engine oil	621, 622
Oil level low	571
Online car	498
no or poor connection	503
Option/accessory	21
Output	620
outside temperature gauge	82
Overheating	442, 449
Overtaking Assistance	289, 290, 306
Owner's manual	21
ecolabelling	23
in centre display	17, 18
in mobile	20
Owner information	16

P

PACOS (Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch)	52
Paddle on the steering wheel	174
Paintwork	
colour code	605
damage and touch-up	604, 605

Panorama roof	
opening and closing	156
pinch protection	148
sun blind	154, 158
ventilation position	157
PAP - Active Park Assist	386, 387, 390, 391, 392, 393
Parcel shelf	555
Park Assist	372, 373, 374, 375, 376
function	372, 373, 374
Park assist camera	377, 378, 380, 382, 383, 384, 385
settings	382
Park assist camera's limitations	383
Park assist lines for Park assist camera	380
Parking	
on hill	406
Parking brake	403
activate and deactivate	404
automatic activation	405
low battery voltage	406
Parking climate	203
Symbols and messages	210
Parking heater	212
Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch	52
Passenger compartment filter	183

Passenger compartment heater (Parking heater)	212
Passenger compartment interior	544
ashtray	546
cigarette lighter	545
electrical socket	546
glovebox	548
Sun visor	549
tunnel console	545
Passenger compartment lighting	
automatic	144
Personal information (Privacy policy)	36
petrol	432
Petrol particle filter	433
Phone	488
Calls	493, 496
change to another	493
connect	489
connect automatically	491
connect manually	492
disconnect	492
remove	493
text message	494
voice control	130
Phone charger	497
Pilot Assist	296, 299, 300, 301, 302, 304, 306, 307, 308, 309
overtaking	306

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Pinch protection	148	R	heating	199	
resetting	149		interior	151	
PIN code	501	Radar sensor	283, 311	rear window	
Pocket park assist - PAP	386, 387, 390, 391, 392, 393	Limitations	312	heating	199
Polishing	598	Radar unit	311	Washers	163, 164
Position lamp	135	Radio	468	Wiper	163, 164
Power operated tailgate	248	change radio frequency and radio sta- tion	469	Recommendations during driving	428
Power panorama roof	154	DAB	473	Recommendations for loading	550
Power save mode	443	search for radio station	470	Recovery	456
Power seat	167	settings	471	Red Key	226
Power windows	149, 150	start	468	settings	227
pinch protection	148	voice control	131	Refrigerant	568
Preconditioning	204	Radio favourites	470	climate control system	624
start/shut-off	204	Rain sensor	160, 161	Refuelling	431, 437
Timer	205	Rain sensor memory function	161	AdBlue	437
Privacy policy	36	Raising the car	565	Regeneration	433, 435
Private locking	253	Rear seat		Remote control, HomeLink®	
Activating/deactivating	253	Climate control	190	programmable	457
Protective net	553	head restraint	173	Remote control immobiliser	230
Pump up tyre	542	heating	192	Remote control key	217
Puncture	537	lowering the backrest	171	battery replacement	222
		Rearview and door mirrors		connect to driver profile	125
		compass	460, 461	detachable key blade	227
		Dipping	152	loss	226
		door	151, 153	range	222
		electrically retractable	153	Remote control key system, type approval	232
				Remote updates	561

Resetting, trip meter	80	Sealing fluid	537	Settings	121
Resetting the door mirrors	153	Seat, see Seats	166	Categories	122
Restore settings	121	Seatbelt	44	contextual	119
change of owner	120	buckle/unbuckle	45	Resetting	121
Driver profile	125	pregnancy	42	settings menu	121
Retractable power door mirrors	153	seatbelt reminder	47	Side airbag	54
Reversing camera	377, 378, 380, 382, 383, 384, 385	seatbelt tensioner	46	Side Impact Protection System	54, 55
Reversing sensors	372, 373, 374, 375, 376	Seatbelt, see Seatbelts	44	SIM card	501
Road run-off protection	365, 366, 367	Seatbelt reminder	47	SIPS (Side Impact Protection System)	54, 55
Road sign information	348, 349, 351	seatbelt tensioner		Skidding	429
Limitations	353	Resetting	47	Ski hatch	552
operation	349, 351, 352, 353	Seatbelt tensioner	46	slippery driving conditions	429
Roll Stability Control	263	Seats		Software updates	35
Roof load, max. weight	617	heating	191, 192	Soot filter	435
RSC (Roll Stability Control)	263	manual front seat	166	spare wheel	534, 535
Run out of fuel		memory function front seat	168, 169	Speed camera	353
diesel	435	power front seat	167	Speed limiter	268, 271, 272, 275
Rustproofing	603	Ventilation	193	deactivation	271
		whiplash protection	43	getting started	269
		sensors		temporary deactivation	270
		Air quality	183	Speed ratings, tyres	519
		Climate control	179	Spin control	264
		Sensus		Stabiliser	
		connection and entertainment	32	trailer	450
		Sensus Navigation	351	Stability and traction control system	264, 267
		Service position	608	operation	265, 266
		Service programme	560		
S					
Safety	42				
pregnancy	42				
Safety mode	55				
start/movement	56				

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Stability system	264	Storage spaces	544	T	
Stains	593, 594, 595, 596, 597	glovebox	548		
Start/Stop	419	Sun visor	549		
deactivate	420	tunnel console	545		
Driving	419	Sun blind			
Limitations	421	panorama roof	154, 158		
Starting the engine	396	pinch protection	148		
after collision	56	Sunroof			
Start the car	396	pinch protection	148		
Steering assistance at risk of collision	364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 371	Sun visor	549		
Steering assistance at risk of head-on collision	368, 369	mirror lighting	145		
Steering force, speed related	262	Support battery	582		
Steering force level, see Steering force	262	Switching off the engine	397		
Steering lock	175	Switch off engine	397		
Steering wheel	174, 175	Symbols			
heating	194	indicator symbols	83		
keypad	174	Symbols and messages			
paddle	174	Adaptive Cruise Control	294		
steering wheel adjustment	175	centre display status field	110		
Steering wheel paddles	411	Collision Warning with Auto Brake	336		
Stickers		parking climate	210		
location of	612	Symbols and messages for Assistance at risk of collision	371		
Stone chips and scratches	604, 605	system updates	561		
Stop/start function	419				
					Tailgate
					Locking/unlocking
				opening/closing with foot movement	252
				power	248
				unlock from inside	246
				Temperature	
				Control	201, 202
				experienced	179
				Temporary spare	
				spare wheel	534
				Terms and conditions	
				services	36
				user	504
				Through-load hatch	552
				Tilt detector	255
				Tools	529
				Top speed	628
				Total airing function	217, 245
				Towbar	444
				detachable, attachment	448
				detachable, removal	448
				foldable	446
				specifications	445
				Towing	453, 456

Towing a trailer		Tunnel console	545	rotation	518
Towbar	448	Tunnel detection	137	specifications	627
Towing bracket	448	TV	481	storage	518
Towing capacity and towball load	618	settings	482	tread depth	536
Towing eye	454	watch	482	tread wear indicators	521
Traction control	264	Type approval		tyre pressure monitoring	524
Traffic information	471	radar system	316	tyre pressure table	627
Trailer	450	remote control key system	232	winter tyres	536
cable	449	Type designations	612		
driving with a trailer	449	Tyre dimension	519, 529	U	
Lamps	451	Tyre load index	519	<hr/>	
snaking	450	Tyre pressure		Units	118
Trailer stability assist	264, 450	Adjust	522	Unknown car part	259
Transmission	409	Check	522	Unlocking	
Transmission oil		recommended	523	settings	220
grade	623	Tyre pressure label	523	with key blade	229
Tread	521	Tyre pressure monitoring	524	USB	
Tread depth	521, 536	action	528	jack for connecting media	481
Tread wear indicators	521	Calibrate	525		
Trip computer	78, 79	Status	527	V	
Trip meter	78	Tyre pressure table	627	<hr/>	
Trip meter, resetting	80	Tyres	518	Ventilation	184, 185
Troubleshooting		direction of rotation	521	seats	193
Adaptive Cruise Control	292	installation	533	Vibration damper	444
TSA - trailer stability assist	450	pressure	627	Video	478, 480
TSA - Trailer stability assist	264	puncture repair	537	settings	479
		removal	531		

V O L V O